WORKING DRAFT

INCITS XXX
T10/1836D

Revision 2g
11 December 2009

INFORMATION TECHNOLOGY -
Multi-Media Commands - 6 (MMC-6)

MMC-6 Technical Editor: Bill McFerrin,
DPHI, Inc.
1900 Pike Road, Ste F
Longmont, CO 80501
USA

Tel.: 1+325-423-1560
e-mail: bmcferrin@dataplay.com

Reference number
ISO/IEC ***** :XXXX
ANSI INCITS .***** :XXXX
Printed: ******, XXXX

Points of Contact:

T10 Chair
John B. Lohmeyer
LSI Logic Corp.
4420 ArrowsWest Dr.
Colo. Springs, CO 80907-3444
Telephone: (719) 533-7560
Facsimile: (719) 533-7183
Email: lohmeyer@t10.org

T10 Vice-Chair
Mark Evans
Western Digital
5863 Rue Ferrari
San Jose, CA 95138 USA
Telephone: (408) 363-5257
Facsimile: (408) 363-5139
Email: mark.evans@wdc.com

INCITS Secretariat
1250 Eye Street, NW Suite 200
Washington, DC 20005
Telephone: 202-737-8888
Facsimile: 202-638-4922
Email: INCITS@itic.org

T10 Web Site www.t10.org

T10 Reflector To subscribe send e-mail to majordomo@T10.org with 'subscribe' in message body
To unsubscribe send e-mail to majordomo@T10.org with 'unsubscribe' in message body
Internet address for distribution via T10 reflector: T10@T10.org

Document Distribution

INCITS Online Store
managed by Techstreet
1327 Jones Drive
Ann Arbor, MI 48105
http://www.techstreet.com/incits.html
Telephone: 1-734-302-7801
Toll Free: 1-800-699-9277
Facsimile: 1-734-302-7811

or

Global Engineering
15 Inverness Way East
Englewood, CO 80112-5704
http://global.ihs.com
Telephone: 303-792-2181
Toll Free: 800-854-7179
Facsimile: 303-792-2192

ANSI I
INCITS XXX.200n

American National Standards
for Information Technology –

SCSI Multi-Media Commands – 6 (MMC-6)

Secretariat
InterNational Committee for Information Technology Standards

Approved DD MM YY

American National Standards Institute, Inc.

Abstract
This standard defines a SCSI based command set needed to access multi-media features. The applicable clauses of this standard when used in conjunction with other standards and publications define a full standard set of commands.

Published by

American National Standards Institute

11 West 42nd Street, New York, NY 10036

Printed in the United States of America

Contents

Tables

Figures

Forward

This forward is not part of American National Standard INCITS. ***:200x.

This standard defines the command set to access multi-media features for all classes of SCSI devices. The applicable clauses of this standard when used in conjunction with SCSI Primary Commands and other applicable command set documents pertaining to the subject device class, define the full standard set of commands available for that device in a SCSI environment.

With any technical document there may arise questions of interpretation as new products are implemented. INCITS has established procedures to issue technical opinions concerning the standards developed by INCITS. These procedures may result in SCSI Technical Information Bulletins being published by INCITS.

These Bulletins, while reflecting the opinion of the Technical Committee that developed the standard, are intended solely as supplementary information to other users of the standard. This standard, ANSI INCITS.***:200x, as approved through the publication and voting procedures of the American National Standards Institute, is not altered by these bulletins. Any subsequent revision to this standard may or may not reflect the contents of these Technical Information Bulletins.

Current INCITS practice is to make Technical Information Bulletins available through:

INCITS Online Store	http://www.techstreet.com/incits.html	
managed by Techstreet	Telephone:	1-734-302-7801 or
1327 Jones Drive		1-800-699-9277
Ann Arbor, MI 48105	Facsimile:	1-734-302-7811

or

Global Engineering	http://global.ihs.com/	
15 Inverness Way East	Telephone:	1-303-792-2181 or
Englewood, CO 80112-5704		1-800-854-7179
	Facsimile:	1-303-792-2192

Requests for interpretation, suggestions for improvement and addenda, or defect reports are welcome. They

should be sent to the INCITS Secretariat, National Committee for Information Technology Standards, Information Technology Institute, 1250 Eye Street, NW, Suite 200, Washington, DC 20005-3922.

This standard was processed and approved for submittal to ANSI by the InterNational Committee for Information

Technology Standards (INCITS). Committee approval of the standard does not necessarily imply that all committee members voted for approval. At the time of it approved this standard, INCITS had the following members:

<<Insert INCITS member list>>

Technical Committee T10 on Lower Level Interfaces, which developed and reviewed this standard, had the following members:

John B. Lohmeyer, Chair

George O. Penokie, Vice-Chair

Ralph O. Weber, Secretary

Organization Represented *Name of Representative*

<<Insert T10 member list>>

American National Standard for Information Technology –

SCSI Multimedia Commands – 6 (MMC–6)

1 Scope

This standard defines a set of SCSI command descriptor blocks that are useful in accessing and controlling devices with a peripheral device type set to 5.

This command set is transport independent and may be implemented across a wide variety of environments for which a SCSI transport protocol has been defined. To date, these include Parallel SCSI, ATA/ATAPI, Serial ATA, Universal Serial Bus, and High Performance Serial Bus.

The command set described has been selected for correct operation when the physical interface is ATA with the ATAPI command protocol. Although some commands are also described in [SPC-3], reduced descriptions are also in this standard for the purpose of profiling mandatory and optional command features as applied to multi-media devices.

The objective of this command set is to provide for the following:

1. A definition of the command formats and functions independent of delivery, protocol/signaling or transport mechanism. Architectural constraints regarding command functions, over the various transports, are addressed in the document specific to the physical transport.
2. Standardized access to common features of devices employed in multi-media applications.
3. System software/firmware independence across device classes and physical interfaces. Provision is made for the addition of special features and functions through the use of vendor-specific options.
4. To provide compatibility such that properly conforming devices may inter-operate with subsequent devices.

The Multi-Media Commands - 6 (MMC-6) standard is divided into several clauses:

Clause 1 (this clause) is the scope.

Clause 2 contains lists of documents that may be needed by the reader for the correct understanding of this standard.

Clause 3 contains Definitions, Symbols, Abbreviations, and Conventions. This is a glossary of terminology used in this standard.

Clause 4 describes modeling for the various media-oriented behaviors that the Host may witness from the device. This also provides an overview of internal drive operation to the Host application developer.

Clause 5 defines the features and profiles of MMC devices. Features describe Drive capability while profiles define a general device view.

Clause 6 defines commands that may be implemented by MMC device. Commands are described from the Host's point of view.

Clause 7 defines the parameter data formats that may be implemented by MMC devices. Inputs required by the drive are not always a part of a command. Inputs associated with mode of operation are readable and sometimes writable.

The annexes provide information to assist with implementation of this standard.

2 References

2.1 Normative References

The following standards contain provisions that, by reference in the text, constitute provisions of this standard. At the time of publication, the editions indicated were valid. All standards are subject to revision, and parties to agreements based on this standard are encouraged to investigate the possibility of applying the most recent editions of the standards listed below.

2.2 Approved References

Copies of the following documents may be obtained from ANSI: approved ANSI standards, approved and draft international and regional standards (ISO, IEC, CEN/CENELEC, ITUT), and approved and draft foreign standards (including BSI, JIS, and DIN). For further information, contact ANSI Customer Service Department at 212-642-4900 (phone), 212-302-1286 (fax) or via the World Wide Web at http://www.ansi.org.

ANSI NCITS 367-2003	SPI-5	SCSI Parallel Interface – 5
ANSI NCITS 408-2005	SPC-3	SCSI Primary Commands – 3
ANSI INCITS 360-2002	MMC-3	SCSI Multi-Media Command Set – 3
ANSI INCITS 401-2005	MMC-4	SCSI Multi-Media Command Set – 4
ANSI INCITS 430-2007	MMC-5	SCSI Multi-Media Command Set – 5
ANSI NCITS 405-2005	SBC-2	SCSI Block Command Set – 2
ANSI NCITS 375-2004	SBP-3	SCSI Serial Bus Protocol – 3
INCITS 451:2008	ATA-AAM	AT Atachment-8 ATA/ATAPI Architecture Model (ATA8-AAM)
INCITS 452-2008	ATA-8	AT Attachment 8 - ATA/ATAPI Command Set (ATA8-ACS)
ANSI/IEEE Std 1394A-2000	1394A	High Performance Serial Bus
FIPS 197	AES	Advanced Encryption Standard, Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 197.
ISO/IEC 646:1991	ASCII	Information technology - ISO 7-bit coded character set for information interchange (third edition). See also: *ANSI INCITS 4-1986 (R2002) Information Systems - Coded Character Sets - 7-Bit American National Standard Code for Information Interchange (7-Bit ASCII)*
IEC 908:1987		Compact Disc Digital Audio System.
ISO/IEC 3901:2001	ISRC	International Standard Recording Code
ISO/IEC 10149:1995		Information Technology-Data Interchange on Read-only 120 mm Optical Data Discs (CD-ROM).
ISO/IEC 16448:2002		Information technology -- 120 mm DVD -- Read-only disk
ISO/IEC 16449:2002		Information technology - 80 mm DVD - Read-only disk
ISO/IEC 16824:1999		Information technology -- 120 mm DVD rewritable disk
ECMA 167, 3rd Edition		Volume and File Structure for Write-Once and Rewritable Media using Non-Sequential Recording for Information Interchange
ECMA 330		120 mm (4,7 Gbytes per side) and 80 mm (1,46 Gbytes per side) DVD Rewritable Disk (DVD-RAM)
ECMA 337		120 mm 4,7Gbytes and 80 mm 1,46 GB DVD ReWritable Disk (DVD+RW)
ECMA 338		80 mm (1,46 Gbytes per side) and 120 mm (4,70 Gbytes per side) DVD Re-recordable Disk (DVD-RW)

2.3 References under development

At the time of publication, the following referenced standards were still under development. For information on the current status of the document, or regarding availability, contact the relevant standards body or other organization as indicated.

INCITS T10/1731D	SPC-4	SCSI Primary Command Set – 4
INCITS T13/1697D	ATA8-AST	AT Attachment – 8 Serial Transport (ATA8-AST)
INCITS T13/1698D	ATA8-APT	AT Attachment – 8 Parallel Transport (ATA8-APT)

2.4 Other References

The following are published by the NV Philips and Sony Corporation and are available from Philips Electronics NV (for availability, consult www.licensing.philips.com):

CD-Ref1	System Description Compact Disc Digital Audio (aka "Red Book"), See also [IEC 908:1987]
CD-Ref2	Compact Disc Read Only Memory (aka "Yellow Book"), See also [ISO/IEC 10149:1995]
CD-Ref3	CD-I Full Functional Specification ("Green Book")
CD-Ref4	System Description Compact Disc Read Only Memory eXtended Architecture (CD-ROM XA)
CD-Ref5	Multi-session Compact Disc Specification
CD-Ref6	System Description Recordable Compact Disc Systems, part II: CD-R
CD-Ref7	System Description Recordable Compact Disc Systems, part II: CD-R, Volume 2: Multi-Speed
CD-Ref8	System Description Recordable Compact Disc Systems, part II: CD-R, Volume 3: High Capacity Compact Disc Recordable Disc Systems
CD-Ref9	System Description Recordable Compact Disc Systems, part III: Compact Disc ReWritable (CD-RW)
CD-Ref10	System Description Recordable Compact Disc Systems, part III Volume 2: CD-RW

The following are copyrighted by the DVD Forum and published by DVD Format/Logo Licensing Corporation (for licensing, consult www.dvdfllc.co.jp):

DVD-Ref1	DVD Specification for Read-Only Disc (DVD-ROM), part 1: Physical Specifications, Ver 1.0
DVD-Ref2	DVD Specification for Recordable Disc (DVD-R), part 1: Physical Specifications, Ver 1.0
DVD-Ref3	DVD Specifications for Recordable Disc (DVD-R) for General, part 1: Physical Specifications, Ver 2.1
DVD-Ref4	DVD Specifications for Recordable Disc (DVD-R) for Authoring, part 1: Physical Specifications, Ver 2.0
DVD-Ref5	DVD Specifications for Recordable Disc for Dual Layer (DVD-R for DL) Part one Physical Specifications, Ver 3.0
DVD-Ref6	DVD Specification for Rewritable Disc (DVD-RAM), part 1: Physical Specifications, Ver 2.2
DVD-Ref7	DVD Specification for Re-recordable Disc (DVD-RW), part 1: Physical specifications, Ver 1.2
DVD-Ref8	DVD Multi Specifications, Version 1.1 (available at www.dvdforum.org)
DVD-Ref9	DVD-R for General Optional Specification: DVD-Download Disc for CSS Managed Recording, Revision 1.0
DVD-Ref10	DVD Specifications for DVD-Download Disc for CSS Managed Recording (DVD-Download) Par t 1 PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS Version 1.0 (single layer)
DVD-Ref11	DVD Specifications for DVD-Download Disc for Dual Layer (DVD-Download for DL) Part 1 PHYSICAL SPECIFICATIONS Version 2.0 (dual layer)

The following are published by the DVD Copy Control Association (for availability, consult www.dvdcca.org):

CSS-ref1	CSS License and Procedural Specifications

The following are published by the DVD+RW Alliance (for availability, consult www.licensing.philips.com):

DVD+Ref1	DVD+R 4,7 Gbytes Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.11, December 2002
DVD+Ref2	DVD+RW 4,7 Gbytes Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.2, December 2002
DVD+Ref3	DVD+R 8,5 Gbytes Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.0, March 2004

The following are published by the Blu-ray Disc Founders (for availability, consult www.blu-raydisc.info):

BD-Ref1	System Description Blu-ray Disc Read-only Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.3
BD-Ref2	System Description Blu-ray Disc Recordable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications, Version 1.3
BD-Ref3	System Description Blu-ray Disc Rewritable Format, Part 1: Basic Format Specifications, Version 2.1

The following is published by the Small Form Factor Industry Group (SFF) (for availability, consult www.sffcommittee.org):

Fuji-Ref1	INF-8090i Commands for Multi-Media devices, Version 7, revision 1.11, November 2008

The following is published by the Optical Storage Technology Association (OSTA) (for availability, consult www.osta.org):

UDF-Ref1	Universal Disk Format (UDF), Revision 2.6, March 2005

The following are published by the USB Implementors Forum (for availability, consult www.usb.org):

USB-Ref1	Universal Serial Bus Specification, Revision 2.0
USB-Ref2	Universal Serial Bus Mass Storage Class Bulk-Only Transport

Documents describing the DVD Content Scrambling System (CSS) are published by the DVD Copy Control Association and are available only to licensees. For more information consult www.dvdcca.org.

The following is published by the 4C Entity, LLC. (for licensing, consult www.4Centity.com):

CPRM-Ref1	Content Protection for Recordable Media Specification: Intel, IBM, Matsushita, Toshiba, 2000

The following are published by the Advanced Access Content System Licensing Authority (AACS-LA). For more information consult www.aacsla.org.

AACS-Ref1	Advanced Access Content System: Introduction and Common Cryptographic Elements, Revision 0.95 June 9, 2009
AACS-Ref2	Advanced Access Content System: Pre-recorded Video Book, Revision 0.90 April 14, 2005
AACS-Ref3	Advanced Access Content System: Recordable Video Book, Revision 0.90 April 14, 2005

The following is published by the Serial ATA International Organization (for availability, consult www.sata-io.org):

SATA	Serial ATA, Revision 2.6, February 2007

The following are published by the Trusted Computing Group (for availability, consult www.trustedcomputinggroup.org):

TCG-SIIF	TCG Storage Interface Interactions Specification, Specification Version 1.0, January 27, 2009
TCG-SWGC	TCG Storage Architecture Core Specification, Specification Version 1.0, Revision 0.9 – draft – May 24, 2007
TCG-OSSC	TCG Storage Workgroup Security Subsystem Class: Optical, Specification Version 1.0, 2008 September 25

3 Definitions, Symbols, Abbreviations, and Conventions

3.1 MMC General Terms

3.1.1 Additional Sense Code (ASC)

MM drives return only fixed format sense data as defined in [SPC-3]. In fixed format sense data, the value stored in byte 12 of the fixed format sense data is labeled the Additional Sense Code. In the case of this standard, ASC is part of a 20-bit code: SK/ASC/ASCQ that identifies a specific error or condition.

3.1.2 Additional Sense Code Qualifier (ASCQ)

MM drives return only fixed format sense data as defined in [SPC-3]. In fixed format sense data, byte 13 of the fixed format sense data is labeled the Additional Sense Code Qualifier. In the case of this standard, ASCQ is part of a 20-bit code: SK/ASC/ASCQ that identifies a specific error or condition.

3.1.3 Advanced Access Content System (AACS)

A system for managing content stored on the prerecorded and recorded optical media for consumer use with PCs and consumer electronics devices.

3.1.4 Advanced Encryption Standard (AES)

In cryptography, the Advanced Encryption Standard (AES) is a symmetric block cipher adopted as an encryption standard by the U.S. government. AES is defined in Federal Information Processing Standards Publication 197.

3.1.5 Appendable disc

A recordable/rewritable disc that supports a track/session recording model may be either complete or appendable. An appendable disc is either a disc with no complete sessions or a disc on which a new session may be appended to the last complete session.

3.1.6 AT Attachment (ATA)

AT Attachment defines the physical, electrical, transport, and command protocols for the internal attachment of block storage devices. See [ATA-8].

3.1.7 AT Attachment Packet Interface (ATAPI)

A device that implements the Packet command Feature set as defined in [ATA-8] is referred to as an ATAPI device.

3.1.8 Authentication Grant ID (AGID)

The Authentication Grant ID is a handle used for resource control associated with DRM key management. Individual key management threads may be identified through the use of AGID.

3.1.9 Block (Logical Block)

A block (or logical block) consists of only the user data part of a sector.

3.1.10 Burst Cutting Area (BCA)

The Burst Cutting Area provides a unique physical identification mark for individual DVD or BD media. This area is not directly addressable by the user.

3.1.11 Ceiling Integer Function (CI)

The Ceiling Integer function (CI) is a single floating point argument function whose value is the least integer that is not less than the argument. Examples: CI(7) = 7, CI(-12) = -12, CI(-32.5) = -32, CI(π) = 4.

3.1.12 Certification

Certification is a function defined for the Hardware Defect Management Feature. A Writable Unit is optionally written and then read. Vendor specific rules define a test for the read reliability of the writable unit. If the writable unit fails the test, the writable unit is registered into the hardware defect management system as defective. Otherwise, the writable unit is certified as good.

3.1.13 Challenge

A challenge is a data structure used during an authentication key exchange process.

3.1.14 Command Descriptor Block (CDB)

The structure of 6, 10, or 12 bytes used to communicate commands from a Host to a MM Drive.

3.1.15 Command Packet

Some transports package a SCSI CDB in a fixed size data structure that is used by the transport to communicate commands from a Host to a Drive. This structure is named a command packet.

3.1.16 Complete (Closed) Logical Track
A Logical Track is complete (or closed) when it is no longer permitted to append data to the Logical Track.

3.1.17 Complete (Closed) session
A Complete Session is a session into which the Host is not permitted to write new user data. It may or may not be possible to append an additional session (see Finalized Disc).

3.1.18 De-Icing
Read-only CD and DVD devices are typically able to locate the groove only by the presence of data.

When no data is present, a seek is unable to find a stopping point. In these cases, it is not possible to locate any sector. A seek to any address is likely to result in a continuous "slide" across the media as if it was covered in ice. Writing the entire surface ensures the presence of data and headers. This makes seeking possible. When the media is CD-RW or DVD+RW, the process of writing the entire surface during the format process is called De-Icing.

3.1.19 Defect List (DFL).
Generically, a Defect List exists to map defective writable units to spare writable units.

When a BD-R disc is formatted with the Pseudo-Overwrite capability, the DFL is also used to map replacement Clusters.

3.1.20 Defect Management
Block addressable storage medium may have defects that render some sectors either temporarily or permanently unusable. Defect Management is a mechanism that provides a defect free address space to the Host application.

3.1.21 Direct-overwrite
The process or capability of writing over previously written data without an erase cycle is direct-overwrite.

3.1.22 Disc/Disk
Within this standard, disc (or disk) refers to a single disc (or disk): CD, DVD, or BD.

3.1.23 Disc-At-Once (DAO)
Disc-At-Once recording is a special case of Session-At-Once recording in which the disc contains exactly one session. The actual method of DAO recording varies according to media type.

3.1.24 Double Sided
A medium with two independently addressed sides is named double sided.

3.1.25 Drive
A Drive that operates as a single MM device. e.g. a CD-ROM Drive.

3.1.26 Drive Busy
A Drive is Busy if it is executing some process and is unable to accept new commands. e.g., when the Drive is currently executing a command that had an immediate bit (Immed) set to one in its CDB, it may be unavailable to accept and process all commands.

3.1.27 Dual Layer
A dual layer disc has two separate optically sensitive layers that are accessible from one side of the disc at two different focal depths. This is also sometimes referred to as double layer.

3.1.28 Embossed Area
An Embossed Area is an area on the disc where information has been stored during the disc manufacturing process by means of either a High Frequency Modulated (HFM) Groove or by means of pits and lands.

The recording in an embossed area cannot be modified by a recording device.

3.1.29 Error Correction Code (ECC)
ECC is a general term for any encoding that has the purpose of detecting and correcting errors.

3.1.30 Error Detection Code (EDC)
EDC is a general term for any encoding that has the purpose of detecting data errors.

3.1.31 Feature
A feature is an atomic unit of Drive functionality. A feature associated with a given Drive defines only a small subset of related functionality normally associated with that Drive.

3.1.32 Field
A Field is a group of two or more contiguous bits. Fields containing only one bit are referred to as the “named” bit instead of the “named” field.

3.1.33 Finalized Disc
A disc is finalized when the last session is closed with no possibility of appending a new session.

3.1.34 Floor Integer Function (FI)
The Floor Integer Function (FI) is a single floating point argument function whose value is the greatest integer that is not greater than the argument. Examples: FI(7) = 7, FI(-12) = -12, FI(-32.5) = -33, FI(π) = 3.

3.1.35 Format
As a noun, “format” refers to a well-defined arrangement or layout of information. Within the confines of the MMC, the verb “format” refers to a format operation started by the FORMAT UNIT command.

3.1.36 Full Certification
As a part of the execution of the FORMAT UNIT command on a rewritable disc, the Drive may certify each writable unit in each of the LBA spaces and all spare areas. This is Full Certification.

3.1.37 Groove
Certain recordable disc types contain a wobbled guidance track. This track is also known as the disc's Groove.

3.1.38 Hardware Defect Management
Defect Management that is implemented completely in the drive.

3.1.39 Hex
Hex is an abbreviation for the word hexadecimal. This indicates a binary value represented in base 16. The value may extend across multiple bytes.

3.1.40 Hold Track State
When a MM device enters the hold Track State the optical pick-up is maintained at an approximately constant radial position on the media.

3.1.41 Host
A Host is a SCSI device with the characteristics of a primary computing device, typically a personal computer, workstation, minicomputer, mainframe computer, or auxiliary computing device or server. A Host includes one or more SCSI Host devices.

3.1.42 Incomplete/Invisible Logical Track
On a writable disc that implements a sequential recording model, a Logical Track is Incomplete if:

a) It is open,

b) It has a known start address, and

c) Although its maximum length is limited only by the medium capacity, the Logical Track has no defined length.

If the append point (NWA) of the Incomplete Logical Track is equal to its start address (i.e. the Logical Track is blank), the Logical Track is Invisible.

A writable disc has at most one Invisible/Incomplete Logical Track.

3.1.43 Incomplete session
An Incomplete Session is a session into which the Host is permitted to write new user data.

3.1.44 Last Recorded Address (LRA)
The LBA of the last recorded sector containing user data in a logical track is the Last Recorded Address.

3.1.45 Layer
The recorded information is in layers as seen from one side of a disc. There are single and dual layer discs.

3.1.46 Lead-in
The Lead-in on a MM disc is an initial part of the spiral that provides for outer to inner radius seek overshoot protection. On dual layer discs, the Lead-in is always at the inner radius of its residence layer. The data content within the Lead-in is different for different disc types.

3.1.47 Lead-out
The Lead-out on single layer and PTP dual layer MM discs is the final part of the spiral that provides for inner to outer radius seek overshoot protection. The data content within the Lead-out typically contains no unique information.

The Lead-out on an OTP dual layer MM disc is the final part of the spiral that provides for outer to inner radius seek overshoot protection on layer 1.

3.1.48 Logical Block
The Host addressable units of data are named Logical Blocks.

3.1.49 Logical Block Address (LBA)
The LBA is the number that a Host uses to reference Logical Blocks on a block storage device.

3.1.50 Logical Sector Number (LSN)
A sector's LBA is referred to as LSN in some references.

3.1.51 Logical Track
Logical Track is a generic term for a logical subdivision of the address space of an optical media. The set of LBAs in a Logical Track is a set of disjoint sets of consecutive LBAs. In most cases a Logical Track contains exactly one set of consecutive LBAs.

On CD media a Logical Track is a track.

On DVD-R/-RW media a Logical Track is a RZone.

On DVD+R media a Logical Track is a Fragment.

On BD-R media in SRM a Logical Track is an SRR.

The Logical Track is typically useful in sequential recording models. For all other media types/formats where the use of the Logical Track is not defined, the entire LBA space of the media is viewed as a single Logical Track.

3.1.52 Drive Number (LUN)
The LUN is the address of a Drive via a target.

3.1.53 Magazine
This is a term for multiple disc unit/container.

3.1.54 Medium
Within this publication, medium refers to a single disc: CD, DVD, or BD.

3.1.55 Middle Area
The middle area is a transition zone at the outer radius of each layer of an OTP dual layer MM disc. The middle area 0 is the area the follows data zone 0 and middle area 1 is the area that follows data zone 1.

3.1.56 Next Writable Address
At the written/unwritten boundary of a logical track, the LBA of the first unwritten sector is the Next Writable Address. When the logical track is blank, the NWA is LBA of the first sector of the logical track.

3.1.57 Optimum Power Calibration (OPC)
OPC is a procedure performed by an optical storage device to calibrate laser power. Values from this calibration are used for subsequent write operations.

3.1.58 Opposite Track Path (OTP)
An opposite track path disc is dual layer disc. The Layer 0 groove begins at the inner radius with a Lead in, followed by a data zone, and finishes with a Middle area. The Layer 1 groove begins at the outer radius with a Middle area, followed by a data zone, and finishes with a Lead-out.

3.1.59 Parallel Track Path (PTP)
A parallel track path disc is a dual layer disc that has a Lead-in, user area and Lead-out in each layer respectively. The physical sector number in each layer increases to its respective Lead-out in parallel.

3.1.60 Physical Sector Number (PSN)
Each physical address space of each media type has a media specific physical sector numbering system such that each sector is numbered and the number for a given sector is unique.

3.1.61 Profile
A profile is a collection of features. The profile is a well-defined way of describing the overall capabilities of a specific Drive. More complex Drives may exhibit more than one profile.

3.1.62 Sector
In case of CD media, “Sector” refers to the data contained in one CD frame. In the CD-ROM standard (ISO/IEC 10149) the term block is used for this unit.

In the case of DVD media, Sector is the smallest user addressable part of the media. The user data contained within a sector is 2 048 bytes.

A BD sector contains control information, one logical block, and logical block EDC. The user data contained within a sector is 2 048 bytes.

3.1.63 Sense Key (SK)
MM drives return only fixed format sense data as defined in [SPC-3]. In fixed format sense data, the 4-bit value stored in bits 3 - 0 of byte 2 of the fixed format sense data is labeled the Sense Key. In the case of this standard, SK is part of a 20-bit code: SK/ASC/ASCQ that identifies a specific error or condition.

3.1.64 Sequential Recording
A sequential recording according to the Track/Session model refers to recording that follows only the NWA (Next Writable Address) as provided by the Drive. The sequence of NWAs is often, but is not required to be a single set of consecutive LBAs.

3.1.65 Session
A session is a contiguous area of a CD, DVD, or BD Disc into which data may be recorded. Typically, a session is a collection of Logical Tracks with contiguous track numbers.

3.1.66 Session-At-Once (SAO)
Session-At-Once is a method of recording that permits reading a partially recorded disc in a read-only device. When space and format permits, additional sessions may be appended to previously recorded sessions. The actual method of SAO recording varies according to media type.

3.1.67 Single Sided
A single sided disc has exactly one recorded or recordable side.

3.1.68 Software Defect Management
Defect Management in which the defect list is managed by the host.

3.1.69 Timely, Safe Recording (TSR)
TSR is a method that the Host may use to identify defective LBAs and control the timing of replacements by the Drive's Defect Management system.

3.1.70 UDF (Universal Disk Format)
The description of a file system designed for MM recordable discs and based upon the ECMA 167, June 1997 (see also ISO/IEC 13346:1995).

3.1.71 Uninterrupted Recording
Also known as Disc-At-Once (DAO) recording, uninterrupted recording is performed without any linkage sequence. This is only possible when an entire disc is recorded in a single write stream.

3.1.72 Writable Unit
A writable media has a minimum physically writable amount of data. When expressed as an integral number of logical blocks, this is a writable unit. The writable unit is an ECC block on DVD and a Cluster on BD.

3.1.73 Write Once
Some media has the restriction that it may be written exactly once. Such media is referred to a “Write Once”.

3.1.74 Write-Verify
As a part of a writing process, any method that verifies that it is possible to recover written data is a Write-Verify process. Typically, a Drive performs Write-Verify on a writable unit as a part of the writing process by reading the writable unit after it has been written. The Write-Verify scheduling of writing and reading is vendor specific and is transparent to the Host. For certain media types, it is possible to verify the written data during the write process. In such cases, a separate read pass is not required. The Write-Verify method employed for each media type is vendor specific.

3.1.75 Zone
A zone is a physically contiguous region of a disc spiral. The Information Zone of a dual layer disc in OTP is considered physically contiguous.

3.2 CD Specific Terms

3.2.1 Absolute Time In Pre-groove (ATIP)
Address and recording information that is encoded in the wobble groove on CD-R/RW is named the Absolute time in pre-groove.

3.2.2 Binary Coded Decimal (BCD)
When a 4-bit entity is permitted to contain only values 0, 1, 2, ..., 9, the representation is Binary Coded Decimal. A byte using BCD representation contains two BCD digits. The high order decimal digit occupies bits 7 through 4 of the byte, while the low order decimal digit occupies the bits 3 through 0 of the byte. Only non-negative values may be represented.

3.2.3 C1, C2, C3
There are potentially 3 layers of error correction on CD media. CIRC contains two layers known as C1 and C2. C2 is layered on C1. When a sector is encoded as either mode 1 data or mode 2, form 1 data, there is a third layer of correction named C3.

3.2.4 CD-Text
A method for storing text information in the Lead-in and data areas of a CD-DA disc is named CD-Text.

3.2.5 Compact Disc – Recordable/Rewritable (CD-R/RW)
This designates CD-R, CD-RW, or both.

3.2.6 Compact Disc (CD)
CD is a family of related optical storage media.

3.2.7 Compact Disc – Digital Audio (CD-DA)
The format for storing digital audio information on CD is referred to as Compact Disc – Digital Audio. See [IEC 908:1987].

3.2.8 Compact Disc – Read Only Memory (CD-ROM)
Formats for storing digital data on CD is referred to as Compact Disc – Read Only Memory. See [ISO/IEC 10149:1995].

3.2.9 Compact Disc – Recordable (CD-R)
A CD that is able to be written only once is named Compact Disc – Recordable.

3.2.10 Compact Disc ReWritable (CD-RW)
A CD that is able to be re-written is named Compact Disc ReWritable.

3.2.11 control field
The control field is a 4-bit field in the Q Sub-channel data on CD media indicating the type of information encoded on the current track. The information includes: audio/data, the type of audio encoding, etc.

3.2.12 Cross Interleaved Reed-Solomon Code (CIRC)
The error detection and correction technique used on all CD formats is CIRC. This is sometimes referred to as correction layer 1 (C1) and correction layer 2 (C2).

3.2.13 data mode
One byte of the header of a CD data sector contains the data mode. This indicates if data is present and if layered error correction information is present.

3.2.14 European Article Number (EAN)
EAN is a standard number registering system for CD media, controlled by the EAN International located at 145 rue Royale B, 1000 Brussels, Belgium. See also the definitions for MCN and UPC.

3.2.15 Fixed Packet Track
A fixed packet track is a CD track that contains only fixed length packets in its data area.

3.2.16 Frame
A CD frame is a physical CD sector. The F field unit of a MSF CD address is the frame field. For the Host, this is the smallest addressable unit on CD media.

3.2.17 Incremental Recording
Incremental recording on CD is any recording that requires a linkage sequence in the data stream. Packet, Track-At-Once (TAO), and Session-At-Once (SAO) recording are all incremental. Incremental recording is also used as a track relative term. TAO tracks are recorded uninterrupted, whereas tracks recorded in packets are recorded incrementally. This is reflected in the CONTROL field of mode 1 Q sub-channel.

3.2.18 Index
CD-DA discs may have sub-divisions of tracks identified by an index that varies from 00bcd through 99bcd. The index is recorded in the Q sub-channel of each sector of the track.

3.2.19 Layered Error Correction (L-EC)
L-EC is another name for C3 error correction. See C1, C2, C3.

3.2.20 Media Catalog Number (MCN)
This 13 BCD number is found in CD sub-channel in at least one out of every one hundred consecutive CD frames. The number is typically registered with a public or private service. See also the definitions for EAN and UPC.

3.2.21 Method 1 Addressing
For all CD media, method 1 addressing is a linearization of MSF addresses. If absolute location MSF is in the program area, then LBA = 4 500*M + 75*S + F – 150. Method 1 logical sector numbering is not defined for sectors outside of the program area.

3.2.22 Method 2 Addressing
For CD-R and CD-RW media, method 2 addressing is defined for the logical numbering of sectors on a fixed packet written disk. Link, run-in, and run-out blocks are ignored in the logical sector numbering.

3.2.23 Minute, Second, Frame address (MSF)
The physical address expressed as a sector count relative to either the beginning of the medium (absolute) or to the beginning of the current track (relative). As defined by the CD standards, each F field unit is one sector; each S field unit is 75 F field units; each M field unit is 60 S field units. Valid contents of F fields are binary values from 0 through 74. Valid contents of S fields are binary values from 0 through 59. Valid contents of M fields are binary values from 0 through 79.

3.2.24 Orange Book
The term “Orange Book” refers to any one of a collection of documents from Philips Electronics that describe recordable and rewritable CD systems and media: [CD-Ref7], [CD-Ref8], [CD-Ref9], and [CD-Ref10].

3.2.25 Packet
A packet on CD media is a set of recorded link, run-in, data, and run-out blocks.

3.2.26 packet size
On CD media the number of Data Blocks in a packet is the packet size.

3.2.27 packet track
A packet track is a CD track written as a concatenation of a pre-gap, written as one or two packets, followed by some non-zero number of user packets.

3.2.28 post-gap
The post-gap is a transition area located at the end of a CD track.

3.2.29 pre-gap
The pre-gap is a transition area located at the beginning of a CD track.

3.2.30 Program Area
The program area is the logical address space in a CD session.

3.2.31 Program Memory Area (PMA)
The PMA contains information about the recordings on a CD-R/RW disc.

3.2.32 Red Book
The term “Red Book” refers to the document: [CD-Ref1]. [IEC 908:1987] is the preferred reference.

3.2.33 relative MSF field
See MSF address definition.

3.2.34 Sub-channel
CD media have a main channel and a Sub-channel. The Sub-channel area has eight parts called P, Q, R, S, T, U, V, and W. The Q Sub-channel contains information useful to the controller and Drive, such as the control field and MSF address. The data rate of each Sub-channel (P, Q, etc.) is 1/192nd of that of the main channel.

3.2.35 Table of Contents (TOC)
On CD media, the TOC has information on the type of session and the starting address of the tracks. This information is encoded in the Q Sub-channel in each Lead-in area.

3.2.36 Track
Track refers to a Logical Track on CD media. Track is a historical term that is often used interchangeably with Logical Track. See Logical Track.

3.2.37 Track at Once (TAO)
On CD-R/RW media when a track, including its pre-gap, is written as a single packet, the track is said to be recorded track at once (TAO).

3.2.38 Track Descriptor Block (TDB)
On CD-R/RW media, the TDB contains information on the attributes of the current track.

3.2.39 Transition area
For CD, a transition area is a sequence of sectors at the beginning or end of tracks e.g. Pause Area, Pre-Gap, Lead-out, Post-Gap.

3.2.40 Uniform Product Code (UPC)
UPC is controlled by the UC Council, Inc., located at 1009 Lenox Drive, Suite 202 Lawrenceville, NJ 08648. See the definitions for AEN and MCN.

3.2.41 Yellow book
The term “Yellow Book” refers to the Philips Electronics document: Compact Disc Read Only Memory. The preferred reference is ISO/IEC 10149, Information Technology-Data Interchange on Read-only 120 mm Optical Data Discs (CD-ROM).

3.3 DVD Specific Terms

3.3.1 Address In Pre-groove (ADIP)
Address and recording information encoded in the wobble pre-groove on DVD+R/+RW is named the Address in pre-groove (ADIP).

3.3.2 Block Sync Guard Area (BSGA)
On DVD-R/-RW an ECC block is recorded following a consecutive recording sequence to ensure readability of subsequent ECC blocks.

3.3.3 Border recording
Border recording is the DVD-R equivalent of multi-session recording.

3.3.4 Bordered Area
A Bordered Area is a contiguous area of a disc that contains user data that is located between Lead-in/Border-in Area and Lead-out/Border-out Area.

3.3.5 Border-in Area
A Border-in Area is the area that contains the pointer to the next Border Zone and is located immediately following Border-out.

3.3.6 Border-out Area
The area that follows each Bordered Area and contains the latest RMD copies and so on. This area is used to avoid pickup overrunning for DVD Drives.

3.3.7 Border Zone
Border Zone is the border-out of "Session" N and the border-in of "session N+1". The Bordered Area is the part in the middle.

3.3.8 Content Protection for Prerecorded Media (CPPM)
CPPM is a system for protecting DVD-Audio content on DVD-ROM media

3.3.9 Content Protection for Recordable Media (CPRM)
CPRM is a system for protecting audio-visual content on recordable DVD media.

3.3.10 Content Scrambling System (CSS)
CSS is an encryption system for content protection of DVD-ROM mastered for video applications.

3.3.11 Control Data Zone
The Control data zone is a structure recorded in the Lead-in area of a DVD discs that contains information concerning structure of the disc.

The DVD Control Data Zone is comprised of 192 ECC blocks in the System Lead-in Area of a DVD disc. The content of the 16 sectors in each ECC block is repeated 192 times.

3.3.12 DVD
DVD is a family of related optical storage media and Drives.

3.3.13 DVD+R (DVD plus Recordable)
DVD+R is a wobble groove based DVD medium that is write-once.

3.3.14 DVD+RW (DVD ReWritable)
DVD+RW is a wobble groove based DVD media that is rewritable.

3.3.15 DVD-R (DVD Recordable)
DVD-R is a wobble groove based DVD medium that is write-once. This is also known as DVD-R for General.

3.3.16 DVD-RAM (DVD-Random Access Memory)
DVD -RAM is rewritable DVD media. A DVD -RAM spiral has stamped headers, thereby negating the need for full format.

3.3.17 DVD-ROM (DVD-Read Only Memory)
DVD-Read Only Memory (DVD-ROM) is a standard medium defined by the “DVD -Book” for recording digital data, including Digital Video Movie data.

3.3.18 DVD-RW (DVD Re-recordable)
DVD-RW is a wobble groove based DVD media that is rewritable.

3.3.19 DVD-Video
DVD-Video is a DVD format defined for video applications as specified in the DVD Books.

3.3.20 Disc Key
The Disc Key is a general reference to a cryptographic key that exists for the protection of disc content. The exact meaning is specific to the content protection type.

3.3.21 Disc Manufacturing Information
The Disc Manufacturing Information is recorded in the Control Data Zone and contains information supplied by the disc manufacturer.

3.3.22 ECC Block
The DVD ECC block is 16 data sectors and a layered product error correction code.

3.3.23 Fragment
Fragment refers to a Logical Track on DVD+R media. See Logical Track.

3.3.24 Identification Data (ID)
The data ID field of a DVD sector is a 4-byte field that contains sector information and a physical sector number.

3.3.25 ID Error Detection (IED)
The IED is an EDC for detecting errors in an ID field on DVD media.

3.3.26 Layer Jump Address
The Layer Jump Address is the LBA on layer x (x = 0 or 1) that causes the NWA to transition to layer y (y ≠ x) in a logical track (RZone) during Layer Jump Recording.

3.3.27 Layer Jump Recording
Layer Jump Recording is a recording method that alternately records on each layer of a dual layer media for the purpose of consuming blank media radially rather than linearly.

3.3.28 Regional Playback Control (RPC)
RPC limits the playback of DVD-Video content on DVD-ROM discs to specific regions of the world.

3.3.29 Region Code
The region code is used to identify one or more regions of the world for use by RPC.

3.3.30 Recording Management Area (RMA)
RMA is an area for recording RMD. This area starts right after the PCA and it ends at the start of the Lead-in.

3.3.31 Recording Management Data (RMD)
RMD is the data to be stored in RMA/RMZ/RDZ.

3.3.32 Recording management zone (RMZ)
RMZ is the zone for recording RMD. Three kinds of RMZ formats are defined, L-RMZ (RMZ in Lead-in area), B-RMZ (RMZ in Border-in area) and U-RMZ (RMZ in User Data Area).

3.3.33 RZone
RZone refers to a Logical Track on DVD-R, and DVD-RW media. The RZone is a collection of logical blocks with a defined sequence of recording. The RZone is a structure to manage a data appendable point. See the definition for Logical Track.

3.3.34 Title Key
A Title Key is a generalized term for a value used during the encryption/decryption process of user data. A Title Key is specific to a copyright protection mechanism, e.g. CSS, AACS.

3.4 BD Specific Terms

3.4.1 Address In Pre-groove (ADIP)
Address and recording information encoded in the wobble pre-groove on BD-R/RE is named the Address in pre-groove (ADIP).

3.4.2 Blu-ray Disc (BD)
Blu-ray Disc is a family of related optical storage media and drives.

3.4.3 Blu-ray Disc – Recordable (BD-R)
BD-R disc is a BD disc that is write once in increments of 65 536 bytes.

3.4.4 Blu-ray Disc – Rewritable (BD-RE)
BD-RE disc is a BD disc that is Rewritable.

3.4.5 Blu-ray Disc – Read-only Memory (BD-ROM)
A BD-ROM disc is a read-only BD disc.

3.4.6 Cluster
A BD Cluster contains 32 logical sectors. The data of these 32 sectors are interleaved, scrambled, and EDC and ECC symbols are attached.

3.4.7 Disc Definition Structure (DDS)
The DDS is contained within a sector of the DMS. The DDS contains basic format information about the disc, e.g. the physical location of LSN 0, the physical location of the last LSN, and the sizes of the spare areas. On BD-R, the DDS also contains recording mode and TDMA information.

3.4.8 Disc/Defect Management Structure (DMS)
The DMS contains structures that define the disc format and that are necessary for defect management. On BD-R there are two kinds of Disc Management Structures:

1. The Temporary Disc Management Structures (TDMS), recorded in the TDMA Areas as long as the disc has not been closed.
2. Disc Management Structures (DMS), recorded in the DMA Areas when a disc is closed (to preserve all Disc Management information contained in the last Temporary Disc Management Structure).

On BD-RE the Defect Management Structure is written and updated in the DMAs of the inner and outer zones.

3.4.9 Inner Spare Area (ISA0, ISA1)
When defect management is used on BD-R or BD-RE, a spare area may be allocated in the inner radius of each layer. Each of these areas is an Inner Spare Area (ISA). The ISA on layer 0 is referenced as ISA0, while the ISA on layer 1 is referenced as ISA1.

3.4.10 Logical Overwrite (LOW)
LOW is defined in [BD-Ref2] as the physical description of Pseudo-Overwrite. See the Pseudo-Overwrite definition.

3.4.11 Orphan LBA(s)
When a POW is processed, the relocation occurs at the NWA, N of some SRR, T. After the POW process, the NWA is now N+32*K, where K is the number of POWed Clusters. LBAs N, N+1, ..., N+32*K-1 cannot be used in the next appending write to T. Consequently, these LBAs may be used only by additional POW operations. However, since there is not previous data to replace, these LBAs are Orphans.

3.4.12 Outer Spare Area (OSA0, OSA1)
When defect management is used on BD-R or BD-RE, a spare area may be allocated in the outer radius of each layer. Each of these areas is an Outer Spare Area (OSA). The OSA on layer 0 is referenced as OSA0, while the OSA on layer 1 is referenced as OSA1.

3.4.13 Permanent Information & Control data (PIC) Area
This zone contains general information about the disc. The PIC is embossed on all disc types.

3.4.14 Pseudo-Overwrite (POW)
By using the Linear Replacement algorithm of the BD-R system, overwriting of a recorded Cluster is allowed. POW replacements are taken from the user data area and mapped using DFL. (POW is only defined for SRM formatted BD-R discs.)

3.4.15 Quick Certification
If a FORMAT UNIT command is issued by the Host for a BD-RE disc that was previously formatted, then the requested process is a reformat. Before starting the reformat, the DFL contains a list of Clusters that have been determined to be defective. As a part of the execution of the FORMAT UNIT command that is requesting a reformat, the Drive may certify only Clusters registered in the DFL as defective. Since this process requires significantly less execution time than Full Certification, it is called Quick Certification.

3.4.16 Quick Reformat
If a FORMAT UNIT command is issued by the Host for a BD-RE disc that was previously formatted, then the requested process is a reformat. Before starting the reformat, the DFL contains a list of Clusters that have been determined to be defective.

If a FORMAT UNIT command requests a quick reformat, the Drive shall edit the information for each registered defective Cluster on the disc to a re-usable Cluster status and perform no certification. The Drive shall certify a Cluster that is registered as re-usable only when executing a non-streamed write. Since it is possible to process a reformat faster than with Quick Certification, this process is called Quick Reformat.

3.4.17 Random Recording Mode (RRM)
In the BD-R Random Recording Mode, data may be randomly written at every unrecorded Cluster.

3.4.18 Sequential Recording Mode (SRM)
Sequential Recording Mode is defined for BD-R to implement the generalized track/session model defined by MMC for implementation of the Incremental Streaming Writable Feature.

3.4.19 Sequential Recording Range (SRR)
Sequential Recording Range (SRR) is the physical definition of Logical Track for a BD-R in SRM.

3.4.20 Sequential Recording Range Information (SRRI)
Information about the location and status of all SRRs is stored in the Sequential Recording Range Information (SRRI) structures. While the disc is not finalized, the SRRI shall be recorded in the Temporary Disc Management Areas (TDMAs). At finalization, the most recent version of the SRRI is recorded in the Disc Management Area (DMA).

3.4.21 Space Bit Map (SBM)
A Space Bit Map specifies the recording status for a Recording Layer a BD-R disc formatted in Random Recording Mode (RRM).

3.4.22 SRM+POW
A BD-R disc has the SRM+POW status when it has been formatted in Sequential Recording Mode with the POW feature enabled.

3.4.23 SRM-POW
A BD-R disc has the SRM-POW status when it has been formatted in Sequential Recording Mode with the POW feature disabled.

3.4.24 Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA)
On BD-R, the defect management and recording management information needs to be updated many times during use. For this purpose special areas are available in the Lead-in/Lead-out Area called the Temporary Disc Management Area. Additional TDMAs may be defined within spare areas.

3.4.25 Temporary Disc Management Structure (TDMS)
On BD-R, the Temporary Disc Management Structure (TDMS) is a version of the DMS recorded in a TDMA. The TDMS consists of the following three elements depending on the recording mode.

For sequential recording mode the TDMS consists of:

1. Temporary Disc Definition Structure (TDDS),
2. Temporary Defect List (TDFL),
3. Sequential Recording Range Information (SRRI).

For random recording mode the TDMS consists of:

1. Temporary Disc Definition Structure (TDDS),
2. Temporary Defect List (TDFL),
3. Space Bit Maps (SBM).

3.5 Abbreviations and Acronyms

AACS	Advanced Access Content System
ADIP	Address In Pre-groove
AES	Advanced Encryption Standard
AGID	Authentication Grant ID
ASC	Additional Sense Code
ASCQ	Additional Sense Code Qualifier
ASF	Authentication Success Flag
ATA	AT Attachment
ATAPI	AT Attachment Packet Interface
ATIP	Absolute Time In Pre-groove
BD	Blu-ray Disc
BD-R	Blu-ray Disc Recordable
BD-RE	Blu-ray Disc Rewritable
BD-ROM	Blu-ray Disc Read-only Memory
BCA	Burst Cutting Area
BCD	Binary Coded Decimal
BG	Background
CDB	Command Descriptor Block
CD	Compact Disc
CDZ	Control Data Zone (on DVD media)
CD-DA	CD – Digital Audio
CD-R	CD – Recordable
CD-ROM	CD – Read Only Memory
CD-R/RW	a CD-R, a CD-RW, or both
CD-RW	CD ReWritable
CPPM	Content Protection for Prerecorded Media
CPRM	Content Protection for Recordable Media
CI	Ceiling Integer
CIRC	Cross Interleaved Reed-Solomon Code
CSS	Content Scrambling System
DA	Data Area
DBI	Defective Block Information
DVD	Digital Versatile Disc
DVD-R	DVD-Recordable
DVD-R DL	DVD-R Dual Layer
DVD-RW	DVD-Re-recordable
DVD-R/-RW	DVD-R, DVD-RW or both
DVD-RAM	DVD-Random Access Memory
DVD-ROM	DVD-Read Only Memory
DVD+R	DVD+Recordable
DVD+R DL	DVD+R Dual Layer

DVD+RW	DVD+ReWritable
DVD+R/+RW	DVD+R, DVD+RW or both
DZ	Data Zone
EAN	European Article Number
ECC	Error Correction Code
EDC	Error Detection Code
FI	Floor Integer
ID	Identification Data
IED	ID Error Detection
ISAx	Inner Spare Area, layer x
L-EC	Layered Error Correction
LBA	Logical Block Address
LRA	Last Recorded Address
LSB	Least Significant Bit
LUN	Drive Number
MCN	Media Catalog Number
MDT	Main Defect Table
MIP	Main Information Packet
MM	Multi-Media
MSB	Most Significant Bit
MSF	Minute/Second/Frame
NWA	Next Writable Address
OPC	Optimum Power Calibration
OSAx	Outer Spare Area, layer x
OSSC	Optical Security Subsystem Class
OTP	Opposite Track Path
PC	Personal Computer
PIC	Permanent Information & Control
PTP	Parallel Track Path
PMA	Program Memory Area
PSN	Physical Number
RMA	Recording Management Area
RMD	Recording Management Data
RMZ	Recording Management Zone
RPC	Region Playback Control
SIP	Secondary Information Packet
SK	Sense Key
TOC	Table of Contents
TAO	Track at Once
TCG	Trusted Computing Group
TDB	Track Descriptor Block
TSR	Timely, Safe Recording

UDF	Universal Disk Format
UPC	Uniform Product Code

3.6 Keywords

3.6.1 expected

A keyword used to describe the behavior of the hardware or software in the design models assumed by this standard. Other hardware and software design models may also be implemented.

3.6.2 legacy

Bits, bytes, fields, and code values that have been defined in previous standards but have been replaced by preferred methods in this standard may be considered obsolete. If the method has a long- standing history of use, then obsoleting the method may be detrimental to many users and should then be defined as legacy rather than obsolete.

Hosts should not use legacy commands or mode pages. Devices conforming to this standard should not support commands or mode pages defined as legacy in previous standards.

Legacy methods do not appear in the main body of this or subsequent standards. Legacy methods that are considered important are specified in an informative annex of this standard. Devices implementing legacy commands or mode pages shall implement them according to the most recent and appropriate standard that carries a definition.

3.6.3 mandatory

“Mandatory” is a keyword indicating items required to be implemented as defined by this standard.

3.6.4 may

May indicates flexibility of choice with no implied preference (equivalent to “may or may not”).

3.6.5 may not

May not indicates flexibility of choice with no implied preference (equivalent to “may or may not”).

3.6.6 obsolete

A keyword used to describe bits, bytes, fields, and code values that have been defined in prior standards but has been removed from this standard.

Devices conforming to this standard should not support commands or mode pages defined as obsolete in previous standards. Devices implementing obsolete commands or mode pages shall implement them according to the most recent and appropriate standard that carries a definition.

If obsolete bits, bytes, fields, or code values are not implemented, their value shall be reserved.

3.6.7 optional

“Optional” is a keyword that describes Features that is not required for compliance to this standard. However, if any optional Feature defined is implemented, it shall be implemented as defined by this standard.

3.6.8 reserved

“Reserved” is a keyword referring to bits, bytes, words, fields and code values that are set aside for future standardization. A reserved bit, byte, word or field shall be set to zero, or in accordance with a future extension to this standard. Recipients are not required to check reserved bits, bytes, words or fields for zero values. Receipt of reserved code values in defined fields shall be reported as error.

3.6.9 Restricted

Restricted is a keyword referring to bits, bytes, words, and fields that are set aside for use in other SCSI standards. A restricted bit, byte, word, or field shall be treated as a reserved bit, byte, word or field for the purposes of the requirements defined in this standard.

3.6.10 shall

“Shall” is a keyword indicating a mandatory requirement. Designers are required to implement all such mandatory requirements to ensure interoperability with other standard conforming products.

3.6.11 should

“Should” is a keyword indicating flexibility of choice with a strongly preferred alternative. “Should” is equivalent to the phrase “it is recommended.”

3.7 Conventions

Various conventions are used through out this standard and are identified in this sub-clause.

Certain words and terms used in this standard have a specific meaning beyond the normal English meaning. These words and terms are defined either in 3.1, 3.2, 3.3, 3.4 or in the text where they first appear. Names of commands, statuses, sense keys, and additional sense codes are in all uppercase (e.g., REQUEST SENSE). Lowercase is used for words having the normal English meaning.

If there is more than one CDB length for a particular command (e.g., MODE SENSE(6) and MODE SENSE(10)) and the name of the command is used in a sentence without any CDB length descriptor (e.g., MODE SENSE), then the condition specified in the sentence applies to all CDB lengths for that command.

The names of fields are in title case (e.g., Allocation Length). Normal case is used when the contents of a field are being discussed. Fields containing only one bit are usually referred to as the name bit instead of the name field.

A binary number is represented in this standard by any sequence of digits comprised of only the Western-Arabic numerals 0 and 1 immediately followed by a lower-case b (e.g., 0101b).

A hexadecimal number is represented in this standard by any sequence of digits comprised of only the Western-Arabic numerals 0 through 9 and/or the upper-case English letters A through F immediately followed by a lower-case h (e.g., FA23h).

A decimal number is represented in this standard by any sequence of digits comprised of only the Western-Arabic numerals 0 through 9 not immediately followed by a lower-case b or lower-case h (e.g., 25).

The decimal separator (i.e., separating the integer and fractional portions of the number) is a period.

Spaces are used to separate groups of three digits on either side of the decimal separator. A value less than 1 is written with a zero preceding the decimal separator.

The nomenclature used for multiplier values in this standard is shown in Table 1.

Table 1 — Representation of Multiplier Values

Multiplier Abbreviation	Multiplier Value	Nomenclature
k	10^3 = 1 000	xxx k = xxx multiplied by 1 000
K	2^{10} = 1 024	xxx K = xxx multiplied by 1 024
m	10^6 = 1 000 000	xxx m = xxx multiplied by 1 000 000
M	2^{20} = 1 048 576	xxx M = xxx multiplied by 1 048 576
g or G	10^9 = 1 000 000 000	xxx G = xxx multiplied by 1 000 000 000

When the value of a bit or field is not relevant, x or xx appears in place of the specific value.

Lists sequenced by letters (e.g., a-red, b-blue, c-green) show no priority relationship between the listed items.

Numbered lists (e.g., 1-red, 2-blue, 3-green) show a priority ordering between the listed items. If a conflict arises between text, tables, or figures, the order of precedence to resolve the conflicts is text; then tables; and finally figures. Not all tables or figures are fully described in the text. Tables show data format and values.

Notes do not constitute any requirements for implementers.

Recommended error code tables defined within each command sub-clause uses the following:

Errors shown in mixed case indicate all errors, in that class, are valid.
Errors shown in uppercase refer to the identified specific error condition.

The string SK/ASC/ASCQ refers to the low order 4 bits of byte 2, byte 12, and byte 13 in the referenced Drive's fixed format sense data. SK/ASC/ASCQ is used interchangeably with the names associated with the coded values in those sense bytes. In this standard, the numeric SK value may be replaced by its equivalent text. The numeric values of ASC and ASCQ are typically replaced by a single text phrase. e.g., when the numeric values for SK/ASC/ASCQ are 03h/11h/05h, the text replacements are MEDIUM ERROR/L-EC UNCORRECTABLE ERROR.

Formulae appear in italics.

3.8 Bit and byte ordering

This sub-clause describes the representation of fields in a table that defines the format of a SCSI structure (e.g., the format of a CDB).

If a field consists of more than one bit and contains a single value (e.g., a number), the least significant bit (LSB) is shown on the right and the most significant bit (MSB) is shown on the left (e.g., in a byte, bit 7 is the MSB and is shown on the left; and bit 0 is the LSB and is shown on the right). The MSB and LSB are not labeled if the field consists of 8 or fewer bits.

If a field consists of more than one byte and contains a single value, the byte containing the MSB is stored at the lowest address and the byte containing the LSB is stored at the highest address (i.e., big-endian byte ordering). The MSB and LSB are labeled.

If a field consists of more than one byte and contains multiple fields each with their own values (e.g., a descriptor), there is no MSB and LSB of the field itself and thus there are no MSB and LSB labels. Each individual field has an MSB and LSB that are labeled as appropriate in the table (if any) that describes the format of the sub-structure having multiple fields.

If a field contains a text string (e.g., [ASCII]), the MSB label is the MSB of the first character and the LSB label is the LSB of the last character.

When required for clarity, multiple byte fields may be represented with only two rows in a table. This condition is represented by values in the byte number column not increasing by one in each subsequent table row, thus indicating the presence of additional bytes.

3.9 Notation conventions

When this standard requires one or more bytes to contain specific encoded character, the specific characters are enclosed in double quotation marks. The double quotation marks identify the start and end of the characters that are required to be encoded but are not themselves to encoded. The characters that are to be encoded are shown in exactly the case that is to be encoded.

The encoded characters and the double quotation marks that enclose them are preceded by text that specifies the character encoding methodology and the number of characters required to be encoded.

Using the notation described in this sub-clause, stating that eleven [ASCII] characters "SCSI device" are to be encoded is the same writing out the following sequence of byte values: 53h 43h 53h 49h 20h 64h 65h 76h 69h 63h 65h.

4 Multi-media Device Models

4.1 General

4.1.1 Overview

A multi-media (MM) device is defined primarily by the media it supports: CD, DVD, BD and each sub-case: read-only, recordable, rewritable. Additionally, the devices are defined by specific capabilities associated with each media type.

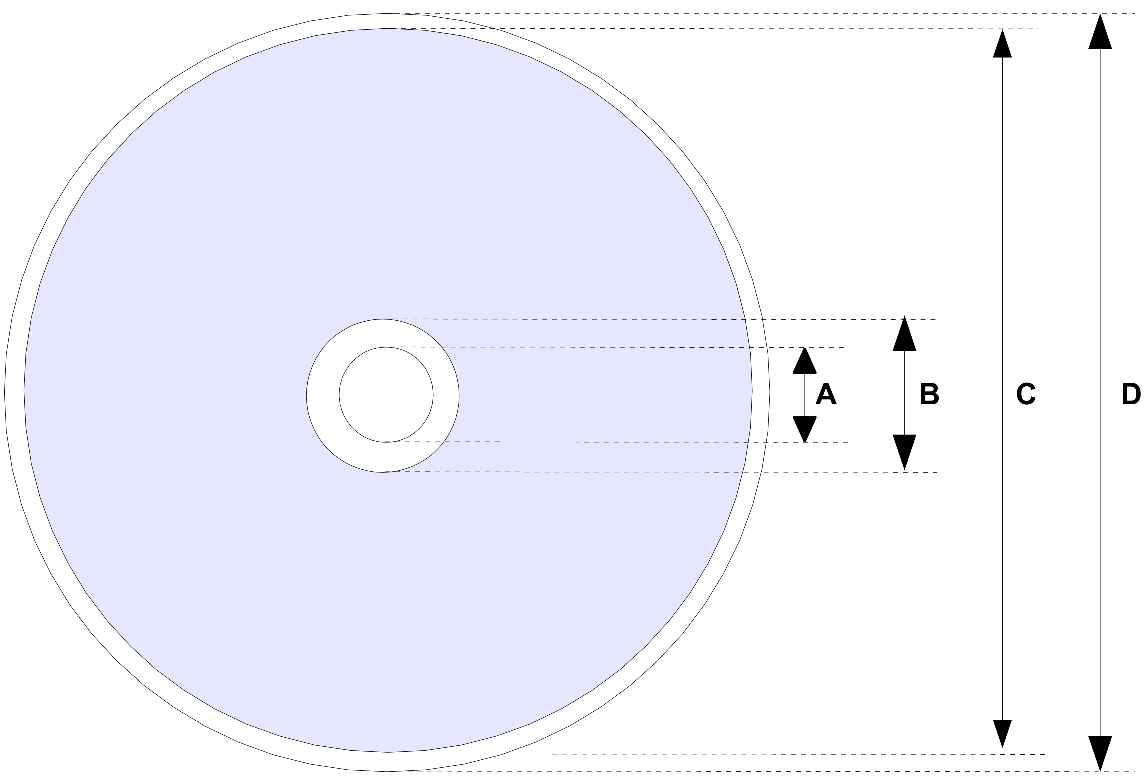
Each MM disc type is removable. MM devices may also carry additional capabilities such as integrated media changers.

4.1.2 Common Physical Media Structure

4.1.2.1 The Disc

Physically, each MM disc has a typical thickness of 1.2 mm and diameters as shown in Figure 1. The dimensions are not precise and are shown for descriptive purposes.

Data is stored in a layer within the disc that has known reflective properties. There may be one or two such layers. Recording is typically linear along the spiral. The direction of recording on the first layer (Layer 0) is from inner radius to outer radius. If a second layer is present (Layer 1), and its spiral runs parallel to the spiral of the first layer, then the tracking of the layer pair is called parallel-track-path (PTP). If a second layer is present (Layer 1), and its spiral runs opposite to the spiral of the first layer (i.e. from outer radius to inner radius), then the tracking of the layer pair is called opposite-track-path (OTP).



A - Center Hole Nominally 15mm
B - Start of Spiral Varies from 44mm to 50mm
C - End of Spiral Varies from 76-77mm or 116-117mm
D - Diameter of Disc Nominally 80mm or 120mm

Figure 1 — Typical MM Disc

Each spiral contains 3 distinct zones in its Information Zone (Figure 2): Inner, Data, and Outer.

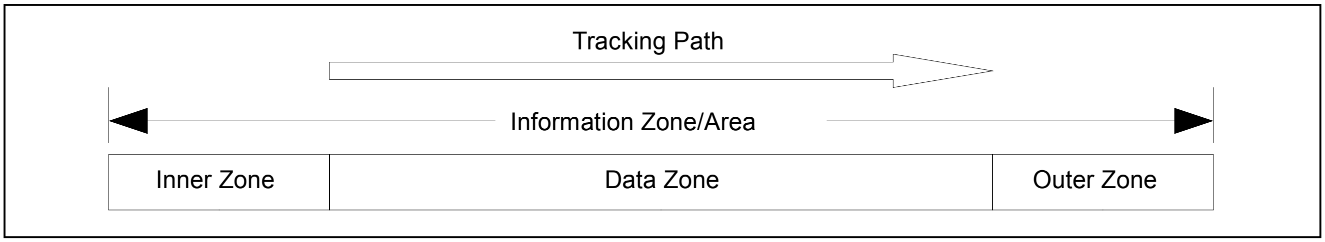


Figure 2 — General Spiral Structure

The Inner Zone is a region that separates the physical beginning of the recorded/recordable region from the start of the Data Zone.

The Data Zone is reserved for user data purposes.

The Outer Zone is a region that separates the end of the Data Zone from the physical end of the recorded/recordable area.

4.1.2.2 Single Layer Structure

On single layer discs, the Lead-in is a contiguous region of the Inner Zone adjacent to the Data Zone. On some discs, the Lead-in is the Inner Zone. The Lead-in may contain information that relates to organization of the recorded space.

On single layer discs, the Lead-out is a contiguous region of the Outer Zone adjacent to the Data Zone. On some discs, the Lead-out is the Outer Zone. The Lead-out region may contain information that relates to organization of the recorded space.

Figure 3 shows the appropriate relationships.

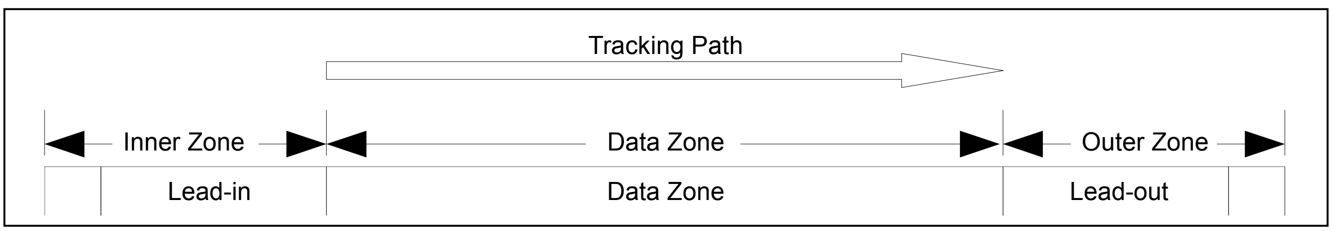


Figure 3 — General Single Layer Structure

4.1.2.3 Dual Layer PTP Structure

A dual layer disc with PTP spirals defines each layer as two independent Information Zones, each with single layer structure as shown in Figure 4.

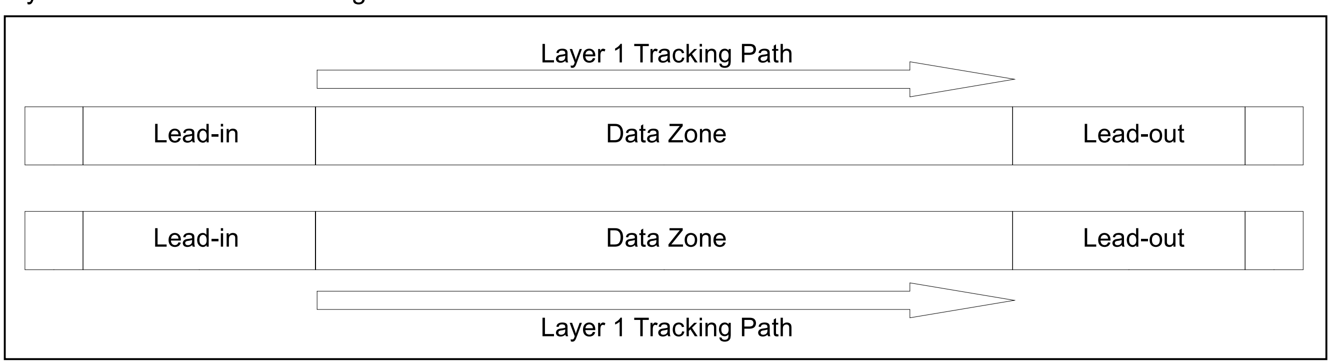


Figure 4 — General Dual Layer PTP Structure

Each spiral has a Lead-in in its inner zone and a Lead-out in its outer zone. Logically, the data of both spirals is organized as a single volume.

4.1.2.4 Dual Layer OTP Structure

On dual layer OTP discs, the Lead-in is a contiguous region of the Layer 0 Inner Zone adjacent to the Layer 0 Data Zone. On some discs, the Lead-in is the Layer 0 Inner Zone. The Lead-in may contain information that relates to organization of the recorded space.

The Outer Zone on Layer 0 is a region reserved for layer transitions called a Middle Area. Similarly, the Outer Zone on Layer 1 is a region reserved for layer transitions called a Middle Area.

The Lead-out is a contiguous region of the layer 1 Inner Zone adjacent to the layer 1 Data Zone. On some discs, the Lead-out is the layer 1 Inner Zone. The Lead-out region may contain information that relates to organization of the recorded space.

Figure 5 shows the appropriate relationships.

Logically, the data of both spirals is organized as a single volume.

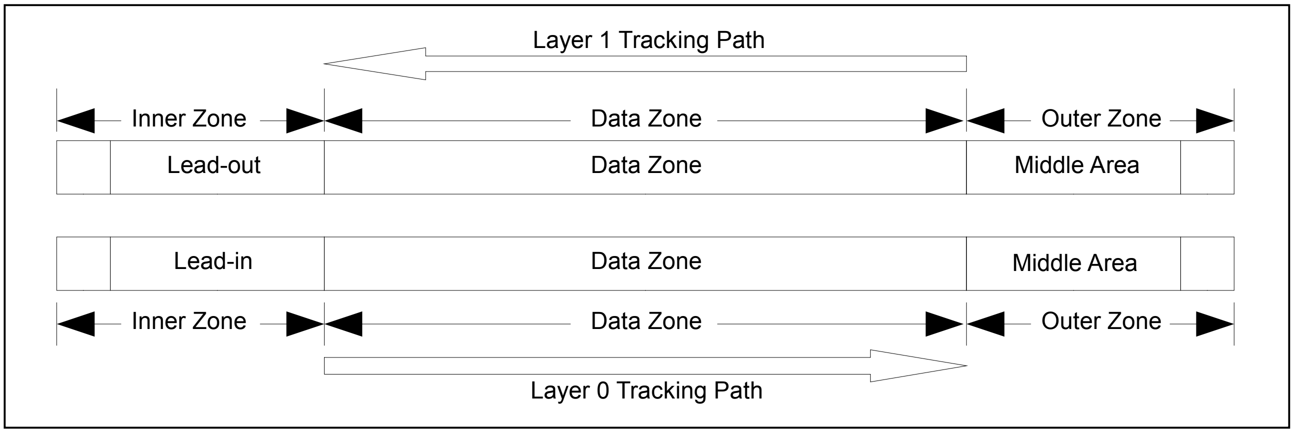


Figure 5 — General Dual Layer OTP Structure

4.1.2.5 Data Structure in a Spiral

4.1.2.5.1 Modulation Coding

When a laser is focused on a recorded layer, the returned light changes based upon the state of the recorded layer at the focal point. Recording changes some physical characteristic of the layer, such as changing the reflectivity. An unrecorded area is detected as a "space", while a recorded area is detected as a "mark".

Data is stored on the spiral in a binary representation where a "mark" is one of the binary states and a "space" is the other binary state. A bit thus recorded is called a channel bit. At high read-out speeds, bytes of data to be stored, are first encoded to ensure that the number of consecutively recorded marks or consecutively unrecorded spaces is neither too long nor too short for optimal detection mechanisms. The coding used for that purpose is a modulation code.

4.1.2.5.2 Error Detection and Error Correction Coding

MM user data is created as a group of bytes that are to be stored as a single recordable unit. These recordable units of data have error correction coding included in order to maximize data reliability. These are typically byte based Reed-Solomon block codes that are typically layered similar to product coding. The precise mechanisms are media type dependent.

In order to maximize the integrity of the stored data unit, error detection codes may be included prior to appending ECC symbols as shown in Figure 6.

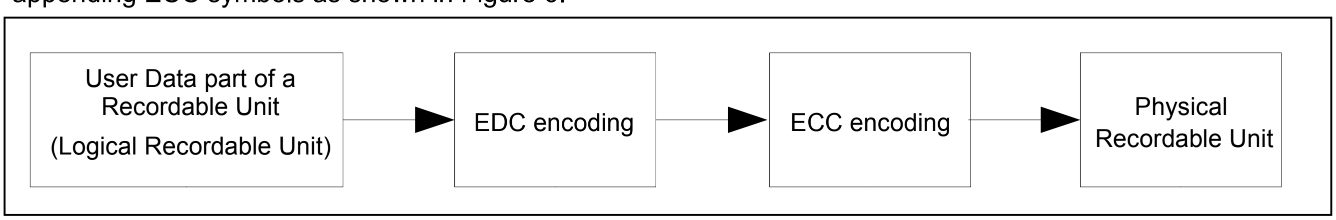


Figure 6 — Content of a Recordable Unit

4.1.3 Logical Presentation of the Media

4.1.3.1 Logical Blocks

Multi-media devices may store blocks of user data for later retrieval. The user data block size for MM devices and media is 2 048 bytes (although there are some exceptions for CD). Each block of data is stored at a unique Logical Block Address (LBA).

Blocks of data are stored on the medium along with additional information that the Drive uses to manage storage and retrieval. The format of the additional information is unique and is hidden from the Host during normal reading or writing. This additional information is often used to identify the physical location of a block of data, the logical address of the logical block(s), and to provide protection against the loss of the user data. A sector is the logical block data plus the additional information that is uniquely associated with it.

When the media is writable, a Host issues WRITE commands to store the blocks of data (write operations) and READ commands to retrieve the blocks of data (read operations). Other commands issued by the Host may also cause write and read operations to occur. A write operation causes one or more blocks of data to be written on the medium. A read operation causes one or more blocks of data to be read from the medium. A verify operation confirms that one or more blocks of data were correctly written and may be read without error from the medium.

The LBA of the first logical block is zero. The LBA of the last logical block is N – 1, where N is the number of logical blocks available on the medium. Each integer beginning with zero and stopping at N-1 is an LBA and is associated with a unique block. A READ CAPACITY command may be issued to determine the value of N – 1. If a command is issued that requests access to a logical block address not within the capacity of the medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and the SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE.

The number of bytes of data contained in a logical block is the block length. Each logical block has a block length associated with it. Block storage Drives defined in [SBC-2] use the Block Descriptor structure in mode data for the definition of block size. Multi-media Drives do not support Block Descriptors. The Block Descriptor Length field in the Mode Data Header shall be set to zero. When accessing the media with READ (10), READ (12), VERIFY (10), or VERIFY (12), the block length shall be 2 048 bytes. When using the READ CD or READ CD MSF command, block size is determined by CDB parameters. When the media is CD-R/-RW and the media is accessed with WRITE (10) or WRITE (12), block length is determined by the Write Parameters mode page.

The physical location of a logical block on the medium is not required to have a specific relationship to the location of any other logical block. The time to access the logical block at address X and then the logical block at address X+1 may not be less than the time to access X and then any other block on the medium.

4.1.3.2 Logical Sub-Divisions of Media

4.1.3.2.1 General

There are two general ways to access any disc: Random and Sequential.

When the disc is accessed in a random way for reading, each read command may address any area of the LBA space. When the disc is accessed in a random way for writing, each write command may address any area of the LBA space. When the drive/media combination permits the random reading and random writing of logical blocks, the media is represented only as a single addressable LBA space.

All MM drive/media combinations permit random reading within the recorded LBA space. Many MM drive/media combinations do not permit random writing within the recorded LBA space. This is always true for write-once media, because once a recordable unit is written, it cannot be recorded again. Random writing is also not permitted on rewritable media such as CD-RW. Since the data from each pair of adjacent CD-RW sectors are interleaved, it is not possible to replace a single sector. It is possible to continue recording after a "linking loss". For CD, the linking loss is 7 sectors and on DVD-R, the linking loss is either 1 or 16 sectors. The capacity losses associated with linking are negligible when the occurrence rate is very low.

When sequential recording is required, some MM media types support a logical subdivision of the address space. These sub-divisions typically require some LBA space for overhead - for management and linking loss. The management areas are not available for user data and reading may not be permitted.

4.1.3.2.2 Logical Tracks

4.1.3.2.2.1 Overview

A Logical Track is a non-zero number of sectors with a well defined usage sequence. In most cases, the Logical Track is an integral number of media specific writable units. The name of the physical representation of a Logical Track varies according to MM disc type as shown in Table 2.

Table 2 — Logical Track Naming

MM Disc Type	Media Specific Name
CD-ROM/-R/-RW	Track
DVD-R/-RW, DVD-R DL	RZone
DVD+R, DVD+R DL	Fragment
BD-R	SRR

In each case, the start address of the area may be discovered independently to facilitate faster access. Because each of these sub-divisions has similar characteristics to the others, this standard refers to the generic variant of this logical sub-division as a Logical Track.

A Logical Track typically loses a non-zero, format dependent number of LBAs at its beginning and at its end (e.g. linking loss). The Host may discover information about Logical Tracks by using the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP and READ TRACK INFORMATION commands.

A Logical Track may be written only in a pre-defined recording sequence.

Each MM media type has at least one Logical Track. The maximum number of Logical Tracks permitted is media type dependent. Each MM media type (Table 2) that supports multiple Logical Tracks may be structured to have exactly one Logical Track. Each of the other MM media types (i.e. those not listed in Table 2) is always viewed to have exactly one Logical Track consisting of the LBA space of the disc.

Two distinct Logical Tracks have no sectors in common.

4.1.3.2.2.2 Properties of Logical Tracks

Each Logical Track has certain properties regardless of MM disc type as shown in Table 3.

Table 3 — Properties of Logical Tracks

Logical Track Property	Meaning
Number	Each MM media type has at least one Logical Track. The maximum number of Logical Tracks permitted is media type dependent. Logical Tracks are integrally numbered beginning with a number no smaller than 1.
Start Address	The LBA of the first used block in the Logical Track.
Size	The number of user blocks in the Logical Track.
Blank Space	The number of logical blocks available to be written in the Logical Track.
Next Writable Address	Since Logical Tracks are recorded in a pre-defined sequence, the Next Writable Address (NWA) is the next LBA that the Host is permitted to write. When Blank Space = 0, NWA cannot be valid.
Open Logical Track	When Blank Space is not zero, the Logical Track is open. If the NWA is valid, the Logical Track is open.
Closed Logical Track	A Logical Track is closed when it is not open.
Reserved Track	A Logical Track is reserved, if its start address and size are fixed.
The Invisible and the Incomplete Logical Track	If the last Logical Track in the collection of all Logical Tracks is open and not reserved, then it is considered either invisible or incomplete. The incomplete Logical Track often exists by default. It is usually permitted to create a new reserved Logical Track from the beginning of the invisible/incomplete Logical Track.

When sequential recording is used, a single WRITE command is limited to a single Logical Track. If Logical Tracks N and M exist on a given media and N = M, then a single WRITE command is not permitted to write in

both Logical Tracks N and M. If the range of a single WRITE command crosses the boundary between two Logical Tracks, the command should be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

When the recording method has random recording possibilities (e.g. BD-R SRM+POW), a single WRITE command is permitted to cross the boundary between two Logical Tracks.

4.1.3.3 Sessions

A Session is a collection of one or more Logical Tracks with consecutive track numbers. Sessions provide Host applications with a method to incrementally append new data to a partially recorded MM disc.

Sessions are numbered integrally beginning with 1.

User data area for any session is sub-divided into Logical Tracks. A session shall have at least one Logical Track. The maximum number of Logical Tracks in a session is MM disc type dependent. See Figure 7.

Information about the MM disc structure is given by the READ DISC INFORMATION command. Information about the session and Logical Track structure is discovered in data returned by the READ TRACK INFORMATION command.

The detailed session structure of a MM disc is disc type dependent. See the media specific model sub-clause.

The general view of disc, session and Logical Track decomposition is shown in Figure 7.

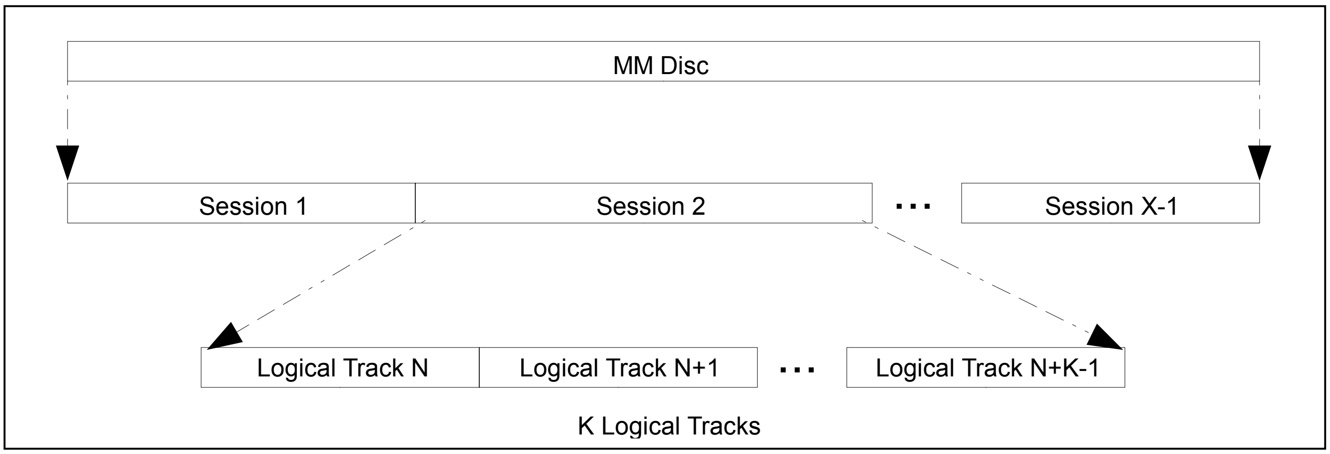


Figure 7 — Disc, Session and Logical Track Decomposition

4.1.4 Data cache

Many Drives implement cache memory. A cache memory is usually an area of temporary storage in the Drive that has fast access time and is used to enhance performance. It exists separately from the blocks of data stored and is normally not directly addressable by the Host. Use of cache memory for write or read operations typically reduces the access time to a logical block and may increase the overall data throughput.

During read operations, the Drive uses the cache memory to store blocks of data that the Host may request at some future time. The algorithm used to manage the cache memory is not part of this standard. However, parameters are provided to advise the Drive about future requests, or to restrict the use of cache memory for a particular request.

Sometimes the Host may request that the blocks of data read from the medium instead of from the cache memory. The force unit access (FUA) bit in the CDBs of some commands is used to indicate that the Drive shall access the physical medium. For a write operation, setting FUA to one causes the Drive to complete the data write to the physical medium before completing the command. For a read operation, setting FUA to one causes the logical blocks to be retrieved from the physical medium.

The Drive may implement commands that allow the Host to control other behavior of the cache memory:

- The MODE SENSE (10) Command defines a page (see 7.5) for the control of cache behavior and handles certain basic elements of cache replacement algorithms.
- The SYNCHRONIZE CACHE Command is used by the Host to guarantee that data in the cache has been moved to the media.

4.1.5 Resets

4.1.5.1 Reset Types

Within this standard there are three resets identified. These resets are named:

a) Power-On Reset
b) Hard Reset
c) Device Reset

These resets are used differently in each physical interface referenced. For more information on the use in specific physical interfaces, see:

a) Annex A Implementation Notes: ATA Layer of ATAPI,
b) Annex B Implementation Notes: SCSI Parallel Interface,
c) Annex C Implementation Notes: SCSI Serial Bus Protocol, or
d) Annex D Implementation Notes: Universal Serial Bus.

4.1.5.2 Power-On Reset

When power is applied, the Drive processes a series of electrical circuitry diagnostics, resets Drive specific parameters (mode pages) to default values, and if media is present, may spin up and make the Drive ready for use. In addition, power management and content management are reset to their default states.

4.1.5.3 Hard Reset

For each physical interface the detection of Hard Reset is different. The behavior of the Drive when Hard Reset is received is the same as for Power On Reset.

Hard Reset is used to reset Drives or even a whole interface bus, not individual Drives.

When the Drive is connected via ATAPI, SRST action may be deferred until critical activities have completed. Afterward, SRST is treated as a Hard Reset. See [ATA-8].

4.1.5.4 Device Reset

For each physical interface the detection of Device Reset is different. The Device Reset is used to bring a non-responding Drive into an operable state. Device Reset is different from Power On or Hard Reset. With the Device Reset the parameters being used by the Drive are not set to the defaults. In some cases this may not be possible and the Drive may need to reset to the default conditions. If a reset to default conditions occurs as a result of a Device Reset, a Unit attention condition and Power Management Event Notification should be generated. Drive should:

1) Reset Host interface circuitry.
2) Perform hardware initialization and device-internal diagnostics only if necessary.
3) Do not revert to the default conditions or delete any information about the currently mounted medium.
4) Do not change current Power State.
5) Do not change Persistent Prevent state.
6) Reset content management to the default state.

4.1.6 Error reporting

4.1.6.1 Unit Attention Conditions

If a Host issues a command other than GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, INQUIRY or REQUEST SENSE while a unit attention condition exists for that Host, the Drive shall not perform the command and shall report CHECK CONDITION status unless a higher priority status as defined by the Drive is also pending.

4.1.6.2 Drive Busy Conditions

A Drive may become Busy, thereby limiting the number of commands that may be processed to completion.

Examples of Busy condition causes are:

1. A command that has an immediate bit set to one in its CDB or parameter list may cause a Drive Busy condition. A Drive may become Busy, however, the Drive is not required to become Busy. e.g., if the Host sends a CLOSE TRACK SESSION command with immediate bit set to one to close a track and the track is already closed, the Drive may terminate the command with GOOD status and never enter the Drive Busy condition.
2. A Drive may also become Busy during media loading/unloading. Device Busy event reporting may distinguish between load/unload caused by the execution of a Host command and load/unload due to other causes (e.g. eject button). See 5.3.4, Removable Medium Feature (0003h).

When a Drive that was not busy, becomes busy, a Device Busy Event shall be generated indicating that the Busy State has changed and the Busy State is Busy.

When a Drive that was busy, becomes not busy, a Device Busy Event shall be generated indicating that the Busy State has changed and the Busy State is Not Busy.

Device Busy Event reporting is described in 6.6.2.8.

While a Drive is Busy, it shall accept and process REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, and TEST UNIT READY. However, when Busy, the Drive may not be able to process some commands and responds with CHECK CONDITION status. SK is typically set to NOT READY while ASC and ASCQ identify the specific Busy condition.

During cached recording when the write buffer has become full, a Drive may respond to a WRITE command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS or NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS. This particular case of Drive Busy condition is different since no events are posted.

Table 4 shows examples of error reporting during a Drive Busy condition.

Table 4 — Busy Condition Examples

Situation	SK Value	ASC/ASCQ Value
BLANK command with CDB Immediate bit set to one is in progress	NOT READY	LOGICAL UNIT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS or LOGICAL UNIT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS
CLOSE TRACK SESSION command with CDB Immediate bit set to one is in progress	NOT READY	LOGICAL UNIT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS or LOGICAL UNIT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS
FORMAT UNIT command with parameter list Immediate bit set to one is in progress	NOT READY	LOGICAL UNIT READY/FORMAT IN PROGRESS
Last WRITE command in a DAO recording. This is equivalent to sending a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command with the immediate bit set to one.	NOT READY	LOGICAL UNIT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS or LOGICAL UNIT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS

4.1.6.3 Unable to Write Errors

Drives that possess no feature indicating write capability shall respond to any command that requires writing with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID COMMAND OPERATION CODE.

Drives that possess one or more write features may still be unable to write. If the Host sends a command that requires writing to the currently mounted medium, but some condition exists such that the Drive is either not permitted or is not capable of writing to the media, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5.

Table 5 — SK/ASC/ASCQ Specification for Unable to Write Situations

Error Situation	SK/ASC/ASCQ
Medium is read-only.	ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM — INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
Medium is write-once. Host is attempting overwrite.	ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB, or ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE, or Sense key is set to BLANK CHECK and ASC /ASCQ is not specified in this standard.
Medium is write protected.	DATA PROTECT/WRITE PROTECTED – The ASCQ shall be set as described in Table 83.
Drive is not capable of writing to the specific physical media/media format. e.g., writable DVD medium in a CD recorder with no DVD capability.	NOT READY/MEDIUM NOT PRESENT (device is unable to detect the presence of media), or NOT READY/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM (device detects media presence, but is unable to identify media), or ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM (device only has read capability)
Drive requires that the currently media be formatted. e.g. DVD-RAM, DVD+RW, BD-RE	ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, NOT READY/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, NOT READY/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED, or MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED
The Drive is able to write some versions of the currently mounted media type, but not the version of currently mounted media.	ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT, or ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNSUPPORTED MEDIUM VERSION
A write once media is formattable (e.g. BD-R), is already formatted, and the Host attempts to format again.	ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT FORMAT MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM

4.1.6.4 Deferred Errors

Some MM Drives may support commands that return GOOD status prior to actual Command Processing. These commands are associated with the use of the immediate bit or some forms of write caching. Multi-media Drives that implement these features shall implement deferred error reporting. See [SPC-3] for definition and handling.

4.1.7 Removable medium

A disc has an attribute of either being mounted or unmounted on a suitable transport mechanism. A disc is mounted when the Drive is capable of performing read operations to the medium. A mounted disc may not be accessible by a Host, if another Host has reserved it. A disc is unmounted at any other time (e.g. during loading, unloading, or storage). A Host may check the mounted status by issuing a TEST UNIT READY command.

The REMOVABLE MEDIUM Feature provides the Host with commands to load or eject media and to prevent the removal of any media.

The PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command allows a Host to restrict the de-mounting of the disc. This is useful in maintaining system integrity. If the Drive implements cache memory, it shall ensure that all logical blocks of the medium contain the most recent data prior to permitting de-mounting of the disc. If the Host issues a START STOP UNIT command to eject the disc, and is prevented from de-mounting by the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command, the START STOP UNIT command is rejected by the Drive.

When the Persistent Prevent state is entered, the currently mounted media shall remain locked in the Drive, until the Host issues an eject request, or a Power-on Reset or Hard reset condition occurs. The Persistent Prevent state shall be maintained after the eject request. New media that is inserted into the Drive shall be locked in the Drive once the NEW MEDIA event is reported. Prior to reporting the NEW MEDIA event, the Drive may eject media without an explicit eject command from the Host. This allows the user to remove incorrectly inserted media without having to wait for Host intervention.

While in the Persistent prevent state, the Drive shall generate Events upon receipt of a User Eject request. The Drive shall not eject the media on receipt of these requests if the Drive has already reported a NEW MEDIA event for this media. If a Drive allows an eject between generating and reporting the NEW MEDIA event, the

Drive shall remove the NEW MEDIA event(s) from the Event queue. When the Host receives the Eject Request and determines that it is safe to eject the medium, an eject command (START STOP UNIT command with LoEj bit set to one) should be issued. At that time the Drive may eject the medium. The Persistent Prevent State is retained.

The Drive only generates GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (EJECT REQUEST) events after reporting a GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (NEW MEDIA) event, and prior to reporting a GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (MEDIA REMOVAL) event for the given media.

To maintain compatibility with existing BIOS implementations and operating systems, the Drive shall default to Persistent Prevent disabled. When the Host enables the support using the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command, the Drive shall respond as described in this standard. When the Host disables the Persistent Prevent capability, the Drive defaults to normal operating modes. A Power-on or Hard reset causes the Drive to return to the default Persistent Prevent state.

If the Drive is unable to maintain media status information across a Hard reset or power cycle, the Drive shall generate a NEW MEDIA event after the currently mounted media is made ready.

Commands shall be processed exactly the same as if Persistent Prevent was not enabled. For compatibility reasons, a unit attention condition is generated. Execution of the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command does not include terminating with CHECK CONDITION status when a unit attention condition is pending. e.g., if the user inserts a new medium and the Drive is accessed with a command, a unit attention condition shall be generated, but the Drive shall also report the NEW MEDIA Event with the next available GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (Media Status) command.

4.1.8 Drive Ready/Not Ready Conditions

The ready condition occurs after a disc is inserted and the Drive has performed its initialization tasks. A not ready condition shall occur only for one or more of the following reasons:

a) There is no medium mounted.
b) The Drive is unable to load or unload the medium.
c) The Drive is unable to recover critical information about the logical structure of the spiral(s).
d) As otherwise described in the command operation.

Table 6 and Table 7 define the Not Ready Error reporting for commands. Some commands may report not ready under some conditions and ready under other conditions. The tables represent predominant situations.

Table 6 — Commands that should report the Not Ready Condition

Command Name	Op Code	Command Name	Op Code
BLANK	A1h	REPORT KEY	A4h
CLOSE TRACK SESSION	5Bh	RESERVE TRACK	53h
FORMAT UNIT	04h	REZERO UNIT	01h
LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM	A6h	SEEK	2Bh
PREFETCH	34h	SEND DISC STRUCTURE	BFh
READ	28h, A8	SEND OPC INFORMATION	54h
READ CAPACITY	25h	SEND KEY	A3h
READ CD	BEh	SET READ AHEAD	A7h
READ CD MSF	B9h	SET STREAMING	B6h
READ DISC INFORMATION	51h	START STOP UNIT	1Bh
READ DISC STRUCTURE	ADh	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	35h
READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER	ABh/01h	TEST UNIT READY	00h
READ SUB-CHANNEL	42h	VERIFY	2Fh, AFh
READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	43h	WRITE	2Ah,AAh
READ TRACK INFORMATION	52h	WRITE AND VERIFY	2Eh
REPAIR TRACK	58h		

Table 7 — Commands that should not report the Not Ready Condition

Command Name	Op Code	Command Name	Op Code
GET CONFIGURATION	46h	READ BUFFER CAPACITY	5Ch
GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION	4Ah	READ FORMAT CAPACITIES	23h
GET PERFORMANCE	ACh	RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	1Ch
INQUIRY	12h	RELEASE	17h, 57h
LOCK/UNLOCK CACHE	36h	REPORT LUNS	A0h
LOG SELECT/SENSE	4Ch, 4Dh	REQUEST SENSE	03h
MECHANISM STATUS	BDh	RESERVE	16h, 56h
MODE SELECT	55h, 15h	SEND CUE SHEET	5Dh
MODE SENSE	5Ah, 1Ah	SEND DIAGNOSTICS	1Dh
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	1Eh	SET CD SPEED	BBh
READ BUFFER	3Ch	WRITE BUFFER	3Bh

4.1.9 Timeouts

4.1.9.1 General

Many Host implementations associate a time limit for execution of each command. If a command has not reported status, but the Host's time limit has expired, the Host has few options in forcing termination of the command. Typically, the Host chooses to reset the Drive. Since the Drive may not be able to prepare for such an abrupt termination, the action may have detrimental effects.

Commands are separated into two groups: Group 1 and Group 2. If a Group 1 command times out, the Host should retry the command. Group 2 commands should not be retried.

Group 3 timeout is a modified version of Group 1 timeout for streaming applications. Consequently, READ (12), VERIFY (10), and WRITE (12) may operate differently.

4.1.9.2 Group 1 Timeouts

Commands in Group 1 should always be retried when the Drive is ready. Commands with the Group 1 timeout are shown in Table 8.

Table 8 — Commands with Group 1 Timeout

Command	Op Code	Command	Op Code
GET PERFORMANCE	ACh	REPAIR TRACK	58h
MECHANISM STATUS	BDh	REPORT KEY	A4h
MODE SELECT	55h, 15h	REPORT LUNS	A0h
MODE SENSE	5Ah, 1Ah	REZERO UNIT	01h
PREFETCH	34h	SEEK	2Bh
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	1Eh	SEND CUE SHEET	5Dh
READ	28h, A8h	SEND DISC STRUCTURE	BFh
READ BUFFER	3Ch	SEND EVENT	A2h
READ BUFFER CAPACITY	5Ch	SEND KEY	A3h
READ CAPACITY	25h	SEND OPC INFORMATION	54h
READ CD	BEh	SET CD SPEED	BBh
READ CD MSF	B9h	SET READ AHEAD	A7h
READ DISC INFORMATION	51h	SET STREAMING	B6h
READ DISC STRUCTURE	ADh	START STOP UNIT	1Bh
READ FORMAT CAPACITIES	23h	TEST UNIT READY	00h
READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER	ABh/01h	WRITE	2Ah, AAh
READ SUB-CHANNEL	42h	WRITE BUFFER	3Bh
READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	43h	WRITE AND VERIFY	2Eh
READ TRACK INFORMATION	52h		

If the Drive supports Group3 timeout and the G3Enable bit in Timeout and Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, READ (12) with Streaming = 1 and WRITE (12) with Streaming = 1 are categorized as Group 3 timeout. Otherwise, the commands are Group 1.

The Group 1 time limit in the Timeout and Protect mode page specifies a time limit for Group 1 commands. If Command Processing requires more than the allowed time, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense key shall be set to either NOT READY or UNIT ATTENTION and ASC shall be set to INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION. Additionally, the Drive shall set the Command Specific Information sense bytes to the minimum timeout value in seconds that should be used when retrying the command. The Host's response should be to retry the command with the requested timeout.

The Drive is permitted to terminate the command prior to the timeout if it has determined that the command may not be completed within the allowed time.

4.1.9.3 Group 2 Timeouts

Group 2 contains commands that may be unable to complete successfully if retried. It is important that the Host specify a Group 2 timeout that is large enough to allow the command to complete under worst-case scenarios. Commands with the Group 2 timeout are shown in Table 9.

Table 9 — Group 2 Timeout Commands

Command	Op Code	Command	Op Code
BLANK	A1h	RESERVE TRACK	53h
CLOSE TRACK SESSION	5Bh	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	35h
FORMAT UNIT	04h	VERIFY (10)	2Fh
LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM	A6h	VERIFY (12)	AFh

If the Drive supports Group3 timeout and the G3Enable bit in Timeout and Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, VERIFY (10) and VERIFY (12) are categorized as Group 3 timeout. Otherwise, the commands are Group 2.

If a Group 2 command has an immediate bit in its CDB and Immed = 1, Timeout is not allowed for the command. Command status shall be returned within the Group 1 time.

4.1.9.4 No Timeout Commands

Some commands should be able to be processed with no dependence on the readiness of the mounted medium. These commands shall not timeout. These are listed in Table 10.

Table 10 — No Timeout Commands

Command	Op Code	Command	Op Code
GET CONFIGURATION	46h	RELEASE	17h, 57h
GET EVENT/STATUS NOTIFICATION	4Ah	REQUEST SENSE	03h
INQUIRY	12h	RESERVE	16h, 56h
RECEIVE DIAGNOSTIC RESULTS	1Ch	SEND DIAGNOSTICS	1Dh

4.1.9.5 Group 3 timeout for Real Time Stream Recording/Playback

4.1.9.5.1 General

Some Group 1 and Group 2 timeout commands become Group 3 timeout commands when G3tout in the READ/WRITE ERROR RECOVERY MODE PAGE is set to one. See Table 11.

Table 11 — Group 3 Timeout Commands

Command	Op Code	Command	Op Code
READ (12) when Streaming = 1	A8h	VERIFY (12)	AFh
VERIFY (10)	2Fh	WRITE (12) when Streaming = 1	AAh

To adjust application settings for real-time stream recording/playback to recover from a fatal error, estimation of the expected time length for the command is necessary. Group 3 timeout is defined for this purpose. The Group 3 timeout duration = Group3 time unit × CI(Transfer length / Unit length) + trace time for requested sectors where:

1. Group 3 time unit is the maximum time to read or write one sector.
2. Unit length is the number of sectors that may be read or written within one Group 3 time unit.
3. Trace time is the time to read or write a sector excluding access time and the read/write time of the first sector.

The Group 3 time unit shows the maximum time of an operation when the transfer length field is set to 1 and when Power state of the Drive is Active state. In the case of DVD-RAM, the Group 3 time unit value should include Zone transition time.

The recommended value for Group 3 time unit is 1 to 5 seconds. The recommended value for Unit length is 256 sectors.

It is recommended that transfer length and verification length are set to smaller than the Unit length value. If the host uses transfer length less than the Unit length, the Group 3 timeout duration is almost the same as the Group 3 time unit as follows: (in the case of DVD, 256 sectors is only 0.38 second at 1× speed.)

Group 3 timeout duration = Group 3 time unit + trace time for requested sectors

The Group 3 time unit shall not be changed by a medium change. A Drive may accept the value changed by the host.

The value for Unit length is specific to the media type. A Drive should adjust the Unit length value according to the mounted media type.

Group 3 timeout duration of Group 3 timeout has following three exceptions.

1. Exception 1: Initial OPC time
2. Exception 2: Synchronize cache time
3. Exception 3: Power state transition time to Active state

The host is able to control the occurrence of these exceptions by commands (e.g., SEND OPC INFORMATION command, SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command). The Drive need not treat these exceptions as errors.

If Group 3 timeout is supported, G3tout bit of VERIFY (10) command shall be supported.

Group 3 time unit value shows the maximum time of operation when the transfer length field is set to 1 and when Power state of the Drive is Active state. In case of DVD-RAM, Group 3 time unit value should include 1 zone transition time.

The recommended value for Group 3 time unit is 1 to 5 seconds. The recommended value for Unit length is 256 sectors.

It is recommended that transfer length and verification length be smaller than the Unit length value. If the Host uses transfer length less than Unit length, the Expected time is similar with Group 3 time unit. That is, Expected time = Group3 time unit + trace time for requested blocks.

4.1.9.5.2 Trace time for requested sectors

Group 3 time unit value shows the minimum time of the operation when the transfer length field is set to 1. If transfer length is larger than 1, Group 3 timeout duration is increased to reflect the transfer length of the command. For example, in case of DVD media operating at 1x speed, a read operation requires 1.48 ms/sector. If the Group 3 time value is 3 seconds and transfer length is 160, the Group 3 timeout duration is 3.24 second (= $3 + 0.00148 \times (160 - 1)$).

When the transfer length field READ (12)/WRITE (12) command is 32 or less, the trace time for the requested sectors is very small compared with the Group 3 time unit value. Consequently, trace time is typically negligible.

4.1.9.5.3 Exception 1: Time for the initial OPC

Optimum Power Calibration before a write operation takes several seconds. When OPC is performed, a Drive may expand the Group 3 timeout duration with extra time for the initial OPC. That is, Group 3 timeout duration with OPC = time for the initial OPC + Group 3 timeout duration.

To avoid this exception, the host should issue the SEND OPC INFORMATION command with DoOpc = 1.

A Drive should not perform time consuming internal OPC (Subsequent OPC) during real-time stream recording at the WRITE (12) command with Streaming=1. A WRITE (10)/WRITE (12) command with Streaming=0 and SEND OPC INFORMATION command with DoOpc = 1, the Drive may perform the Subsequent OPC if necessary. The host may pause the real-time streaming recording and issue SEND OPC INFORMATION command with DoOpc = 1.

In order to avoid the timeout of the WRITE (12) command with Streaming=1 due to insufficient buffer capacity, the command may be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS. Although this may hide the Exception 1, it is not recommended to use this operation for the Subsequent OPC.

4.1.9.5.4 Exception 2: Sync cache time

If a Drive has write data in its buffer when the Drive receives a READ (12) command with Streaming=1 or a VERIFY (10) command with G3tout=1, the Drive shall write the buffered data. The Drive shall then read the requested blocks. In this case, additional Group 3 timeout duration for synchronize cache is added to the Group 3 timeout duration for READ (12) command with Streaming=1 and VERIFY (10) command with G3tout=1. That is, Expected time for synchronize cache = Group 3 time unit + time to synchronize the buffered data, and Group 3 timeout duration with synchronize cache = Expected time for synchronize cache + Group 3 timeout duration.

A host is able to determine the Group 3 timeout duration for synchronize cache via the READ BUFFER CAPACITY command. For example, if a Drive has 2 Mbytes buffer, the Drive may have about 60 ECC blocks of write data in buffer. For DVD media operating at 1x speed, if the Group 3 time value is 3 seconds, the expected time for synchronize cache is 4.42 seconds (= $3 + 0.00148 \times (960 - 1)$).

To avoid this exception, a host should issue the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command.

4.1.9.5.5 Exception 3: Power state transition time to Active state

When a Drive is in Idle state or Standby state, the Drive needs a few seconds to be Active state before a operation. When Power state transition is performed, the Drive may exceed Group 3 timeout duration with extra time for the Power state transition. That is, Group 3 timeout duration with Power state transition = time for the Power state transition + Group 3 timeout duration.

To avoid this exception, the host should issue the START STOP UNIT command with Start = 1, LoEj = 0 and Power Condition = 0.

4.1.9.5.6 Relationship between Group 3 time unit and Unit length

The Group 3 timeout duration of the command termination is increased by Group 3 time unit when the transfer block length is increased by Unit length as shown in Figure 8. Because changing Group 3 time unit causes big direct impact to host software, the Group 3 time unit value shall not be changed by medium change. If adjustment of the Group 3 timeout duration of the command termination time on different media is necessary, different Unit length value for different media shall be used.

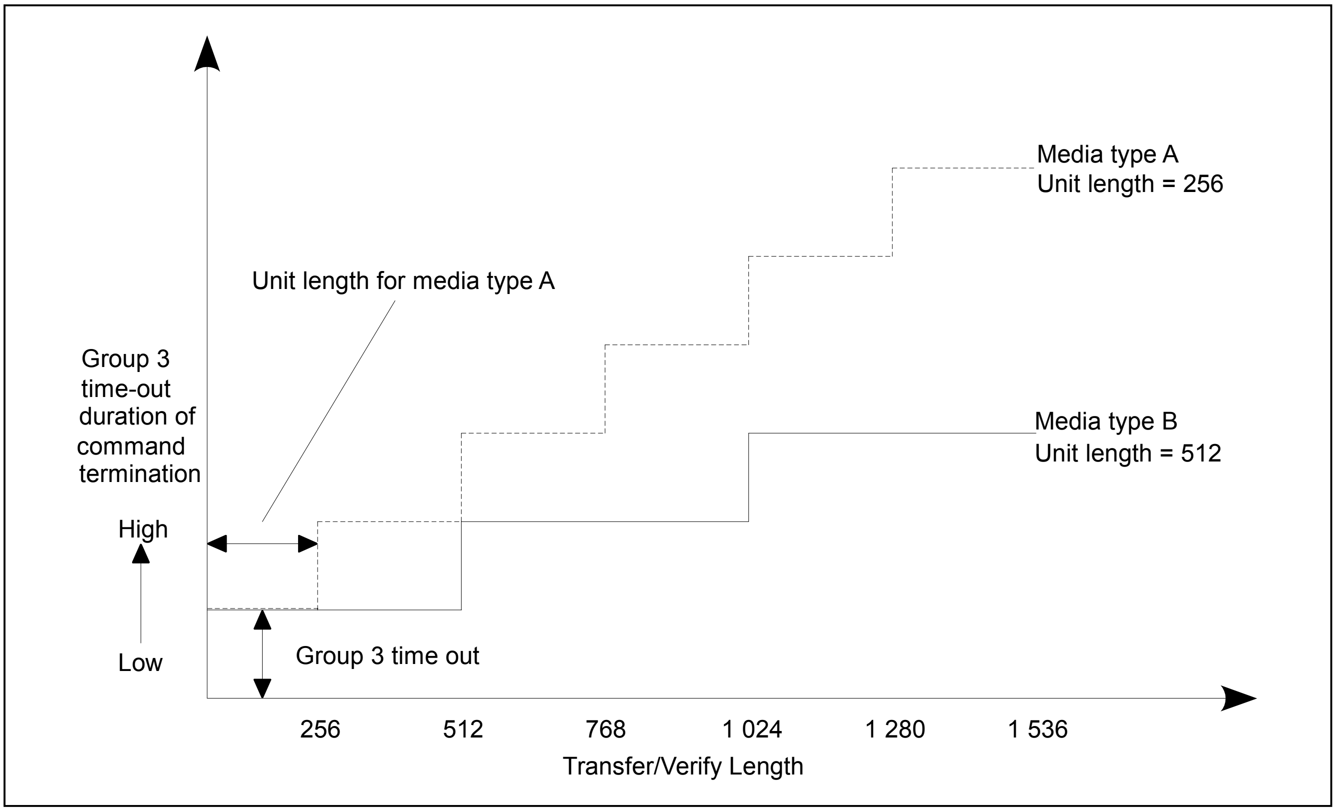


Figure 8 — Adjustment of Command Termination Time on Different Media

4.1.9.6 Recommended Timeout value handling

The Group 1 Minimum Timeout field, the Group 2 Minimum Timeout field, and the Group 3 Time unit field in the Timeout and Protect mode page (1Dh) may not be changeable. Even if the field is changeable, a Drive may round up the host specified value, because the Drive may have its own minimum time to perform retry in a command. The host should check the changeable status of these fields by issuing the MODE SENSE (10) command with the Changeable Value of PC field prior to issuing the MODE SELECT (10) command. Once values are selected, the host should check the selected value by issuing MODE SENSE (10) command.

Specific timeout actions are included with each command description in clause 6.

4.1.10 Power Management

Power conditions permit the Host to modify the behavior of a MM Drive in a manner that may reduce the required power. The Host may determine the current power state by issuing the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command and requesting Power Management Events (See 6.7.2.3). Power conditions may be controlled by the either the START STOP UNIT command or the Power Condition mode page. See the START STOP UNIT command description (6.42) and the Power Condition mode page description (7.6) for more information. Table 12 shows the defined power conditions.

Table 12 — Power Conditions

Power Condition	Definition
Sleep	The lowest power consumption, with power applied, occurs in the Sleep condition. When in the Sleep condition a MM Drive requires a WAKEUP task management function to be activated.
Standby	In the Standby condition a MM Drive is capable of accepting commands, but media is not immediately accessible (e.g., the spindle is stopped).
Idle	In the Idle condition a MM Drive is capable of responding quickly to media access requests. However, a MM Drive in the idle condition may take longer, than in the active condition, to complete the execution of a command because it may have to activate some circuitry.
Active	In the Active condition a MM Drive is capable of responding immediately to media access requests, and operations complete execution in the shortest time compared to the other power conditions.

No Drive power condition change shall affect other devices connected to the physical interface.

MM Drives that contain cache memory shall implicitly perform a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command for the entire medium prior to entering any power condition that prevents access the media (e.g., the spindle being stopped).

The Sleep state has special considerations. MM Drives are typically unable to save any transient information once the Sleep state has been entered. Consequently:

- No Power Event is available as a Drive is entering Sleep.
- A MM Drive may be awakened only by a hard reset. In response, the Drive shall report UNIT ATTENTION conditions as is required by a hard reset: POWER ON, RESET, OR BUS DEVICE RESET OCCURRED, followed by NOT READY TO READY CHANGE, MEDIUM MAY HAVE CHANGED in the event that media is present. The MM Drive shall also generate an Operational Change Event with Change set to 2 (see 6.6.2.3) and a Media Event with Event Code set to 2 (see 6.6.2.6).
- Any authentications that existed prior to entering Sleep state are lost.
- When mode parameters are not savable, the Host should re-establish mode settings as they were prior to entering sleep state.

4.2 Compact Disc (CD)

4.2.1 Recorded CD Media Structure

4.2.1.1 Spiral Structure

The recorded spiral of a CD follows the general MM disc structure of single layer media as described in 4.1.2. CD has some variation as shown in Table 13.

Table 13 — General CD Spiral Structure

General Zone	CD Terminology	Zone Description
Inner Zone	—	Recordable and Rewritable CDs contain zones prior to the Lead-in for calibration and incremental recording management.
Lead-in	Lead-in	The disc Lead-in contains the Table of Contents (TOC) that describes the recorded content of some or the entire disc.
Data Zone	Program Area	A CD program area represents the LBA space of the disc.
Lead-out	Lead-out	For most CD formats the Lead-out is only a seek overshoot zone.

4.2.1.2 The CD Frame Structure

The recorded CD spiral is recorded in a continuous stream of data groups called Small Frames. The Small Frame carries 1 byte of sub-channel and 24 bytes of user data (also known as main channel data). The user data is protected by 2 layers of error correction known as C1 and C2. See Table 14.

Table 14 — Small Frame Content

Small Frame Data	Size in Bytes
User Data	24
C2 ECC symbols	4
C1 ECC symbols	4
Sub-channels	1

A CD frame consists of 98 contiguous Small Frames. This yields 24*98 = 2 352 bytes of main channel data per frame and 98 bytes of Sub-channel data per CD frame.

A recorded CD is a succession of CD frames. For audio, the bounds of a Frame are defined by the Sub-channel bytes. For data, the bounds are determined by a sync pattern in the main channel data.

The 98 Sub-channel bytes are separated into 2 bytes of synchronization and 96 bytes of data. Each CD frame begins with the first Sub-channel sync byte and ends with the 96th Sub-channel data byte. A CD frame is constructed from Small Frames as shown in

Table 15. This is a logical representation since Small Frames are physically interleaved. This means that precise CD frame boundaries do not exist.

Table 15 — CD Frame Structure from Small Frames

FRAME N	...	...	...
	...	...	...
	Small Frame 96	Sub-channel Data Byte 94	24 bytes main channel data
	Small Frame 97	Sub-channel Data Byte 95	24 bytes main channel data
	Small Frame 98	Sub-channel Data Byte 96	24 bytes main channel data
FRAME N+1	Small Frame 1	Sub-channel Sync Byte 1	24 bytes main channel data
	Small Frame 2	Sub-channel Sync Byte 2	24 bytes main channel data
	Small Frame 3	Sub-channel Data Byte 1	24 bytes main channel data
	...	...	...
	Small Frame 98	Sub-channel Data Byte 96	24 bytes main channel data
FRAME N+2	Small Frame 1	Sub-channel Sync Byte 1	24 bytes main channel data
	Small Frame 2	Sub-channel Sync Byte 2	24 bytes main channel data
	Small Frame 3	Sub-channel Data Byte 1	24 bytes main channel data
	...	...	...
	...	...	...

4.2.1.3 Sub-channel

Each non-sync byte of Sub-channel is labeled according to bit position, See Table 16.

Table 16 — Sub-Channel byte layout

Small Frame Sub-channel Byte							
P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W
Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0

Over the 98 Small Frames, the Sub-channel is separated into bytes associated with the Sub-channel letter. The Sub-channel sync bytes are not a part of Sub-channel data, so there are 96 bytes of Sub-channel. e.g., the P Sub-channel is separated into bytes as shown in Figure 9.

Small Frame	P Bit	P Byte
1	SYNC 0	
2	SYNC 1	
3	7	
4	6	
5	5	
6	4	0
7	3	
8	2	
9	1	
10	0	
11	7	
12	6	
13	5	
14	4	1
15	3	
16	2	
17	1	
18	0	
•	•	•
•	•	•
•	•	•
83	7	
84	6	
85	5	
86	4	10
87	3	
88	2	
89	1	
90	0	
91	7	
92	6	
93	5	
94	4	11
95	3	
96	2	
97	1	
98	0	

Figure 9 — P-Sub-Channel Layout

The byte construction for other (Q – W) Sub-channels is identical.

P and Q Sub-channels provide information about the recording.

R-W Sub-channel is defined only for audio tracks. When used, it carries line graphics, MIDI Control, or text. In that case, specific formatting of the resulting data defines the meaning. Consult the appropriate format documents. For data tracks, R-W sub-channels shall be set to zeros.

4.2.2 Physical Track Topology: Single Session Disc

CD players and readers follow the spiral by following the path of recorded data. When there is no recorded data, the player/reader is unable to follow the spiral.

The spiral is divided into 3 logical entities from the inner radius as shown in Figure 10.

Lead-in	Program Area	Lead-out
Inner Radius	→	Outer Radius

Figure 10 — Single Session disc

LEAD-IN – The Lead-in is a zone of protection from unrecorded areas near the disc center. The Lead-in also contains the table of contents (TOC) for the disc's Program Area.

PROGRAM AREA – This is the CD term for the Data Zone.

LEAD-OUT – The Lead-out is a zone of seek overshoot protection from the disc's outer edge.

4.2.3 Physical track topology – Multi-Session Disc

4.2.3.1 Sessions

A Session is the recorded sequence: Lead-in, program area, Lead-out. The multi-session allows a single disc to have several concatenated sessions.

CD-ROM devices are not typically capable of reading through unrecorded areas on the medium. The CD-ROM device needs recorded data in order to find and stay in the spiral. This means that to ensure that a CD-ROM Drive is capable of accessing all areas of a Program Area; the Program Area needs the protection zones of Lead-in and Lead-out. On a recorded disc, sessions may appear as shown in Figure 11.

Session 1 Lead-in (disc Lead-in)	Session 1 Program Area	Session 1 Lead-out	Session 2 Lead-in	Session 2 Program Area	....

....	Last Session Lead-in	Last Session Program Area	Last Session Lead-out

Figure 11 — Multi-Session Recorded Disc

In order to assure readability by CD-ROM Drives, the recording system should always close the session with the most recently added program area before attempting interchange.

Additional information is needed in order to locate all of the program areas. This is accomplished by using Mode 5 Q in the Lead-in areas.

4.2.3.2 Tracks

The Program Area of the disc is divided into logically separated areas called tracks. There shall be at least one track in the Program Area. There may be gaps between tracks, primarily to provide a zone of digital silence between audio program selections. P Sub-channel is reserved for identifying these transition areas between tracks. The value of P is normally 0, but during a transition area, the value for P is 1.

4.2.3.3 Frame Addressing

CD was originally developed for playing digital audio that has two channels of 16-bit samples at 44.1KHz. The number of frames per second of play is 75:

bytes/Sample*44 100 Samples/second = 176 400 bytes/second, and

176 400 bytes/second / 2 352 bytes/frame = 75 frames/second

Given this, CD frames are addressed in terms of audio play time, i.e., Minute, Second, and Frame (MSF). The traditional value of 60 seconds per minute is followed.

In all cases, when an address appears as part of the CD format, it is in MSF format using 2 BCD digits per time unit. This limits the time addressing on the disc to 99bcd minutes. The representation for a time based address is MM:SS:FF, where MM = minutes, SS = seconds, and FF = frames.

Addressing in the program area begins with 00:00:00. This advances up through the Lead-out.

The last frame in the Lead-in is 99:59:74 and decreases as the spiral is followed toward the center of the disc. The Lead-in is typically 3 to 4 minutes in length.

4.2.3.4 Q Sub-channel

Since an audio CD frame has no address field built into the main channel, the address is carried in the Q Sub-channel. Q Sub-channel may also carry information about the logical structure of the disc, disc identification, and music track identification. The general format of a Q Sub-channel record is shown in Table 17.

Table 17 — Q Sub-channel record format

Field name	Definitions
S0, S1	Sub-channel Synchronization
CONTROL	The Control Field has 4 bits that define the type of information in the frame: 00x0b = 2 audio channels without pre-emphasis 00x1b = 2 audio channels with pre-emphasis of 50/15 μs 10x0b = 4 audio channels without pre-emphasis 10x1b = 4 audio channels with pre-emphasis of 50/15 μs 01x0b = Data track, recorded uninterrupted 01x1b = Data track, recorded increment 11xxb = reserved xx0xb = digital copy prohibited xx1xb = digital copy permitted The bits of the control field (except for the copy bit) may change during a pause (X=00) of at least 2 seconds and during the Lead-in area only.
ADR	4 bits of identification for DATA-Q. This is also known as the Mode (ADR) Q.
DATA Q	72 bits of data
EDC	A 16-bit EDC for the Control, ADR, and DATA-Q Fields. On the disc the EDC bits are inverted. The remainder has to be checked at zero.

Because the sync bits and the two bytes of EDC are overhead, the valid Q information length is actually 10 bytes.

4.2.3.5 Q Sub-channel in the Program Area

4.2.3.5.1 Types of Q

During the program area 3 types of Q Sub-channel may be encountered, Mode-1 Q, Mode-2 Q, or Mode-3 Q.

4.2.3.5.2 ADR=1 (0001b) – Mode-1 Q

Mode 1 Q occupies at least 9 out of 10 successive CD frames. Mode-1 Q in the program area is also referred to as current position Q. The Mode-1 Q format during data and audio tracks is shown in Figure 12.

ADR	DATA-Q								
0001	TNO	INDEX	MIN	SEC	FRAME	ZERO	AMIN	ASEC	AFRAME

Figure 12 — Q Sub-channel Mode-1 Format recorded in Program Area

TNO	=	01 to 99bcd is the track number
INDEX	=	00 to 99bcd is the Index to TNO. An audio track may be divided into up to 99 sections, identified by a non-zero index. The first indexed area in a track shall be 01. Most audio discs have only one indexed area per track. The pre-gap is the part of a track-to-track gap that belongs to the following track. In a track's pre-gap, the track number is that of the following track and the INDEX is 00.
MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Is the relative time within the track encoded as 6 BCD digits. This is 00:00:00 at track start and advances through the track. During the pre-gap the time decreases.
ZERO	=	8 bits of zero (00000000b)
AMIN, ASEC, AFRAME	=	Is the program area absolute time address expressed in 6 BCD digits.

4.2.3.5.3 ADR=2 (0010b) – Mode-2 Q

Mode-2 Q is optional. If Mode-2 Q is present, it shall occupy at least 1 out of each 100 successive frames. The Mode-2 Q data format is shown in Figure 13.

ADR	DATA-Q														
0010	N1	N2	N3	N4	N5	N6	N7	N8	N9	N10	N11	N12	N13	ZERO	AFRAME

Figure 13 — Q Sub-channel Mode-2 Format

The DATA-Q field is 52 bits long, organized as 13 nibbles (N1 – N13), each carrying a single BCD digit. The resulting BCD string is the Media Catalog Number (MCN). The catalog number does not change on a disc. In case no catalog number is encoded according to the UPC/EAN code, N1 – N13 are all zero, or Mode-2 may be deleted from the disc.

The ZERO field contains 12 bits of zero. (000000000000b)

AFRAME is as defined in Q Sub-channel Mode-1 (two BCD digits running from 00 to 74). During the Lead-in (TNO = 00), these 8 bits are zero.

4.2.3.5.4 ADR=3 (0011b) – Mode-3 Q

Mode-3 Q is optional. If Mode-3 is present, it shall occupy at least 1 out of 100 successive sub-coding blocks. Mode-3 is used to give a unique number to an audio track. This is done by means of the International Standard Recording Code (ISRC). If no ISRC is used, Mode-3 shall be deleted. During the Lead-in and Lead-out, Mode-3 is not present on the disc. The ISRC may only change immediately after the Track Number (TNO) has been changed. The Mode-3 data format is shown in Figure 14.

ADR	DATA-Q														
0011	I1	I2	I3	I4	I5	0	0	I6	I7	I8	I9	I10	I11	I12	ZERO	AFRAME

Figure 14 — Q Sub-channel, Mode-3 Format

The Country-Code is given in fields I1 through I2, the owner-code in fields I3 – I5, The year of recording in fields I6 – I7 and the I8 through I12 contain the serial number of the recording. The characters I1 – I5 are 6-bit cells, coded as shown in Table 18. The characters I6 – I12 are coded in 4 bit BCD numbers.

I1 – I12 define the ISRC.

The ZERO Field contains 4 bits of zero. (0000b)

AFRAME is defined in Q Sub-channel Mode-1 Q (two BCD digits running from 00 to 74).

Table 18 — ISRC 6 bit character codes (in hexadecimal)

CHAR	CODE	CHAR	CODE
0	00	I	19
1	01	J	1A
2	02	K	1B
3	03	L	1C
4	04	M	1D
5	05	N	1E
6	06	O	1F
7	07	P	20
8	08	Q	21
9	09	R	22
A	11	S	23
B	12	T	24
C	13	U	25
D	14	V	26
E	15	W	27
F	16	X	28
G	17	Y	29
H	18	Z	2A

4.2.3.6 Q Sub-channel in the Lead-out Area

Q Sub-channel in the Lead-out area is similar to Q Sub-channel in the program area. The differences are:

Mode-1 Q Sub-channel: TNO = AAh, INDEX = 01bcd

Mode-2 Q Sub-channel: No differences.

No other Q Sub-channel modes are allowed in the Lead-out area.

4.2.3.7 Q Sub-channel in the Lead-in Area

4.2.3.7.1 Types of Q

Q Sub-channel in the Lead-in area is referred to as the Table of Contents (TOC).

Three modes of Q are allowed in the Lead-in area: Mode-1 Q, Mode-2 Q, and Mode-5 Q.

4.2.3.7.2 Mode-1 Q

The Mode-1 Q format during the Lead-in is shown in Figure 15. TNO is always 00 during the Lead-in and ZERO is always 00 during the Lead-in. Variations of Mode-1 Q are defined by the value of POINT.

ADR	DATA-Q								
0001	TNO=00	POINT	MIN	SEC	FRAME	ZERO=00	PMIN	PSEC	PFRAME

Figure 15 — Q Sub-channel Mode-1 Format recorded in Lead-in

POINT = 01bcd – 99bcd is the track number of the track being defined.

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Running time in the Lead-in, encoded as BCD
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Track start time, encoded as BCD

POINT = A0h

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Running time in the Lead-in, encoded as BCD
PMIN	=	Track number of the first track in the program area, encoded as BCD
PSEC	=	Program area format: 00h - CD-DA or CD-ROM 10h – CD-I 20h – CD-ROM-XA
PFRAME	=	0

POINT = A1h

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Running time in the Lead-in, encoded as BCD
PMIN	=	Track number of the last track in the program area, encoded as BCD
PSEC, PFRAME	=	0, 0

POINT = A2h

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Running time in the Lead-in, encoded as BCD
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Start time of Lead-out, encoded as BCD

4.2.3.7.3 Mode-2 Q

Mode-2 Q Sub-channel is defined the same in the Lead-in, program area and Lead-out.

4.2.3.7.4 Mode-5 Q

Mode-5 Q Sub-channel provides additional information about CD-R and CD-RW recordings. The format of a Mode-5 Q Sub-channel is shown in Figure 16. TNO is always 00 during the Lead-in. Variations of Mode-5 Q are defined by POINT.

ADR	DATA-Q								
0101	TNO	POINT	MIN	SEC	FRAME	ZERO	PMIN	PSEC	PFRAME

Figure 16 — Q Sub-channel Mode-5 Format recorded in Lead-in

POINT = 01…40 (Audio only: This identifies a specific playback skip interval)

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Skip interval stop time in 6 BCD digits
ZERO	=	00
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Skip interval start time in 6 BCD digits

POINT = B0h (multi-session disc)

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	the start time for the next possible session’s program area. A final session is indicated MIN, SEC, FRAME = FFh:FFh:FFh or when the Mode-5 point B0 is absent.
ZERO	=	the number of different Mode-5 pointers present.
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	the maximum possible start time of the outermost Lead-out

POINT = B1h (Audio only: This identifies the presence of skip intervals)

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	00, 00, 00
ZERO	=	00
PMIN	=	the number of skip interval pointers
PSEC	=	the number of skip track assignments in POINT=B2, B3, and B4
PFRAME	=	00

POINT = B2h, B3h, B4h (Audio only: This identifies tracks that should be skipped during playback)

MIN	=	01-99bcd, track number to skip upon playback
SEC	=	00-99bcd, track number to skip upon playback, 00 if no skip track is specified
FRAME	=	00-99bcd, track number to skip upon playback, 00 if no skip track is specified
ZERO	=	00
PMIN	=	00-99bcd, track number to skip upon playback, 00 if no skip track is specified
PSEC	=	00-99bcd, track number to skip upon playback, 00 if no skip track is specified
PFRAME	=	00-99bcd, track number to skip upon playback, 00 if no skip track is specified

Note 1. Skip intervals are seldom written by recorders and typically ignored by readers.

POINT = C0h (Together with POINT=B0h, this is used to identify a multi-session disc)

MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	ATIP values from Special Information 1, ID=101
ZERO	=	00
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Start time of the first Lead-in area of the disc

4.2.3.8 CD Main Channel Block Formats

4.2.3.8.1 General Data Block Format

Although some are rarely used, there are 6 main channel frame formats defined. Audio blocks are recorded unmodified. Data blocks are given a synchronization field at the beginning of the block. The pattern is shown in Figure 17.

00h	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	FFh	00h

Figure 17 — Synchronization Field pattern

The synchronization field is followed by a 4 byte header defined in Table 19. After the sync pattern the remaining bytes of the data block are scrambled with a feedback mechanism. This is done with a 15-bit shift register fed back according to the polynomial $X^{15}+X+1$.

Table 19 — Sync Pattern Block Header

Header Offset	Header Byte	Content
0	Minute	Program area time of block, minute component (00-79 BCD)
1	Second	Program area time of block, second component (00-59 BCD)
2	Frame	Program area time of block, frame component (00-74 BCD)
3	Mode	Bits 1, 0 = Data Mode, Bits 7 -.5 = block indicator field, Bits 4 – 2 = Reserved. When Bits 7 – 5 = 000 indicates user data.

Mode byte Format is:

Bits 7, 6, 5	000b	User Data block
	001b	Fourth Run-in block
	010b	Third Run-in block
	011b	Second Run-in block
	100b	First Run-in block
	101b	Link block. Physical linking of data
	110b	Second Run-out block
	111b	First Run-out block
Bits 4, 3, 2	000b	Reserved
Bits 1, 0	00b	Mode 0 Data
	01b	Mode 1 Data
	10b	Mode 2 Data
	11b	Reserved

4.2.3.8.2 Block Format for Audio

Audio is streamed; so only user data resides within the frame. See 6.19.3.1.3.

4.2.3.8.3 Block Format for Mode 0 Data

Mode 0 is a rarely used format as it is zero filled in the entire user data area. Mode zero data (Table 20) has the following format.

Table 20 — Mode Zero Data Format

Byte Offset	Field Length	Content
0	12	Data Block Sync pattern
12	3	Block MSF address (BCD)
15	1	Data mode = 0
16	2 336	User data (each byte is zero)

4.2.3.8.4 Block Format for Mode 1 Data

Mode 1 data (Table 21) is most prevalent in CD-ROM applications. The sync pattern, header and user data are protected by a 32-bit EDC. Two additional layers of error correction, P and Q, collectively called Level 3 correction cover the header and user data. This is also referred to as Layered error correction (L-EC or C3).

Table 21 — Mode 1 Data Format

Byte Offset	Field Length	Content
0	12	Data Block Sync pattern
12	3	Block MSF address (BCD)
15	1	Data mode = 01
16	2 048	User data
2 064	4	EDC
2 068	8	Zero fill
2 076	172	P parity symbols
2 248	104	Q parity symbols

The coverage of the EDC is the sync pattern, Header, and the User Data.

The coverage of Level 3 P is Header, User Data, EDC, and the zero fill.

The coverage of Level 3 Q is Header, User Data, EDC, the zero fill, and the P parity.

4.2.3.8.5 Block Format for Mode 2 Data

4.2.3.8.5.1 Forms of Mode 2

Mode 2 data blocks have two types: formless and formed. Mode 2 formed blocks have two forms: form 1 and form 2.

4.2.3.8.5.2 Block Format for Mode 2 formless Data

The Mode 2 formless block format (Table 22) is rarely used. There is no defined EDC or additional correction.

Table 22 — Mode 2 formless block format

Byte Offset	Field Length	Content
0	12	Data Block Sync pattern
12	3	Block MSF address (BCD)
15	1	Data mode = 2
16	2 336	User data

4.2.3.8.5.3 Block Format for Mode 2 form 1 Data

The Mode 2 form 1 block format (Table 23) is regularly used in recorder applications and Video CD movies. The Mode 2 form 1 format is very similar to Mode 1 format. The differences are:

- The 8 zero fill bytes have been moved to between the header and user data as two copies of a 4 byte sub-header.
- The EDC, P-parity, and Q-parity do not cover the block header. This assures the ability of relocating data, including all parity symbols.

Table 23 — Mode 2 form 1 data format

Byte Offset	Field Length	Content
0	12	Data Block Sync pattern
12	3	Block MSF address (BCD)
15	1	Data mode = 2
16	4	Sub-header, first copy
20	4	Sub-header, second copy
24	2 048	User data
2 072	4	EDC
2 076	172	P parity symbols
2 248	104	Q parity symbols

The format of the sub-header is shown in Table 24.

Table 24 — Mode 2 Formed Sector Sub-header Format

Sub-Header Byte	Byte Name	Definition
0	File number	Identifies the file to which the block belongs
1	Channel number	Playback channel selection
2	Sub-mode	Bit 7: End-of-File
		Bit 6: Real-time block
		Bit 5: Form (0 = Form 1, 1 = Form 2)
		Bit 4: Trigger Block
		Bit 3: Data Block
		Bit 2: Audio Block (not traditional CD-DA audio)
		Bit 1: Video Block
		Bit 0: End-of-Record
3	Coding information	

4.2.3.8.5.4 Block Format for Mode 2 form 2 Data

Mode 2 form 2 data (Table 25) is regularly used in Video CD movies. The data is optionally covered by EDC within the last 4 bytes of the block.

Table 25 — Mode 2 form 2 data format

Byte Offset	Field Length	Content
0	12	Data Block Sync pattern
12	3	Block MSF address (BCD)
15	1	Data mode = 2
16	4	Sub-header, first copy
20	4	Sub-header, second copy
24	2 324	User data
2 348	4	Optional EDC over Bytes 16 – 2 347

4.2.3.9 CD Recordable and CD ReWritable Media Structure

4.2.3.9.1 ATIP

An unrecorded CD-R or CD-RW media has no data available for locating the spiral in the traditional way of CD-ROM Drives. A blank CD-R/CD-RW is not smooth. It is pre-grooved with a built-in wobble for the purpose of defining the spiral.

The wobble is a 22.05 kHz signal (at 1X) modulated with digital information. The information recorded within the pre-groove defines frames of 42 bits. This is known as Absolute Time In Pre-groove (ATIP, see Figure 18).

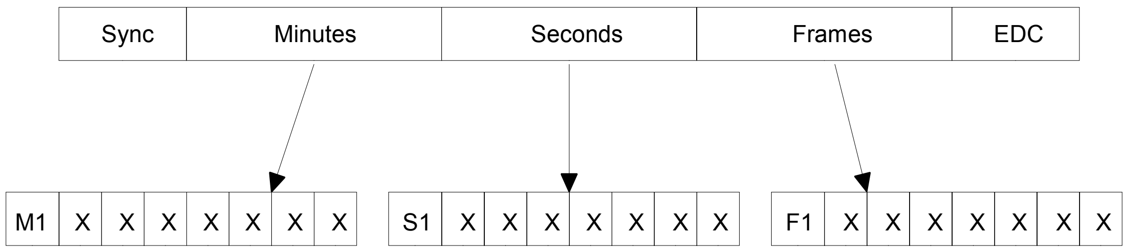


Figure 18 — ATIP Data

The area from any ATIP sync to the next ATIP sync is called an ATIP frame. Each ATIP frame defines the recording area for a CD sector. The information carried within an ATIP frame is 3 bytes labeled M, S, and F. The high order bit of each byte (M1, S1, F1) is used to identify the information contained within the remaining 21 bits. Specific information on capturing and decoding ATIP frame data is found in [CD-Ref6], [CD-Ref7], [CD-Ref8], [CD-Ref9], and [CD-Ref10].

ATIP information types are listed in Table 26.

Table 26 — ATIP Information Types

M1, S1, F1	ATIP Type Name	ATIP Data Content
000b	Time Code	ATIP frame location
001b	Additional Information 1	Recording speed and additional capacity parameters
010b	Additional Information 2	Recording speed parameters
011b	Additional Information 3	Media identification
100b	Time Code	ATIP frame location
101b	Special Information 1	Application code, Disc Type
110b	Special Information 2	Start time of disc's Lead-in
111b	Special Information 3	CD-R: Last Possible Start Time of last Lead-out when Special Information 1 is present in Lead-in. CD-R: Start time of additional capacity when Additional Information 1 is not present in Lead-in, but present in the PCA1 area. CD-RW: Last Possible Start Time of last Lead-out

4.2.3.9.2 ATIP Time Codes

Time codes are presented as MSF with each byte encoded as BCD. The M1, S1, and F1 bits (000b or 100b) are considered a part of the time code. The starting ATIP time code on the disc is typically larger than 95:00:00. As the pre-groove is followed from the inner radius, time codes increment by one frame per ATIP frame until 99:59:74 is reached. The next ATIP frame has time code 00:00:00 – the start if the program area. ATIP frame time codes continue incrementing by one frame until 99:59:00 is reached. If the disc has capacity remaining, the high order 4-bits of the minute field continues to increment past 9, while all other digits are held to BCD encoding. See Figure 19.

			Inner Radius
PCA, PMA, Lead-in	Start of Pre-groove	> 95:00:00	
		...	
		99:59:74	
Traditional Program Area	Start of Program Area	00:00:00	
		...	
	Maximum capacity for all CD-RW and older CD-R	79:59:74	
Extended Program Area		80:00:00	
		...	
	Last fully BCD encoded time code	99:59:74	
	Start of additional capacity time coding	A0:00:00	
		...	
			Outer Radius

Figure 19 — Time Codes in CD-R and CD-RW Pre-groove

4.2.3.9.3 Special Information

Special Information types 1, 2, and 3:

a) are present on all CD-R and CD-RW media,
b) are interleaved between ATIP time code frames within the area that precedes the program area,
c) do not appear before the MSF address in Special Information 2 (Start Time of Disc's Lead-in).

Special Information 1 (SI1) includes:

a) suggested write power,
b) reference write speed,
c) disc application code,
d) a disc type bit (R = 0, RW = 1),
e) a disc sub-type code (contains valid information only for CD-RW media),
f) three presence bits for Additional Information 1, 2, and 3.

Special Information 2 (SI2) contains the ATIP time code that corresponds to the disc's Lead-in address.

Special Information 3 (SI3) has 2 possible meanings:

a) on media defined in [CD-Ref6] (CD-R), the ATIP time code that corresponds to the recommended disc's Lead-out start address.
b) on media defined in [CD-Ref7] (Multi-Speed CD-R) and [CD-Ref8] (High Capacity CD-R), this address corresponds to the start of additional capacity. The recommended disc's Lead-out stop address is calculated by adding the additional capacity indicated from Additional Information 1 to this ATIP time code value.

4.2.3.9.4 Additional Information

Additional Information 1 (AI1):

a) Appears on all recordable and rewritable media,
b) On media as defined in [CD-Ref6] (CD-R) AI1 is found in the disc Lead-in area and the disc Lead-out area.
c) On media as defined in [CD-Ref9] (CD-RW) AI1 is found in the 30 seconds prior to the disc Lead-in,
d) On media as defined in [CD-Ref7] (Multi-Speed CD-R) AI1 is found in the disc Lead-in.

Additional Information 2 (AI2):

a) On media as defined in [CD-Ref6] (CD-R) and [CD-Ref9] (CD-RW) AI2, is not defined,
b) On media as defined in [CD-Ref7] (Multi-speed CD-R), AI2 is found in the 30 seconds prior to the disc Lead-in.

Additional Information 3 (AI3):

a) On media as defined in [CD-Ref6] (CD-R) and [CD-Ref9] (CD-RW) AI3, is not defined,
b) On media as defined in [CD-Ref7] (Multi-speed CD-R), AI3 is found in the 30 seconds prior to the disc Lead-in.

4.2.3.10 Blank Media Structure

4.2.3.10.1 CD-R Volume 1 and CD-RW

There are two additional areas prior to the disc Lead-in (Figure 20), the Power Calibration Area (PCA), and the Program Memory Area (PMA).

The Power Calibration Area is present only for CD-R and CD-RW media for the purpose of write power calibration. The PCA is divided into two areas: the test area and the count area. The test area is divided into 100 calibration partitions. The count area is an accounting area for recording usage of the test area.

The Program Memory Area is present only for CD-R and CD-RW media for the purpose of accounting for the usage of user data areas on the medium. This information is contained only within the Sub-channel of the PMA frames. The main channel content is not defined within the PMA.

Update the PMA means to update the PMA on the disc or to update the PMA Cache that shall be written to the PMA on the disc prior to the removing the disc from the Drive. PMA Caching is vendor specific.

PCA	PMA	Lead-In	Program Area	Lead-out

Figure 20 — CD-R Volume 1 and CD-RW Structure

4.2.3.10.2 Multi-Speed and High Capacity CD-R

Multi-Speed and High capacity CD-R media described in [CD-Ref7] and [CD-Ref10] have two PCAs. PCA1 is in the same location and has the same length as the PCA on media according to [CD-Ref6]. PCA2 begins after the last Lead-out on the disc and is minimally the same size as PCA1. Other areas of media according to [CD-Ref7] and [CD-Ref8] have the same definitions as for media according to [CD-Ref6]. See Figure 21.

PCA1	PMA	Lead-In	Program Area	Lead-out	PCA2

Figure 21 — Multi-Speed and High capacity CD-R Structure

4.2.3.10.3 PMA Q Sub-channel

The PMA is a temporary TOC to be used as a disc is being recorded in increments. The format of the Q Sub-channel for PMA entries is similar to those in the Lead-in.

The PMA is recorded in groups of 10 frames called a PMA unity. If any of the frames in a unity is recorded, then all frames in the unity shall be recorded. A given PMA entry shall appear either 5 or 10 times within a unity.

Q Sub-channel in the PMA has the general form shown in Figure 22.

ADR	DATA-Q								
0001-0110	TNO	POINT	MIN	SEC	FRAME	ZERO	PMIN	PSEC	PFRAME

Figure 22 — PMA, Q Sub-channel

Mode-1 Q Sub-channel in the PMA is a TOC item:

TNO	=	00
POINT	=	Track number encoded as two BCD digits.
ZERO	=	00-09bcd is a label of the frame number in the PMA unity
MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Track stop time in 6 BCD digits.
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Track start time in 6 BCD digits.

Mode-2 Q Sub-channel in the PMA is a Disc Identification item (optional):

TNO	=	00
POINT	=	00
ZERO	=	00-09bcd is a label of the frame number in the PMA unity
MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Disc identification as a 6 BCD digit number.
PMIN	=	00
PSEC	=	Sessions format: 00 – CD-DA or CD-ROM, 10 – CD-I, 20 – CD-ROM-XA
PFRAME	=	00

Mode-3 Q Sub-channel in the PMA is a Skip track item (optional, audio only):

TNO	=	00
POINT	=	01-21bcd is the mode-3 index of this item
ZERO	=	00-09bcd is a label of the frame number in the PMA unity
MIN	=	01-99bcd track number to skip upon playback
Each of the following:	=	00 if no skip track is specified
SEC, FRAME PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	01-99bcd (each byte) track number to skip upon playback

Mode-4 Q Sub-channel in the PMA is an unskip track item (optional, audio only):

TNO	=	00
POINT	=	01-21bcd is the mode-4 index of this item
ZERO	=	00-09bcd is a label of the frame number in the PMA unity
MIN	=	01-99bcd track number to unskip upon playback
Each of the following:	=	00 if no unskip track is specified
SEC, FRAME PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	01-99bcd (each byte) track number to unskip upon playback

Mode-5 Q Sub-channel in the PMA is a skip interval item:

TNO	=	00
POINT	=	01-40bcd is the mode-5 index of this item
ZERO	=	00-09bcd is a label of the frame number in the PMA unity
MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Skip interval stop time in 6 BCD digits.
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Skip interval start time in 6 BCD digits.

Mode-6 Q Sub-channel in the PMA is an “unskip interval” item:

TNO	=	00
POINT	=	01-40bcd is the mode-6 index of this item
ZERO	=	00-09bcd is a label of the frame number in the PMA unity
MIN, SEC, FRAME	=	Unskip interval stop time in 6 BCD digits.
PMIN, PSEC, PFRAME	=	Unskip interval start time in 6 BCD digits.

4.2.3.11 Recording

Blank CD-R is not randomly writable. CD-RW is limited in its random write capability. Due to the interleaved nature of CD frames, blank media shall be recorded in groups of frames with linkage for appending new recording.

There are two methods for linking separate writes on CD-R or CD-RW:

Audio – Linkage occurs within a single frame time. This assures that locating the linkage frame by its Q at a later time is nearly impossible.

Data – Since it is necessary to locate exact boundaries of user blocks, additional padding is inserted around the linkage frame. The collection of the link block, the pad blocks, and the user blocks is called a Packet. The format of the packet is shown in Figure 23.

Link Block	Run-in Block 1	Run-in Block 2	Run-in Block 3	Run-in Block 4	User Data Blocks	Run-out Block 1	Run-out Block 2

Figure 23 — Packet Format

Bits 5, 6, and 7 of the block's mode byte (see Table 27) uniquely identify blocks.

Table 27 — Block Identifier bits

Mode Byte Bits 7, 6, 5	Block
000	User Data
001	Run-in block 4
010	Run-in block 3
011	Run-in block 2
100	Run-in block 1
101	Link block
110	Run-out block 2
111	Run-out block 1

See 4.2.3.8.1 for a detailed definition of the Mode Byte. Main channel user data should be all zeros.

Only entire packets may be rewritten on CD-RW media.

There are 2 types of recording on CD-R: Uninterrupted and Incremental. Incremental recording requires linking, whereas uninterrupted does not.

Disc At Once is the only type of uninterrupted recording and is a special case of Session At Once. The recording begins at the start of the Lead-in and stops only when the last block of the Lead-out is written. The PMA is not written. No linking is required.

There are 5 types of incremental recording:

Session At Once – The recording begins at the start of the Lead-in of the next session and stops only when the last block of that session's Lead-out is written. The PMA is constructed and written as a separate write action. Linking between sessions is required.

Reserve Track – User data is not necessarily written. The PMA is written for the purpose of defining a new track.

Track At Once – A single packet that includes the pre-gap of the track and all of the track's user data.

Variable Packet – A variable number of user blocks is written between data linkage blocks. A variable packet shall be a part of the user data area of a track.

Fixed Packet – A fixed number of user blocks is written between the user blocks. A fixed packet shall be a part of the user data area of a track.

4.2.3.12 The Track Descriptor Block

The Track Descriptor Block (TDB) is required for Track at Once or Packet recording. When the TDB is present, each block of the pre-gap of a track is a TDB. When a track is only reserved for Track At Once recording, recording of the TDB is deferred until the track data is written. When a track is reserved for either sort of packet recording, the TDB shall be written as a single packet upon reservation.

The TDB contains main channel information about the track recording and optionally contains a history of tracks that preceded the TDB.

The TDB begins with an 8-byte header (Table 28). The TDB header is followed by one or more Track Descriptor Units (TDU) (Table 29).

Table 28 — Track Descriptor Block (TDB) header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	54h (ASCII “T”)							
1	44h (ASCII “D”)							
2	49h (ASCII “I”)							
3	Pre-gap Length encoded BCD							
4								
5	Reserved							Current
6	Lowest Track Number Listed (BCD)							
7	Highest Track Number Listed (BCD)							
8	One or more Track Descriptor Unit(s) (TDU)							
:								
n								

Pre-gap length is given in number of blocks.

The Current bit, when set to 1, indicates that only the TDU for the current track is present. When set to zero, indicates that a TDU for tracks with numbers smaller than or equal to the current track, are present.

Table 29 — Track Descriptor Unit (TDU) Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Track Number (BCD)							
1	Recording method							
2	(MSB)	Fixed Packet Size in blocks (BCD)						
3								
4								(LSB)
5	Reserved							
…	Reserved							
15	Reserved							

Recording method is coded as shown in Table 30.

Table 30 — Recording Method

Code	Recording Method
00h	Audio track written TAO
80h	Data track written TAO
90h	Incrementally written data track, variable packets
91h	incrementally written data track, fixed packets

Fixed Packet size is filled with FFFFFFh whenever the recording method is not fixed packet.

4.2.4 High Speed CD-RW media recording

High speed CD-RW is defined in [CD-Ref10]. High Speed CD-RW recording speed ranges are from 4x to 24x recording and also allows CAV recording. Newer versions of this media (speeds greater than 10x) are referred to as Ultra-Speed CD-RW. Upon CAV recording, write speed needs to be set for each track. If the Drive is not capable of recording continuous track in CAV, then the Drive shall use CLV mode with initial speed of CAV recording. e.g., if the 4x-10x CAV recording is attempted for TAO mode, but the Drive does not support CAV for

TAO mode, then the Drive shall choose 4x CLV recording for that track. This condition is not considered as an error.

It may not be possible to record High speed CD-RW media using Drives that comply with only Orange Book Part 3 volume 1. Upon a write attempt to the High speed CD-RW media using a Drive that is only compliant with [CD-Ref9], some Drives return CHECK CONDITION Status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to either ILLEGAL REQUEST/WRITE PROTECTED or MEDIUM ERROR/NO SEEK COMPLETE. The recommended SK/ASC/ASCQ values for this case are ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

In order to minimize the impact to legacy CD-R/RW Drives and software, the SET CD SPEED Command been modified. SET STREAMING Command and GET CONFIGURATION command for CD-R/RW implementation are defined.

Command Sequence example:

Upon media insertion, Host issues READ TRACK INFORMATION Command to find the next writable address. The GET CONFIGURATION Command may be used to identify the Drive’s capability for the mounted media.

Host then issues either SET CD SPEED Command or SET STREAMING Command for the track to be recorded. Also the Host sets an appropriate Write Parameters, and ready to write data.

4.3 DVD

4.3.1 General

4.3.1.1 Overview

The DVD Model is the description for the media types defined by the DVD Forum: DVD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD-R/-RW, DVD-Download, and media types defined by the DVD+RW Alliance: DVD+R and DVD+RW. There are ECMA and ISO standards that describe the characteristics of most DVD media types.

Like CD Drives/Media there are multiple types of DVD Drives/Media:

a) Read Only (DVD-ROM)

b) Recordable (i.e., write-once) (DVD-R, DVD-Download and DVD+R)

c) Re-Writable (DVD-RAM, DVD-RW, and DVD+RW).

The capacities of these different media vary. Some of these media also have the possibility of one or two sides, and independently, one or two layers per side.

4.3.1.2 Spiral Structure

There are common properties among all of the DVD media types. In the simplest case (single-sided, single layer), the physical track structure is similar to CD: a continuous spiral.

DVD provides the ability to use two focus depths in order that two spirals may be accessed from one side of the media. Additionally, media may be produced that contains recording on both sides of the media.

There are up to 4 possibilities for physical track structure:

a) Single sided, single layer

b) Single sided, dual layer

c) Two sided, single layer,

d) Two sided, dual layer.

In all cases, a track is one layer on one side of the media.

There are two types of track path for dual layer discs, either parallel or opposite. When the path is parallel, each track has its own Lead-in and Lead-out. When the path is opposite, the tracks share a single Lead-in and a single Lead-out and each layer has a transition zone called the middle area.

4.3.1.3 ECC Blocks

4.3.1.3.1 General

When fully recorded, a DVD spiral consists of an uninterrupted sequence of ECC blocks. Each ECC block contains 16 sectors of 2 048 data bytes each. Sectors are numbered with a 24-bit address. Numbering is linear and integral, beginning with zero. Sector zero exists only for the purposes of definition. The general DVD ECC block is based upon DVD-ROM standards [ISO/IEC 16448:2002] and [ISO/IEC 16449:2002].

Unlike CD media, adjacent sectors of DVD media are not necessarily interleaved. An ECC block consists of 16 sectors with headers, EDC symbols, and ECC symbols. Individual sector data are interleaved in order to minimize the effects of large media flaws. However, adjacent ECC blocks are not interleaved.

In order to read and extract a single sector of data, the Drive shall read the ECC block containing the sector, apply error correction to the ECC block, and de-interleave prior to extracting the data from the selected sector.

4.3.1.3.2 The Structure of the Data Sector

A DVD data sector contains 2 064 bytes, containing 2 048 bytes of main data and 16 bytes of additional information.

The logical layout of a DVD data sector is shown in Figure 24.

4 bytes	2 bytes	6 bytes	2 048 bytes	4 bytes
ID	IED	RSV / CPR_MAI	Main Data	EDC

Figure 24 — Logical Layout of a DVD Data Sector

ID is a field that identifies the sector

IED contains 2 bytes of redundancy as an error detection code (EDC) for the ID field.

RSV is a 6-byte field that is reserved and shall be recorded with zeros. This field is named CPR_MAI (Copyright Management Information) only for DVD-ROM and DVD-Download discs. Their setting is application-dependent. If this setting is not specified by the application, all bytes shall be set to zeros.

MAIN DATA contains 2 048 information bytes.

EDC contains 4 bytes of redundancy as an error detection code (EDC) for the entire sector.

The ID field is viewed as a 32-bit field as shown in Figure 25.

Sector Information	Physical Sector Number
Bits 31 thru 24	Bits 23 through 0

Figure 25 — ID Field

Sector Information varies for different DVD media types.

The least significant 24 bits (bits 23 through 0) contain the Physical Sector Number (PSN). The PSN of the first Physical Sector of an ECC Block shall be an integral multiple of 16. In the data zone, the translation of LBA to PSN varies according to media.

4.3.1.3.3 The Structure of the ECC Block

A 2 064-byte sector is divided into 12 rows of 172 bytes each. Main data is scrambled similar to CD-ROM data scrambling. 16 consecutive sectors are packed a single structure of 192 rows, each with 172 bytes. Error correction redundancy symbols are appended in order to produce 208 rows of 182 bytes each.

The organization of sector data and redundancy symbols within an ECC block is illustrated in Figure 26. Columnar symbols (Cx,y) are calculated and appended to rows, then Row symbols (Rx,y) are calculated and appended to columns. Columnar redundancy symbols are collectively known as Inner Parity (PI). Row redundancy symbols are collectively known as Outer Parity (PO).

	User Data					ECC Parity on Rows				
User Data	B0,0	B0,1	B0,2	...	B0,171	C0,0	C0,1	C0,2	....	C0,9
	B1,0	B1,1	B1,2	…	B1,171	C1,0	C1,1	C1,2	…	C1,9
	B2,0	B2,1	B2,2	…	B2,171	C2,0	C2,1	C2,2	…	C2,9
	B3,0	B3,1	B3,2	…	B3,171	C3,0	C3,1	C3,2	…	C3,9
	…	…	…		…	…	…	…	…	…
	B190,0	B190,1	B190,2	…	B190,171	C190,0	C190,1	C190,2	…	C190,9
	B191,0	B191,1	B191,2	…	B191,171	C191,0	C191,1	C191,2	…	C191,9
ECC Parity	R0,0	R0,1	R0,2	…	R0,171	C192,0	C192,1	C192,2	…	C192,9
	R1,0	R1,1	R1,2	…	R1,171	C193,0	C193,1	C193,2	…	C193,9
	R2,0	R2,1	R2,2	…	R2,171	C194,0	C194,1	C194,2	…	C194,9
	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
	R15,0	R15,1	R15,2	…	R15,171	C207,0	C207,1	C207,2	…	C207,9

Figure 26 — ECC Block Structure

Each of the 16 sectors of an ECC block has a unique PSN. The PSNs are sequential such that if the smallest is N, then N+1, N+2, N+3, …, N+15 are also present in the ECC block. i.e., the sectors are sequenced in an intuitively correct way.

4.3.1.4 The Lead-in Area

The Lead-in Area has the general arrangement shown in Figure 27. Actual sizes and locations of each zone vary according to media type.

Lead-in Area	Initial Zone	Start of the spiral – zone of protection
	Area Specific to Media Type	Use varies according to media type
	Reference Code Zone	Read Calibration Area
	Buffer Zone 1	Separation Area
	Control Data Zone	Disc information - part of this is media specific
	Area Specific to Media Type	Use varies according to media type
Data Area	Data Zone	Viewed as user data area. Start PSN varies. Recordable media may implement a defect management.

Figure 27 — General Layout of Lead-in Area

For all DVD media types, the Control Data Zone consists of 192 ECC blocks. The first 2 sectors of each ECC block contains the same information. The structure of an ECC block within this zone is shown in Table 31.

Table 31 — Structure of Control Data ECC Block

Sector Number	Description
0	Physical Format Information
1	Disc Manufacturing Information
2	Content provider information
… ... …	
14	
15	

The format of the Physical Format Information (sector 0 of a Control Data ECC Block) is shown in Table 32.

Table 32 — Physical Format Information

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Disk Category (Book Type)				Version Number (Part Version)			
1	Disk Size				Maximum Transfer Rate			
2	Reserved	Number of Layers		Track Path	Layer Type			
3	Linear Density				Track Density			
4	Data Area Allocation							
5								
… …								
15								
16	BCA Flag	Reserved						
17- 2 047	Medium Unique Data							

Disk Category defines the source of the media specification. Disk Category codes are shown in Table 33.

Table 33 — Disk Category

Disk Category	Associated Media	Disk Category	Associated Media
0h	DVD-ROM/DVD-Download	8h	Reserved
1h	DVD-RAM	9h	DVD+RW
2h	DVD-R	Ah	DVD+R
3h	DVD-RW	Bh	Reserved
4h	Reserved	Ch	Reserved
5h	Reserved	Dh	DVD+RW DL (see Annex E)
6h	Reserved	Eh	DVD+R DL
7h	Reserved	Fh	Reserved

Version Number specifies the media version.

Disk Size specifies the physical disc diameter as shown in Table 34.

Table 34 — Disk Size

Disk Size Code	Disc Diameter
0000b	120 mm
0001b	80 mm
0010b – 1111b	Reserved

Maximum Rate defines the maximum read data rate. Meaning of specific values is media dependent.

Number of Layers, Track Path, Layer Type, Linear Density, and Track Density specify media recording structure. See the appropriate media specification.

Data Area Allocation specifies bounds of the recorded/recordable area. This is specific to media type.

The BCA Flag identifies the presence/absence of a Burst Cutting Area.

Medium Unique Data contains data specific to the media type.

Disc Manufacturing Information (sector 1 of a Control Data ECC Block) is 2 048 bytes and has no standardized format.

4.4 DVD-ROM

4.4.1 Track Structure

DVD-ROM may have any of the 4 structures:

a) single sided, single layer,
b) single sided, dual layer,
c) two sided, single layer,
d) two sided, dual layer.

Two addresses are used: the Block address contained in the sector headers (Physical Sector Number), and the address used to reference the blocks from the Host system (LBA). The address used from the Host starts at 0 and progresses up through the end of the recorded information on the disc. LBA 0 shall correspond with the sector address of 030000h on DVD-ROM media. Only the Data Area is generally addressable using an LBA.

4.4.2 Sector Structure

DVD-ROM ECC block structure is consistent with the definition in 4.3.1.3. For DVD-ROM, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 28.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Reserved	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	0b	Indicates pit tracking
Reflectivity	0b	Indicates reflectivity exceeds 40%
	1b	Indicates reflectivity is less than or equal to 40%
Reserved	0b	Reserved
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
	11b	When the sector is in a Middle Zone
Data Type	0b	Indicates read-only data
Layer Number	0b	When the sector is in layer 0
	1b	When the sector is in layer 1

Figure 28 — DVD-ROM ID field Sector Information details

4.4.3 The Lead-in

The DVD-ROM Lead-in structure is consistent with the structure shown in Figure 27. Table 35 shows the Lead-in structure specific to DVD-ROM.

Table 35 — DVD-ROM Lead-in Structure

Starting PSN	Disc Area
22FA0h	Initial Zone All 00h
2F000h	Reference Code Zone
2F020h	Buffer Zone 1 All 00h
2F200h	Control Data Zone (192 ECC Blocks)
2FE00h	Buffer Zone 2 All 00h
30000h . .	Data Area

DVD-ROM is consistent with the general structure of the Control Data ECC Block as shown in Table 31 and the Common Part of the Physical Format Information as shown in Table 32.

Table 36 shows the Data Allocation Area (relative to its position in the Physical Format Information) specific to DVD-ROM.

Table 36 — Data Area Allocation Definition

Byte	Single Layer/ Parallel Track Path	Opposite Track Path
4	00h	00h
5 6 7	Starting PSN of Data Area (030000h)	Starting PSN of Data Area (030000h)
8	00h	00h
9 10 11	End PSN of Data Area	End PSN of Data Area
12	00h	00h
13 14 15	000000h	End PSN in Layer 0

The Media Unique Data in the Physical Format area of the Control Data Zone is reserved and zero filled.

4.5 DVD-RAM

4.5.1 General

DVD-RAM is a single layer media that may be single sided or two sided. DVD-RAM is defined in both 80 mm (1.46 GB) and 120 mm (4.7 GB) discs.

4.5.2 Physical Track Structure

DVD-RAM media is divided into zones much like notching on magnetic disk drives. The first sector of each revolution in these Zones is always aligned. The data is recorded using a constant angular velocity within each Zone, thus the actual size of the “bits” within a zone increase from the beginning of a zone toward the end of the zone. This keeps the data rate constant for reading and writing within each Zone with constant rotational speed. Each Zone has a fixed radius in width and as such each contains a different number of sectors.

120mm DVD-RAM media is divided into 35 zones, where zone 0 has 25 sectors per revolution, and zone 34 has 59 sectors per revolution. 80mm DVD-RAM media is divided into 14 zones, where zone 0 has 25 sectors per revolution, and zone 13 has 38 sectors per revolution. See Figure 29.

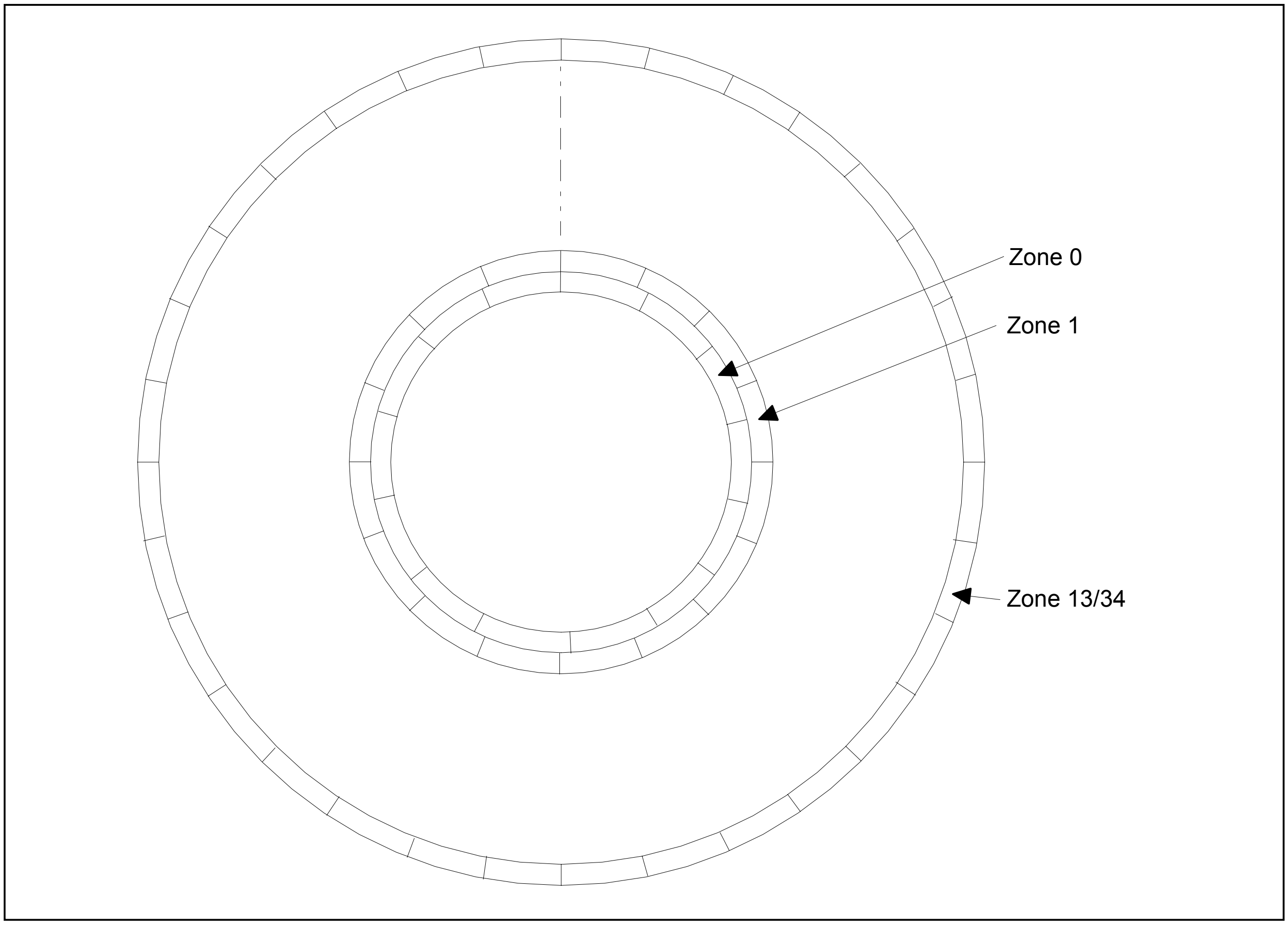


Figure 29 — Zoning of DVD-RAM media

4.5.3 Sector Structure

The basic DVD ECC block structure as defined in 4.3.1.3 applies to DVD-RAM. For DVD-RAM, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 30.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Recording Type	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	1b	Indicates groove tracking
Reflectivity	0b	Indicates reflectivity exceeds 40%
	1b	Indicates reflectivity is less than or equal to 40%
Recording Type	0b	Lead-in, Lead-out, General Data in Data Area
	1b	Real-time Data in Data Area
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
	11b	Reserved
Data Type	0b	Indicates embossed data
	1b	Indicates rewritable data
Layer Number	0b	DVD-RAM uses only layer 0

Figure 30 — DVD-RAM ID field Sector Information details

4.5.4 The Lead-in

The DVD-RAM Lead-in structure is consistent with the structure shown in Figure 27. Table 37 shows the Lead-in structure specific to DVD-RAM.

Table 37 — DVD-RAM Lead-in Structure

Starting PSN	Disc Area
22FA0h	Initial Zone All 00h
2F000h	Reference Code Zone
2F010h	Buffer Zone 1 All 00h
2F200h	Control Data Zone (192 ECC Blocks)
2FE00h	Buffer Zone 2 All 00h
30000h	Defect Controls
31000h . .	DATA AREA

DVD-RAM is consistent with the general structure of the Control Data ECC Block as shown in Table 31 and the Common Part of the Physical Format Information as shown in Table 32.

Table 38 shows the Data Allocation Area (relative to its position in the Physical Format Information) for DVD-RAM.

Table 38 — DVD-RAM Data Area Allocation Definition

Byte	DVD-RAM
4	00h
5 6 7	Starting PSN of Data Area (031000h)
8	00h
9 10 11	End PSN of Data Area
12	00h
13 14 15	000000h

On DVD-RAM, all Control Data Zone ECC blocks are prerecorded with embossed data.

The Media Unique Data in the Physical Format area of the Control Data Zone is shown in Table 39.

Table 39 — DVD-RAM Unique Part of Physical Format Information

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
32	Disc Type Identification							
33–499	Reserved							
500	Velocity							
501–548	Write conditions at Velocity							
549–596	Disc Manufacturer’s name							
597–612	Disc Manufacturer’s supplementary information							
613–623	Write Power Control Parameters							
624–699	Reserved							
700	3x Speed Velocity (Optional)							
701–757	Write Conditions at 3x Speed Velocity (Optional)							
758–2 047	Reserved							

4.5.5 Logical Structure

The logical layout of a DVD-RAM disc is shown in Figure 31.

The DVD-RAM Data Area begins at 031000h. This is caused by the existence of Defect Controls. There are two Defect Controls: one is located immediately before the Data Area and starts at 030000h, and the other is located immediately after the Data Area. The Defect Controls are non-user addressable areas. These blocks contain Defect Management Areas (DMAs).

The DMA contains Disc Definition Structure (DDS) for the recording method used for formatting of the disc, a Primary Defect List (PDL) for recording defective sectors identified at formatting of the disc, and a Secondary Defect List (SDL) for recording defective ECC blocks identified during writing/reading user data.

The Data Area has one or two Spare Areas. There are two types of Spare area, Primary Spare Area (PSA) and Supplementary Spare Area (SSA). The PSA is always pre-assigned at Initialization/Re-initialization. The SSA size is selectable at Initialization/Re-initialization and is expandable afterward. The User Area and Spare Areas

contain user accessible sectors addressed by an LBA. The LBAs increase toward the Outer Diameter. Defective sectors are replaced by sectors in the Spare Area. The last LBA is 23051Fh in the case of 120mm and AE6EFh in the case of 80mm.

The location of Primary Spare Area is written in the DDS and the location of Supplementary Spare Area is written in the SDL.

The total number of sectors in the PSA is 12 800 on 120mm media and 5 120 on 80mm media. DVD-RAM has only one group. The total number of sectors in the SSA is selectable from 0 to 97 792 in the case of 120mm media and 89 088 in the case of 80mm media. A Guard Area is located at the boundary to prevent signal cross-talk between Zones. The LBA of first Sector in the Group is the case of no defects in the media.

Lead-in	Defect Controls	PSA	User Data	SSA	Defect Controls	Lead-out

Figure 31 — DVD-RAM Logical Layout

4.5.6 DVD-RAM Recording

DVD-RAM is randomly writable in ECC block increments. Random writability in 2 048 byte sectors is accomplished by read-modify-write actions with ECC blocks. DVD-RAM implements defect management that provides for a seamless LBA space for the Host. Consequently, DVD-RAM implements the Removable Disk Profile.

4.5.7 Command Processing Preconditions for DVD-RAM

If the TEST UNIT READY command responds with GOOD status, then the Drive is able to accept and attempt processing of some media accessing command. It is possible that the Drive responds with GOOD status to the TEST UNIT READY command, but may be unable to start processing some media access commands (e.g., READ (10), WRITE (10) command). An example of this situation is when DVD-RAM media is present and ready, but the disc has never been formatted. If a media access command, except the FORMAT UNIT command, is sent to the Drive, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NOT READY/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, NOT READY/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED, or MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED.

4.6 DVD-R/-RW

4.6.1 Track Structure

DVD-R and DVD-RW are single track, single layer media. DVD-R/-RW is defined in both 80 mm (1.46 GB) and 120 mm (4.7 GB) discs.

4.6.2 Sector Structure

The basic DVD ECC block structure as defined in 4.3.1.3 applies to DVD-R/-RW. For DVD-R/-RW, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 32.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Reserved	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	1b	Indicates groove tracking
Reflectivity	0b	Indicates reflectivity exceeds 40% (DVD-R)
	1b	Indicates reflectivity is less than or equal to 40% (DVD-RW)
Reserved	0b	Reserved
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
	11b	Reserved
Data Type	0b	Indicates read-only data or rewritable data
	1b	Indicates sector is linking data
Layer Number	0b	Through the entrance surface only one recording layer may be accessed

Figure 32 — DVD-R/-RW ID field Sector Information details

4.6.3 The Lead-in

The DVD-R/-RW Lead-in structure is consistent with the structure shown in Figure 27. Table 40 shows the Lead-in structures specific to DVD-R and DVD-RW.

Table 40 — Lead-in Structure: DVD-RW and DVD-R

Starting PSN	Disc Area
22FA0h	Initial Zone All 00h
2E200h	Buffer Zone 0 (all 00h)
2E400h	Physical Format Information Zone
2F000h	Reference Code Zone
2F020h	Buffer Zone 1 All 00h
2F200h	Control Data Zone (192 ECC Blocks, Pre-recorded area)
2FE00h	Extra Border Zone
30000h . .	DATA AREA

4.6.3.1 Control Data Zone

DVD-R/-RW is consistent with the general structure of the Control Data ECC Block as shown in Table 31 and the Common Part of the Physical Format Information as shown in Table 32.

Table 41 shows the Data Allocation Area (relative to its position in the Physical Format Information) for DVD-R/-RW.

Table 41 — DVD-R/-RW Data Area Allocation Definition

Byte	DVD-RW/DVD-R
4	00h
5 6 7	Starting PSN of Data Area (030000h)
8	00h
9 10 11	Last address of Data Recordable area
12	00h
13 14 15	000000h

The Media Unique Data in the Physical Format area of the Control Data Zone is shown in Table 42.

Table 42 — DVD-RW/-R for General Unique Part of Physical Format Information

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
32 - 35	Start PSN of the Extra Border Zone (= 02FE10h)							
36 - 39	Start PSN of Physical Format Information blocks in Extra Border Zone (= 02FFA0h)							
40 - 2 047	Reserved							

4.6.3.2 DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information Zone

The R/RW-Physical Format Information Zone is defined only for DVD-RW and DVD-R media. The R/RW-Physical Format Information Zone contains 192 ECC blocks. DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information consists of 16 sectors and is repeated 192 times. The structure of R/RW-Physical Format Information is shown in Table 43.

Table 43 — DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information Zone

Sector Number	Description
0	Reserved
1	Manufacturing Information
2	Physical Format Information
3	Reserved
:	
15	

The contents of the Physical Format Information in DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information Zone is same as the contents of Physical Format Information in Control Data Zone except Data Area Allocation field and unique part of Physical Format Information (byte 32 – byte 2 047).

The definition of the Data Area Allocation field in DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information is shown in Table 44.

Table 44 — Data Area Allocation Field in DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information

Byte	Disc at Once	Incremental Write/Restricted Overwrite
4	00h	00h
5	Starting PSN of Data Area (030000h)	Starting PSN of Data Area (030000h)
6		
7		
8	00h	00h
9	End PSN of Data area	Last Recorded Sector Number of the last Track in the Session[1]
10		
11		
12	00h	00h
13	000000h	000000h
14		
15		

[1]When the Lead-in or Border-in is recorded in the Restricted Overwrite mode, and when the last session is in an Intermediate state, this field shall be set to 30000h.

The definition of the Unique Part of Physical Format Information fields in DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information Zone is shown in Table 45. When the Lead-in is recorded in the Disc at once recording mode, this field contains all 00h data.

Table 45 — Unique Part of Physical Format Information in DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
32 – 35	Start PSN of the current Border-out							
36 – 39	Start PSN of the next Border-in							
40 – 2 047	Reserved							

4.6.3.3 Extra Border Zone

The Extra Border Zone is defined for DVD-RW and DVD-R media.

The structure of Extra Border Zone is shown in Figure 33.

The structure of Extra Border Zone is similar to Border Zone. However, the length of Extra Border Zone is only 32 ECC blocks and there are no Next Border Markers and Stop Blocks.

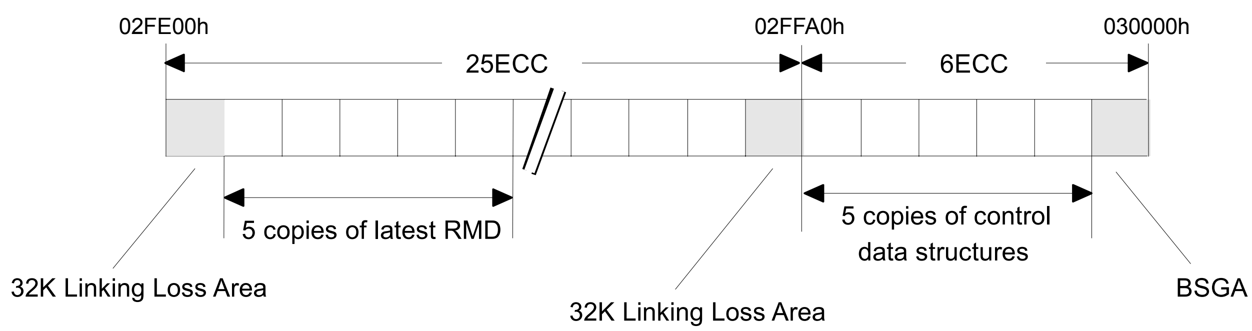


Figure 33 — Structure of Extra Border Zone

4.6.4 DVD-R Recording

4.6.4.1 RZone Description

The DVD-R specifications describe a logical entity called RZone.

a) Two RZones are separated by one ECC block that is zero filled called the Block Sync Guard Area (BSGA) to assure a consistent link loss.
b) The RZone begins at the LBA of the first sector of user data after a BSGA.
c) An RZone ends at an ECC block boundary, so the last ECC block may contain 0 to 15 sectors that do not contain user data. When considering the RZone length, those sectors are considered part of the RZone. When the RZone is recorded incrementally, there may more link loss areas. When considering the RZone length, the link loss is part of the RZone. The length of an RZone is always a multiple of 16 and includes a BSGA except for the RZone that precedes the Lead-out.
d) The maximum number of RZones is 2 302.

4.6.4.2 Border-in/Border-out

The DVD-R specifications describe entities called Lead-in, Lead-out, Border-in and Border-out (Figure 34). DVD-R always has zero or one Lead-in and zero or one Lead-out. The Lead-in, if recorded, is always at the beginning of the disc and the Lead-out, if recorded, is always at the end of the disc. No data may be recorded beyond the Lead-out. The information recording area is a sequence of Lead-in/Border-in, Bordered Areas, and Border-out. This area, when written, is called a complete session.

If intermediate interchangeability is desired before recording the Lead-out, a Border-out is written in its place. When additional recording is to be done, a Border-in is recorded between the last Border-out and the new data.

If only a Border-in and Border-out are to be written (after incrementally recording data), the Host should set the Multi-session field of the Write Parameters mode page to 11b. If set to 11b, and insufficient space exists on the medium for another Border, the Drive shall permanently close the medium by recording a Lead-out. If it is desired to permanently close a disc, the Multi-session field is set to 00b. The Multi-session field is ignored on DVD-R when the Write Type is set to Session at Once, and no next Border is possible. Within this standard, Multi-session is used instead of Multi-Border, incomplete session is used instead of incomplete Border, complete session is used instead of complete Border for DVD-R Drives.

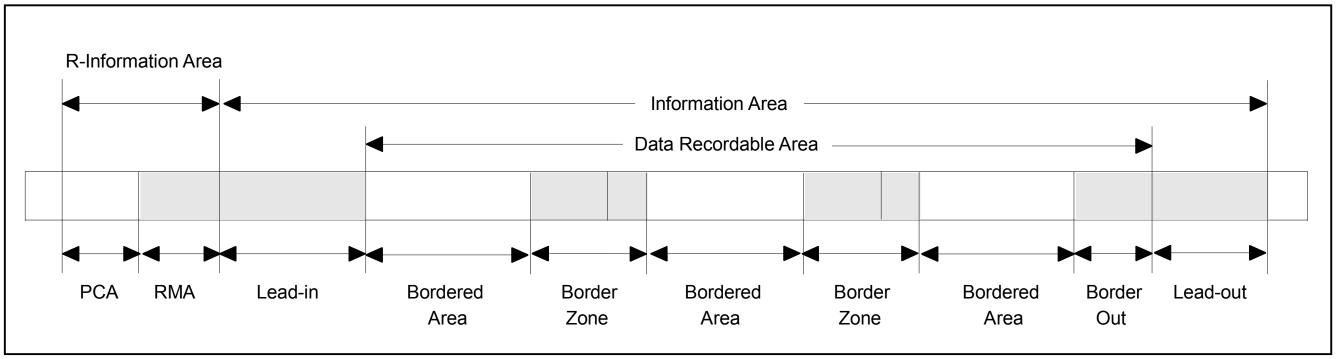


Figure 34 — Border Zone and Bordered Area

4.6.4.3 RMD Caching for RMA Updates

The RMA is the Recording Management Area for DVD-R media. The RMA is in the disc Lead-in. The Recording Management Data (RMD) contains descriptions of all defined RZones and Borders. The RMD is typically cached in order to avoid exhaustion of the RMA by too many updates. To Update the RMA means to update the RMD on the disc or to update the RMD Cache that will be written into the RMA on the disc prior to the removing the disc from the Drive. RMD Caching is vendor specific.

4.6.5 DVD-RW Recording

4.6.5.1 General

DVD-RW media is physically structured like DVD-R media but it is also possible to overwrite and erase DVD-RW media.

DVD-RW medium consists of Power Calibration Area (PCA), Recording Management Area (RMA), Lead-in Area, Data Area and Lead-out Area. Data Area may contain Border Zones.

DVD-RW media supports two fundamentally different recording modes: Sequential recording mode and Restricted overwrite mode. Only one of the recording modes is allowed on a disc surface. The two modes are distinguished by a different format of the Recording Management Data (RMD) recorded on the disc.

4.6.5.2 Sequential recording mode

The Sequential recording mode is provided to write data on DVD-RW media with the same manner as DVD-R. Overwriting is prohibited during this recording mode even if the mounted media is overwritable. However, the erasable functionality is available.

When a DVD-RW medium is in Sequential recording mode, the Drive is only able to perform sequential recording (Disc-at-once or Incremental). The Write Type field in Write Parameters mode page is used to specify if Disc-at-once recording or incremental recording will be used. If a buffer under-run occurs during sequential recording, Lossless-Linking may be performed.

4.6.5.3 Restricted overwrite mode

The Restricted overwrite mode provides the restricted overwrite method to write user data on a DVD-RW medium. A format operation is required in advance to use the media as available for writing of user data using restricted overwrite method.

When a media is in Restricted overwrite mode, the Drive is able to overwrite randomly within a formatted area on the media.

When:

a) there is only one Bordered Area on a DVD-RW disc,
b) a part of Lead-in is recorded, and
c) 32 ECC blocks with Lead-out attribute are recorded after the end of user data, or
    a) on a multi-bordered DVD-RW disc,
    b) the Border-in of the last Bordered area is recorded, and
    c) 32 ECC blocks with Lead-out attribute are recorded after the end of user data,

the Bordered Area is in the intermediate state.

If the last (only) Bordered Area has the intermediate state, the Drive is able to append data from the NWA that appears during the intermediate state. The intermediate state only appears at the last Bordered Area during Restricted overwrite mode. The Starting PSN of the Data Area field and Last recorded address of last RZone in the Bordered Area field in Physical Format Information of the last Lead-in/Border-in shall be set to 30000h. The Start PSN of the current Border-out field and Start PSN of the next Border-in field in the DVD-RW unique part of the Physical Format Information of the last Lead-in/Border-in shall be set to 00h.

There are some restrictions when overwriting is performed on DVD-RW media. The Drive is able to record data only by the multiple of ECC block length. The Host shall write data in integral multiple of 16 sectors starting at a logical block address that is an integral multiple of 16. If a WRITE command does not start at the integral multiple of 16 logical block address, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE. If the Transfer Length field value of a WRITE command is not an integral multiple of 16 sectors, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The Drive writes a series of ECC blocks sequentially without Linking Loss sectors. The Drive does not perform hardware defect management, Read Modify Write, and Verify after Write. The Drive does not use method 2 addressing of CD.

Write Parameters mode page shall not be used during Restricted overwrite mode.

Attempting to read an unwritten sector shall cause CHECK CONDITION Status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to BLANK/NO ADDITIONAL SENSE.

The Drive starts writing from a Link position in the first Sync frame of an ECC block and stop writing at a Link position of an ECC block that is next ECC block of the last ECC block sent by the host. This is the basic operation of restricted overwrite.

In this mode, the Data Type bit in physical ID of sector just before the ECC block by which writing is begun is not written by the Drive. Any linking becomes Lossless-Link.

4.6.5.4 Recording mode transition

When a new DVD-RW disc is inserted into a DVD-RW Drive, the disc is treated as in Sequential recording mode. The FORMAT UNIT command (Format Type = ’Full’ or ’Quick’) is used to format the DVD-RW media. When the medium is formatted, the Drive and disc enter the Restricted overwrite mode and the restricted overwrite method is available on the disc. To change the recording mode, the BLANK command (Blanking Type = ’Blank the disc’ or ’Minimally blank the disc’) is used to make the disc blank and the recording mode is changed to Sequential recording mode.

4.7 DVD-R Dual Layer

4.7.1 Introduction

The DVD-R Dual Layer (DVD-R DL) medium is DVD-R medium with two recording layers on a single side that enable recording the same capacity as DVD-ROM Dual Layer medium. DVD-R DL is constructed to be recorded only as an OTP disc. When a disc/Border is closed for interchange, the disc is readable by DVD players and DVD read-only Drives.

Table 46 shows the general parameters of DVD-R DL.

Table 46 — DVD-R media parameters

DVD-R spec Version Characteristics	2.1 for General (Single Layer)	3.0 (Dual Layer)
Capacity per side (120 mm)	4.7 gbytes	8.54 gbytes
Channel bit length (µm)	0.133	0.147
Track pitch (µm)	0.74	0.74
Number of Layers per side	1	2
Reflectivity	45 - 85 %	16 - 27 %
Control Data Zone	pre-recorded/embossed	
Maximum Number of NWAs	3	4
Standard recording speed	1x/2x	2x

Specific format requirements are detailed in [DVD-Ref5] (DVD-R Dual Layer Ver. 3.0 disc specification).

4.7.2 Physical Overview

In contrast to DVD-ROM Dual Layer medium, the DVD-R Dual Layer medium is constructed to be recorded only as an OTP disc.

The area on L1 should be recorded through the recorded area on L0 due to the characteristics of recording material. If the recording order is not kept, the uniformity of the recorded signal on L1 may not be good due to different transmissivity between recorded area and unrecorded area on L0.

To record L1 through the recorded area on L0, the L1 area size is manufactured with a smaller size compared to L0 by considering several physical factors (e.g., radial run-out, laser beam profile). See Figure 35.

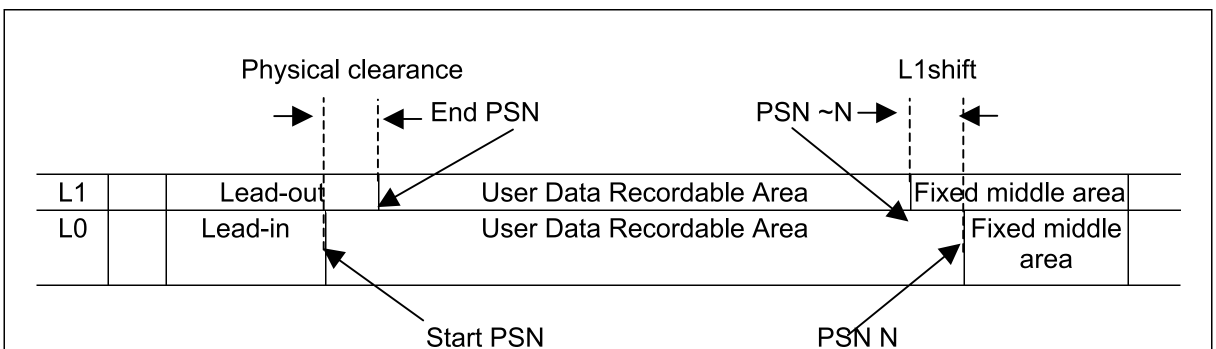


Figure 35 — Physical Overview of Layers

4.7.3 Logical Overview

The sector format and Control Data Zone format of DVD-R Dual Layer is same as that of DVD-ROM Dual Layer medium. The Control Data Zone is pre-recorded or embossed by disc manufacturer. Therefore the logical volume space size is fixed and not changeable. An LBA in the logical volume space has one-to-one relationship with a PSN (i.e., LBA = PSN-30000h).

The basic DVD ECC block structure as defined in 4.3.1.3 applies to DVD-R DL. The sector ID field is viewed as a 32-bit field as shown in Figure 25. For DVD-R DL, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 36.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Reserved	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	0b	Indicates groove tracking
Reflectivity	1b	Indicates reflectivity is less than or equal to 40%
Reserved	0b	Reserved
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
	11b	When sector is in a Middle Zone
Data Type	0b	Indicates read-only data or rewritable data
	1b	Indicates sector is linking data
Layer Number	0b	When the sector is on layer 0
	1b	When the sector is on layer 1

Figure 36 — DVD-R DL ID field Sector Information details

4.7.4 Recording on DVD-R Dual Layer

Three kinds of sequential recording modes are defined for DVD-R Dual Layer media. They are Disc-at-Once recording, Incremental recording and Layer Jump recording modes. The multi-Border recording is supported by the Layer Jump recording mode only.

Once a recording mode is determined on a medium, the recording mode is not changeable afterwards. The LJRS field of the READ TRACK INFORMATION command reports the recording mode information of the medium.

The associated Profile and Features for each recording mode is shown in Table 47.

Table 47 — Profile, Feature and Write Type value for each recording mode

Recording mode	Profile	Feature	Write Type value in Write Parameters Mode page
Disc-at-Once	Profile 0015h: DVD-R Dual Layer Sequential recording	Feature 002Fh: DVD-R/-RW Write Feature	02h (Disc-at-once)
Incremental		Feature 0021h: Incremental Streaming Writable Feature	00h (Incremental)
Layer Jump	Profile 0016h: DVD-R Dual Layer Jump recording	Feature 0033h: Layer Jump recording Feature	04h (Layer Jump)

4.7.4.1 RZone (Logical Track)

The definition of RZone for DAO and Incremental recording modes on DVD-R Dual Layer is identical to the definition of RZone on DVD-R Single Layer. The definition of RZone for Layer Jump recording mode is different from the others.

The RZone structure for Layer Jump recording is illustrated in Figure 37. The RZone may be written sequentially from the inner side of the L0 part through the end of the L1 part of the RZone via the Layer Jump Address.

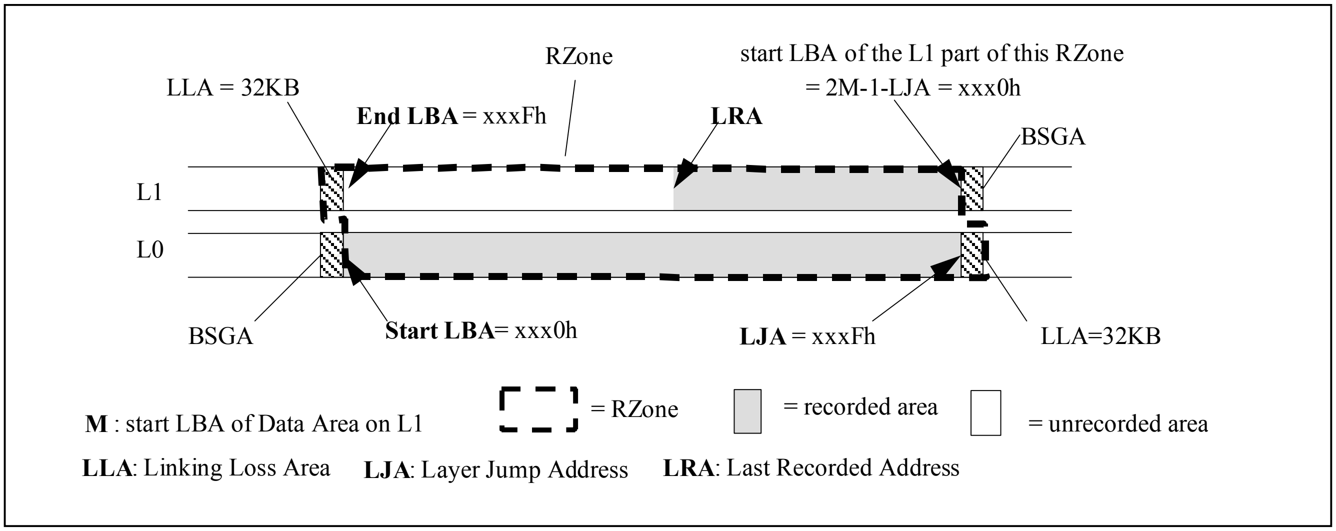


Figure 37 — RZone structure for Layer Jump recording

4.7.4.2 RZone Reservation

In Layer Jump recording mode, when an RZone is reserved, the Host is able to recognize the geometric parameters of the Reserved RZone by using the READ TRACK INFORMATION command (the Track/RZone Start Address field, the Next Layer Jump Address field or the Last Layer Jump Address field, the Last Recorded Address field and the Track/RZone Size / RZone End Address field).

When a new Invisible RZone is generated without closing the previous Reserved Rzone, an unusable area is allocated at the inner side of the Invisible RZone on L1 to maintain the correct recording order between L0 and L1. This unusable area is referred to as Blank Area. The Blank Area will never be usable to record user data even if the previous RZone will become closed status. See Figure 38.

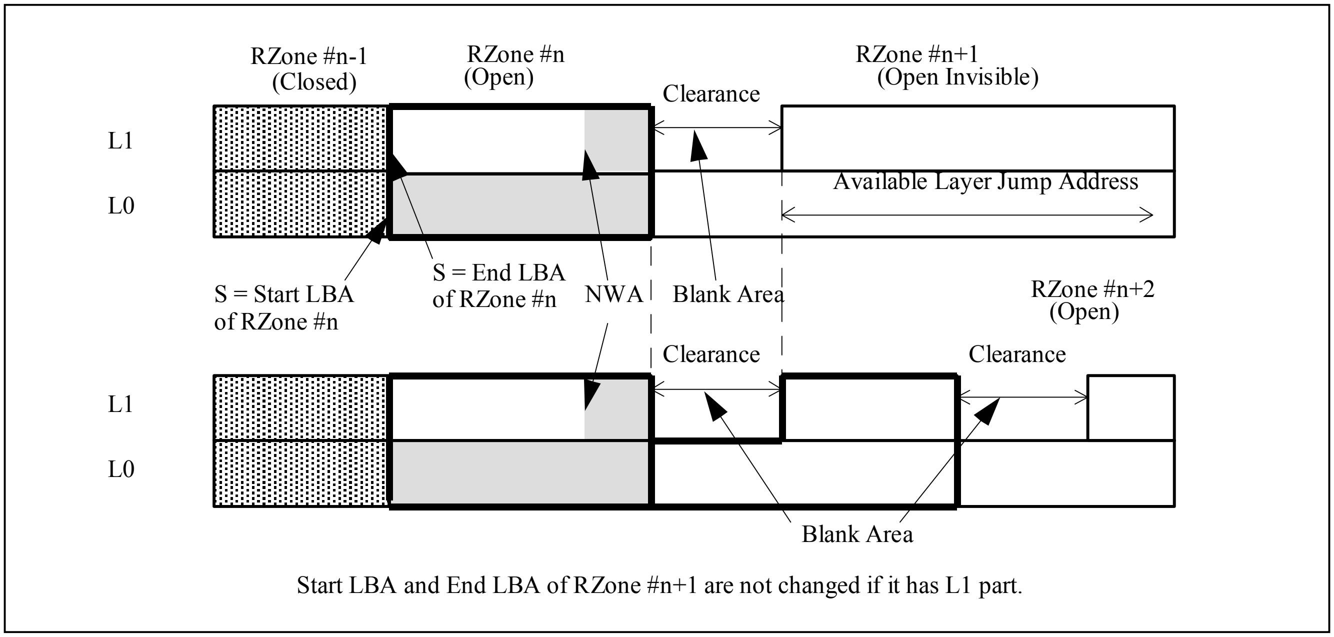


Figure 38 — Blank Areas and RZone Shape

4.7.4.3 Border Zone

On DVD-R Dual Layer media, the Border Zone is defined only for the Layer Jump recording mode. The purpose of the Border Zone is to provide read compatibility for DVD read-only Drives.

The Border Zone is constructed with the symmetrical part of L0 and L1 as shown in Figure 39. The L0 part of the Border Zone has the same structure as the Border Zone on Single Layer DVD-R disc. The L1 part of the Border Zone is referred to as a Superficial Border-out and Superficial Border-in. They are used to store the back-up copies of re-mapping data.

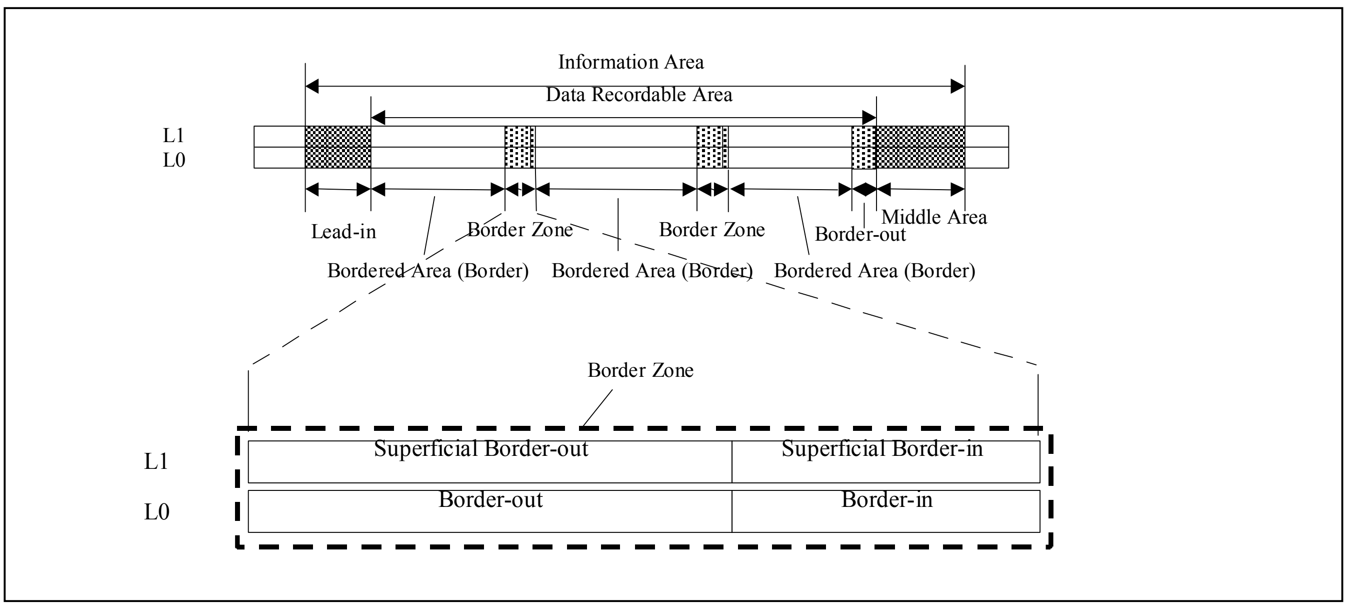


Figure 39 — Border Zone Structure for DVD-R Dual Layer media

4.7.5 Layer Jump recording

Layer Jump recording is a recording method defined for DVD-R Dual Layer discs. Layer Jump recording allows to set the Layer Jump Address to record both Layers alternately. The symmetrical L1 part is recorded only after the portion of L0 is recorded. This allows quick closing of the disc with Border Zone for DVD read-only Drive compatibility. Data is appendable after the closed border. The Layer Jump recording uses Format 4 RMD. To specify Layer Jump recording mode, the Write Type field of Write Parameters mode page shall be set to 04h (= Layer Jump recording).

An example sequence of Layer Jump recording is illustrated in Figure 40.

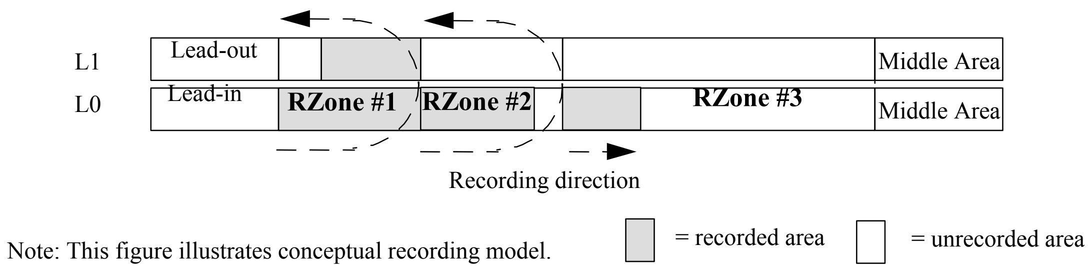


Figure 40 — Example of Layer Jump Recording

4.7.5.1 Layer Jump Block (LJB)

In Layer Jump recording mode, the Host may use Reserved RZones to manage the layer jump locations when using Layer jump recording. A different mechanism is needed when recording in the Invisible/Incomplete RZone. See Figure 41.

The Layer Jump Block (LJB) is defined to manage the recording sequence of the Layer Jump recording in a subdivision of the Invisible/Incomplete RZone. The LJB size on L1 is specified by setting the Layer Jump address (Manual Layer Jump recording) or setting the Jump Interval size (Regular Interval Layer Jump recording). When the Jump Interval size is set by the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 22h, the LJB size on L1 is constant during the Regular Interval Layer Jump recording.

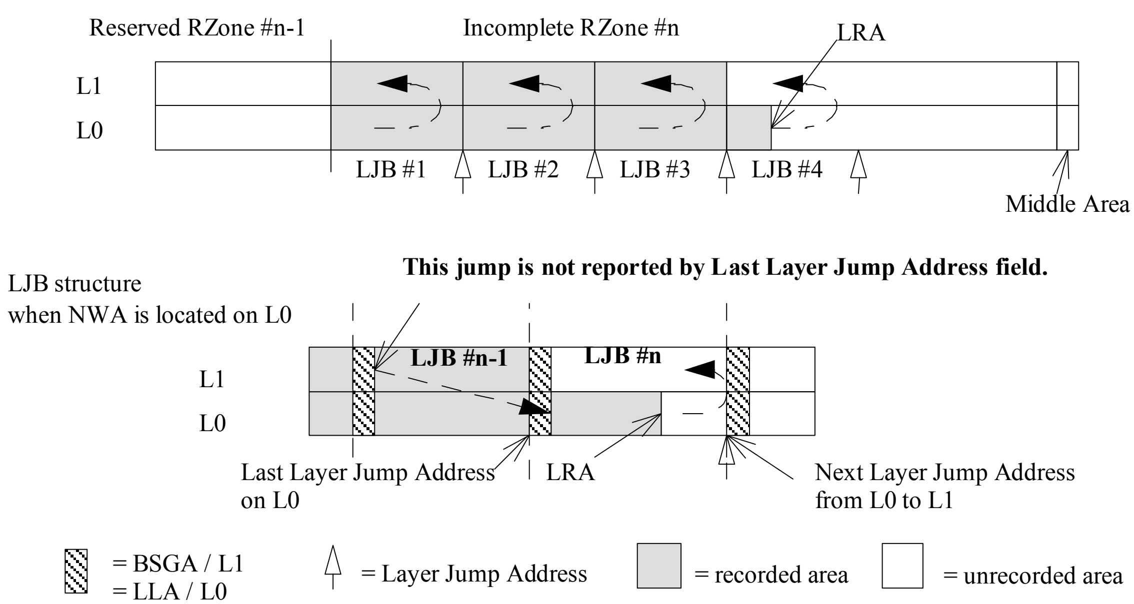


Figure 41 — LJB Structure of Invisible/Incomplete RZone

4.7.5.2 Layer Jump Methods

The Drive uses either Manual Layer Jump method or the Regular Interval Layer Jump method for the Invisible RZone. Once a method is determined, it is not changeable until the RZone is closed. The Regular Interval Layer Jump method may be selected by the Host only when the Invisible RZone is blank.

4.7.5.3 Manual Layer Jump

The Manual Layer Jump method is specified by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 23h to specify the Manual Layer Jump Address on L0 to create a writing address on L1 of Invisible/Incomplete RZone. Only one Layer Jump Address exists on the Incomplete/Invisible RZone at any given time.

When the start address of the Shifted Middle Area is specified by the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 21h at a lower address than the Manual Layer Jump Address specified by the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 23h, the Manual Layer Jump Address becomes invalid.

When NWA reaches the Layer Jump Address on L0, NWA moves from L0 to L1. When all recordable blocks on L1 of the current LJB are recorded, the NWA moves from L1 to the next LJB on L0. The NWA is discontinuous at the Layer Jump Address.

The Manual Layer Jump Address is reported by the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 23h until the Layer Jump occurs at the specified address. The Next Layer Jump Address field of READ TRACK INFORMATION command shall report the same address if the Manual Layer Jump Address is the address where the next Layer Jump occurs. When no Layer Jump Address is specified by the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 23h and the NWA of Invisible/Incomplete RZone is located on L0, the Next Layer Jump Address field reports Fixed or Shifted Middle Area start address -1 on L0. When Layer Jump from L0 to L1 has happened at Manual Layer Jump Address, the next Manual Layer Jump Address may be specified. And the Next Layer Jump Address field reports Layer Jump Address on L1.

Recording may be completed by repeating this Layer Jump operation. When a Layer Jump Address is specified, RMD is updated to register the Layer Jump Address when the LRA is located on L0.

4.7.5.4 Regular Interval Layer Jump

Regular Interval Layer Jump method (Figure 42) may be specified only for the Invisible RZone and only when no Manual Layer Jump Address is specified. When the last RZone has the Invisible state, the Jump Interval size on L1 is specified for the RZone by the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 22h. The Jump Interval size does not contain Linking blocks such as BSGA. The Jump Interval size of Incomplete RZone is not changeable until Incomplete RZone is closed.

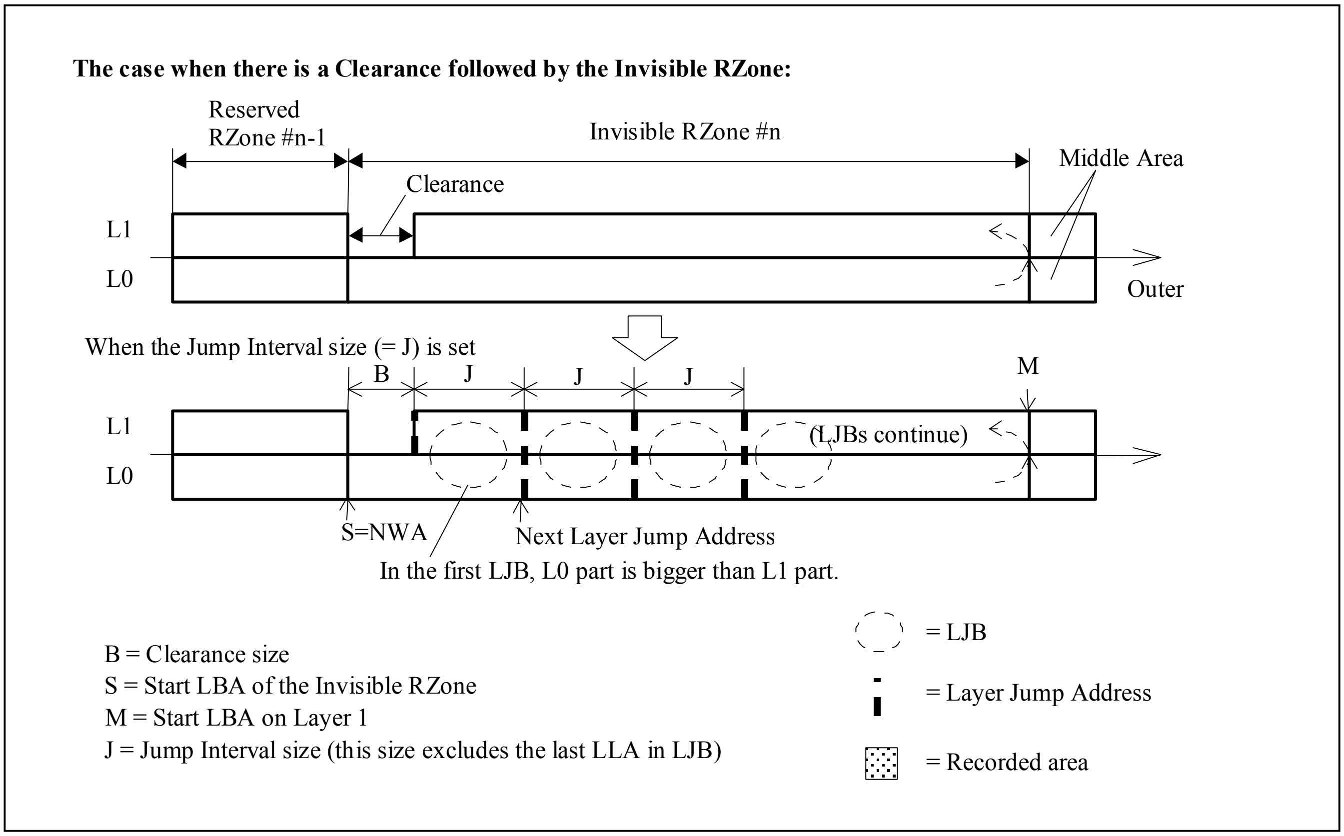


Figure 42 — Regular Interval Layer Jump

4.7.5.5 Remapping on Layer Jump recording

The address remapping mechanism works only when the disc is in Layer Jump recording mode. The address remapping mechanism is provided to permit the UDF and ISO-9660 file systems to adapt to Layer Jump recording on DVD-R Dual Layer disc. The remapping mechanism allows reading of the multi-Border recorded DVD-R Dual Layer disc as if it is single Border recorded disc.

Up to four predefined locations, called Anchor Points, may be remapped to alternative sectors by a host. The Anchor point addresses are specified by DVD-R Dual Layer Physical specification as shown in Table 48.

Table 48 — Predefined Anchor points

Anchor point	Location
AP1	PSN30010h (LBA 16)
AP2	PSN 30100h (LBA 256)
AP3	Maximum Last Recorded Address - 256 on L1
AP4	Maximum Last Recorded Address on L1

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE command, format = 24h, is used to set a remap address. The READ DISC STRUCTURE command, format = 24h, is used to read the remapped addresses.

The remapping is done in ECC block units. Therefore ECC blocks that contain Anchor points are remapped. The remapping status and address redirect information is stored in both RMD and Superficial Border-in and the copies of remapped ECC blocks are stored in the Superficial Border-in/out. This enables DVD-ROM Drives to read remapped DVD-R Dual Layer disc.

4.7.6 RZone closing

Unrecorded blocks of an RZone shall be padded by the Drive when the RZone is closed. The Blank Area between Complete RZone and the RZone to be closed may be padded during the RZone closing operation. See Figure 43.

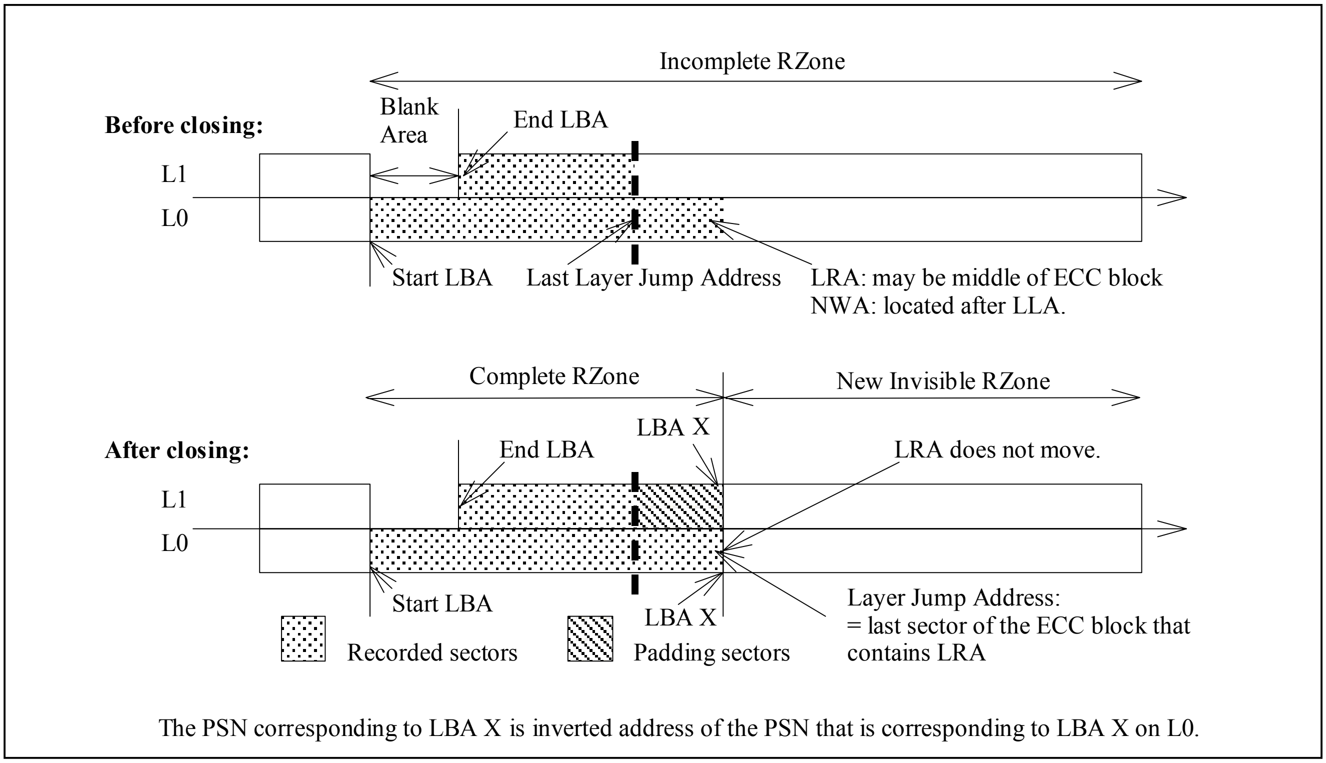


Figure 43 — Incomplete RZone closing when NWA is on L0

4.7.7 Disc closing

In Layer Jump recording mode, when the disc is closed to prohibit further recording (= disc final closure), the Shifted Middle Area or Fixed Middle Area is recorded at the end of the user data as shown in Figure 44. No additional recording is allowed beyond the any Middle Area. When the Shifted Middle Area is recorded, the Information Area shall be recorded more than 70 mm in diameter. If the recorded length is less than 70mm in diameter, the Drive shall write Shifted Middle Area up to 70 mm in diameter. Lead-in and Lead-out are written at disc closing as with single layer case.

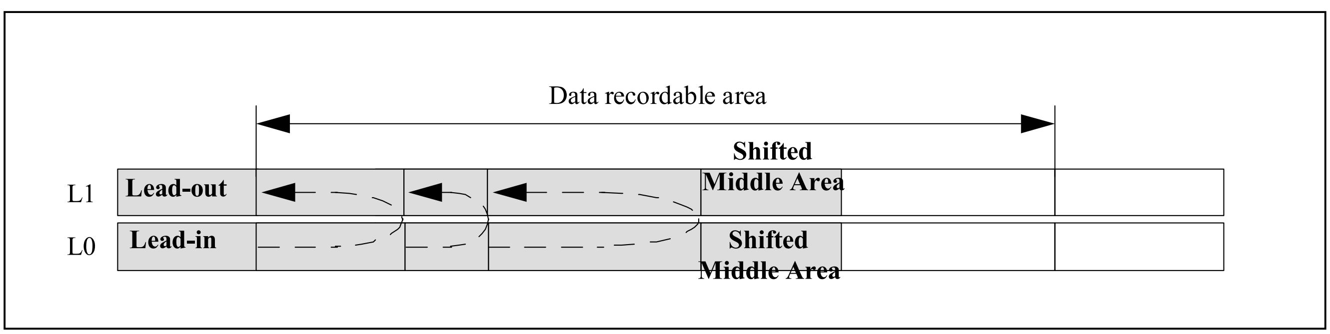


Figure 44 — Disc Final Closure in Layer Jump Recording Mode

4.7.8 State of DVD-R Dual Layer disc for ROM compatibility

In general, to make the recorded user data on a DVD-R disc physically readable by DVD read-only Drives, at least the following three conditions shall be satisfied to prevent the typical DVD read-only Drive optical pickup from overrunning to the unrecorded area due to the tracking servo mechanism:

a) at the inner end of the recorded user Data Area, buffer zone such as Lead-in is located,
b) at the outer end of the recorded user Data Area, buffer zone such as Border Zone or Middle Area is located,
c) all the sectors from the beginning of the inner buffer zone to the end of the outer buffer zone are recorded.

In addition to the conditions above, in case of DVD-R Dual Layer disc, Lead-out and all the sectors on L1 located at the range between the inner part of Lead-in and the outer part of Border Zone/Middle Area on L0 shall also be recorded.

4.8 DVD-Download

4.8.1 Overview of DVD Video

Audiovisual contents in DVD Video may be scrambled by CSS. In the scrambled audiovisual contents, some data is scrambled and some data is not scrambled.

When the data is scrambled, the CPR_MAI field shows the status:

1. The CP_SEC bit shall be set to 1
2. The CPM bit shall be set to 1b, and
3. The CGMS bit field shall be set to 11b.

4.8.2 Data type in the DVD Video title

The Video and related data in the audiovisual contents are named as Video Object (VOB). See Figure 45 for an example of the DVD Video title structure.

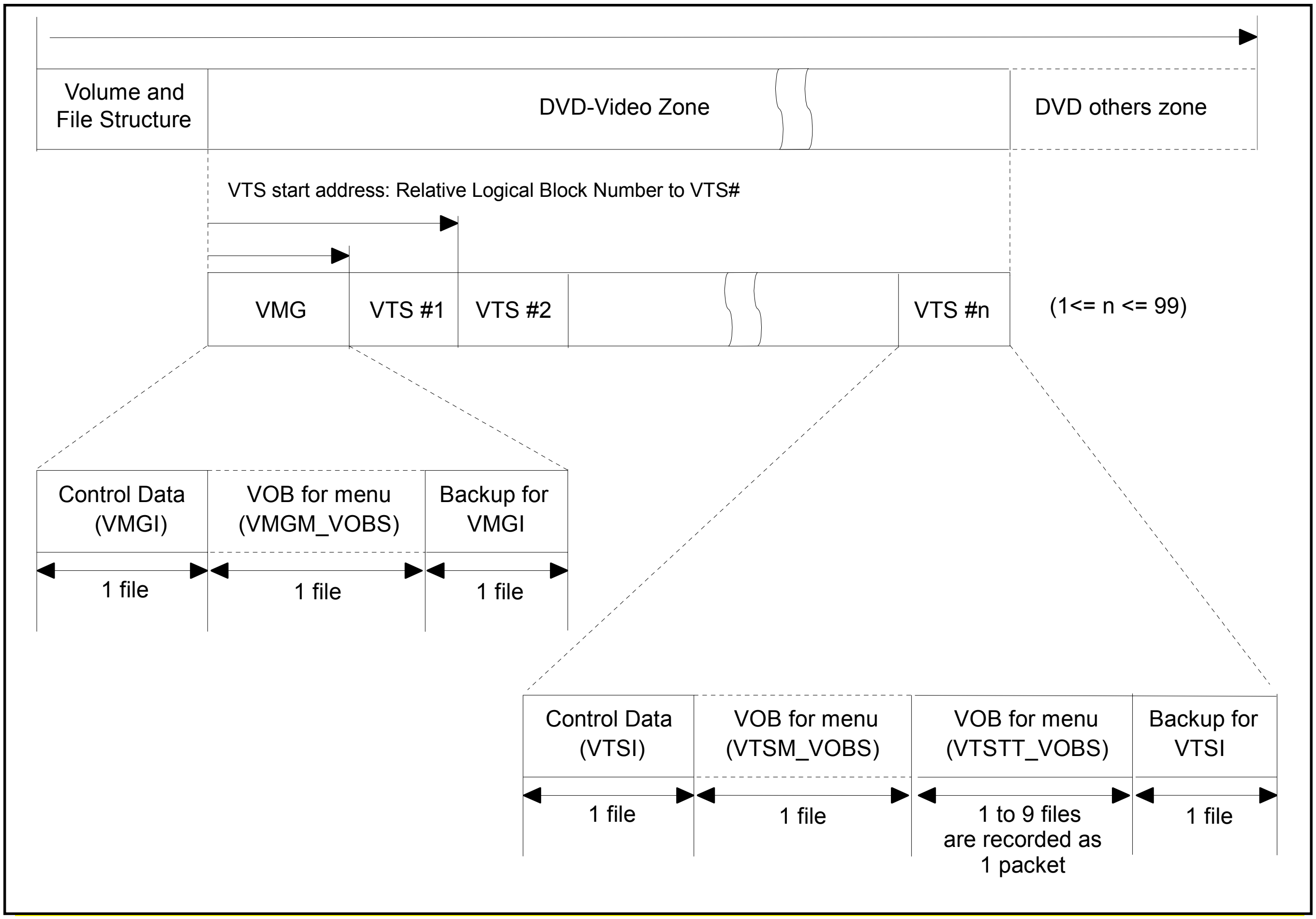


Figure 45 — Example of DVD-Video volume structure

The audiovisual data in the VOB is named a Pack. The size of one Pack is one sector. Figure 46 shows the general format of a pack.

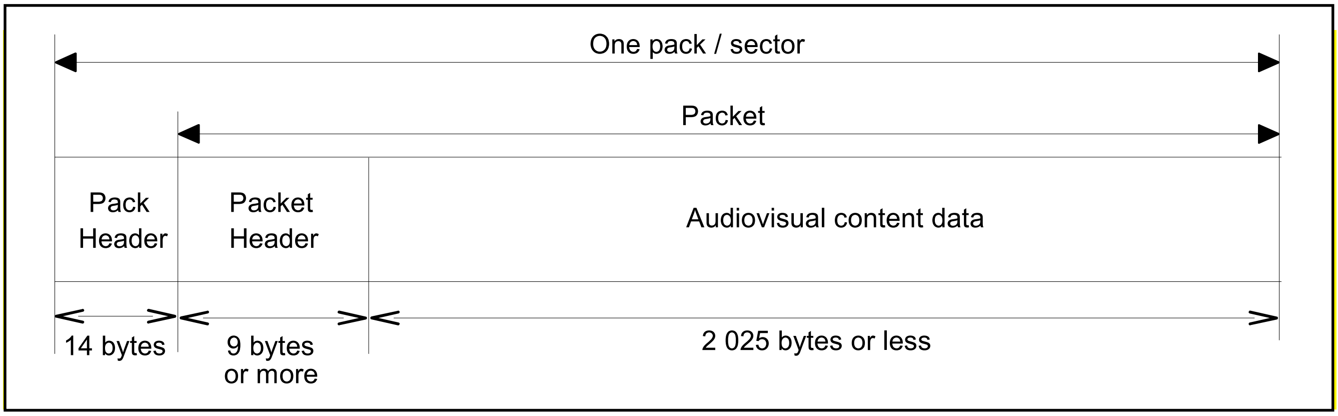


Figure 46 — Structure of a Pack

Table 49 shows the four types of Packs that are defined for the VOB.

Table 49 — Structure of a Pack

Pack	Data (in Pack)
Navigation Pack (NV_PCK)	Presentation Control Information (PCI) and Data Search Information (DSI)
Video Pack (V_PCK)	Video data
Audio Pack (A_PCK)	Audio data
Sub-picture Pack (SP_PCK)	Sub-picture data

NV_PCK is never scrambled because it is used to search the VOB (Video scene) in the audiovisual content. Additionally, according to [CSS-Ref1], some Packs are not scrambled. Refer to the specific specification for detail information.

4.8.2.1 Scrambled data indicators

In the DVD-Video and DVD disc specification, there are two fields that show the Pack scrambling status field in sector header and field in user data.

Table 50 — Scrambled data indicators and corresponded information

bit/field	Bit Position	description
CP_SEC bit	Byte 0, bit 6 in CPR_MAI field of Data Unit 1 (in sector header)	1: data in the Pack is scrambled 0: data is not scrambled
PES_scrambling_control field (this field is not defined in NV_PCK)	Byte 20, bit 5-4 of V_PCK, A_PCK, and SP_PCK (in Packet header of user data)	00b: data in the Pack is not scrambled 01b: data is scrambled by CSS 10b: Reserved 11b: data is scrambled by other method
	Byte 20, bit 5-4 of NV_PCK: part of the bit rate field	00b (fixed value)

4.8.3 The basics for DVD-Download Disc for CSS Managed Recording

DVD-Download as specified in [DVD-Ref9], [DVD-Ref10], and [DVD-Ref11] refers to special types of DVD-R disc and the process for recording CSS scrambled data on the DVD-Download disc.

Note 2. [DVD-Ref9] and [DVD-Ref10] specifies single layer DVD-Download media while [DVD-Ref11] specifies dual-layer DVD-Download media. [DVD-Ref10] supercedes [DVD-Ref9]. [DVD-Ref9] should be considered obsolete for media products started after the release of [DVD-Ref10].

When a recordable DVD-Download disc is loaded, the Drive reports the DVD-Download disc recording Profile (0018h) as the Current Profile (see Table 87).

DVD-Download disc is developed to provide CSS Managed Recording with the same capacity as DVD-ROM/-R Single Layer/Dual Layer disc. The major characteristics of DVD-Download disc are:

- The physical structure of DVD-Download disc is similar to the DVD-R media.
- Lead-in area except Buffer Zone 2 of DVD-Download SL Rev. 1 disc is pre-recorded. The first sector of the Buffer zone 2 is a linking sector.
- A DVD-Download disc has no RMA and no R Physical Format Information zone.
- The middle area address of DVD-Download DL media is pre-recorded. Therefore, the layer jump address is fixed.

Table 51 shows DVD-Download discs compare with DVD-ROM and DVD-R.

Table 51 — Comparison of DVD media format

DVD Version Characteristics	DVD-Download		DVD-R (for General) SL/DL	DVD-ROM SL/DL
	Rev 1.0	Ver 1.0/2.0		
Capacity per side (120 mm)	4.7 gbytes	4.7/8.54 gbytes	4.7/8.54 gbytes	max. 4.7/8.5 gbytes
Channel bit length (µm)	0.133	0.133/0.147	0.133/0.147	0.133/0.147
Track pitch (µm)	0.74	0.74	0.74	0.74
Number of Layers per side	1	1/2	1/2	1/2
Data Type bit	Always 0	Always 0	0/1[1]	Always 0
Disc Indicator	0100b	0100b	Undefined	Undefined
Lead-in area	Prerecorded till Buffer Zone 2	Control Data zone is prerecorded	Control Data zone is prerecorded	Embossed
R Physical Information zone	Undefined	Undefined	Defined	-
RMA	Undefined	Undefined	Defined	-
Buffer zone 2 / Extra Border zone	Buffer Zone 2	Buffer Zone 2	Extra Border Zone	Embossed Buffer Zone 2
Standard recording speed	2x to 8x	2x to 8x	1x to 16x[2]	-

[1]See Figure 32.
[2] Higher recording speeds are specified by optional specifications

4.8.4 Recording DVD-Download discs

The concepts of recording media with CSS encryption are designed to be identical to the methods used by the drive and host for non-CSS media, with a minimal set of command adjustments to modify the encryption status of the sectors that are to be recorded.

Disc-at-once recording of DVD-Download Disc for CSS Managed Recording media follows the same restrictions and basic write methods as Disc-at-once recording of previous DVD-R SL media, including the 35mm minimum recorded radius requirements. An example of disc-at-once recording for DVD-Download Disc for CSS Managed Recording is as follows:

1. The Host checks for the presence of the DVD-Download disc recording Profile (0018h) and DVD CSS Managed recording Feature support via GET CONFIGURATION command.

2. The Host sets the Write Type field in the Write Parameters mode page to disc-at-once. The Host may also check Layer Boundary address by Layer Boundary Information (READ DISC STRUCTURE command, Format Code = 20h) and RZone size (READ TRACK INFORMATION command).
3. The Host authenticates and obtains BUS KEY via normal CSS methods.
4. The Host reads Disc Key by normal CSS methods.
5. The Host authenticates and obtains BUS KEY via normal CSS methods.
6. The Host sends the Scramble Content Allocation information (Title Set Zone information and array of Start LBA/LBA Count/CSS scrambled Title Key data by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 17h). The Scramble Content Allocation information is protected by the BUS KEY.
7. The Host specifies user data size by using the RESERVE TRACK command.
8. The Host issues a WRITE (10) command starting a LBA = 0. The Drive performs Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) and starts writing from the Lead-in through Data Recordable Area.
9. The Host issues WRITE (10) for remaining user sectors. If any sectors of the WRITE (10) command exist in the LBA Extents with a Title Key, the drive applies the appropriate CPR_MAI and title key settings for the sectors by checking user data.
10. The Drive detects the final reserved user data has been recorded and begins writing the Lead-out data immediately without requiring further commands from the host.

    During the recording of the Lead-out, the Host may send the SYNCHRONIZE_CACHE, CLOSE_TRACK (Track Number = 1), or CLOSE_SESSION (Session Number = 1) with the IMMED bit set to 1. The Drive shall terminate each of these with GOOD status and continue the process of writing the Lead-out data without interruption.

4.8.4.1 CPR_MAI handling

Audio-visual data to be written on the DVD-Download disc is normally scrambled by CSS. The Host sends scrambled audio-visual data that is formatted into Pack(s) of DVD Video format. Some data in Packs are scrambled. Some data in Packs are not scrambled. The Packs are formatted into VOB file(s). The Host specifies the Scramble Content Allocation information that contains the Title Set Zone information and the set of scrambled VOB file data location (Start LBA field, LBA Count field) and the CSS scrambled Title Key (CSS scrambled Title Key field) to be written in sector header using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Media Type = 0000b and Format Code = 17h. Only one Title Set Zone is permitted to exist on a disc. All the Scramble Extents shall be allocated within the specified Title Set Zone without overlap.

The first 16 bytes of the Scramble Content Allocation information specify Title Set Zone information. One or more Scramble Extent information entries may follow the Title Set Zone information. The Drive shall accept a minimum of 15 data locations of the Scramble Extent information. The Scramble Content Allocation information (Title Set Zone and Scramble Extent) shall be arranged to ECC boundary. Minimum one ECC block shall be located between two Scramble Extents. See Figure 47.

Only one SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 17h is needed before start of a Disc-at-Once recording. The Scramble Content Allocation information sent by a SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 17h will be replaced by the next SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 17h.

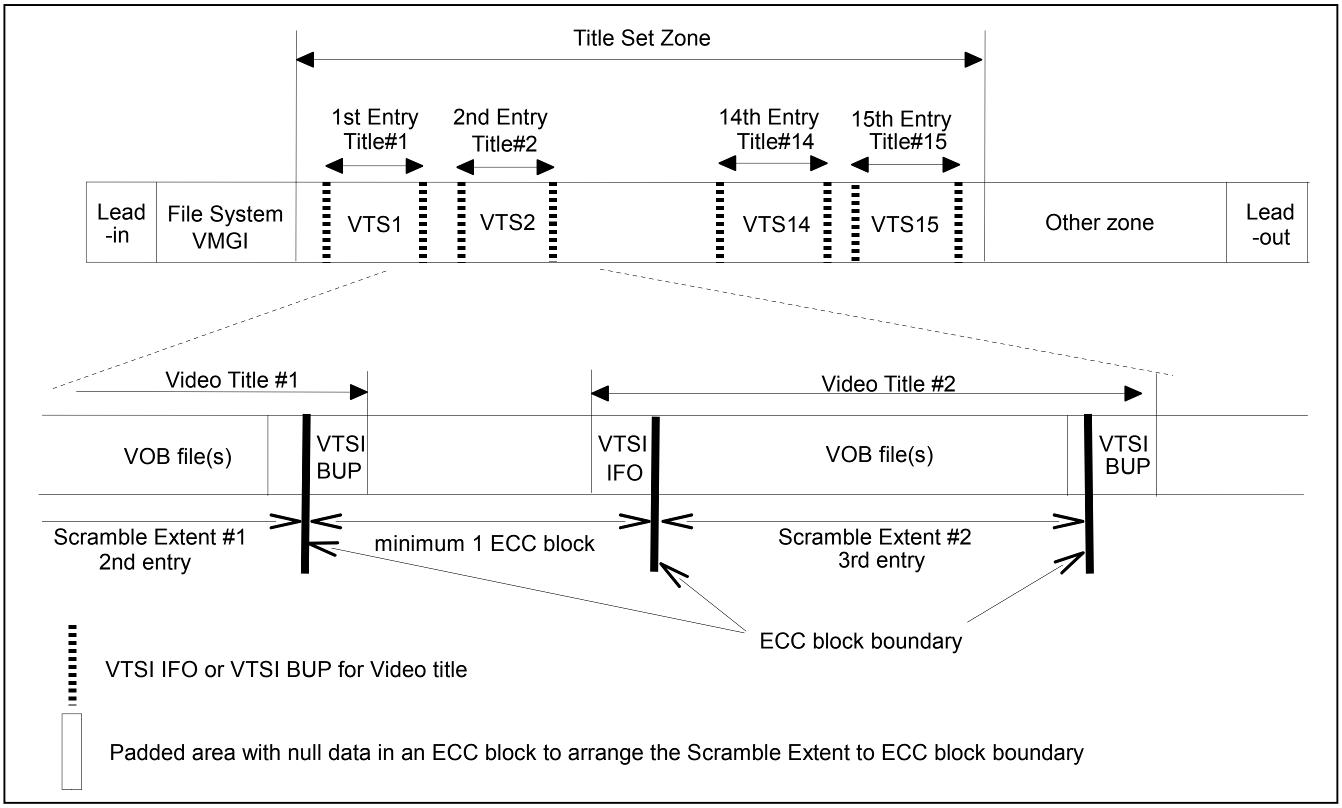


Figure 47 — Example of Scramble Content Allocation

The Drive shall write sectors with appropriate values of the CPM bit, CGMS field and bytes for Title Key in the sector header by referring the Scramble Content Allocation information and CP_SEC bit by referring the PES_scrambling_control field in the user data. Table 52 explains the sector header value setting.

Table 52 — Sector header value setting

Field in sector header	Outside of Title Set Zone	Inside of Title Set Zone		
		Outside of Scramble Extent	Inside of Scramble Extent	
			PES_scrambling_ control = 00b	PES_scrambling_ control = 01b
CPM	0b	1b		
CP_SEC	0b	0b	0b	1b
CGMS	00b	11b		
Title Key	00 00 00 00 00h	00 00 00 00 00h	Specified value	Specified value

4.9 DVD+R

4.9.1 Track Structure

DVD+R media is either 80 or 120 mm in diameter and separated into zones as shown in Figure 2. The Information zone is organized as a sequence of independently recorded/recordable units called ECC blocks. Each ECC block contains 16 user sectors. Each sector is identified by its PSN and contains 2 048 bytes of data.

Physical addresses advance incrementally beginning at the virtual address 00000000h. It is virtual, because the physical nature of a DVD+R device guarantees that no Drive is ever be able to reach the sector with PSN = 0. Consequently, the first sector that is required to exist has a PSN significantly larger than 0. As with DVD-ROM, the first user accessible sector has PSN = 30000h. The DVD+R 120-mm one-sided disc has 4.70 GB available to the user, while the two-sided disc has 9.40 GB. The DVD+R 80-mm one-sided disc has 1.46 GB available to the user, while the two-sided disc has 2.92 GB.

4.9.1.1 The ADIP (Address in Pre-groove)

Like CD-RW media:

a) DVD+R media has a wobble structure that defines the groove
b) Information is modulated onto the wobble
c) Within the Information Zone, this information contains the address of the associated sector
d) Within the Lead-in, there is additional information about the disc

This is generally called Address-In-Pre-groove or ADIP.

4.9.1.2 The ECC Block

The basic DVD ECC block structure as defined in 4.3.1.3 applies to DVD+R. The sector ID field is viewed as a 32-bit field as shown in Figure 25. For DVD+R, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 48.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Reserved	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	0b	Indicates pit tracking
Reflectivity	0b	Indicates reflectivity exceeds 40%
Reserved	0b	Reserved
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
	11b	Reserved
Data Type	0b	Indicates read-only data
Layer Number	0b	Through the entrance surface only one recording layer may be accessed

Figure 48 — DVD+R ID field Sector Information details

4.9.1.3 DVD+R Groove Layout

The groove, when recorded, is a continuous sequence of ECC blocks. If ECC block E and E+1 are consecutive, then whenever N is the largest PSN in E, then N+1 is the smallest address in E+1. i.e., the ECC blocks are sequenced in an intuitively correct way.

The rest of logical groove architecture is given by specific use of individual sectors.

The DVD+R format provides only a continuous address space with no possibility of defect management.

Table 53 shows the zoned layout of the DVD+R groove. The Data Zone boundaries are based upon a single session recording.

Table 53 — DVD+R Format Lay-out

Disc Area	Zone
INNER DRIVE AREA	Initial Zone
	Inner Disc Test Zone
	Count Zone Run-in
	Inner Disc Count Zone
	Inner Disc Administration Zone
	Table of Contents Zone
LEAD-IN	Guard Zone 1
	Reserved Zone 1
	Reserved Zone 2
	Inner Disc Identification Zone
	Reserved Zone 3
	Reference Code Zone
	Buffer Zone 1
	Control Data Zone
	Buffer Zone 2
DATA	Data Zone
LEAD-OUT	Buffer Zone 3
	Outer Disc Identification Zone
	Guard Zone 2
OUTER DRIVE AREA	Outer Disc Administration Zone
	Outer Disc Count Zone
	Outer Disc Test Zone
	Guard Zone 3

4.9.2 Recording on DVD+R

4.9.2.1 Recording Structures

4.9.2.1.1 ECC Blocks

The minimal writable entity on DVD+R is the 32 KB ECC block. Physically, DVD+R is randomly writable in 32 KB ECC blocks, but not necessarily randomly readable. An ECC block is not fully decodable when it follows a blank area of media. In order to ensure readability, ECC blocks shall be written in consecutive regions.

4.9.2.1.2 Fragments

A fragment is a set of contiguous ECC blocks in the Data Area that contains at least one ECC block. Fragments are distinct. i.e., given two different fragments, there are no ECC blocks in common. A fragment is the only unit of allocation on DVD+R. A recorded DVD+R disc shall contain at least one fragment.

Fragments are uniquely numbered beginning with one. The start address of fragment one is LBA 0. Fragments are numbered consecutively with no gaps. i.e., if fragment N and fragment M are different fragments and there are no fragments between fragment N and fragment M, then M = N+1.

Fragment Oriented Definitions:

Reserved Fragment – Fragment allocation may be explicit, where both the start address and end address are specified. This is a reserved fragment.

The Incomplete Fragment – Fragment allocation may also be implicit, where the start address of the fragment is specified, but the end address is limited only by disc capacity. This is the incomplete fragment. The incomplete fragment may be transformed into two fragments: a reserved fragment and a new incomplete fragment.

Closed Fragment – If every ECC block within a reserved fragment is written, the fragment is closed.

Next Writable Address – Fragments shall be written consecutively, beginning with the start address of the fragment. This maintains the fragment in two parts: the written part that begins at the fragment start address and the blank part that begins with the first ECC block in the fragment that has not been written. The LBA of the first sector of the blank part is the Next Writable Address (NWA) of the fragment.

The Host may write using a 2 048-byte block size. The Drive shall buffer consecutively written data and write only when:

1. An ECC block amount of data has been received from the Host,
2. The Host issues a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command,
3. The Host issues a CLOSE TRACK command, or
4. A new WRITE command is received for the NWA of a different fragment.

In cases 2 through 4, remaining user data in the ECC block shall be zero filled by the Drive prior to writing the ECC block. If no data is buffered for a partial ECC block, then cases 2 through 4 shall cause no write to occur.

4.9.2.1.3 Sessions

The data area of a DVD+R disc may be recorded in sessions similar to session recording in CD-R. Each session contains a Lead-in equivalent area called the session “Intro”, a data area equivalent called session “user data”, and a Lead-out equivalent called the session “closure”. The Intro of the first session is contained within the disc Lead-in and the Closure of the final session is contained within the disc Lead-out. Each Intro that is not in the disc Lead-in is encoded as data. Each Closure that is not contained within the disc Lead-out is encoded as data.

Sessions are uniquely numbered beginning with one. The start address of the user data of session one is LBA 0. Sessions are numbered consecutively. i.e., if session N and session M are different sessions and there are no sessions between session N and session M, then M = N+1.

Figure 49 shows an example of a multi-session layout on a DVD+R disc. Session 2 is called an interior session.

	Disc Lead-in
Session 1	**Data**
	Closure
	Intro
Session 2	**Data**
	Closure
	...
	Intro
Final Session	**Data**
	Disc Lead-out

Figure 49 — General Layout of a Multi-Session DVD+R

The user data zone of a session is made up of a collection fragments. The user data zone contains at least one fragment and may contain up to 16 fragments.

Session Oriented Definitions:

Empty (Blank) Session – If no ECC block in a session is written, the session is blank.

Closed Session – If every ECC block within the session is written, the session is closed.

Open Session – If a session is not closed, then the session is open. An empty session is open.

Open (Incomplete, or Appendable) Disc – If a disc has an open session, then the disc is open.

Closed Disc – During the process of closing a session, the Host may specify that no new sessions are allowed. The last session is called the Final session and once that session is closed, the disc is closed. No new writing is allowed on a closed disc.

Run-in Block – A single ECC block, zero filled and written, shall separate two adjacent fragments within a session. This “run-in block” ensures that the first ECC block of the second fragment of a session is readable.

The status of a session and of the fragments within its user data zone is found within the session’s Intro. Figure 50 shows the zones of a session.

First Session of a Multi-session Disc	Disc Lead-in containing Session 1 Intro	Guard Zone 1
		Reserved Zone 1
		Reserved Zone 2
		Inner Disc Identification Zone
		Reserved Zone 3
		Reference Code Zone
		Buffer Zone 1
		Control Data Zone
		Buffer Zone 2
	Data Zone	Data
	Session (not final) Closure	Buffer Zone C
		Outer Session Identification Zone
Interior Session of a Multi-session Disc	Session (≠1) Intro	Buffer Zone A
		Inner Session Identification Zone
		Session Control Data Zone
		Buffer Zone B
	Data Zone	Data
	Session (not final) Closure	Buffer Zone C
		Outer Session Identification Zone
Final Session of a multi-session disc	Session (≠1) Intro	Buffer Zone A
		Inner Session ID Zone
		Session Control Data Zone
		Buffer Zone B
	User Data Zone	Data
	Disc Lead-out containing final session Closure	Buffer Zone 3
		Outer Disc Identification Zone
		Guard Zone 2 (minimum size)

Figure 50 — Zones of a Session

The time to write each of these areas is as follows:

a) When session 1 is opened, Reserved Zone 2 plus an SDCB in the first ECC block of the Inner Disc Identification Zone shall be recorded. When session N (N > 1) is opened, Buffer Zone A plus an SDCB in the first ECC block of the Inner Session Identification Zone shall be recorded.

b) The User Data area is written as the Host provides data.

c) When the first ECC block of session 1 is recorded, Buffer Zone 2 shall also be recorded. When the first ECC block of session N (N > 1) is recorded, Buffer Zone B shall also be recorded.

d) Whenever fragment N (where N is not the first fragment of the session) is opened, a run-in shall be written prior to writing the first ECC block of fragment N.

e) The Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone is written incrementally as fragments within the session are

defined. When a fragment is defined, a record (the Fragment Item) is included in the Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone that identifies the boundaries of the fragment. When the session is closed, all unused ECC blocks within he Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone are written with all zeros.

f) The remaining areas are written when the session is closed. The Outer Disc/Session Identification Zone may optionally contain a copy of the Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone. When the final session is closed, the ECC blocks of the Lead-out shall be encoded as Lead-out.

Session Oriented Rules:

There may be at most one open session on a disc – the session that contains the current incomplete fragment.

When a session is closed a new ECC block is appended to the Table of Contents Zone (see

Table 53) containing a TOC item that identifies the bounds of the new session.

A session may be closed only when every fragment within the session is closed.

4.9.2.2 The Host's Perspective

The Host views a DVD+R fragment as a fixed packet track where the packet size is 16. When a DVD+R session is open, fragments and tracks have equivalent meaning. Numbering for CD-R tracks and DVD+R tracks is different. The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP and READ TRACK INFORMATION commands report information about Logical Tracks. Fragments are not always viewed as Logical Tracks. When the Data Zone of a closed session is viewed as a Logical Track, its Logical Track number is the session number. Fragments in the open session are viewed as Logical Tracks with:

Logical Track Number = Session Number
+ Fragment Number
- Fragment Number of first fragment in session.

The Host should typically use the following commands for the purpose of inspecting and recording DVD+R media:

READ DISC INFORMATION – Provides detailed information about disc status.

READ TRACK INFORMATION – Provides detailed information about any track. Track number translation is according to the above formula. A reference to track number FFh results in information for the incomplete fragment.

READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (form 0) – Provides general information about tracks on the media. Tracks reported in response to this command represent only closed sessions. Since CD identifies the Lead-out as track AAh, the maximum track number is A9h (169d). This provides for a maximum of 153 closed sessions and 16 fragments in the open session. Track number translation is according to the above formula.

READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (form 1) – Provides general information about the last closed session.

WRITE (10 or 12) – Allows writing any sector with location restrictions. The first sector in the write shall begin with the NWA for some track (fragment) in the open session.

SYNCHRONIZE CACHE – When writes to a track (fragment) may not have reached an ECC block boundary, the Host may issue this command in order to ensure that all buffered data is actually written to the disc.

RESERVE TRACK – Provides the Host with the ability to reserve blank disc space for a single track (fragment). The track is not referenced by a number. The fragment shall be created from the beginning of the incomplete fragment. The new, reserved fragment receives the fragment number of the old incomplete fragment, and a new incomplete fragment shall be given the next fragment number. Up to 15 fragments may be reserved in the open session.

CLOSE TRACK SESSION (Track) – The Host may choose to close a reserved track (fragment) or to define a track (fragment) from the written part of the incomplete fragment.

CLOSE TRACK SESSION (Session) – For the purpose of making the disc read compatible with a DVD-ROM device, the equivalent of a Lead-out (closure) or a real Lead-out shall follow user data. The Host may request either case with this command.

4.9.2.3 Building from a Blank Disc

When a DVD+R disc is blank, the user definable space begins as session 1, fragment 1 at LBA 0. In this state fragment 1 is incomplete. When beginning recording on a blank disc, the Host has two options: WRITE beginning at LBA 0 or RESERVE TRACK beginning at LBA 0.

a) If the Host chooses to WRITE, then the Host's data is written beginning with LBA 0. The end address of fragment 1 is still unknown, so fragment 1 remains the only fragment on the disc. When this write is processed by the Drive, it shall record a session identification item in the first ECC block of the Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone, leaving 15 blank ECC blocks in that zone. This allows for at most 15 incrementally defined fragments in the session. In this case the session may contain at most 15 fragments. Writing may proceed until the Host determines that the fragment is completed. At that point the Host may define the fragment as complete by issuing a CLOSE TRACK command. The Drive shall respond by appending an ECC block into the Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone with a new fragment identification item.
b) If the Host chooses to issue the RESERVE TRACK command, then a size shall be selected. The size is rounded up to an ECC block boundary. At this point, the end address of fragment 1 is known, thereby defining fragment 2 as an incomplete fragment beginning at an ECC block after fragment 1. In executing the RESERVE TRACK command the Drive shall record a session identification item and a fragment identification item (for fragment 1) in the Inner Disc/Session Identification Zone, leaving 15 blank ECC blocks in that zone. This allows for at most 16 incrementally defined fragments in the session. In this case the session may contain at most 16 fragments. The reserved fragment may be written sequentially as the Host deems it necessary.

Subsequent fragment usage operates similarly.

When the user wishes to eject the disc, the Host should elect to close the currently open session prior to disc eject. This ensures that the disc is read compatible with DVD read-only devices. If the user wishes to disallow further writing after the session is closed, it is possible to select a close function to finalize the disc.

4.10 DVD+R Dual Layer

4.10.1 Introduction

The DVD+R Dual Layer (DVD+R DL) medium is DVD+R medium with two recording layers physically constructed in order to permit recorded media that is compatible with DVD readers and players. DVD+R DL is constructed to be recorded only as an OTP disc.

This section is an overview of physical and logical formats. Specific format requirements are detailed in [DVD+Ref3].

4.10.2 Logical Overview

The basic DVD ECC block structure as defined in 4.3.1.3 applies to DVD+R DL. The sector ID field is viewed as a 32-bit field as shown in Figure 25. For DVD+R DL, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 51.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Reserved	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	0b	Indicates pit tracking
Reflectivity	1b	Indicates reflectivity is less than 40%
Reserved	0b	Reserved
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
	11b	When sector is in a Middle Zone
Data Type	0b	Indicates read-only data
Layer Number	0b	When the sector is on layer 0
	1b	When the sector is on layer 1

Figure 51 — DVD+R DL ID field Sector Information details

4.10.3 The Groove

4.10.3.1 Logical Disc Layout

As shown in Figure 52, each layer of a DVD+R DL disc has a layout that is similar to single layer DVD+R.

Layer 0

Disc Area	Zone
Inner Drive Area	Initial Zone
	Inner Disc Test Zone
	Count Zone Run-in
	Inner Disc Count Zone
	TOC Zone
Lead-in	Guard Zone 1
	Reserved Zone 1
	Reserved Zone 2
	Inner Disc ID Zone
	Reserved Zone 3
	Reference Code Zone
	Buffer Zone 1
	Control Data Zone
	Buffer Zone 2
Data	Data Zone
Middle Zone	Buffer Zone 3
	Reserved Zone 3
	Guard Zone 2
Outer Drive Area	Outer Disc Admin Zone
	Outer Disc Count Zone
	Dummy Zone
	Outer Disc Test Zone
	Guard Zone 3

Spiral Direction

Layer 1

Zone	Disc Area
Final Zone	Inner Drive Area
Inner Disc Test Zone	
Dummy Zone	
Inner Disc Count Zone	
Inner Disc Administration	
Lead-out Zone	Lead-out
Data Zone	Data
Buffer Zone 3	Middle Zone
Reserved Zone 3	
Guard Zone 2	
Outer Disc Admin Zone	Outer Drive Area
Outer Disc Count Zone	
Count Zone Run-in	
Outer Disc Test Zone	
Guard Zone 3	

Figure 52 — Logical Layout of a DVD+R DL Disc

A middle zone provides seek over-shoot protection on each layer while providing a mechanism for connecting the two data zones into a logically contiguous user address space.

Note 3. The TOC Zone on DVD+R DL has 127 possible entries for recording session instances. It is possible to record a new L0 middle zone start address without recording a new session instance. It is possible that this reduces the possible number of sessions to 126.

4.10.3.2 ADIP

As with DVD+R, the blank groove of DVD+R DL has a fixed frequency wobble with information modulated into the wobble. Throughout most of the groove, the wobble information contains only address identification called Address In Pre-groove (ADIP). During the Lead-in Zone, additional information is interleaved between address information blocks. This additional information contains structural information and initial recording parameters. Location information describes the limits of the data zone:

a. First Sector of Layer 0 Data Zone – PSN of first sector of the L0 Data Zone
b. Last Sector of Layer 0 Data Zone – PSN of last sector of the L0 Data Zone
c. Last Sector of Layer 1 Data Zone – PSN of last sector of the L1 Data Zone

The last possible start PSN of the L0 middle zone is the Last Sector of Layer 0 Data Zone plus 1.

4.10.4 Recorded Structure

DVD read-only devices are typically unable to maintain tracking over blank areas. In order to maximize playback compatibility with DVD read-only devices, there is one recording restriction:

> If a DVD read-only device is tracking on a recorded area on one layer and a layer jump to the other layer is required, the layer transition should not land in a blank area.

Consequently, when a disc is finalized, a radially equivalent band of recording on layer 1 should match the band of recording in Layer 0. The size of the bands should be large enough to cover any layer offset.

DVD+R DL is recorded in DVD+R session format. An example of the simplest written structure (single session, single fragment) appears as in Figure 53.

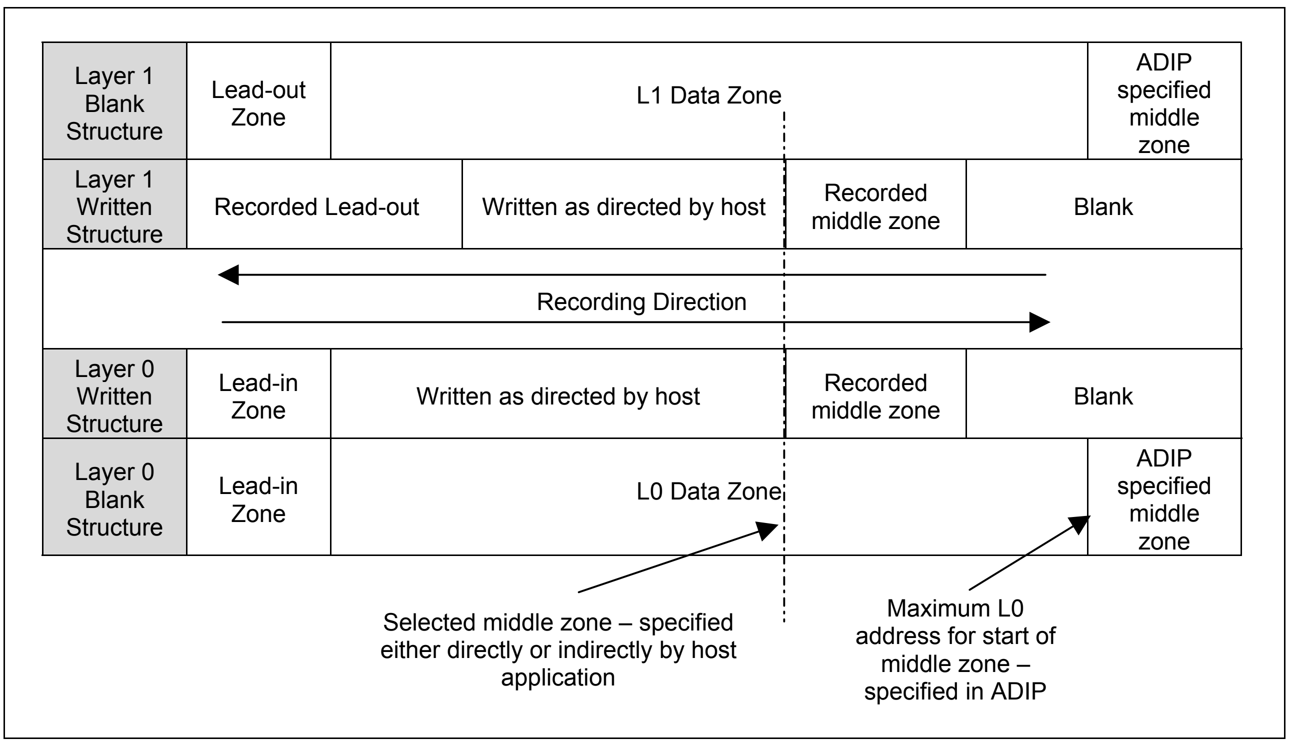


Figure 53 — Blank and Recorded Structure of a DVD+R DL Disc

The middle zone is recorded according to the [DVD+Ref3]. The middle zone is not recorded later than the ADIP specified last possible middle zone start address and has a nominal length of 1 088 ECC blocks. It is permitted to extend a middle zone recording when additional length is needed.

4.10.5 Recording on DVD+R DL

LBAs are recorded consecutively from the beginning of the L0 data zone until the start of the L0 Middle Zone. Recording continues from the end of the L1 Middle Zone until the end of the L1 data zone. A DVD+R DL disc may contain multiple sessions, each consisting of one or more fragments.

The ADIP provides information in the Lead-in area that identifies the last possible location for the start of the middle zone on layer 0. The Host is permitted to select a smaller address for this location (See 6.36). The address shall:

- be smaller or equal to the ADIP specification,
- be within the incomplete fragment of the first session, and
- begin with a blank ECC block.

This address is written into the Control Data Zone (in the Lead-in) when the first session is closed. Consequently, if the Host wishes to select an address other than that supplied in the ADIP, that selection shall be made prior to closing the first session.

Figure 54 shows an example of a multi-session disc. A session is permitted to cross layer boundaries.

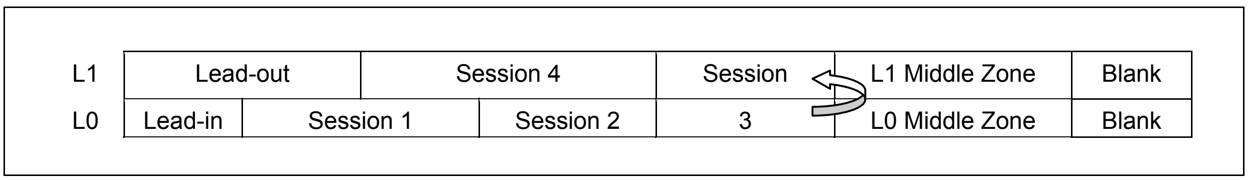


Figure 54 — Example of a DVD+R DL Disc

It is preferred that the L1 middle zone end at the radial position of the start of the L0 middle zone and each middle zones shall have at least nominal length.

4.10.5.1 Session Structure

4.10.5.1.1 Sessions

The session structure is identical to that defined for DVD+R (See 4.9.2). The maximum number of sessions on DVD+R DL is 127.

4.10.5.1.2 Fragments (Logical Tracks)

The definition of Fragment on DVD+R is identical to the definition of Fragment on DVD+R DL. The numbering of Logical Tracks on DVD+R DL uses the fragment merging defined in 4.9.2.

4.10.5.2 Single Layer Recording

A DVD+R DL disc may be recorded as a single layer disc. However, maximum compatibility is obtained when both layers are recorded. If the disc is closed prior to any recording on layer 1, the middle zones should be recorded as middle zone and the remainder of layer 1 should be recorded as Lead-out. See Figure 55.

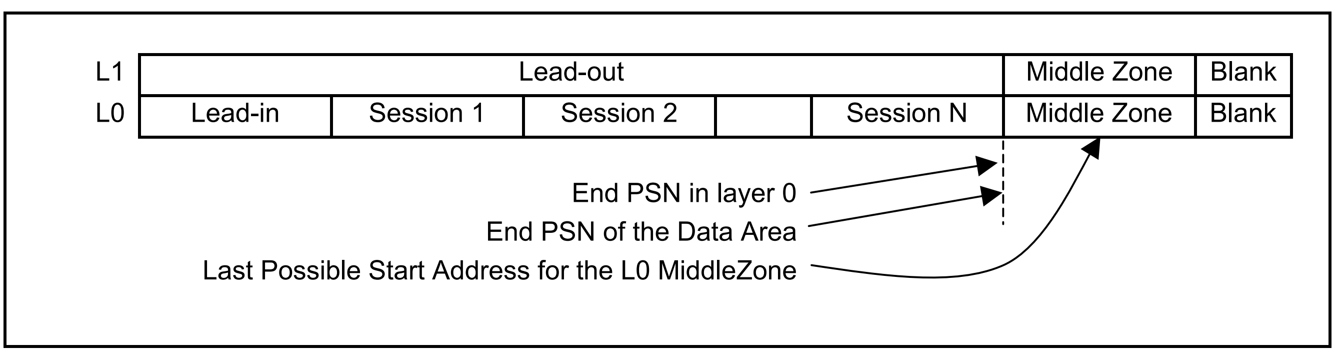


Figure 55 — Preferred Single Layer Recording

4.10.5.3 Dual Layer Recording: Crossing the Layers

When a layer switch is required at the selected end of L0, recording begins on L1 with 4 run-in blocks in the L1 middle zone preceding user data. See Figure 56.

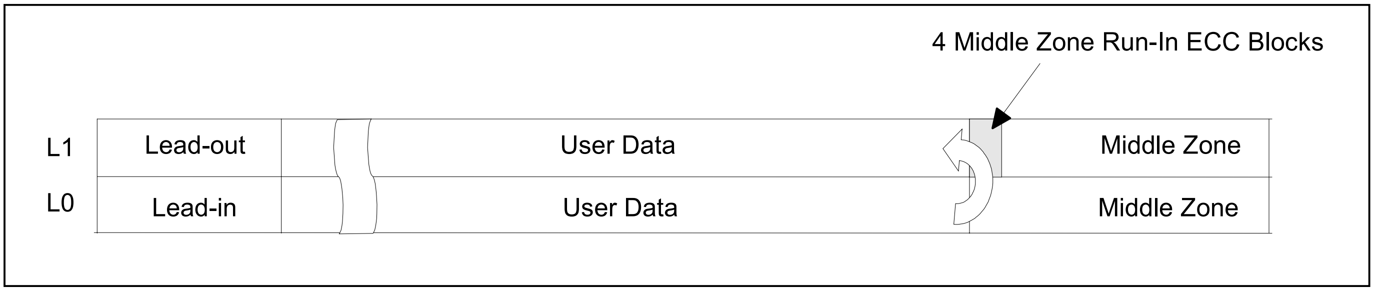


Figure 56 — Run-in ECC Blocks in L1 Middle Zone

Since DVD+R DL format follows the DVD+R format, there is only one pre-condition when crossing the layers: Crossing the layers shall occur at an ECC block boundary.

A typical example of crossing the layers during recording is shown in Figure 57. In this case, fragment 4 is the incomplete fragment and is written sequentially. When a write command requires more capacity than remains on layer 0, the write continues on layer 1 after 4 run-in blocks have been written into the L1 middle zone. The Middle Zones shall be recorded completely when the Session that contains the layer crossing position is closed or when the disc is finalized, whichever of the two happens first.

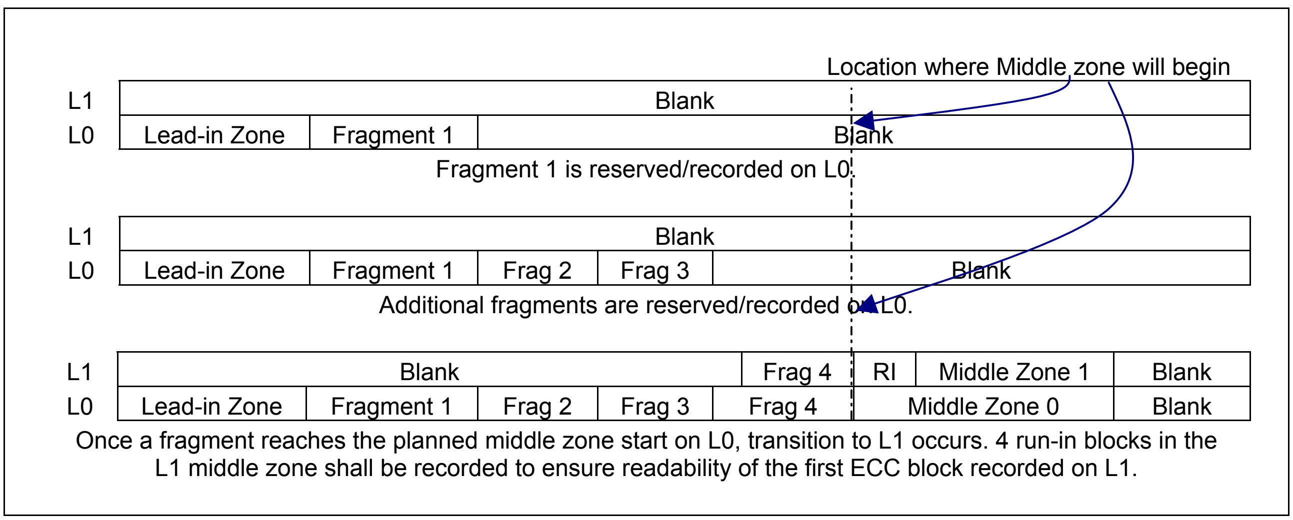


Figure 57 — Example: Crossing the Layers During Recording

Other cases of layer transition are always governed by the DVD+R format. Examples are shown in Table 54.

Table 54 — Examples of Layer Transitions

Situation	Content of the First ECC Block written in the L1 User Data Area
The Intro of a session ends exactly at the end of the L0 user data area.	The first ECC block of the first fragment of the session
A fragment that is not the last fragment ends exactly at the end of the L0 user data area.	The fragment dividing run-in ECC block that appears prior to the next fragment
A run-in ECC block that divides two fragments is exactly the last ECC block of the L0 user data area.	The first ECC block of the next fragment of the session
The last fragment of a session ends exactly at the end of the L0 user data area.	The first ECC block of the session closure. The closure is written when the session is closed. Consequently, both middle zones are also written at this time.
The closure of a session ends exactly at the end of the L0 user data area.	The first ECC block of the Intro of the next session. The middle zones are written when the next session is closed.

In all cases, a middle zone is recorded with a minimum, nominal length (1 088 ECC blocks).

4.10.5.4 Finalization

Predecessors of DVD+R DL do not write any of the Lead-out area until the disc is finalized. In order to promote better read-only device compatibility, parts of the Lead-out may be written early on a DVD+R DL disc. For this purpose, additional areas are defined on a DVD+R DL disc as shown in Figure 58.

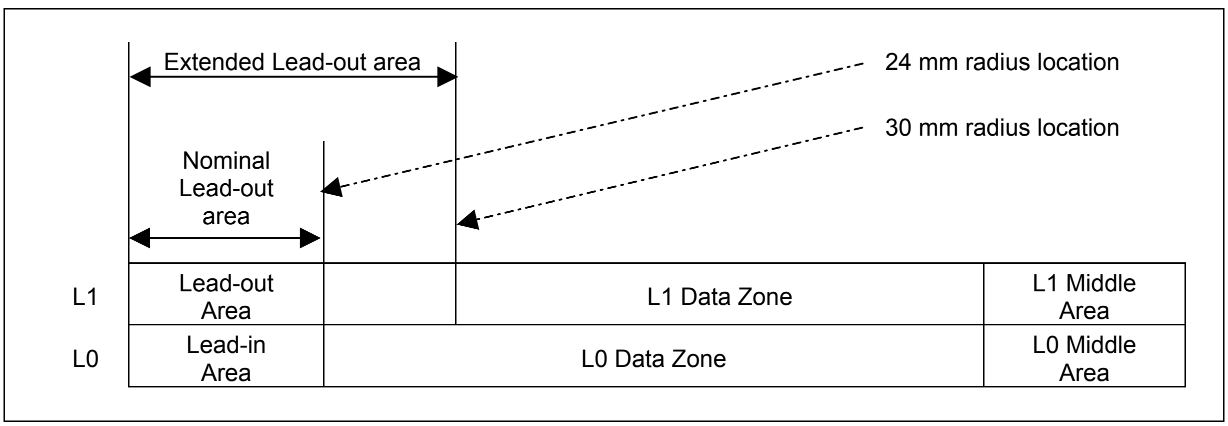


Figure 58 — Finalization Areas on DVD+R DL

The nominal Lead-out area is exactly the Lead-out area defined in the Lead-in ADIP.

The extended Lead-out area extends on L1 from an address that approximates a 30 mm radius (approximately the L1 PSN F90000h).

4.10.5.5 Finalization Time Deferral

When a DVD+R DL disc is finalized, every ECC block between the Lead-in and the L0 middle zone shall be recorded, and every ECC block between the L1 middle zone and the Lead-out area shall be recorded. Due to the large capacity of a DVD+R DL disc, finalization may require an extra-ordinary finalization time when only a small part of the user data area has been recorded with data from the Host. If the disc has N sessions, it is possible to share the finalization overhead with the closing of session 1.

Finalization may be started with closing the first session. Minimally, the nominal Lead-out should be recorded during the closure of session 1. It is also permitted to record an extended Lead-out. The extended Lead-out represents about 13% of the recording size of layer 1. Consequently, recording that part of L1 is not required when the disc is finalized.

4.10.6 Read-Only Compatibility

A DVD+R DL disc has greatest read-only device compatibility when every ECC block from the beginning of the Lead-in area to the end of the L0 middle zone and from the beginning of the L1 middle zone until the end of the Lead-out area is recorded.

A very high level of read-only device compatibility is obtained when only the area between the end of the L1 middle zone and the beginning of the Lead-out area remain unrecorded. This level of compatibility is significantly improved when the inner radius of each middle zone is at least 30 mm.

4.11 DVD+RW

4.11.1 Track Structure

DVD+RW is specified as single layer, either one-sided or double-sided, and available in either 80 mm or 120 mm.

4.11.1.1 The ADIP (Address in Pre-groove)

Like CD-RW media:

a) DVD+RW media has a wobble structure that defines the groove
b) Information is modulated onto the wobble
c) Within the Information Zone, this information contains the address of the associated sector
d) Within the Lead-in, there is additional information about the disc

This is generally called Address-In-Pre-groove or ADIP.

4.11.1.2 Logical Structure

The Information zone is organized as a sequence of independently recorded units called ECC blocks.

Each ECC block contains 16 user sectors. Each sector is identified by its PSN and contains 2 048 bytes of data.

Physical addresses advance incrementally beginning at the virtual address 00000000h. It is virtual, because the physical nature of a DVD+RW device guarantees that no Drive is ever be able to reach the sector with PSN = 0. Consequently, the first sector that is required to exist has a PSN significantly larger than 0. As with DVD-ROM, the first user accessible sector has PSN = 30000h. The DVD+RW 120-mm one-sided disc has 4.70 GB available to the user, while the two-sided disc has 9.40 GB. The DVD+RW 80-mm one-sided disc has 1.46 GB available to the user, while the two-sided disc has 2.92 GB.

4.11.2 The ECC Block

The basic DVD ECC block structure as defined in 4.3.1.2 applies to DVD+RW. The sector ID field is viewed as a 32-bit field as shown in Figure 25. For DVD+RW, the definition of the sector information part of the ID field is shown in Figure 59.

Sector Information ID bits 31 through 24

31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24
Sector Format Type	Tracking Method	Reflectivity	Reserved	Zone Type		Data Type	Layer Number

Sector Format Type	0b	Indicates CLV format
Tracking Method	1b	Indicates groove tracking
Reflectivity	1b	Indicates reflectivity is less than or equal to 40%
Reserved	0b	Reserved
Zone Type	00b	When the sector is in the Data Zone
	01b	When the sector is in the Lead-in Zone
	10b	When the sector is in the Lead-out Zone
Data Type	1b	Indicates rewritable data
Layer Number	0b	Through the entrance surface only one recording layer may be accessed

Figure 59 — DVD+RW ID field Sector Information details

The groove, when recorded, is a continuous sequence of ECC blocks. If ECC block E and E+1 are consecutive, then whenever N is the largest PSN in E, then N+1 is the smallest PSN in E+1. i.e., the ECC blocks are

sequenced in an intuitively correct way. The rest of logical groove architecture is given by specific use of individual sectors.

The DVD+RW format provides only a continuous address space with no possibility of defect management. Table 55 shows the zoned layout of the DVD+RW groove.

Table 55 — DVD+RW Media Lay-out

Disc Area	Zone
LEAD-IN	Initial Zone
	Inner Disc Test Zone
	Inner Drive Test Zone
	Guard Zone 1
	Reserved Zone 1
	Reserved Zone 2
	Inner Disc Identification Zone
	Reserved Zone 3
	Reference Code Zone
	Buffer Zone 1
	Control Data Zone
	Buffer Zone 2
DATA	Data Zone
LEAD-OUT	Buffer Zone 3
	Outer Disc Identification Zone
	Guard Zone 2
	Reserved Zone 4
	Outer Drive Test Zone
	Outer Disc Test Zone
	Guard Zone 3

4.11.3 DVD+RW Basic Format

Relative to the Host, the Data Zone is the user space and should be addressed according to LBA. The physical to logical address mapping for DVD+RW is the same as that for DVD-ROM: When physical sector number (PSN) represents a sector in the data zone, its LBA = PSN – 030000h.

4.11.3.1 Reading

When recorded, DVD+RW medium is ECC block readable. An intelligent controller may separate individual sector data from a decoded ECC block. Thus for the Host, DVD+RW media is 2 048 byte sector readable.

Note 4. The function of locating and separating the data of one specific sector from the appropriate ECC block is typically an automated feature within a silicon sub-system. So, select any 2 sectors within the ECC block. There is virtually no difference in the times required to separate each sector’s data from the ECC block. i.e., there is no real performance difference.

4.11.3.2 Writing

Since the Host’s perception is that the media is sector readable, then in order to maintain compatibility with other block devices, a DVD+RW Drive is able to also write single sectors for its Host.

The Drive is required to write DVD+RW media only in complete ECC blocks. So, the Drive shall often perform a read/modify/write function in order to place the Host’s data in the correct position within the ECC block. That works when the ECC block to be written has already been written. When the ECC block has never been written and the Drive shall write less than a full ECC block, then the Drive shall create data. The correct method is to zero fill sectors for which no data is available.

4.11.3.3 Formatting

When every ECC block in the Information Zone (Lead-in, Data Zone, Lead-out) of a DVD+RW has been recorded, the disc is “formatted”. [DVD+Ref2], additionally defines specific data content for all sectors. This makes it DVD+RW formatted.

Neither Read nor Write commands shall be accepted prior to format of blank media. When the media is blank and no format is in progress, the Current bit in both the Random Read and Random Writable features shall be zero.

Physically blank DVD+RW media has no data recorded in its groove, so read-only devices find no references on the surface of a blank DVD+RW disc. This has been compared to trying to run on ice. There is no control. So, in order to assure read compatibility with DVD read-only devices, it is very important to have formatted media.

Completely formatting a disc requires more time than is typically desired. To minimize the problem, much of the format time is pushed into background time.

Background formatting has some controlling requirements:

a) After some minimal amount of formatting has been performed, the operation goes from foreground time to background time. The formatting operation in the Drive should attempt to maintain the Data Zone in two areas: the inner area written and the outer area unwritten. For data applications devices, the formatting bit map in the FDCB shall be implemented in order to minimize excessive reformatting associated with random writing.
b) The Host should modify its allocation algorithms to minimize blank area fragmentation.
c) If the user wishes to remove the medium prior to format completion, the Host may request that the Drive create a temporary and minimally acceptable Lead-out that allows a continuation of the formatting process at a later time. The Host may also request that the medium be ejected in its current state.
d) In support of the previous requirement, the Drive shall provide a format re-start mechanism.
e) The Drive shall always make current format status available to the Host.

Details of how background formatting operates relative to the Host are to be found in the description of the FORMAT UNIT command (6.4).

4.12 Disc Control Blocks (DCBs)

4.12.1 Overview

DVD+R, DVD+R DL, and DVD+RW media format includes a generalized structure called the Disc Control Block (DCB) that is used for format or use information.

Each DCB is 16 sectors in length. The DCB header is the first 40 bytes of the block. The DCB Header fields have a common definition, while the remaining bytes depend on the value of the Content Descriptor field (see Table 56). The DCBs are defined in the [DVD+Ref1], [DVD+Ref2], and [DVD+Ref3].

Table 56 — Generic DCB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
…	Content Descriptor							
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)							
…	Unknown Content Descriptor Actions							
7								(LSB)
8 – 39	Drive ID							
40 - 32 767	DCB Data							

The location of a DCB is dependent upon its content descriptor.

The Address field of the READ DISC STRUCTURE command shall contain a Content Descriptor to identify the DCB requested. The Content Descriptor field identifies the contents of bytes 40 – 32 767. Valid values are shown in Table 57.

Table 57 — Valid Values for Content Descriptor

Content Descriptor	Definition
00000000h	Reserved
00000001h – FFFFFFFDh	The DCB with a matching Content Descriptor is returned
FFFFFFFEh	Reserved
FFFFFFFFh	Return a list of readable and writable DCB Content Descriptors

The Unknown Content Descriptor Actions field (Table 58) contains a bit mask. This mask describes actions the Drive is allowed to perform if the Drive does not know the Content Descriptor. Each bit, when set to one, prohibits the corresponding action. When set to zero, the corresponding action is allowed.

Table 58 — Unknown Content Descriptor Actions

Bit	Actions
0	Recording within the user data area
1	Reading DCBs
2	Formatting of the medium
3	Modification of this DCB
4 –31	Reserved

In the event that the Host violates the instructions of the Unknown Content Descriptor, the associated command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ ILLEGAL FUNCTION.

The Drive ID field contains Drive identification that is vendor specific.

4.12.2 Specified DCBs

4.12.2.1 DVD+R and DVD+R DL Session DCB (SDCB)

The format of a Session DCB with N Session items is shown in Table 59.

Table 59 — Session DCB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
40 – 41	Session Number							
42 – 63	Reserved							
64 – 95	Disc ID (included only in Lead-in SDCBs)							
96 – 127	Application dependent data							
128 - 143	Session item 0							
144 – 159	Session item 1							
…	…							
128+16*i – 143+16*i	Session item i							
…	…							
128+16*(N-1) – 143+16*(N-1)	Last Session Item (Session item N-1)							
128+16*N – 8 191	Extension area for additional Session items. Zero filled							
8 192 – 16 383	Bytes 0 – 8 191 repeated (or reserved and set to zeros)							
16 384 – 24 575	Bytes 0 – 8 191 repeated (or reserved and set to zeros)							
24 576 – 32 767	Bytes 0 – 8 191 repeated (or reserved and set to zeros)							

4.13 Blu-ray Disc (BD)

4.13.1 Overview

4.13.1.1 General

Blu-ray Disc (BD) describes the optical and physical characteristics of 120 mm optical discs. The discs support Single Layer (SL) and Dual Layers (DL). The SL disc has a capacity of 25.0 Gbytes. The DL disc has a capacity of 50.0 Gbytes.

The BD system also allows 80 mm discs, both in a Single Layer version and a Dual Layer version with capacities of 7.8 Gbytes and 15.6 Gbytes respectively. These discs have the same characteristics as the 120 mm discs, except for some parameters related to the smaller dimensions.

BD is defined in three disc types:

a) BD Read-only (BD-ROM),

b) Recordable (BD-R) – a write-once media, and

c) Rewritable (BD-RE).

4.13.1.2 The Spiral

The spiral of each BD layer is consistent with the general case described in 4.1.2. Dual layer BD is defined only for OTP discs.

4.13.1.3 Logical Blocks, Sectors and Clusters

The logical block size of BD is 2 048 bytes. A BD sector contains the data of one logical block and 18 bytes of control information. A group of 32 sectors are collected into a recorded unit called a Cluster. The user data within a BD sector is protected by the error correction coding in the Cluster that contains the sector.

BD discs may consist of one or two layers. In the case of two layers, the Host is aware of a single logical address space, because the Drive maps all user data areas to a single, continuous, logical address space.

The Host may discover the value of the layer 0 end LBA by issuing the GET PERFORMANCE command requesting Unusable Data Area (Type = 01h). See 6.7.3.3.

The access model for BD is based upon the random access device model:

a. The user data space is organized in fixed size blocks (2048 bytes/block) and addressed as logical blocks. Blocks in this Logical Block Address space may be read using only the READ (10) and READ (12) commands.

b. Sectors within the user data space may be written using the WRITE(10), WRITE(12), WRITE AND VERIFY(10), and WRITE AND VERIFY(12) commands. The drive may be required to perform read-modify-write sequences.

c. Logical Block Addresses are numbered from 0 through CAPACITY-1. The value of CAPACITY-1 is the Logical Block Address returned by the READ CAPACITY command.

d. The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is implemented to assure compatibility with existing applications. Only formats 0 and 1 are implemented. Some structures may be fabricated.

e. Structures unique to BD may be read using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command.

4.13.1.4 Unrecorded Sector Addressing

In all recording modes, seek to any sector shall be supported by all BD Drives. Neither Lead-in Zone and/or Lead-out Zone need to be completely written.

The Table 60 shows the returned value when the Host requests to read the blank sector on a BD-R/RE medium.

Table 60 — Behavior of reading of a Blank Cluster

<table>
<tr><th>Media</th><th colspan="2">Recording mode</th><th>Behavior of reading of a blank Cluster</th></tr>
<tr><td>BD-RE</td><td colspan="2">-</td><td>If a Host requests to read a Logical Block from a blank Cluster of a disc, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">BD-R</td><td colspan="2">RRM</td><td>If a Host requests to read a Logical Block from a blank Cluster of a disc, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">SRM-POW</td><td>Closed Logical Track</td><td>If a Logical Track is closed, it may contain some blank Clusters. If the Host chooses to read a sector from a blank Cluster of a closed Logical Track, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data.</td></tr>
<tr><td>Open Logical Track</td><td>If a Host requests to read a sector from a blank Cluster of an open Logical Track, the Drive should return Blank Check error (SK/ASC/ASCQ should be 08/00/00).</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">SRM+POW</td><td>If a Host requests to read a Logical Block from a blank Cluster of a disc, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data regardless of state of SRR (Open or Closed).</td></tr>
</table>

4.14 BD-ROM

4.14.1 Overview

BD-ROM is a read-only media with the general characteristics described in 4.13.1.

4.14.2 Track Structure

The single layer BD disc information zone (Figure 60) is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone (Inner Zone 0), Data Zone, and Lead-out Zone (Outer Zone 0).

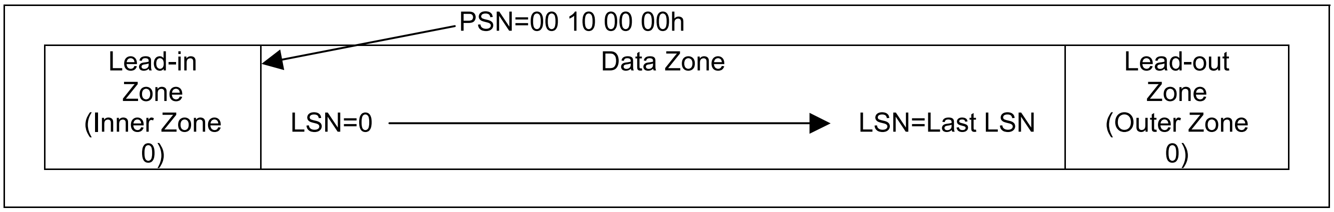


Figure 60 — Layout of Single Layer BD-ROM Information Zone

The layer 0 information zone of a dual layer BD disc (Figure 61) is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The layer 1 information zone of a dual layer disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius. The layer 0 information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone (Inner Zone 0), Data Zone 0, and Outer Zone 0. The layer 1 information zone is divided into three areas: Outer zone 1, Data Zone 1, and the Lead-out zone (Inner Zone 1).

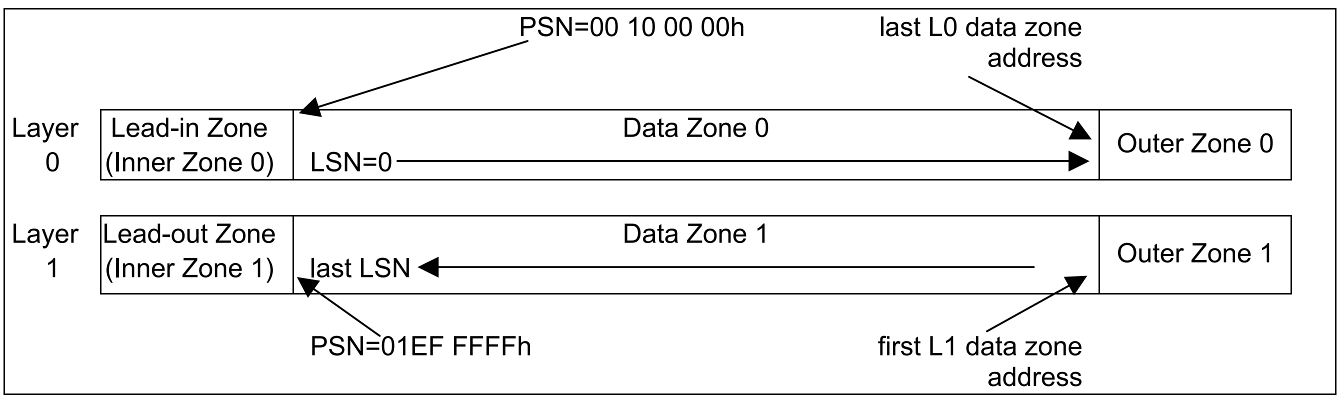


Figure 61 — Layout of Dual Layer BD-ROM Information Zone

4.14.3 The Information Zone

The information zone of a dual layer BD-ROM disc (Figure 62) is the accessible spirals.

Direction of Increasing Physical Addresses

L0 Inner Radius

BCA			
Embossed (Tracks at wide pitch)		Protection Zone 1	Seek overshoot protection zone
		PIC	Permanent Information & Control data Zone
		Protection Zone 2	Seek overshoot protection zone
Embossed (Tracks at normal pitch)	Lead-in Zone (Inner Zone 0)		
		INFO2	Control Information area
		Reserved	-
		INFO1	Control information area
	Data Zone 0	Data Zone	Primary user data area
	Outer Zone 0	INFO3/4	Control Information area
		Protection Zone 3	Seek overshoot protection zone

L0 Outer Radius

Direction of Increasing Physical Addresses

L1 Outer Radius

Embossed (tracks at normal pitch)	Outer Zone 1	Protection Zone 3	Seek overshoot protection zone
		INFO3/4	Control Information area
	Data Zone 1	Data Zone	Primary user data area
	Lead-out Zone (Inner Zone 1)	INFO1	Control information area
		Reserved	-
		INFO2	Control Information area
		Protection Zone 2	Seek overshoot protection zone
Embossed (Tracks at wide pitch)			
		PIC	Permanent Information & Control data Zone
		Protection Zone 1	Seek overshoot protection zone

L1 Inner Radius

Figure 62 — BD-ROM Information Zone

4.14.3.1 Burst Cutting Area (BCA)

The Burst Cutting Area (BCA), if present, contains application specific information.

4.14.3.2 Embossed Zone (tracks at wide pitch)

The Embossed area consists of:

Protection Zone 1	This zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's inner radius.
Permanent Information & Control data zone (PIC)	On layer zero, this embossed zone may contain disc information that includes, but is not restricted to: 1. Physical media class and version 2. Physical address of the start of the Data Zone 3. Physical address of the start of the outer zone (if this is a single layer media, this is the Lead-out) 4. Number of layers 5. Recording Density On layer 1 this embossed zone contains a copy of the layer 0 information, but the physical addresses refer to physical addresses on layer 1.
Protection Zone 2	This zone is a buffer area between the 2 track pitches. The first part of this zone has wide pitch.

4.14.3.3 Inner Zone 0 (Lead-in Zone)/Inner Zone 1 (Lead-out Zone)

An Inner Zone consists of:

Protection Zone 2	This zone is a buffer area between the 2 track pitches. The second part of this zone has normal pitch.
INFO2	This zone is intended to contain information specific to the application.
Reserved	This zone is reserved. Each Cluster shall contain only zeros.
INFO1	This zone is intended to contain control information.

4.14.3.4 Data Zone

The data zone contains application data that is readable by the Host as a sequence of sectors.

4.14.3.5 Outer Zone 0 (Lead-out Zone)/Outer Zone 1

On single layer media the Outer Zone has the function of the Lead-out Zone. On dual layer media, the Outer Zone 0 and Outer Zone 1 are layer transition zones on layer 0 and layer 1, respectively. The Outer Zone consists of:

INFO3/4	This zone is intended to contain control information.
Protection Zone 3	This zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's outer radius.

4.14.4 Access Model

The access model for BD is based upon the random access read-only device model:

a. The user data space is organized in fixed size blocks (2 048 bytes/block) and addressed as logical blocks. Blocks in this Logical Block Address space may be read using only the READ (10) and READ (12) commands.
b. Logical block addresses are numbered from 0 through READ CAPACITY LBA. The value of READ CAPACITY LBA is the logical block address returned by the READ CAPACITY command.
c. The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is implemented to assure compatibility with existing applications. Only formats 0 and 1 are implemented. Some structures may be fabricated.
d. Structures unique to BD may be read using the READ DISC STRUCTURES command.

4.15 BD-R

4.15.1 Overview

BD-R is a write-once media with the general characteristics described in 4.13.1.

4.15.2 Blank Media Structure

BD-R is a write-once media that may consist of one or two layers. Each layer consists of single continuous spiral structured only as opposite-track-path.

4.15.2.1 Primary Zones

Each layer is separated into 3 primary zones: Inner, Data, and Outer.

On single layer discs, the Inner Zone is used as the disc Lead-in and the Outer Zone is used as the disc Lead-out. See Figure 63.

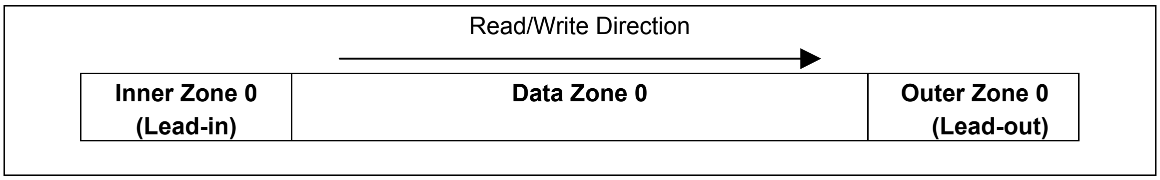


Figure 63 — Primary Zones of a Single Layer BD-R

On dual layer discs, the layer 0 Inner Zone is used as the disc Lead-in and the layer 1 Inner Zone is used as the disc Lead-out. The two Outer Zones are used as layer transition zones. See Figure 64.

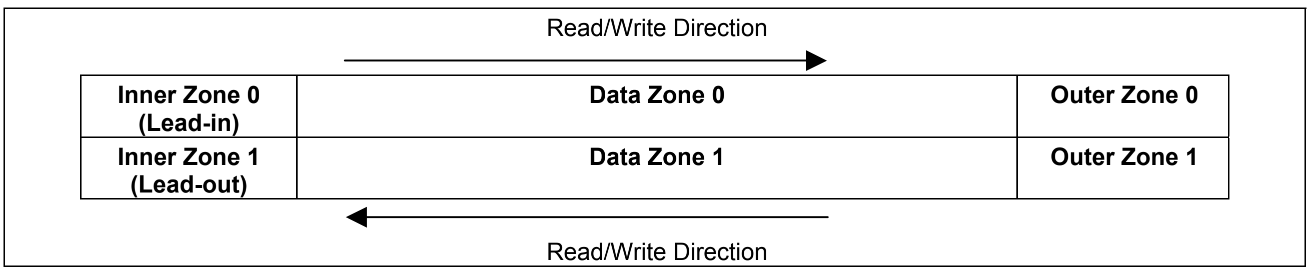


Figure 64 — Primary Zones of a Dual Layer BD-R

4.15.2.2 Capacity

BD-R capacity is determined by the size of the Data Zones. Possible BD-R disc capacities are shown in Table 61.

Table 61 — BD-R Disc Capacities

Diameter	Single Layer	Dual Layer
80 mm	7.8 GB	15.6 GB
120 mm	25.0 GB	50.0 GB

4.15.2.3 ADIP

BD-R has a single grooved track with a fixed frequency wobble. The wobble contains modulated location information called Address In Pre-groove (ADIP).

In the Inner Zones, the ADIP address information is interleaved with disc information called Disc Information (DI) frames. The collection of DI frames contains information about the logical disc structure as well as recording parameters.

The DI is repeated in pre-recorded areas that occur prior to the Inner Zones.

4.15.2.4 Groove Layout

Each layer of the BD-R Information Zone is divided into an embossed (pre-recorded) high frequency modulated (HFM) area and a recordable area. The detailed groove layout is shown in Figure 65.

L0 Inner Radius

Direction of Increasing Physical Addresses

BCA			
Embossed Area		Protection zone 1	Seek overshoot protection zone
		PIC	Permanent Information & Control data Zone
Recordable Area	Inner Zone 0 (Lead-in Zone)	Protection zone 2	Seek overshoot protection zone
		INFO2	DMA2 and PAC2
		OPC	Optimum Power Calibration Zone
		TDMA0	Temporary Disc Management Area 0
		INFO1	DMA1 and PAC1
	Data Zone	ISA0	Inner Spare Area
		User Data Area	Primary user data area 0
		OSA0	Outer Spare Area
	Outer Zone 0	INFO3/4	DMA3, DMA4 and control info
		DCZ0	Disc Calibration Zone
		Protection zone 3	Seek overshoot protection zone

L0 Outer Radius

L1 Outer Radius

Direction of Increasing Physical Addresses

Recordable Area	Outer Zone 1	Protection zone 3	Seek overshoot protection zone
		DCZ1	Disc Calibration Zone
		INFO3/4	DMA3, DMA4 and control info
	Data Zone	OSA1	Outer Spare Area 1
		User Data Area	Primary user data area 1
		ISA1	Inner Spare Area 1
	Inner Zone 1 (Lead-out Zone)	INFO1	DMA1 and PAC1
		Reserved	—
		TDMA1	Temporary Disc Management Area 1
		INFO2	DMA2 and PAC2
		Buffer Zone	
		OPC	Optimum Power Calibration Zone
		Buffer Zone	
		Protection Zone 1	Seek overshoot protection zone

L1 Inner Radius

Figure 65 — BD-R Information Zones

The recordable area of each layer is divided into an Inner Zone, a data zone, and an Outer Zone.

On a single layer disc the Inner Zone is used as a disc Lead-in and the Outer Zone is used as a Lead-out.

On a dual layer disc, Inner Zone 0 is the disc Lead-in, Inner Zone 1 is the disc Lead-out, and the Outer Zones are layer transition areas.

For a detailed description of specific zones, consult [BD-Ref2].

4.15.2.5 Burst Cutting Area (BCA)

The BCA is used to add information to the disc after completion of the manufacturing process. The BCA-code is typically written by a high-power laser system in the case of Recordable discs.

4.15.2.6 Pre-recorded Zone

The Pre-recorded zone consists of:

Protection Zone 1	Protection Zone 1, on each layer, is meant as a protection area against overwriting the PIC zone by the Burst Cutting Area (BCA) that precedes the normal recording spiral.
Permanent Information & Control data Zone (PIC)	On layer zero, this pre-recorded area contains disc information that includes, but is not restricted to: 1. Physical media class and version 2. Physical address of the start of the Data Zone 3. Physical address of the start of the outer zone (if this is a single layer media, this is the Lead-out) 4. Number of layers 5. Recording Density 6. Write power information There is no PIC zone on layer 1.

4.15.2.7 Lead-in Zone (Inner Zone 0)

An Inner Zone consists of:

Protection Zone 2	On both layers, this zone buffers the rewritable area from the embossed area.
INFO2	On both layers, INFO2 is reserved for DMA and PAC storage.
Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) Zone	On both layers, the OPC Zone is reserved for testing and calibration.
TDMA0, 1	Temporary Disc Management Areas
INFO1	On both layers, this area is reserved for DMA and PAC storage.

4.15.2.8 Data Zone

The Data Zone consists of:

Inner Spare Areas (ISA0, ISA1)	If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, then ISA0 contains 4 096 Clusters and ISA1 has a maximum size of 16 384 Clusters allocated in 256 Cluster increments. Any part of the data zone that is not allocated for the ISAs is part of the User Data Area. A TDMA may be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters from any Spare Area. This action reduces the size of the Spare Area by the amount allocated for the TDMA.
User Data Area	The User Data Area is the logically addressed area of the disc.
Outer Spare Areas (OSA0, OSA1)	If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, then, OSA0 has a maximum size of 196 608 Clusters, allocated in 256 Cluster increments. On DL discs, OSA1 shall be the same size as OSA0. A TDMA may be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters from any Spare Area. This action reduces the size of the Spare Area by the amount allocated for the TDMA.

4.15.2.9 Outer Zone 0 (Lead-out Zone on a SL disc)

On single layer media the Outer Zone has the function of the Lead-out Zone. On dual layer media, the Outer Zone 0 and Outer Zone 1 are layer transition zones between the two layers. The Outer Zone consists of:

INFO3/4	On both layers, INFO3/4 is reserved for defect management and control information.
DCZ	The Drive Calibration Zone is reserved for calibration purposes.
Protection Zone 3	On both layers, this zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc's outer radius.

4.15.3 Logical Structure

4.15.3.1 Logical Structure of Single Layer BD-R

The single layer BD disc information zone (Figure 66) is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone, and Lead-out Zone.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zone, creating three areas within the data zone: Inner Spare Area (ISA0), User Data Area, and Outer Spare Area (OSA0).

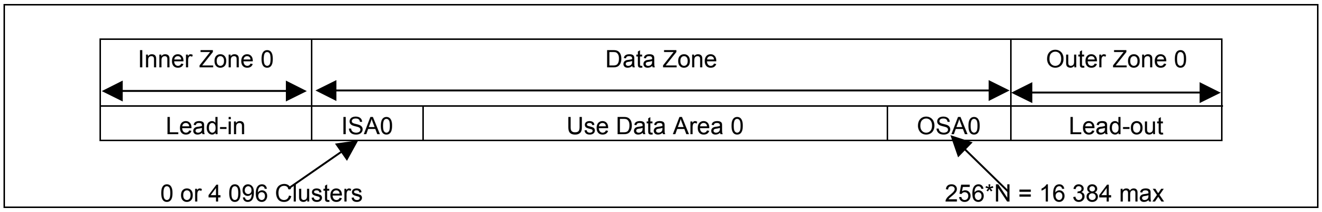


Figure 66 — SL BD-R Information Zone

Regardless of disc diameter, if ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4 096 Clusters. On 120 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 196 608 Clusters, allocated in increments of 256 Clusters. On 80 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 65 536 Clusters, allocated in increments of 256 Clusters.

The defect management and recording management information needs to be updated many times during use. For this purpose a special area is available in the Lead-in/Lead-out Zone called a Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA). Additional TDMAs may be defined to facilitate more space for more updates of the defect and recording management information. These areas are useful in the case of many ejects after short recordings or when a more frequent update scheme is desired for more robustness against, for example, power failures. Figure 67 shows possible TDMA allocation on single layer BD-R.

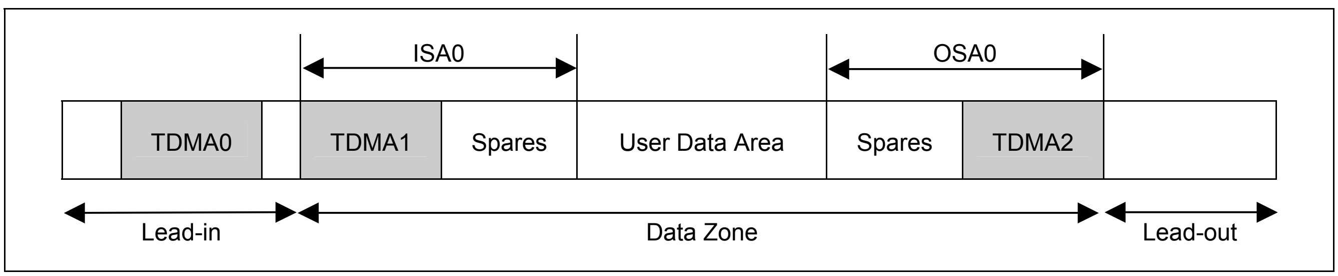


Figure 67 — TDMA Allocation on SL BD-R

TDMA0 is allocated from the Lead-in with 2 048 Clusters.

If necessary, TDMA1 may be allocated from ISA0. The size of TDMA1 shall be an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA1 to 15/16 of ISA0.

If necessary, TDMA 2 may be allocated from OSA0. The size of TDMA2 shall be an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA2 to 15/16 of OSA0.

4.15.3.2 Logical Structure of Dual Layer BD-R

The layer 0 information zone of a dual layer BD disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The layer 1 information zone of a dual layer disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius. The layer 0 information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone 0, and the Outer Zone 0. The layer 1 information zone is divided into three areas: the Outer zone 1, Data Zone 1, and the Lead-out zone. Defect Management areas are intermingled with these zones as shown in Figure 68.

The Host may discover the value of the layer 0 end LBA by issuing the GET PERFORMANCE command requesting Unusable Data Area (Type = 01h). See 6.7.3.3.

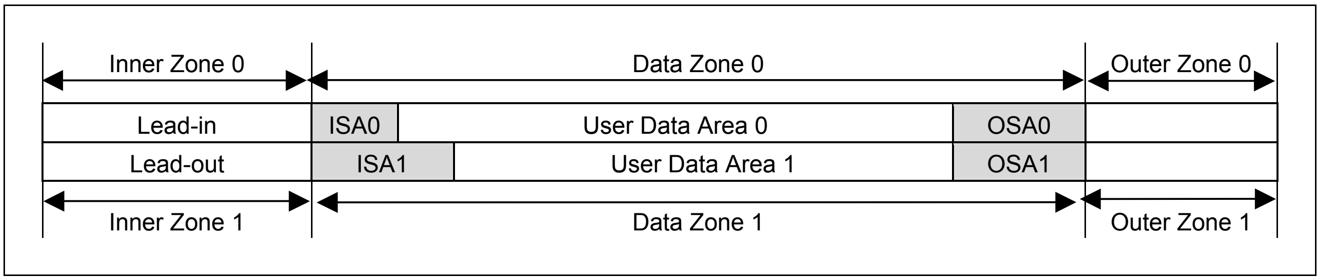


Figure 68 — DL BD-R Information Zones

Regardless of disc diameter, if ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4 096 clusters, and ISA1 has a variable size from 0 to 16 384 Clusters, in increments of 256 Clusters.

On 120 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 196 608 Clusters in increments of 256 Clusters. On 80 mm media, OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 65 536 Clusters in increments of 256 Clusters. Regardless of disc diameter, OSA1 has the same size as OSA0.

The defect management and recording management information needs to be updated many times during use. For this purpose a special area is available in the Lead-in/Lead-out Zone called a Temporary Disc Management Area (TDMA). Additional TDMAs may be defined to facilitate more space for more updates of the defect and recording management information. These areas are useful in the case of many ejects after short recordings or when a more frequent update scheme is desired for more robustness against, for example, power failures. Figure 69 shows possible TDMA allocation on dual layer BD-R.

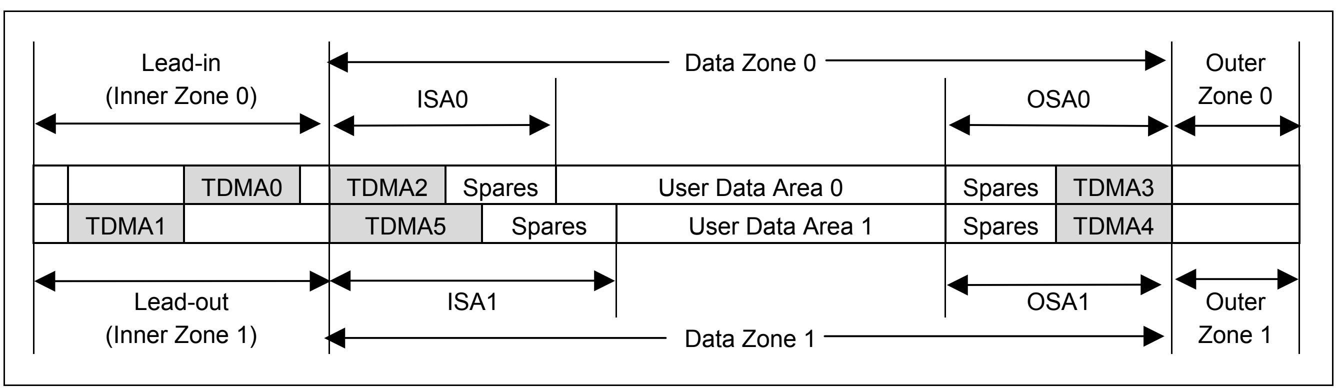


Figure 69 — TDMA Allocation on DL BD-R

TDMA0 is allocated in Inner Zone 0 (Lead-in) and is 2 048 Clusters in size.

TDMA1 is allocated in Inner Zone 1 (Lead-out) and is 2 048 Clusters in size.

TDMA2 may be allocated from ISA0. The size of TDMA2 shall be an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA2 to 15/16 of ISA0.

TDMA3 may be allocated from OSA0. The size of TDMA3 shall be an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA2 to 15/16 of OSA0.

TDMA4 may be allocated from OSA1. The size of TDMA4 shall be an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA3 to 15/16 of OSA1.

TDMA5 may be allocated from ISA1. The size of TDMA5 shall be an integral multiple of 256 Clusters. The FORMAT UNIT command maximizes TDMA5 to 15/16 of ISA1.

4.15.4 TDMA and DMA Usage

The TDMAs shall be allocated when the disc is initialized (typically by the execution of the FORMAT UNIT command). Each TDMA shall be filled up contiguously and in the direction of ascending PSNs.

For single layer discs, the minimal TDMA allocation is TDMA0. The TDMAs shall be used consecutively: TDMA0 first, TDMA1 (if it exists) second, and TDMA2 (if it exists) last.

For dual layer discs, the minimal TDMA allocation is TDMA0 and TDMA1. The TDMAs shall be used consecutively: TDMA0 first, TDMA1 second, TDMA2 (if it exists) third, TDMA3 (if it exists) fourth, TDMA4 (if it exists) fifth, and TDMA5 (if it exists) sixth.

To quickly discover the TDMA currently in use, the first few Clusters of TDMA0 are used as indicators. On a SL disc the first 3 Clusters of TDMA0 are reserved as “current TDMA access indicators”. On a DL disc the first 6 Clusters of TDMA0 are reserved as “current TDMA access indicators”. These TDMA access indicators are used in the direction of descending PSNs.

The first Cluster of TDMA0 is reserved as an indicator that all DMA zones are written. Thus, if the DMA indicator has been written, the disc is closed (finalized).

SL TDMA access indicators are shown in Figure 70.

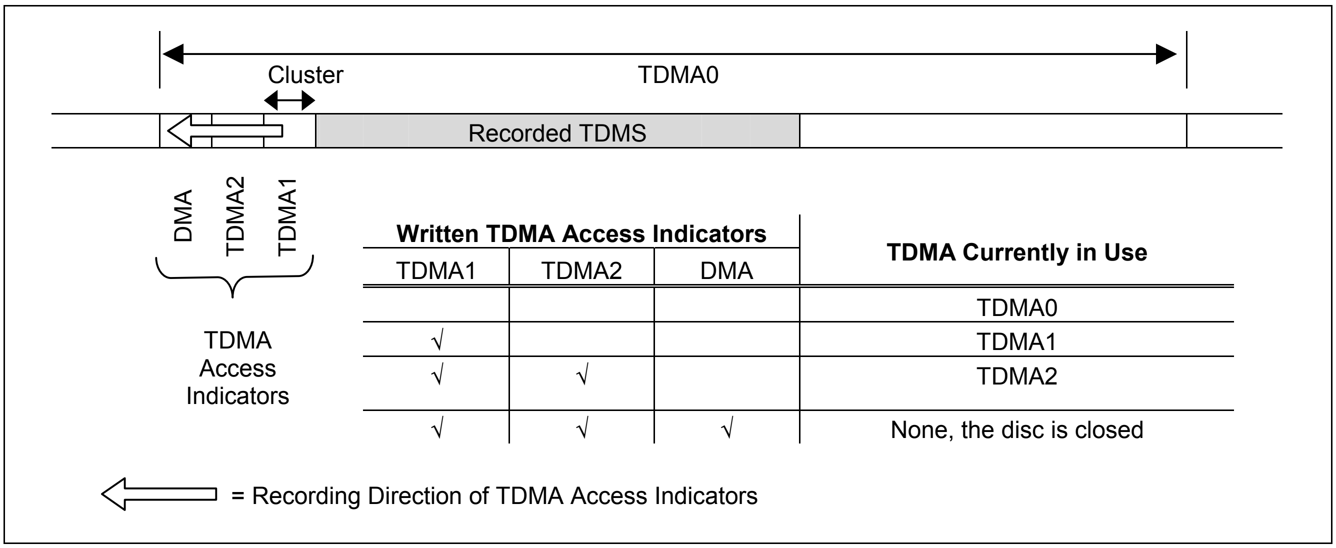
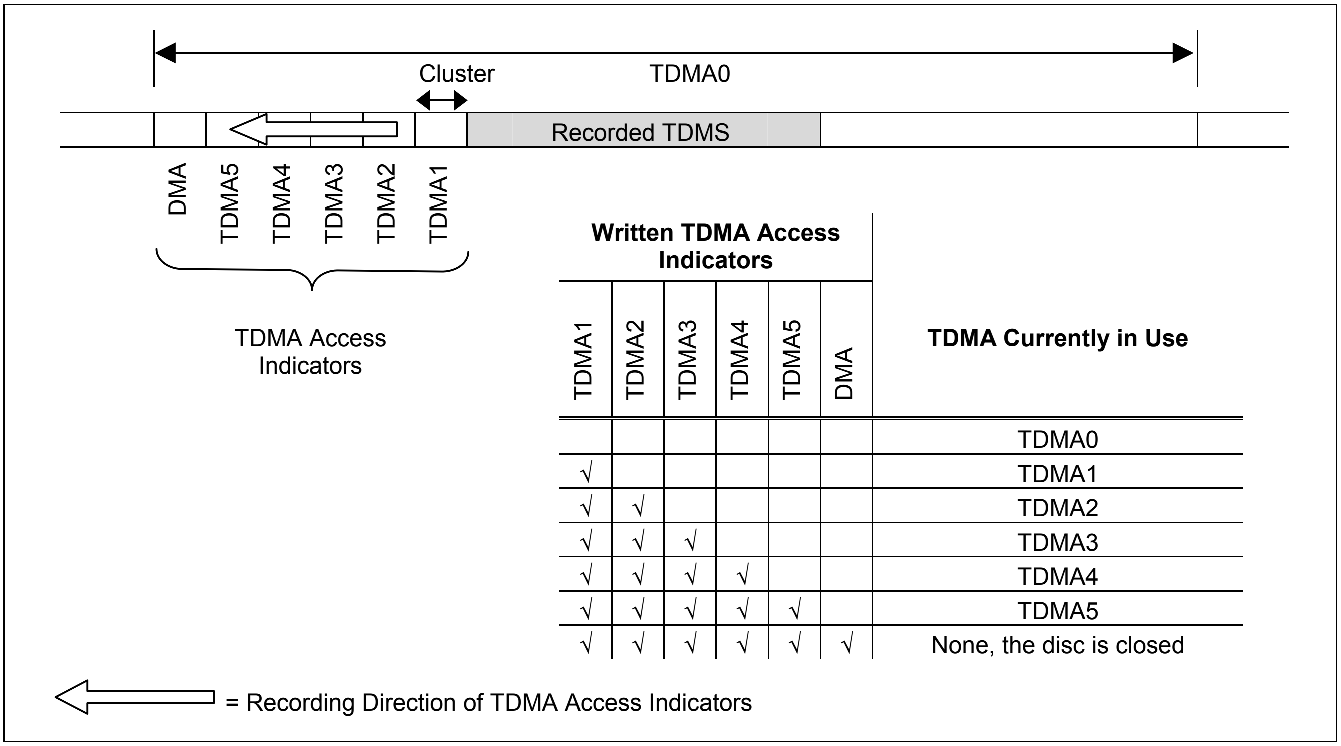


Figure 70 — TDMA Access Indicators on Single Layer Disc

DL TDMA access indicators are shown in Figure 71.



Written TDMA Access Indicators						TDMA Currently in Use
TDMA1	TDMA2	TDMA3	TDMA4	TDMA5	DMA	
						TDMA0
√						TDMA1
√	√					TDMA2
√	√	√				TDMA3
√	√	√	√			TDMA4
√	√	√	√	√		TDMA5
√	√	√	√	√	√	None, the disc is closed

Figure 71 — TDMA Access Indicators on Dual Layer Disc

4.15.5 BD-R Recording Models

BD-R has two basic recording modes: SRM (Sequential Recording Mode) and RRM (Random Recording Mode). Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) is defined as an additional capability for SRM.

The default mode for a blank BD-R disc is SRM with no spares allocated. Default mode is established if a blank BD-R is mounted and ready, and the Drive accepts and processes a RESERVE TRACK command, a WRITE (10) command or a WRITE (12) command.

Otherwise, specific recording mode is selected by use of the FORMAT UNIT command. If spares are to be allocated, the FORMAT UNIT command is used to select either default size or actual size of spare area.

Once the recording mode has been established, it is not changeable.

4.15.5.1 Random Recording Mode (RRM)

The Random Recording Mode (RRM) is an application of a Random Recording model that is similar to the Write-Once device model. A RRM formatted disc may be randomly recorded in Clusters.

The written status of user data area Clusters is maintained in a structure called the Space Bitmap. The Space Bitmap contains one bit per Cluster in Logical Address order. If a bit is set to zero, the associated Cluster has never been written. If the bit is set to one, the associated Cluster has been recorded.

Implementing RRM in a Drive is optional.

4.15.5.2 Sequential Recording Mode (SRM)

4.15.5.2.1 General

The Sequential Recording Mode (SRM) is an application of the Track/Session model that has been previously defined for CD and DVD. In order to maintain a structure that is consistent with the historical models, all definitions are made with respect to logical addressing.

During the time that the Track/Session status of the disc is dynamic (i.e. when the disc is not finalized), status and boundary information about Tracks/Sessions are stored in a TDMS (Temporary Disc Management Structure). TDMS updates are made serially in areas called Temporary Disc Management Areas (TDMAs). When the disc is finalized (i.e. no further changes are permitted), all pending TDMS updates shall be written, and the most recent copy of the TDMS is copied into each of the DMAs (4 on SL and 8 on DL) on the disc.

4.15.5.2.2 Definitions

Logical Blocks

A Logical Block is the smallest logically addressable unit of data that is readable by the Host. For BD-R, the Logical Block size is 2 048 bytes. This value is specified in the Logical Block Size field in the Random Readable Feature Descriptor.

Recordable Units

A recordable unit is the smallest physically writable collection of contiguous Logical Blocks. For BD-R the recordable unit size is 32 Logical Blocks, one Cluster. This value is specified in the Blocking field of the Random Writable Feature Descriptor.

Logical Track: Sequential Recording Range (SRR)

A Logical Track is a set of sequential recordable units. Logical Tracks are numbered consecutively, starting with number one. On BD-R, the Logical Track is defined as a Sequential Recording Range (SRR). The physical extents of each SRR and the status of each SRR is defined in the SRR Information (SRRI) structure. The SRRI is a structure in the TDMS that is maintained in the Temporary Disc Management Areas (TDMA).

BD-R Logical Tracks bounds are defined only in the SRRI. No overhead blocks are used in the definition of a Logical Track on BD-R.

The Logical Track LRA field in the SRRI of the TDMS may change regularly. If the TDMS is updated too often, then TDMA space may become exhausted. Consequently, the Drive should limit the number of TDMS updates due to LRA changes.

Logical Track Starting Address

The LBA of the first Logical Block of the Logical Track is the starting address of the Logical Track.

Logical Track Length

The number of Logical Blocks in the Logical Track is the track length. Since a BD-R Logical Track is a collection of Clusters, this value is an integral multiple of 32.

Next Writable Address (NWA)

The Host is only permitted to record LBAs of a Logical Track consecutively, beginning with it's starting address. To facilitate this, the Drive maintains a Next Writable Address (NWA) for each open Logical Track. There is at most one NWA in a Logical Track.

If the Logical Track is blank, then the NWA is initialized to the starting address of the Logical Track. The NWA is advanced by the number of LBAs written in each write command after each write command has terminated.

Since writes may be buffered, the NWA may not always be at a Cluster boundary. If buffer synchronization is forced (e.g. SYNCHONIZE CACHE command), all buffered data is written to the disc. If the last buffered block is not sector 31 of a Cluster, then zero padding shall be added to the end of the Cluster prior to writing.

Last Recorded Address (LRA)

The last Cluster addressed by a WRITE command may be written with 1 to 32 Logical Blocks contain Host supplied data. The Last Recorded Address (LRA) is the LBA of the last Logical Block of the Cluster that contains Host supplied data. LRA is not valid when POW is enabled.

Blank Logical Track

If every Logical Block in a Logical Track is blank, the Logical Track is blank. The NWA of a blank Logical Track is the Logical Track starting address.

Open Logical Track

The SRRI contains a list of open SRRs. A Logical Track is open if it is in the list. In order to be in the list of open Logical Tracks: Start Address + Track Length - 1 > NWA. The SRRI open SRR list is limited to 16 open SRRs.

Closed Logical Track

A Logical Track is closed when the Logical Track is defined, but not in the SRRI list of open Logical Tracks. The Host may request that a Logical Track be closed by sending the CLOSE TRACK SESSION command. A Logical Track becomes closed when:

1. All of its Logical Blocks have been written, or
2. When the Host has requested that the Logical Track be closed.

When a Logical Track is closed, the NWA is no longer valid for appending new data.

If the invisible Logical Track, numbered N, is partially recorded and a close is requested by the Host, the Logical Track bounds are specified to include only the recorded Logical Blocks and a new, blank invisible Logical Track is created with Logical Track number N+1.

If a Logical Track is closed, it may contain blank Clusters. If the Host chooses to read a sector from a blank Cluster in a closed Logical Track, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data.

Session

A session is a collection of contiguous Logical Tracks. The bounds of a session are defined in the SRRI. Unlike CD and DVD sessions, the BD-R SRM session is defined only by the SRRI. Consequently, there is neither a session Lead-in nor a session Lead-out. Sessions are numbered consecutively, starting with session one.

Open Session

A session is open if any of the Logical Tracks within the session are open.

Closed Session

A session is closed if all of the Logical Tracks within the session are closed. Once a session is closed, it is not permitted to add new Logical Tracks.

Finalized (Closed) Disc

A disc is finalized when all sessions are closed and each final DMS is recorded in the appropriate DMA.

Once each DMS is recorded in the appropriate DMA, it is not necessary to record any other part of the Inner or Outer zones. The Drive shall finalize the disc if there is no remaining space for recording of a user data on the disc.

4.15.5.2.3 Logical to Physical Addressing

The logical to physical address mapping operates differently on layer 0 and layer 1.

On layer 0, the user data area begins at some physical address, K_0, where K_0 is the PSN of the first block of the first Cluster after ISA0. If the User Data area capacity is C_0 sectors, then K_0+C_0 is the PSN of the first block of the first Cluster of OSA0.

The primary Logical to physical mapping (LtoP) is defined as: For $0 \le N \le C_0-1$, $LtoP(N) = K_0+N$. Otherwise, N is not in the range of the mapping. See Figure 72.

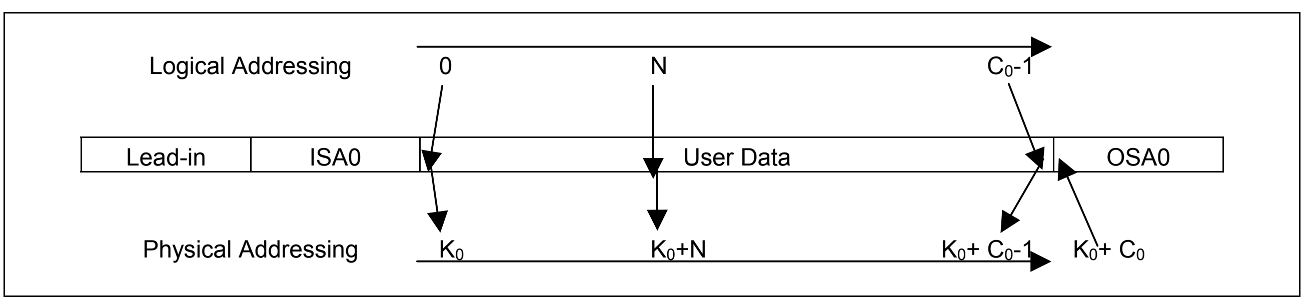


Figure 72 — Logical to Physical Addressing on Layer 0

If layer 1 is present, the disc's user data zone continues on layer 1. If the layer 1 User Data area capacity is C_1 sectors, then the capacity of the disc is C_0+C_1 and the last LBA is C_0+C_1-1. The first block of the first cluster after OSA1 has PSN = K_1. The user data zone continues until the first block of the first Cluster of ISA1. The primary Logical to physical mapping (LtoP) is extended to include layer 1 (i.e. where $0 \le N \le C_0+C_1-1$):

$$\mathrm{LtoP}(N) = \begin{cases} N+K_0 \text{ when } 0 \le N \le C_0-1. \\ (N-C_0)+K_1 \text{ when } C_0 \le N \le C_0+C_1-1. \end{cases}$$

See Figure 73.

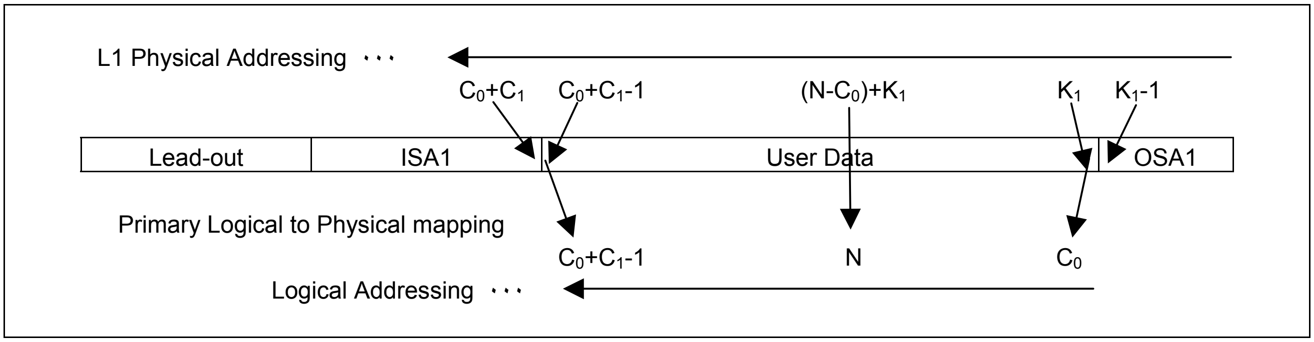


Figure 73 — Logical to Physical Addressing on Layer 1

If the disc is formatted with defect management, and if upon recording, LtoP(N) is found to be defective, the defect replacement mapping is applied to map LtoP(N) to a Cluster in a spare area.

4.15.5.2.4 Status after Formatting a Blank BD-R

If a blank BD-R disc is formatted in SRM, the User Data Zone consists of one open session with one open Logical Track (SRR). This Logical Track is the invisible Logical Track. As shown in Figure 74, the number of the track is 1, its start address is LBA = 0, and its length is the size of the User Data Zone (CAP). The Next Writable Address (NWA) for Logical Track 1 is LBA = 0.

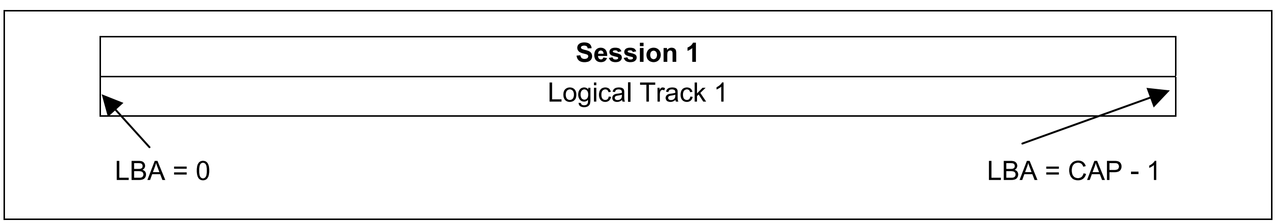


Figure 74 — Status of a BD-R Disc After Fomattting in SRM

If a WRITE command is issued to the Drive, the Starting LBA shall be equal to the NWA. If the starting LBA of a WRITE command is not the NWA of some Logical Track, then the WRITE command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status, and the sense shall be set to indicate ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

4.15.5.2.4.1 Creating Additional Logical Tracks

The RESERVE TRACK command may be used to define a fixed length Logical Track from the invisible track. The length of the new track, N2, is defined by the execution of the RESERVE TRACK command using parameters from the CDB. The length is specified as a number of Logical Blocks, but the RESERVE TRACK command performs the creation of the new track as an integral number of Clusters. Figure 75 shows the newly defined track is track 1, its start address is LBA = 0, its length is N2, and its NWA is 0. The invisible track is track 2, its start address is N2, its length is the remaining size of the User Data Area, and its NWA = N2.

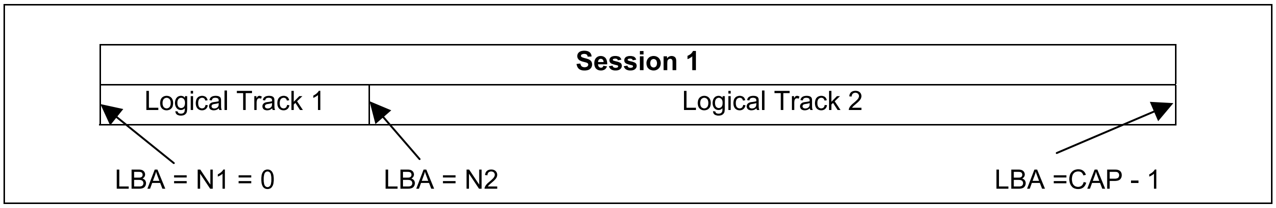


Figure 75 — Status of BD-R Disc After First RESERVE TRACK Command

The RESERVE TRACK command may be used iteratively to define additional Logical Tracks from the invisible track as shown in Figure 76.

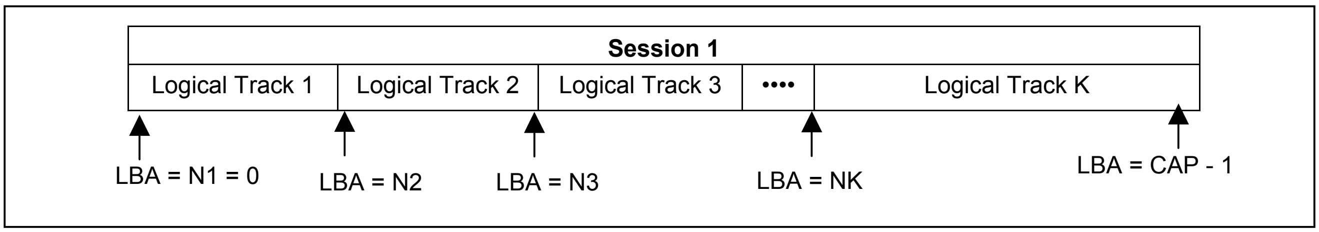


Figure 76 — Status of BD-R Disc Multiple RESERVE TRACK Commands

It is also possible to split an open Logical Track into two Logical Tracks. The split shall occur at the start of a Cluster within the Logical Track that is at or after the NWA. If the split occurs at the NWA, then the first of the two new tracks is created closed and the second is blank.

4.15.5.2.5 Creating New Sessions

When a session is closed and the disc is not finalized, a new session is created that contains only the invisible Logical Track. See Figure 77.

Session 1				Session 2
Logical Track 1	Logical Track 2	••••	Logical Track K	Logical Track K+1 (Invisible Logical Track)

Figure 77 — Status of BD-R Disc after Closing Session 1

The process of creating session 2 may be iterated as with session 1 until the disc is finalized.

4.15.5.3 Defect Management

Defect management is used to solve problems related to areas on the disc that may become defective or unreliable due to damage or contamination. The Drive redirects the recording of the involved user data to another location, called spare areas. Information about these redirections is stored in the Defect List.

In order to ensure data integrity, it is recommended that WRITE (10) data be verified during the write process when the Defect Management feature is current. This is also recommended that WRITE (12) data be verified except when either VNR is set to one or Streaming is set to one.

4.15.5.4 Pseudo-OverWrite (POW)

Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) is used to make Write-Once media behave like Rewritable media. When the Host requests recording of user data on an already recorded area, then the Drive redirects the recording of the involved user data to an alternative location. Such Logical Overwrites (writing to the same LBA, but actually recording at a reassigned PSN) are treated in the same way as defects, i.e. information about the redirections is stored in the Defect List.

4.15.5.4.1 SRM+POW

When a SRM disc has the POW capability, the Logical Overwrite of a Cluster is redirected to the NWA of some open Logical Track. POW recording is permitted on the SRM logical structure:

a. A SRM disc with POW shall be initialized by the formatting process as a single session disc with a single Logical Track.
b. POW is not permitted on a finalized disc, because no NWA is valid.
c. If the disc is not finalized, POW is permitted in both open and closed Logical Tracks.
d. On SRM each WRITE command shall start and end within the same Logical Track. This restriction does not apply to SRM+POW.

When POW is performed, it is recommended that the redirection be to a Cluster with NWA that is near the addressed Cluster. The actual algorithm for selecting the physical Cluster for the redirection is vendor specific.

4.15.5.4.2 Orphans

There is exactly one NWA for each Logical Track. The NWA is a LBA that follows the physical usage of the Logical Track rather than the Logical usage.

When a POW is applied to a Logical Block, the relocation occurs at the NWA of some open Logical Track. An entire Cluster shall be used in the relocation, so the NWA is advanced by 32. Prior to the POW, 32 LBAs were associated with the Cluster beginning at the NWA. After the POW operation, those 32 LBAs are no longer available for append. The LBAs have not been lost, but they may be written only via another POW. Until written, these LBAs are called Orphans.

An orphan LBA has no associated logical content and consequently represents a blank sector. If a READ command is issued to an orphan LBA, the Drive returns the data that has been relocated to the physical location that was originally associated with the orphan LBAs.

4.15.5.4.3 Closed Logical Tracks with Blank Clusters

Although a closed Logical Track has no valid NWA, it may contain blank Clusters. A POW to a Logical Block in a closed Logical Track may require a read-modify-write operation. Consequently, determination of blankness is necessary. If a POW of a blank Cluster is indicated, then any Logical Blocks not provided by the Host shall be

zero padded prior to writing. Due to the inefficiency, it is recommended to avoid POWing blank Clusters in closed tracks.

4.15.6 Examples of SRM and SRM+POW

For simplicity, the examples are described for single layer media.

4.15.6.1 Initialize the Disc as SRM+POW

A blank BD-R disc is formatted as SRM+POW. The PSN of the first block of the first Cluster after ISA0 is K. The PSN of the first block of the first Cluster of OSA0 is K+C, where C is the number of blocks in the User Data Area.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = C.

The READ CAPACITY command returns C-1 as the last addressable logical block on the media.

See Figure 78.

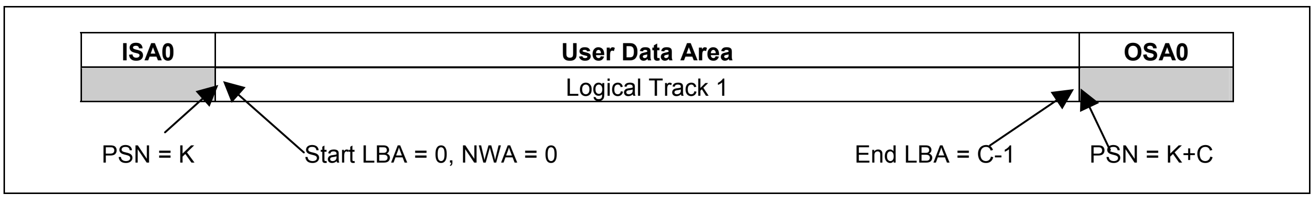


Figure 78 — Status after Formatting SRM+POW

4.15.6.2 Create a Small Logical Track at Outer Radius, Write it, and Close it

The RESERVE TRACK command is used to split the single, invisible track at LBA = C-256. This creates one large track, C-256 blocks in length, and one small track, 256 blocks in length.

The READ DISC INFORMATION command (requesting standard disc information) shall show one track prior to the RESERVE TRACK command and two tracks afterward.

A WRITE (10) command sends 256 blocks of data starting at the NWA (C-256) of Logical Track 2.

Logical Track 2 is closed because the Logical Track has been completely written.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = C-256.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = C-256, NWA is not valid, and free blocks = 0.

See Figure 79.

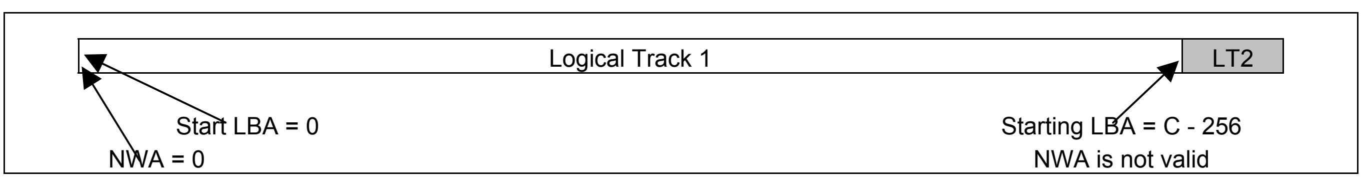


Figure 79 — Create, Write, and Close Small Outer Logical Track

4.15.6.3 Split Logical Track 1

The RESERVE TRACK command is used to split Logical Track 1 into Logical Tracks 1 and 2.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = 320.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 320 and free blocks = C-576.

See Figure 80.

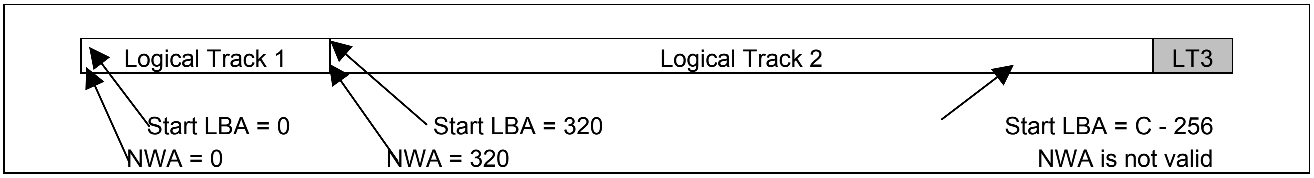


Figure 80 — Status after Splitting Logical Track 1

4.15.6.4 Split Logical Track 2

The RESERVE TRACK command is used to split Logical Track 2 into Logical Tracks 2 and 3.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 0 and free blocks = 320.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 320 and free blocks = 320.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

Start address = 640, NWA = 640 and free blocks = C-896.

See Figure 81.

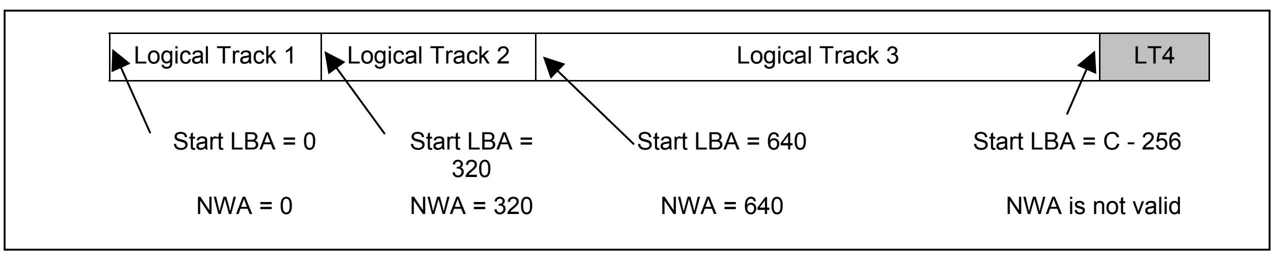


Figure 81 — Status after Splitting Logical Track 2

4.15.6.5 Write to Each Logical Track

A WRITE (10) command sends 160 blocks of data starting at the NWA (0) of Logical Track 1.

A WRITE (10) command sends 160 blocks of data starting at the NWA (320) of Logical Track 2.

A WRITE (10) command sends 32 blocks of data starting at the NWA (640) of Logical Track 3.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 160 and free blocks = 160.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

Start address = 320, NWA = 480 and free blocks = 160.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

Start address = 640, NWA = 672 and free blocks = C-928. See Figure 82.

All 3 Logical Tracks are open.

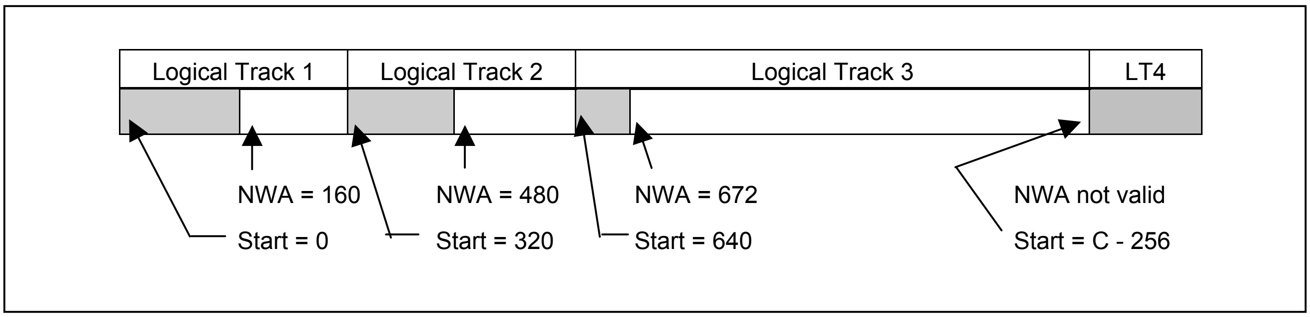


Figure 82 — Status after Writing to each Logical Track

4.15.6.6 POW a Logical Block in Logical Track 1

A WRITE (10) command writes one block of user data at LBA = 128.

This Logically OverWrites sector 128. The Cluster beginning at LBA 128 is read internally, the new data replaces the data for sector 128, and the Cluster is rewritten at the Logical Track 1 NWA (160). The NWA is now 192.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

Start address = 0, NWA = 192 and free blocks = 128.

In Figure 83 note that:

LBAs 160,..., 191 are now Orphans.

The logical length of Logical Track 1 is 320, however, the number of written LBAs in Logical Track 1 (160) plus the free blocks of Logical Track 1 (128) is at most 288.

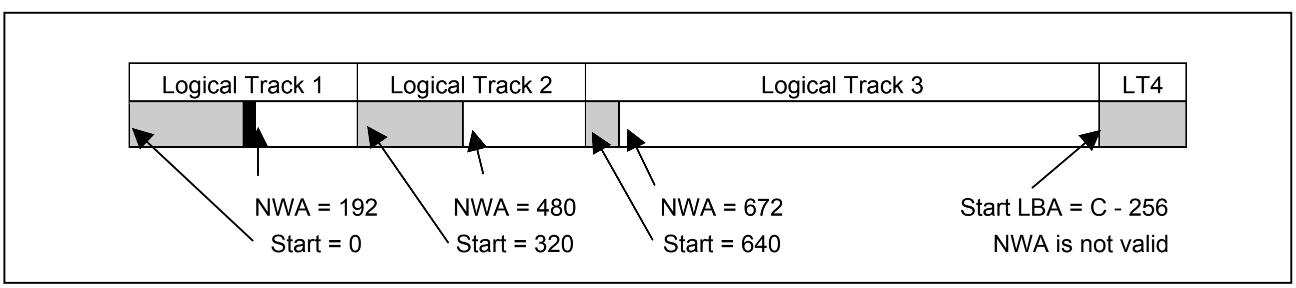


Figure 83 — Status after LOW to LBA 128

4.15.6.7 Complete Writing Logical Track 1, POW LBA = 128 a Second Time

A WRITE (10) command sends 128 blocks of data starting at the NWA (192) of Logical Track 1.

A WRITE (10) command writes one block of user data at LBA = 128.

> This Logically OverWrites sector 128. The Cluster beginning at LBA 128 is read internally, the new data replaces the data for sector 128, and the Cluster is rewritten at the Logical Track 2 NWA (480). The NWA is now 512. It is also permitted to POW to the NWA of another track.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

> Start Address = 0, NWA is not valid, and free blocks = 0. Logical Track 1 is closed.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

> Start address = 320, NWA = 512 and free blocks = 128.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

> Start address = 640, NWA = 672 and free blocks = C-928.

See Figure 84.

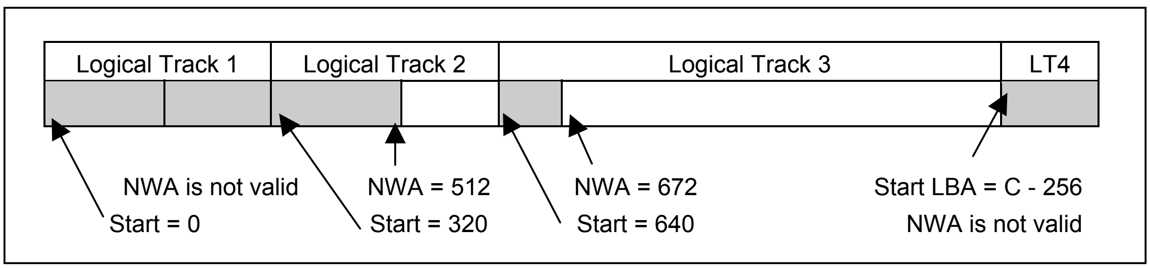


Figure 84 — Status after writing to Logical Track 1

4.15.6.8 Use Orphaned LBAs via POW

A WRITE (10) command writes 32 blocks of user data at LBA = 160.

> This recovers the LBAs that were orphaned by a previous LOW. Using orphaned LBAs requires a new POW. The new data from the Host is written at the Logical Track 2 NWA (512). The NWA is now 544.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 1 returns:

> Start Address = 0, NWA is not valid, and free blocks = 0. Logical Track 1 is closed.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 2 returns:

> Start address = 320, NWA = 544 and free blocks = 96.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command for Logical Track 3 returns:

> Start address = 640, NWA = 672 and free blocks = C-928.

See Figure 85.

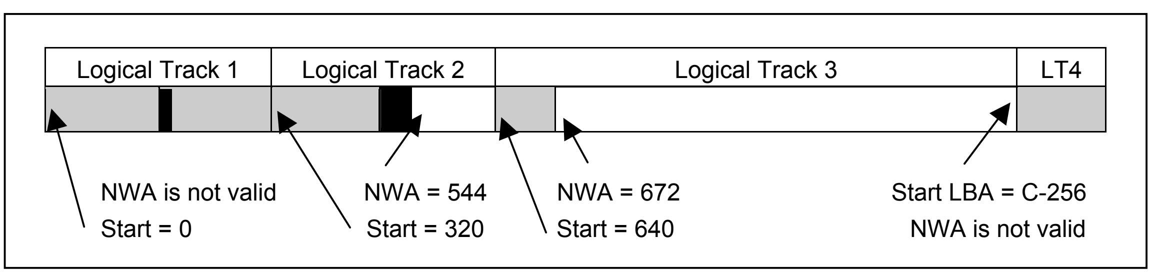


Figure 85 — Status after LOW of LBA 160

LBAs 512,...,543 are now orphaned.

4.15.6.9 The Expanding Orphanage

Each time a POW is performed, 32 orphaned LBAs are created. Orphan LBAs may used, but since it is only possible to do so with a POW, new orphan LBAs are created in the process. Consequently, the number of Orphan LBAs is a monotonically increasing function.

In 4.15.6.6, Orphan LBAs 160 through 191 were created by the POW of LBA 128.

In 4.15.6.7, Orphan LBAs 480 through 511 were created by the POW of LBA 128.

In 4.15.6.8, Orphan LBAs 512 through 543 were created when Orphan LBAs 160 through 191 were used.

In order to provide a complete LBA space, recording at any unused LBA is permitted. However, using orphaned LBAs requires additional defect list entries and causes additional seeking during consecutive LBA accesses.

Due to the inefficiency of media use and degradation of performance, it is preferred that the Host allocation algorithms avoid using orphan LBAs. This may be done by only permitting writes to start at some Logical Track's NWA.

4.15.6.10 Considerations for the Host When Writing on SRM+POW Discs

4.15.6.10.1 POW of Less than a Cluster

A WRITE command may request POW of less than one Cluster. The WRITE range is represented in Figure 86 by part E. Size of Part D + Size of Part E + Size of Part F = 32. It is possible that either part D or part F has zero length. In the most general case, it is assumed that both parts D and F have non-zero length.

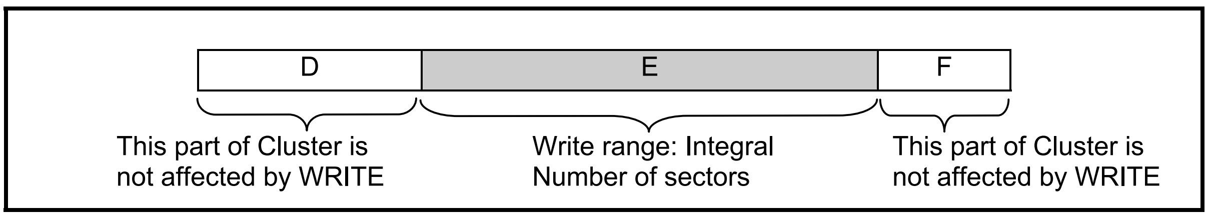


Figure 86 — Parts of a POWed Cluster

Parts D and F must be written using a read-modify-write operation through the buffer. If any padding is required, it shall be performed by the Drive. The sectors of Part E may be written directly with no modification.

4.15.6.10.2 POW and Append in the Same Range

A WRITE command is permitted to start at a previously written LBA and end at never before written LBAs. See Figure 87.

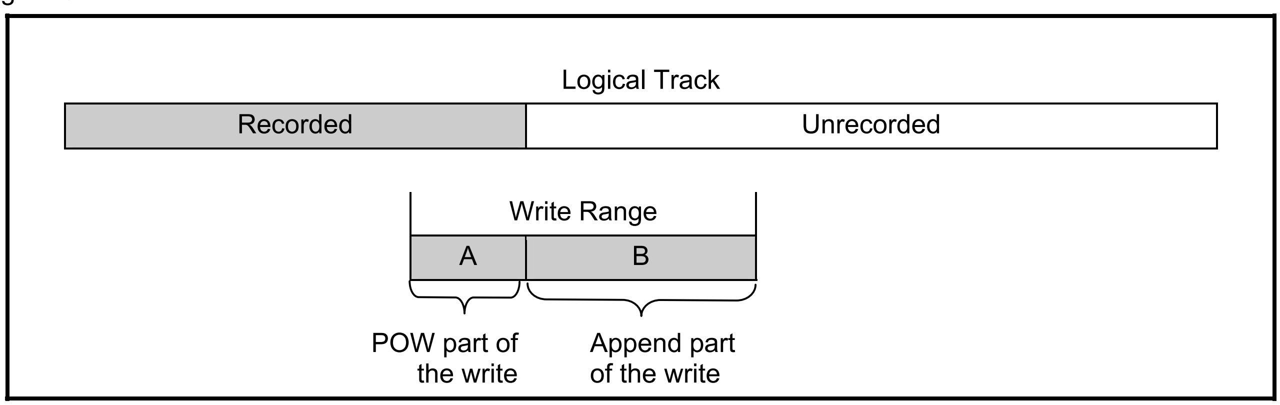


Figure 87 — POW and Append Parts of WRITE

WRITE range begins prior to the Logical Track NWA and ends after the Logical Track NWA. The Host may choose to control the writing. There are 2 possibilities:

1. In order to minimize the number of POWed Clusters, the Host should send two WRITE commands: the first WRITE command appends part B, and the second WRITE command performs the part A POW.
2. In order to maximize performance, the Host should send two WRITE commands: the first WRITE command performs the part A POW, and the second WRITE command performs the part B POW.

Some Host applications are constructed to be unaware of POWs. In this case, the Host is permitted to issue a single WRITE for all of the logical blocks. There are also two possibilities for the Drive:

1. In order to minimize the number of POWed Clusters, the Drive first appends part B. Next the Drive performs the part A POW. This has the same result as management by the Host in the case 1, above.
2. In order to maximize performance, the Drive performs POW of all the sectors in the range. This has the same result as management by the Host in the case 2, above.

The actual Drive behavior is vendor specific.

4.15.7 Using VNR with BD-R

If the Hardware Defect Management Feature is current, non-streamed writes should be verified by the Drive in an automatic verify-after-write process. Some applications may be designed to expect behavior associated with Drives and media that do not automatically perform verify-after-write (e.g. write-once media without spare areas). In order to make that behavior available to BD-R Drives, the VNR (Verify Not Required) bit has been defined within the WRITE (12) CDB.

4.16 BD-RE

4.16.1 Overview

BD-RE disc is a rewritable media with the general BD structure described in 4.13.1. BD has a single continuous groove on each layer and may consist of one or two layers. Dual layer media is structured only as opposite-track-path.

The Host access model for BD-RE is based upon a random access model. BD-RE is Formattable. Hardware defect management is mandatory. The size of the spare areas is selectable according to [BD-Ref3].

4.16.2 Track Structure

The single layer BD-RE disc information area is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The information area is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Area, Data Area, and Lead-out Area.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zone, creating three areas within the data zone: Inner Spare Area (ISA0), User Data Area, and Outer Spare Area (OSA0). See Figure 88.

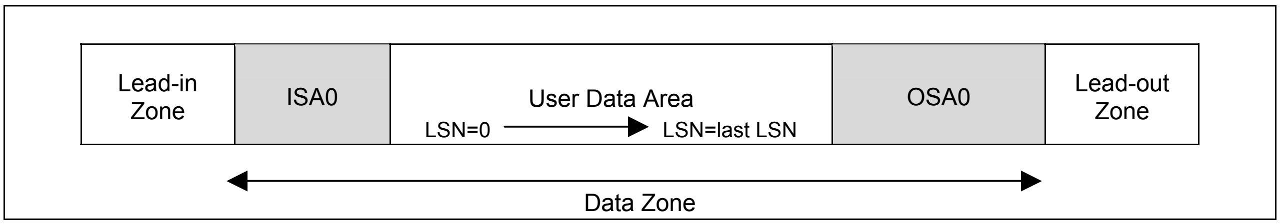


Figure 88 — Layout of Single Layer BD-RE Disc

On a dual layer BD-RE disc, the layer 0 information zone is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The layer 1 information zone of a dual layer BD-RE disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius. The layer 0 information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone 0, and the Outer Zone 0. The layer 1 information zone is divided into three areas: the Outer zone 1, Data Zone 1, and the Lead-out zone.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zones, creating three areas within each data zone: Inner Spare Areas (ISA0 and ISA1), User Data Area, and Outer Spare Areas (OSA0 and OSA1). See Figure 89.

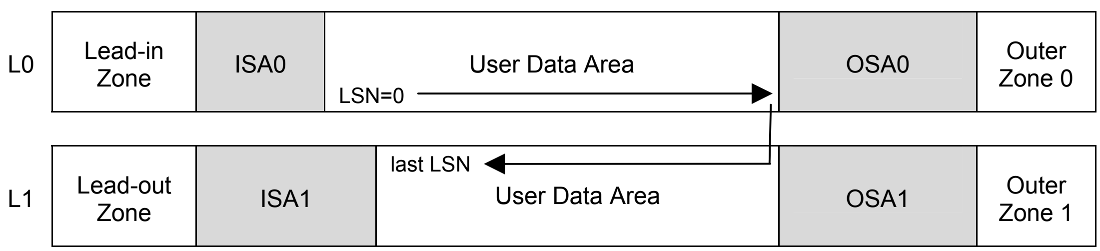


Figure 89 — Layout of Dual Layer BD-RE Disc

4.16.3 Command Processing Preconditions for BD-RE discs

If the TEST UNIT READY command responds with GOOD status, then the Drive is able to accept and attempt processing of some media accessing command. Table 62 lists some conditions under which the Drive responds with GOOD status to the TEST UNIT READY command, but may be unable to start processing some media access command (e.g., READ (10), WRITE (10) command).

Table 62 — Examples of Command Processing Preconditions for BD-RE

Situation	Response from Drive
BD-RE media is present and ready. Disc has never been formatted	Response to all media access commands except FORMAT UNIT command is: NOT READY/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED, NOT READY/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED, or MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED
Unknown PAC is discovered	TEST UNIT READY responds with GOOD status, but specific disc access types are disallowed according to Unknown PAC rules. When the Unknown PAC rules disallow reading, response to a READ command is: CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED. When the Unknown PAC rules disallow writing, response to a WRITE command is: CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED.
Emergency Brake is active	TEST UNIT READY responds with CHECK CONDITION status with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to NOT READY/ INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED. All media accessing commands shall respond in the same way as TEST UNIT READY.

4.16.4 The Information Zone

The information zone of a dual layer BD-RE disc (Figure 90) is the accessible grooves.

Direction of Increasing Physical Addresses

Layer 0 Inner Radius

BCA			
Embossed Zone	Inner Zone 0	Protection Zone 1	Seek Overshoot protection zone
		PIC	Permanent Information & Control Data Zone
Rewritable Zone	(Lead-in Zone)	Protection Zone 2	Seek overshoot protection zone
		INFO2	Defect Management information
		OPC	Optimum Power Calibration Zone
		Reserved	-
		INFO1	Drive information area
	Data Zone 0	ISA0	Inner Spare Area
		User Data Zone	Primary user data area
		OSA 0	Outer Spare Area
	Outer Zone 0	INFO3/4	Defect management and control info
		Protection Zone 3	Seek overshoot protection zone

Layer 0 Outer Radius

Direction of Increasing Physical Addresses

Layer 1 Outer Radius

Rewritable Zone	Outer Zone 1	Protection Zone 3	Seek overshoot protection zone
		INFO3/4	Defect management and control info
	Data Zone 1	OSA1	Outer Spare Area
		User Data Area	Primary user data area
		ISA1	Inner Spare Area
	(Lead-out Zone)	INFO1	Drive information area
		OPC	Optimum Power Calibration Zone
		Reserved	-
		INFO2	Defect Management information
		Protection Zone 2	Seek overshoot protection zone
Embossed Zone	Inner Zone 1	PIC	Permanent Information & Control data Zone
		Protection Zone 1	Seek overshoot protection zone

Layer 1 Inner Radius

Figure 90 — BD-RE Information Zone

Each layer of the Information Zone is divided into an embossed (pre-recorded) high frequency modulated (HFM) area and a rewritable area. The rewritable area of layer 0 is divided into a Lead-in zone, a data zone, and a Outer Area. On single layer media, the outer area is the disc Lead-out zone. On dual layer media each outer area is a layer transition area.

4.16.4.1 Burst Cutting Area

The BCA is used to add information to the disc after completion of the manufacturing process. The BCA-code is typically written by a high-power laser system in the case of Recordable discs.

4.16.4.2 Embossed HFM Zone

The Embossed HFM Zone consists of:

Permanent Information & Control data zone (PIC)	On layer zero, this embossed zone contains disc information that includes, but is not restricted to: 1. Physical media class and version 2. Physical address of the start of the Data Zone 3. Physical address of the start of the outer zone (if this is a single layer media, this is the Lead-out) 4. Number of layers 5. Recording Density 6. Write power information On layer 1 this embossed zone contains a copy of the layer 0 information, but the physical addresses refer to physical addresses on layer 1.

4.16.4.3 Inner Zone 0/Inner Zone 1 (Lead-in Zone/Lead-out Zone)

An Inner Zone consists of:

Protection Zone 2	On both layers, this zone buffers the rewritable area from the embossed zone.
INFO2	On both layers, INFO2 is reserved for defect management information and PAC storage.
Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) Zone	On both layers, the OPC Zone is reserved for testing and calibration.
INFO1	On both layers, this zone is reserved for drive specific information and PAC storage.

4.16.4.4 Data Zone

The Data Zone consists of:

Inner Spare Areas (ISA0, ISA1)	If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, then ISA0 is allocated with 4 096 Clusters. If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, ISA1 is an area available for spare area allocation in 256 Cluster increments. Any part of the data zone that is not allocated for spare Clusters is part of the User Data Zone.
User Data Zone	The User Data Zone is the logically addressed area of the disc.
Outer Spare Areas (OSA0, OSA1)	If spare Clusters are allocated for defect management, OSA0 is an area available for spare area allocation in 256 Cluster increments. OSA1 is the same size as OSA0.

4.16.4.5 Lead-out Zone/Outer Zone 0/Outer Zone 1

The Outer Zone consists of:

INFO3/4	On both layers, INFO3/4 is reserved for defect management and control information.
Protection Zone 3	On both layers, this zone exists for seek overshoot protection at the disc’s outer radius.

4.16.5 Physical Track Structure

BD-RE physical track structure has the general BD disc structure with additional format entities defined uniquely for BD-RE.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zone, creating three areas within the Data Zone: Inner Spare Area (ISA0), User Data Zone, and Outer Spare Area (OSA0).

If ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4 096 Clusters. OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 16 384 Clusters, allocated in increments of 256 Clusters. Consequently, OSA0 size in Clusters = N*256 Clusters, where 0 ≤ N ≤ 64. See Figure 91.

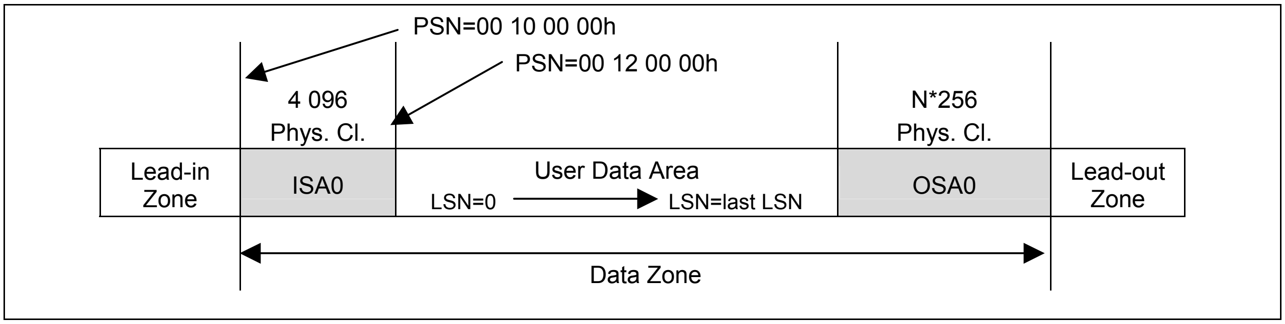


Figure 91 — Layout of Single Layer BD-RE Disc

The layer 0 information zone of a dual layer BD-RE disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the inner radius and proceeds until the outer radius. The layer 1 information zone of a dual layer disc is contained within a continuous spiral that begins near the outer radius and proceeds until the inner radius. The layer 0 information zone is divided into three areas: the Lead-in Zone, Data Zone 0, and the Outer Zone 0. The layer 1 information zone is divided into three areas: the Outer zone 1, Data Zone 1, and the Lead-out zone.

Spare Areas are allocated from the Data Zones, creating three areas within each data zone: Inner Spare Areas (ISA0 and ISA1), User Data Zone, and Outer Spare Areas (OSA0 and OSA1).

If ISA0 is present, it has a fixed size of 4096 Clusters. OSA0 has a variable size from 0 to 8 192 Clusters in increments of 256 Clusters. OSA0 size in Clusters = N*256 Clusters, where 0 ≤ N ≤ 32. OSA1 has the same size as OSA0. ISA1 has a variable size from 0 to 16 384 Clusters, in increments of 256 Clusters. Consequently, ISA1 size in Clusters = L*256 Clusters, where 0 ≤ L ≤ 64. See Figure 92.

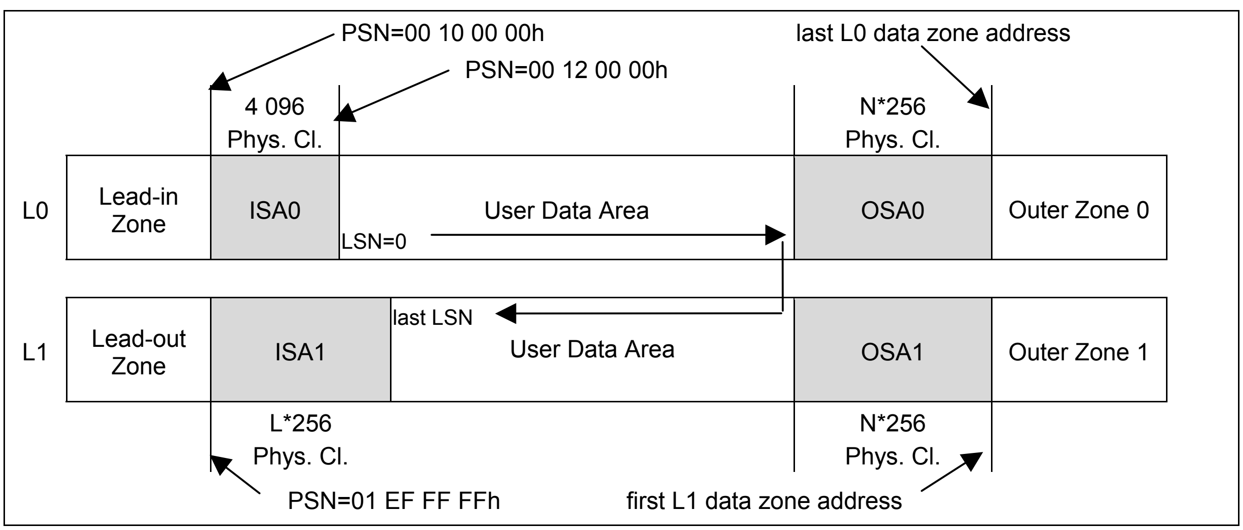


Figure 92 — Layout of Dual Layer BD-RE Disc

4.17 Emergency Brake

As a protection measure against Drive or media damage by certain Drive/media combinations, a data set is defined that may be used by specific drive models to recognize discs that need special handling to prevent fatal functioning. This data is called Emergency Brake (EB) data.

The EB data is specified in the first PIC Cluster of each Info Fragment. It consists of an EB Header, EB data field(s) and an EB Footer. EB data fields shall only be included after mutual agreement between the disc manufacturer and the involved drive manufacturer when specific models of the drive manufacturer's products require special actions when handling such discs, e.g. to prevent damage to the disc or the drive.

The Emergency Brake may be defined for BD-ROM, BD-RE, and BD-R.

When the Emergency Brake data from a BD disc indicates to the Drive that this disc should not be accessed by the Drive, the Drive response is described in Table 62.

4.18 Physical Access Control (PAC)

4.18.1 Overview

Physical Access Control (PAC) Clusters are disc structures that include additional information to provide interchange information. PAC Clusters shall be recorded in the INFO1/PAC1 Area and backup copies shall be recorded in the INFO2/PAC2 Area.

A PAC may be read by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command. If permitted, a PAC may be written by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command. If the disc is BD-R and the PAC Area is full, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDTION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/PROGRAM MEMORY/RMA IS FULL.

New PACs may be defined in the future for specific applications/functions. Drives designed before the introduction date of such new PACs shall treat such PACs as “Unknown PACs”. The “Unknown PAC Rules” field (see 4.18.2.3), provides a method to avoid compatibility problems. There are no generalized physical access restrictions for a "Known PAC".

4.18.2 General PAC Format

The general PAC format is shown in Table 63.

Table 63 — General PAC Format

	Byte Offset	Field Length in Bytes	Field Name
PAC Header	0	3	PAC ID
	3	1	PAC format number
	4	4	PAC Update Count
	8	4	Unknown PAC Rules
	12	1	Unknown PAC Entire Disc Flags
	13	2	Reserved (set to zeros)
	15	1	Number of Segments
	16	8	Segment 0
	24	8	Segment 1
	...	...	...
	264	8	Segment 31
	272	112	Reserved (set to zeros)
PAC Specific Data	384	1	Known PAC Entire Disc Flags
	385	3	Reserved
	388 ··· 63487	···	PAC Specific Information
	63488 ··· 65535	2048	Reserved

4.18.2.1 PAC ID and Format

The PAC ID (3 bytes) identifies the specific PAC Cluster. PAC IDs 000000h and FFFFFFh are reserved. The Format number of the PAC identifies the PAC format version.

4.18.2.2 PAC Update Count

The PAC Update Count shall specify the total number of update operations of the current PAC. This field shall be set to 00000000h during the initial recording of the PAC, and shall be incremented by one each time the current PAC is re-written.

4.18.2.3 Unknown PAC Rules

The Unknown PAC Rules specify the required actions when the PAC ID is not set to a known value. These bytes form a field consisting of 32 individual bits. If a drive encounters multiple unknown PACs on one disc, it shall use the OR-function of the unknown PAC rules.

Each bit is either reserved, a write Control type, or a read Control type. Each Control type is associated with a specific disc area.

If a write Control type is set to zero, writing in the associated area is permitted. If a write Control type bit is set to one, writing in the associated area is prohibited.

If a read Control type is set to zero, reading in the associated area is permitted. If a read Control type bit is set to one, reading in the associated area is prohibited.

For BD-R, see [BD-Ref2] for specific Control type bit assignments.

For BD-RE, see [BD-Ref3] for specific Control type bit assignments.

If execution of some command results in violating any Unknown PAC rule, see Table 62.

4.18.2.4 Unknown PAC Entire Disc Flags

The Unknown PAC Entire Disc Flags byte specifies Unknown PAC Rules that cover the entire disc. Bits 1 through 7 are reserved. Bit 0 specifies re-initialization rules when the PAC is unknown. On BD-RE, if bit 0 is set to zero, reformatting is permitted if it is not blocked by any other mechanism for the entire disc. On BD-RE, if bit 0 is set to one, reformatting is prohibited. On BD-R, bit 0 shall be set to one.

4.18.2.5 Segments

A Segment field shall specify the start and end address of a contiguous range of Clusters, called a Segment. Segments are defined starting from Segment 0 to Segment N-1, where N is specified in the Number of Segments field ($0 \le N \le 32$). Segments shall not overlap and shall be sorted in ascending order according to their addresses. Segments shall only start and end at Cluster boundaries. All Segment i fields, where $i \ge N$, shall be set to zeros. The first four bytes of the Segment i field, if used, shall contain the first PSN of the first Cluster belonging to the Segment, and the last four bytes shall contain the last PSN of the last Cluster belonging to the Segment.

4.18.2.6 Known PAC Entire Disc Flags

The Known PAC Entire Disc Flags byte specifies rules for the entire disc in case the drive is able to interpret the PAC.

4.18.2.7 PAC specific Information

The PAC specific information fields contain information that is specific to the current PAC.

4.18.3 Primary PAC

The Primary PAC (PAC ID = 50524Dh ("PRM"), PAC Format = 00h) shall be included on each BD-ROM and BD-RE. The Primary PAC is not defined for BD-R.

4.18.3.1 Primary PAC on BD-ROM

PACs shall be recorded in INFO1/PAC1 and INFO2/PAC2 on each layer. The BD-ROM Primary PAC provides the status of PAC recording in each of those zones.

See [BD-Ref1] for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-ROM.

4.18.3.2 Primary PAC on BD-RE

The Primary PAC Cluster shall be included on each BD-RE disc to provide information about the date when the disc was initially recorded and to identify each recorder that has recorded individual Clusters on the disc.

Up to 252 recorders may be identified in the Primary PAC. After 252 unique recorder IDs have been logged, recording may continue, but no more recorders may be logged.

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command is used to read the Primary PAC. This permits the examination of the id dates of each Drive that has written the disc.

See [BD-Ref3] for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-RE.

4.18.4 Disc Write Protect PAC

4.18.4.1 General

The Disc Write Protect PAC (PAC ID = 445750h ("DWP"), PAC Format = 00h) is optional and may be used to protect a disc against unintended write actions or write actions by unauthorized persons. Although the write protection typically applies only to the recording of user data, formatting is also restricted. For the case where the disc is protected against write actions by unauthorized persons, a password may be included. If a valid DWP

PAC Cluster exists on the disc, products that understand the PAC shall follow the rules indicated by the Write protect control bits. Creating a DWP PAC during the formatting process is vendor specific.

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command is used to read the DWP PAC. This allows the Host to examine the following:

a. Write protect status of the disc,
b. If write protected, the type of write protect: virtual or physical,
c. Status of an associated write protect password.

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE command is used to write the DWP PAC. This allows the Host to perform the following functions:

a. Write protect a write enabled disc.
b. Write enable a write protected disc.
c. Set, change, or remove the write protect password.

There are two fields specific to the DWP PAC: the Write Protect Control Byte and the Write Protect Password.

4.18.4.2 Write Protect Password

The Write protect password consists of up to 32 characters according to [ASCII]. Trailing bytes not used shall be set to 00h. The write protect password shall never be transferred to the Host.

If all bytes of the Write protect password field are set to 00h, then the Write protect password is inactive. If the Write protect password field is set to all FFh, then the entire disc is permanently write protected and further recording on the disc shall not be allowed.

A DWP PAC that has no password is not write protected.

4.18.4.3 Write Protect Control Byte

The Write protect control byte (Table 64) specifies allowed and required actions. The Write protect control byte is at byte offset 388 in the DWP PAC.

Table 64 — Write Protect Control Byte

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Reserved					PWD	PHYS	WP

WP indicates the current status of write protection. If WP is set to 0, write protection is switched off and writing of user data is allowed without any restrictions. If WP is set to 1, write protection is switched on, and writing of user data or reformatting the disc is restricted. On BD-RE, the WP bit is physically stored in the Write Protect Control Byte. On BD-R, the WP bit is physically stored in bit 0 of byte 1 025 of the Temporary Disc Definition Structure (TDDS). In all cases, WP is presented to the Host as bit 0 of the Write Protect Control Byte.

The PHYS bit indicates the method of write protection. If PHYS is set to 0, virtual write protection is enabled (see 4.18.4.4). After host confirmation (including optional password), it is then possible to write user data without changing the write protection settings on the disc. If both PHYS and WP are set to 1, physical write protection is switched on.

The PWD bit indicates if write protection includes a password. If PWD is set to 0, there is no defined password. If PWD is set to 1, a valid password has been defined.

4.18.4.4 Virtual Write Enable (VWE)

The Virtual Write Enable is a bit in the header of the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command when format code = 30h. The Virtual Write Enable (VWE) bit enables or disables writing to a virtually write protect enabled disc when PHYS = 0 and WP = 1. Whenever PHYS = 1, the drive ignores the setting of VWE.

When VWE is set to 1, it indicates that the host is requesting the ability to write on a virtually write protected disc. This is temporary write ability. A media change or drive reset will cause the system to return to a write protected state. When VWE is set to 0, it indicates that the host is rescinding any temporary write ability. Table 65 shows examples of Drive/Host actions based upon typical settings.

Figure 93 shows the physical and virtual Write Protect State transitions.

Table 65 — Examples of Drive/Host Interaction

Initial PAC Write Protect Control Byte	Drive Behavior on Disc Mount	Host Command Issued	Drive Behavior after Host Command
No PWD/virtual/WP off 000b	No restrictions	No PWD/virtual/WP on 001b	Disc virtually write protected. PAC updated with new write protect control byte.
No PWD/virtual/WP on 001b	No data writing or WP changes until host confirmation	VWE = 1	Data writing or WP changes temporarily allowed (no changes to PAC). Media change, drive reset, host rescind (VWE=0 sent) returns disc to write protected state
No PWD/phys/WP off 010b	No restrictions	No PWD/phys/WP on 011b	Disc physically write protected. PAC updated with new write protect control byte.
No PWD/phys/WP on 011b	No data writing until confirmation and WP changed to off. No WP changes until host confirmation	No PWD/phys/WP off 010b	Data writing and WP changes allowed. PAC updated with new write protect control byte.
PWD/virtual/WP off 100b	Data writing permitted. No WP changes until host confirms password	No PWD/virtual/WP off 000b Matching password	No restrictions. PAC updated with new write protect control byte.
		Incorrect password	Error reported to host, no change in drive behavior or PAC.
PWD/virtual/WP on 101b	No data writing or WP changes until host confirms password	VWE=1 Matching password	Data writing or WP changes temporarily allowed (no changes to PAC). Media change, drive reset, host rescind (VWE=0 sent) returns disc to write protected state
PWD/phys/WP off 110b	No WP changes until host confirms password	PWD/phys/WP on Matching password	Disc is physically write protected with an associated password. PAC updated with new write protect control byte.
PWD/phys/WP on 111b	No data writing until confirmation and WP changed to off. No WP changes until host confirms password	PWD/phys/WP off Matching password	Data writing and WP changes allowed. PAC updated with new write protect control byte.

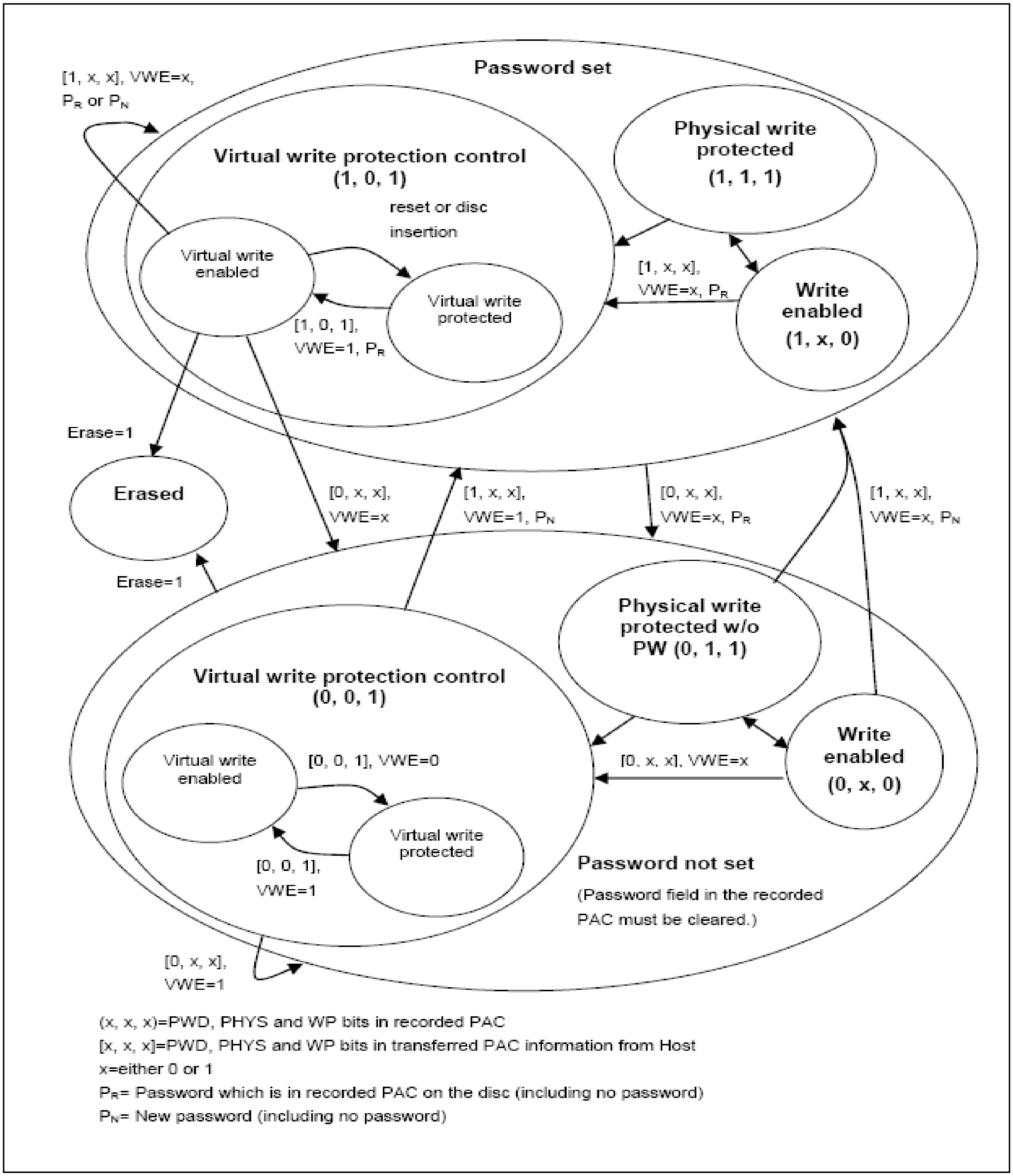


Figure 93 — Physical and Virtual Write Protect State Diagram

For all state transitions, PWD is assumed to be zero, or PWD is assumed to be one and the supplied password is correct.

4.18.4.5 Changing the Write Protect Password

Changing the password in the PAC requires two separate steps from the host. If the current write protection method includes a password, the host shall first send the matching password to the drive, followed by a separate command with the new password.

Table 66 — Changing the Write Protect Password

Current write protection status on the disc	Host actions required to change password
Virtual write protection with existing password	Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with correct password set, and VWE=1. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with new password, and same WP control byte settings (PWD=1, PHYS=0, WP=1). Drive records new password onto the disc.
Virtual write protection without password	Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with VWE=1. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with password set, and WP control byte settings set to indicate password protection (PWD=1, PHYS=0, WP=1). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc.
Physical write protection with existing password	Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with correct password set, and WP control byte settings to switch off physical write protection (PWD=0, PHYS=1, WP=0). Drive records new WP control byte settings onto the disc. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with password set, and WP control byte settings set to indicate password and write protection enabled (PWD=1, PHYS=1, WP=1). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc.
Physical write protection without password	Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive to switch off physical write protection (PWD=0, PHYS=1, WP=0). Drive records new WP control byte settings onto the disc. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with password set, and WP control byte settings set to indicate password and physical write protection (PWD=1, PHYS=1, WP=1). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc.
No write protection enabled, but password (PWD bit) is set. (Hosts applications may find this of little or no value.)	Step 1: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with correct password set and WP control byte settings to switch off password protection (PWD=0, PHYS=same setting, WP=0). Drive records new WP control byte settings onto the disc. Step 2: Host sends DWP PAC to Drive with new password and WP control byte settings set to indicate password protection (PWD=1, PHYS=same setting, WP=0). Drive records new password and WP control byte settings onto the disc.

4.19 Drive Assisted Software Defect Management

4.19.1 General

There are two types of defect management. The one is Host-based defect management (software defect management) and the other is Drive-based defect management (hardware defect management).

In the case of software defect management, a Host retrieves defect information from the Drive and performs defect management at the Host's desired timing. e.g., the software defect management is being utilized for CD-RW media. In the case of hardware defect management, the Drive itself automatically performs defect management like a DVD-RAM Drive.

Though the capacity of media is dramatically increased in comparison to CD media, the life of RW media is relatively short. The number of acceptable overwrite cycles on a sector is usually one thousand or several thousand. Therefore some sectors of the data area may be worn-out by repeated writing over the life span of the media.

This section defines the Drive assisted software defect management method for any type of rewritable media (e.g., CD-RW, DVD-RW) with Drive that supports Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature. The goal of this model is to provide a defect management mechanism to increase data reliability and media interchangeability after writing the data on a medium by the Host and the Drive. In addition, this model provides a sophisticated real-time defect management with collaboration between the Host and the Drive.

4.19.2 Basic actions for defect management

The Drive assisted software defect management consists of the following basic three actions:

1. Certification – Certify blocks on a medium
2. Detection – Detect the use of defective block
3. Management – Manage data on a defective block or manage data to be written on a defective block. Usually, data on a defective block or data to be written on a defective block is relocated to healthy block.

4.19.3 Software Defect management modes

4.19.3.1 General

The Drive assisted software defect management model defines two defect management modes. The one is Persistent defect management (Persistent-DM) mode and the other is Distributed real-time defect management (DRT-DM) mode.

4.19.3.2 Persistent defect management (Persistent-DM) mode

In the Persistent-DM mode, the "Certification" and the "Detection" actions are taken by verify after write operation of a Host. Then "Management" action is taken by the Host.

A Host should verify any written data by enabling Certification and by using one of the following commands.

a) READ (10)
b) READ (12) with Streaming bit = 0
c) VERIFY (10)
d) WRITE AND VERIFY (10)

The Drive shall perform media certification when one of the above commands is issued to the Drive. The certification result is stored in Defective Block Information (DBI) memory of the Drive. In the case of Simple DBI memory model (see 4.19.4.5.2), the DBI data is cleared and updated by the above commands. In response to READ (12) command with Streaming bit = 1, certification is vendor specific.

By using DBI memory, multiple blocks may be certified by Drive at one command.

4.19.3.3 Distributed real-time defect management (DRT-DM) mode

In addition to the functionality of the Persistent-DM mode, the DRT-DM mode provides functionality that is suitable for real-time streaming applications.

In recording real-time streaming data, recording applications usually suspend or delay the replacement of a defective block to avoid interruption of the real-time recording. In the DRT-DM mode, "Certification" action is taken during a read operation by the Host. "Detection" action is taken during a write operation by the Host. The

Host may take "Management" action after the recording operation is complete. Therefore, the DRT-DM mode is able to minimize the performance impact on the real-time operation.

The DRT-DM mode provides for certification before writing. A Drive performs media certification in response to READ (10), READ (12), or VERIFY (10) command and the Drive stores the certification result in DBI memory of the Drive. During writing of a Packet, the Drive may report a RECOVERED ERROR on WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command by checking the DBI data that is stored during the certification. To keep compatibility with Persistent-DM mode (verify after write), the Drive shall certify the block after the writing of the block and then should check the DBI memory in response to READ (10), READ (12), VERIFY (10) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command.

DBI data shall be cached in DBI memory. Once a block has been certified at a certain defect level, that block shall not be assigned a lower defect level in DBI memory upon subsequent certification. This ensures that the worst case certification is made available to the Host. Regarding the defect level, see 4.19.4.3.

The Host may retrieve the stored DBI data at a later time. To keep compatibility with read-only applications that access the disc directly, the Host may suspend RECOVERED ERROR reporting on READ (10) or READ (12) command and the Host may use RECOVERED ERROR reporting on WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command instead.

The DRT-DM mode makes use of two types of DBI memory model. One is large DBI buffer model. Another is small DBI cache memory model. See 4.19.4.5, "DBI memory management".

For the DRT-DM mode, Drive and media shall follow the Defect Level Transition model described in Section 7.6.1. When a fatal error occurs during normal overwriting, a Type 1 or Type 2 defect level shall have been detected by the Drive before the fatal error happens.

4.19.4 Enhanced Defect Reporting

4.19.4.1 General

Enhanced defect reporting provides media interchangeability by defect management and improves defect management performance by using DBI memory and provides Host/application with appropriate Drive behavior by DBI memory and various defect reporting control.

4.19.4.2 Standard playback model for DVD-RW media

To specify the interchangeable defect level between a write capable Drive and read-only Drive, a standard playback model and defect level criteria are defined.

For DVD-RW media, ordinary Consumer Electronics DVD players that support playback of DVD-RW media are defined as standard player for the standard playback model. Error correction order of the standard player is assumed as:

1. PI error correction
2. PO erasure error correction
3. EDC error detection.

The standard player performs no additional error correction.

Note 5. Standard playback model for other media is not defined.

4.19.4.3 Four types of defect level

The Drive assisted software defect management model defines four types of defect level to handle appropriate operation according to each type of defect. The defect level increases from Type 1 to Type 4. Type 4 is the highest severity level.

a) Type 1: Recovered light defect level
The conceptual criterion is that after 50 ~ 100 overwrite cycles, the Packet may cause uncorrectable error on standard playback model and the number of retry seek operations is small. For DVD-RW media, the recommended error threshold is that the number of PI uncorrectable line is 8 through 15. The number of seek retry times should be smaller than the number of seek retry times for Type 2 defect level. A Packet at or below this defect level should be good for data recording/playback with Consumer Electronics products.

b) Type 2: Recovered heavy defect level
The conceptual criterion is that several seek retries are required to read the Packet correctly and reading of the Packet may become a fatal error on standard playback model. And after 50 ~ 100 overwrite cycles, reading of the Packet may become a fatal error even with the best error correction of the Drive. For DVD-

RW media, the recommended error threshold is that the number of PI uncorrectable line is 16 or higher. To read a Packet correctly many seek retry operations may be required. A Packet that has this defect level may not be good for data recording/playback with Consumer Electronics products.

c) Type 3: Unrecovered read error defect level
An unrecovered read error happens or has happened.

d) Type 4: Write error defect level
Write error has occurred. When RECOVERED ERROR is reported by WRITE (12) command with Streaming bit = 1, some of the specified sectors are not written correctly.

4.19.4.4 Error reporting control

Reporting of a RECOVERED ERROR is controlled by the PER bit in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (01h). A RECOVERED ERROR only reports the last LBA of one Packet in the REQUEST SENSE data. The Drive assisted software defect management that uses DBI memory in the Drive provides multiple Packet defect reporting capability to increase system performance.

A Drive shall report a RECOVERED ERROR when

a) A Type 1 or Type 2 defect is detected on the medium, and
b) Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is current, and
c) RECOVERED ERROR reporting is enabled.

The Enhanced defect reporting capable Drive uses only one error code for RECOVERED ERROR although there are various other ASC/ASCQs defined for RECOVERED ERRORs. When a Type 1 or Type 2 defect level is detected during media certification, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT. When some write operations are failed during streaming write operation by WRITE (12) command with Streaming bit = 1, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT and shall store Type 4 defect level in the DBI memory.

In the case of DRT-DM mode,

a) If a Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3 defect is found in DBI memory upon receiving a WRITE (10), WRITE (12), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command and if no write error happens, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT. The data sent by WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command shall be written to the medium.
b) If a Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3 defect is found in DBI memory upon receiving a WRITE (10), WRITE (12), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command and if write error happens, a deferred write error shall be reported. In this case RECOVERED ERROR is not returned to the Host.
c) If a Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3 defect is found in DBI memory upon receiving a VERIFY (10) command, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT.

Error codes to be reported and DBI update states in each case are defined in tables from Table 67 to Table 72.

Table 67 — Returned error code for commands under the Persistent-DM mode

Returned error code[1]					
READ			VERIFY / WRITE AND VERIFY		
no error[2]	Type 1 or 2	fatal error[3]	no error	Type 1 or 2	fatal error
Good	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT	fatal	Good	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT	fatal

[1]The case when RECOVERED ERROR reporting is allowed on the command. Returned error code is not affected by DBI data in DBI memory.
[2]This means that the defect level is lower than Type 1 defect level.
[3]If a fatal error happens on this command, does not include a deferred error for previous command.

Table 68 — Returned error code for READ and VERIFY commands under the DRT-DM mode

Returned error code[1]						
Defect Status in DBI memory	READ			VERIFY		
	no error[2]	Type 1 or 2	fatal error[3]	no error	Type 1 or 2	fatal error
no defect	Good	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT	fatal	Good	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT	fatal
Type 1 or 2	Good		fatal	Good		fatal
Type 3	Good		fatal	Good		fatal
Type 4	Good		fatal	Good		fatal

[1]The case when RECOVERED ERROR reporting is allowed on the command.
[2]This means that the defect level is lower than Type 1 defect level.
[3]If a fatal error happens on this command, does not include a deferred error for previous command.

Table 69 — Returned error code for commands under the DRT-DM mode

Returned Sense Codes[1]						
Defect Status in DBI memory	WRITE			WRITE AND VERIFY		
	No error[2]	fatal error[3]	fatal error on Streaming bit = 1[4]	no error	Type 1 or 2	fatal error
no defect	Good	fatal	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA	Good	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND	fatal
Type 1 or 2	RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA –	fatal		RECOVERED ERROR/ RECOVERED DATA –		fatal
Type 3		fatal				fatal
Type 4		fatal				fatal

[1]The case when RECOVERED ERROR reporting is allowed on the command.
[2]This means that the defect level is lower than Type 1 defect level.
[3]If a fatal error happens on this command, does not include a deferred error for previous command.
[4]This is the case when Streaming bit is set to one, and a block is not correctly written. This block is treated as Type 4 defect.

Table 70 — Returned Deferred error code

Returned deferred error code for previous Write command		
Defect Status in DBI memory	Write command Streaming bit = 0	Write command Streaming bit = 1
no defect	fatal (not specified)	RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT
Type ½	fatal (not specified)	
Type 3	fatal (not specified)	
Type 4	fatal (not specified)	

Table 71 — DBI update for READ and VERIFY command[1]

Update state of DBI data								
Defect Status in DBI memory	READ				VERIFY			
	no error	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	no error	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3
no defect	no defect	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	no defect	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3
Type 1	Type 1	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 1	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3
Type 2	Type 2	Type 2	Type 2	Type 3	Type 2	Type 2	Type 2	Type 3
Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3
Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4

[1]This is only applicable for small DBI cache memory model and large DBI buffer memory model.

Table 72 — DBI update for WRITE and WRITE AND VERIFY command[1]

Update state of DBI data							
Defect Status in DBI memory	WRITE		WRITE AND VERIFY				
	no error	Type 4	no error	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
no defect	no defect	Type 4	no defect	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
Type 1	Type 1	Type 4	Type 1	Type 1	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
Type 2	Type 2	Type 4	Type 2	Type 2	Type 2	Type 3	Type 4
Type 3	Type 3	Type 4	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 3	Type 4
Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4	Type 4

[1]This is only applicable for small DBI cache memory model and large DBI buffer memory model

If the Drive finds defective blocks during the verify operation of VERIFY (10) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status when all blocks specified by the command are certified or when DBI memory overflow occurs. If DBI memory overflow occurs, the DBI Full (DBIF) bit of DBI descriptor in GET PERFORMANCE command for the Packet that caused DBI buffer full shall be set to 1.

In the case of DRT-DM mode, fatal errors are registered in the DBI memory during the certification process. When the Drive receives a WRITE command to be written to the fatal error Packet, the Drive shall terminate the WRITE command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT after completion of data transfer. The transferred data shall be written on the media normally.

When a command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ is set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT the Host should check the DBI data.

In order to maintain compatibility with read-only applications (e.g., DVD-Video playback software), reporting a RECOVERED ERROR on READ (10) or READ (12) command may be suspended by the EMCDR field setting in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (01h). DBI memory allows for polling of defective Packet information without using RECOVERED ERROR reporting. The EMCDR field controls media certification and error reporting on particular commands as shown in Table 74 and Table 75.

When a medium is certified, the rotation speed of the Drive may need to be adjusted to appropriate certification speed. If the certification speed is slower than the maximum reading speed of the Drive, the Host may disable media certification by setting the PER bit and the EMCDR field to 0 to use highest speed of the Drive for reading operation.

At Power-on reset and hard reset, if the Drive does not support saving of Read/Write Error Recovery mode page, the PER bit and the EMCDR field shall be set to zero.

The default values of the PER bit and the EMCDR field are 0.

4.19.4.5 DBI memory management

4.19.4.5.1 General

To avoid or minimize DBI data overflow with a small amount of Drive's hardware resources, there are different memory models defined to store DBI data in a Drive. They are simple DBI memory model, large DBI buffer memory model and small DBI cache memory model.

The DBI data may be cleared when the Drive is reset by Hard reset.

The DBI data shall be cleared when the medium is ejected or Drive is reset by Power on reset.

The DBI data shall not be cleared even if the PER bit and the EMCDR field are both set to zero.

4.19.4.5.2 Simple DBI memory model

The simple DBI memory model is permitted only for the Persistent-DM mode. All stored data in DBI memory is updated at the beginning of medium certification. To ensure that a simple DBI implementation gives a minimum level of usefulness and efficiency to the Host, the DBI memory shall be capable of storing at least 10 DBI entries. This allows for the DBI entries to cover a minimum of 256 + 64 KB of defective data (in the case of DVD media) before overflow occurs. This implies that if this minimum is used, the Host should not issue a READ, WRITE, or VERIFY command for more than 256 + 64 KB at a time, otherwise the command may overflow the DBI memory. The value of 10 DBI entries assumes half of Track Buffer size and information of VR playback model. The Number of entries field in Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Descriptor indicates the number of entries that may be stored in DBI memory.

4.19.4.5.3 Large DBI buffer memory model

Some Drives (e.g., Drive that supports hardware defect management) have enough memory to cover the whole medium for defect management purpose. In this case, the Drive's memory may cover DBI data for all Packets on CD/DVD media. For the ideal case, Drive may store DBI data into a DBI bitmap that may cover entire disc. For the practical case, the Drive's memory may store 10% of the different Packet start addresses of the entire disc and length of consecutive defective Packets. Usually the spare area size is less than 5% of the entire disc capacity. To cover the spare area, 10% of the entire disc capacity should be enough size for Large DBI buffer memory model.

4.19.4.5.4 Small DBI cache memory model

4.19.4.5.4.1 General

The Drive may have small memory to store DBI data. To minimize the possibility of DBI data overflow and to allow effective Host operation, small DBI cache memory model is defined. The DBI data remains in DBI cache even if the data is read by a Host. To ensure that a small DBI implementation gives a minimum level of usefulness and efficiency to the Host, the DBI cache shall be capable of storing at least 10 DBI entries.

4.19.4.5.4.2 Three types of memory blocks in DBI memory

In the small DBI cache memory model, the DBI memory is divided into three memory blocks to minimize the possibility of DBI data overflow. Each memory block is referred to as Buffer DBI (BDBI), Read DBI (RDBI) cache, or Write DBI (WDBI) cache.

1. Buffer DBI (BDBI) block: to store certification information of sectors in data buffer
2. Read DBI (RDBI) cache memory block: to copy data from BDBI by a READ command
3. Write DBI (WDBI) cache memory block: to copy data from RDBI by a WRITE command, copy data from BDBI by a VERIFY command

See Figure 94.

The certification result of READ (10) or READ (12) command is stored in RDBI cache. The certification result of VERIFY (10) command and WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command is stored in WDBI cache. A Drive shall check RDBI cache by WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command. If a defective Packet is found in RDBI cache, the DBI data in RDBI cache is copied to WDBI cache.

In the case of the large DBI buffer memory model, the DBI data is stored into a DBI buffer directly, then these three types of memory blocks are unified into single DBI buffer.

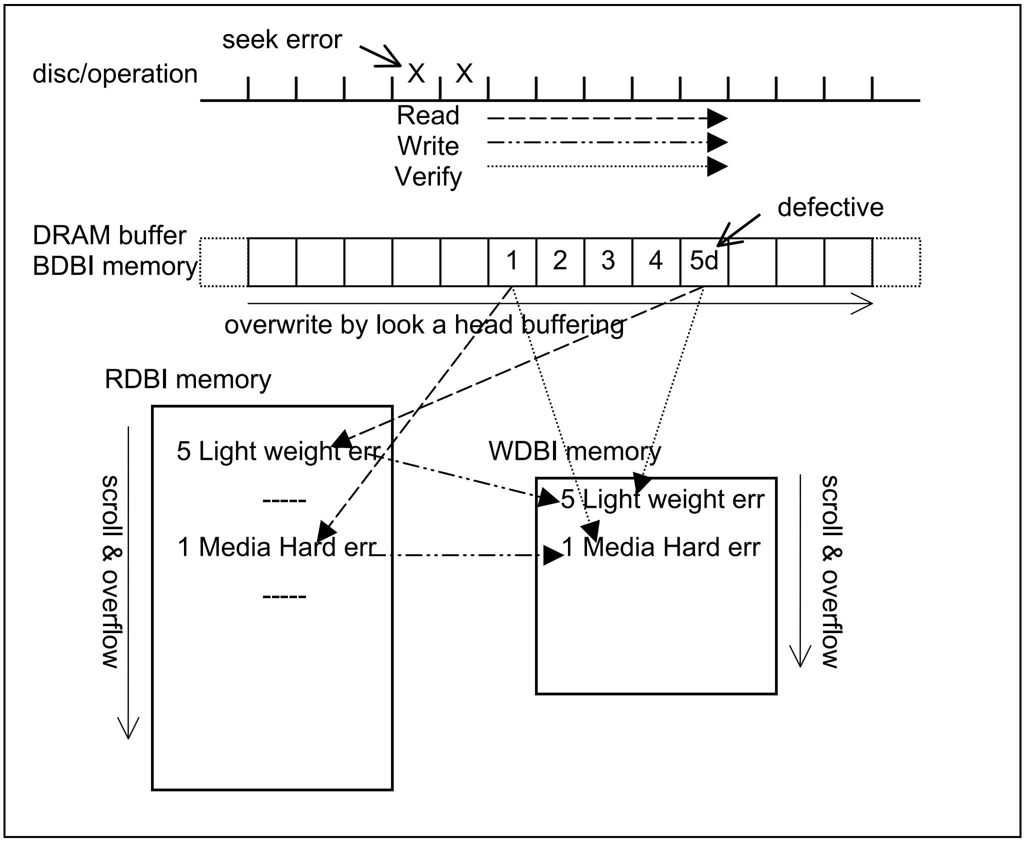


Figure 94 — Example of DBI memory blocks

4.19.4.5.4.3 Adjust DBI cache for a real-time application

The data in RDBI and WDBI cache memories may easily overflow due to accessing of multiple/large files. To protect DBI data against overflow, disc volume space may be divided into a few zones named DBI cache zone. The RDBI and WDBI caches are allocated for each DBI cache zones. e.g., in the case of UDF file system version 2.00 and DVD-VR application, at least two DBI cache zones are required to be supported. Table 73 shows an example of the DBI cache zone image.

In the case of large DBI buffer memory model, the Drive shall report the Number of DBI cache zones field value of 1 in Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Descriptor. The Drive shall report single DBI cache zone that starts from LBA 0 to the end of the medium by GET PERFORMANCE command with Type = 05h.

Table 73 — Example of DBI cache zone image

DBI cache Zone	Major contents	Remark	Sparing
0[1]	VRS	from 10h	not covered by sparing of UDF very important many overwritten file system data
	AVDP	100h	
	main Volume Descriptor Sequence	by AVDP	
	reserve Volume Descriptor Sequence	by AVDP	
	Logical Volume Integrity Descriptor	by VDS	
	primary Sparing Table	by VDS	
	Spare Area	by VDS	
	secondary Sparing Table	by VDS	
	Beginning of Spareable	by VDS	subject of sparing
	Free Space Bitmap	by VDS	
	root File Entry for root	by VDS	
	File Entry for DVD_RTAV	by root File	
	VR_MANAGR.IFO	by VR File	
	VR_MANAGR.BUP	by VR File	
1[2]	VR_MOVIE.VRO	by VR File	subject of sparing but not suitable to spare
	VR_AUDIO.VRO	by VR File	
	VR_STILL.VRO	by VR File	

[1]First DBI cache zone: from LBA 0 to before VR object files. There are very important UDF descriptors and information that are not covered by Sparing of UDF. And there are important contents that are able to be replaced to Spare Area.
[2]Second DBI cache zone: from beginning of VR object files to the end of disc volume space. There are real-time contents that should not be replaced to the Spare Area.

4.19.5 Implicit synchronize cache

When a medium certification is enabled and READ or VERIFY command is issued, and if the data to be read by the command is still remaining in the write cache of the Drive, the unwritten data shall be committed to a physical medium prior to the certification and then Drive shall read from the medium and certify the data to perform medium certification correctly.

4.19.6 Persistent-DM mode behavior

4.19.6.1 General

In the Persistent-DM mode, the Host should check the defect level of the Packets after write. The Drive stores the certification result corresponding to each READ (10)/READ (12) command with Streaming bit = 0/VERIFY (10)/ WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command in the DBI memory. One of three DBI memory models is used. As for DBI memory model, see 4.19.4.5, “DBI memory management”.

The Host should enable media certification by setting of PER bit or EMCDR field.

In Persistent-DM mode, media certification by READ (12) command with Streaming bit =1 is not required. Some Drives may be unable to guarantee real-time streaming playback on 1X CLV speed in PC environment. When READ (12) command with Streaming bit =1 is issued, the rotation speed is usually higher than the speed for certification. Thus, the certification may not be able to be performed. The Type 1 defect level is detected by using READ (10), READ (12) with Streaming bit = 0, or VERIFY (10) command. The Type 1 defect level means the Packet readability is good enough for real-time playback (i.e., READ (12) with Streaming bit = 1 should not have trouble on reading the Packet).

A Host should check the defect level of the Packet using READ (12) command with Streaming bit = 0 to keep the disc compatible with standard playback model.

4.19.6.2 RECOVERED ERROR reporting control for Persistent-DM mode

When the PER bit is set to one and/or EMCDR field is set to one or higher, the Drive perform certification and report RECOVERED ERROR on READ (10)/READ (12) with Streaming bit =0, VERIFY (10), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command.

If PER bit is set to zero, the EMCDR field controls the RECOVERED ERROR for defect management as defined in Table 74. In this case, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT.

If the PER bit is set to one, various kinds of RECOVERED ERROR shall be returned for any type of command. And if the EMCDR field is set to zero, the reported RECOVERED ERROR for defect management is vendor specific. If the EMCDR field is set to a value other than zero, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT.

Table 74 — Definition of PER bit and EMCDR field of Persistent-DM mode

PER bit	EMCDR field value	Media certification[1]	RECOVERED ERROR reporting[2]		
			READ[3]	VERIFY	Other commands
0	0	Disabled	N/A	N/A	No
	1	Enabled	No	No	No
	2	Enabled	No	Yes	No
	3	Enabled	Yes	Yes	No
1	0	Enabled	N/A	N/A	Yes[4]
	1	Enabled	Yes	Yes	Yes
	2	Enabled	Yes	Yes	Yes
	3	Enabled	Yes	Yes	Yes

[1]On READ (10), READ (12) with Streaming = 0, VERIFY (10), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command.
[2]Except for the note 4 case, RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT is used for defect management purpose.
[3]On READ (10) or READ (12) command with Streaming=0. READ (12) with Streaming =1 is not included.
[4]Drive is allowed to use any RECOVERED ERROR code to keep legacy compatibility.

4.19.6.3 Recommended Host sequence of Persistent-DM mode

At the time of disc mounting:

1. Turn on media certification (EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page)
2. Try to recognize file system of the disc
3. If the Host's File System driver does not support the file system on the disc, turn off media certification (EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page). Then pass the disc to the next possible file system driver.

At the time of disc writing:

1. Write several Packets
2. Verify the written Packets
3. If a RECOVERED ERROR is reported, retrieve DBI information.

At the time of disc un-mount:

1. Synchronize all cached data to the disc
2. Turn off media certification (EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page)
3. Un-mount the disc

4.19.7 DRT-DM mode behavior

4.19.7.1 General

The basic three actions of defect management are performed by different commands and timing. Certification and Detection are separated in READ command and WRITE command respectively, and are connected by DBI memory. Either small DBI cache model or large DBI buffer model shall be used.

The EMCDR field controls the reporting of RECOVERED ERRORs. The Host is able to receive RECOVERED ERROR by use of certain commands (e.g., media access command). The Host is able to retrieve DBI data at a time convenient to the Host.

1. Certification is performed at READ (10), READ (12) or VERIFY (10) command. The result is stored in DBI memory.
2. Detection is performed at WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command with checking of DBI memory. The result is reported as RECOVERED ERROR of WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command.
3. Management is performed by the Host. If the Host receives a RECOVERED ERROR at completion of a WRITE command, the Host should perform necessary management of written data. The Host is able to retrieve the DBI data from DBI buffer at any time.

There are two types of memory model for DBI memory. One is the large DBI buffer memory model that covers all Packets on the media. This memory model never cause DBI buffer overflow. Another is the small DBI cache memory model. This model has a special scheme to minimize cache overflow. But cache overflow is possible.

The EMCDR field controls DRT-DM behavior. When a Drive reads medium and the EMCDR field is set to a value other than 0, the Drive shall certify Packets on the medium and store the certification result into DBI memory regardless of Streaming bit setting of READ (12) command. In the case of DRT-DM mode, media certification by READ (12) command with Streaming bit = 1 shall be supported.

In the DRT-DM mode, when a write error happens at WRITE (12) command with Streaming bit = 1, the result shall be stored in DBI memory. Error reporting is dependent on the PER bit and the EMCDR field setting. If RECOVERED ERROR reporting is disabled, no RECOVERED ERROR shall be reported. In this case, the Host should check DBI data after the writing operation of WRITE (12) command with Streaming =1, if necessary.

4.19.7.2 Defect Level Transition model

In the case of real-time stream recording, the Host and Drive are not able to perform verify after write operation and defect management. Data allocation of the real-time stream (e.g., real-time Video data) shall be determined before writing on the medium to keep data format compatibility and playback compatibility. The real-time stream data flows from Host to Drive continuously. Usually there is no time for verify after write operation and defect management. To guarantee the readability of written Packet, the Host needs to verify the Packet before write.

In the DRT-DM mode, the Drive and media shall support the Defect Level Transition model. If there is neither physical impact to media (e.g., scratch, finger print) nor physical impact to Drive (e.g., shock, vibration), error level of a Packet shall not change from non-defect level to fatal defect level. Type 1 defect or Type 2 defect shall be reported before the Packet becomes unreadable by ordinary direct overwrite cycles. See Figure 95.

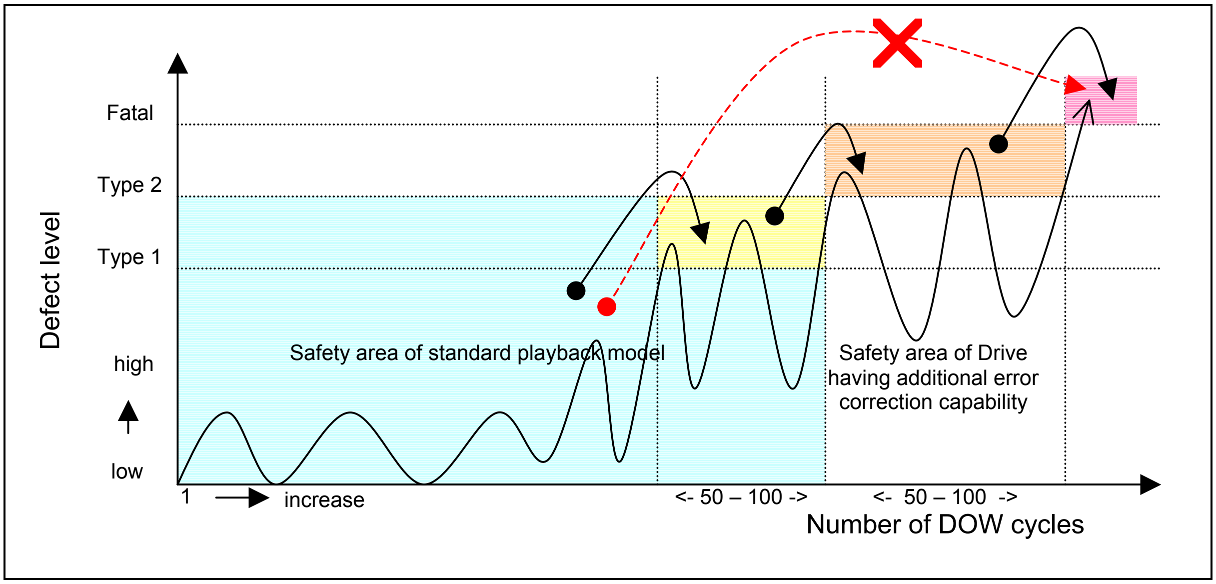


Figure 95 — Example of defect level transition

4.19.7.3 Certification

At READ command, the Drive shall certify specified blocks to be read. The result is stored in DBI memory.

In the case of small DBI cache memory model, the information of actually transferred blocks shall be stored in RDBI cache. The information of the blocks those are out of range of the command (e.g., read by look ahead buffering but not transferred to Host) shall not be stored in the RDBI cache because the blocks may already be replaced and no longer be used by the Host.

If the Drive finds defective blocks in VERIFY (10) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status when all blocks specified by command are certified or when DBI cache overflow occurs. The Drive shall report RECOVERED ERROR to the Host. The result is stored in DBI memory.

READ (10), READ (12), and VERIFY (10) command shall be performed normally regardless of certification. If a fatal error is detected, the Drive shall report the error normally.

4.19.7.4 Detecting the use of a defective block

Detection is performed by WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command. The Drive shall check all written block addresses by RDBI cache or DBI buffer. When a defect information is found, the Drive shall terminate the WRITE command with CHECK CONDITION status after all data is transferred. The Drive shall report a RECOVERED ERROR to the Host. All buffered data shall be written on the media properly even if WRITE command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. In the case of small DBI cache memory model, when defective block is used by a WRITE command, the Drive shall store the information in WDBI cache.

If a fatal error is detected, the Drive shall report the error normally.

4.19.7.5 Management of defective block

When the Host pauses current real-time operation, the Host should perform defect management of used defective blocks, if necessary. Some of the information on defective blocks may have important data to be replaced. Some other may not be needed to replace. In the case of real-time streaming data (e.g., video stream), the data blocks are not allowed to be replaced. The Host should select suitable defect management method for such data.

If the Host receives a RECOVERED ERROR at WRITE command, some of information had been written on defective blocks. The Host should read the DBI data by GET PERFORMANCE command with Type = 04h. The Host should determine the data on defective blocks that shall be managed.

4.19.7.6 Delayed replacement of data on defective block

The RECOVERED ERROR reported by a Drive means that some of the used sectors by WRITE command are not reliable. After hundred (it may be a few hundred initially, a few times finally) overwrite cycles on the same block, the block may become unreadable. Therefore, the Host may read the written data from defective blocks, and may write them into spare area.

4.19.7.7 RECOVERED ERROR reporting control for DRT-DM mode

When the PER bit is set to one and/or the EMCDR field is set to one or higher, the Drive shall perform media certification and shall report RECOVERED ERROR on READ (10), READ (12), VERIFY (10), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command regardless of Streaming bit setting.

If the EMCDR field is set to zero, the Drive should not store the certification result in DBI memory to avoid overflow when the Drive supports small DBI cache memory model.

If the PER bit is set to zero, the EMCDR field controls the RECOVERED ERROR for defect management as defined in Table 75. In this case, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT. See 4.19.4 Enhanced Defect Reporting.

When WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) command is terminated with a RECOVERED ERROR, the Drive shall write the data to the medium.

The error code of the write failure on WRITE (10), WRITE (12), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command is not defined in this model section. See each media model section and WRITE (10), WRITE (12), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command sections.

The error code of the read failure on READ (10) or READ (12) command is not defined in this model section. See each media model section and READ (10) or READ (12) command sections.

If the PER bit is set to one, various kinds of a RECOVERED ERROR shall be returned for any type of command. If the EMCDR field is set to zero, the reported RECOVERED ERROR for defect management is vendor specific. If the EMCDR field is set to a value other than zero, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT.

Table 75 — Definition of PER bit and EMCDR field of DRT-DM mode

PER bit	EMCDR field value	Media certification[1]	RECOVERED ERROR reporting[2]			
			READ[3]	VERIFY	WRITE	Other commands
0	0	Disabled	N/A	N/A	N/A	No
	1	Enabled	No	No	No	No
	2	Enabled	No	Yes	Yes	No
	3	Enabled	Yes	Yes	Yes	No
1	0	Enabled	N/A	N/A	N/A	Yes[4]
	1	Enabled	Yes	Yes	No	Yes
	2	Enabled	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
	3	Enabled	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

[1]On READ (10), READ (12), VERIFY (10), or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command.
[2]Except for the note 4 case, RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT shall be used for defect management.
[3]On READ (10) or READ (12) command.
[4]Drive is allowed to use any RECOVERED ERROR code to keep legacy compatibility.

4.19.7.8 Recommended Host Recovery

For DVD-RW media, the relationship of the Number of Direct Overwrite cycles and the defect level is inconsistent. Drive/media incompatibilities may cause the peak defect level to exceed Type 1 or Type 2.

The defect level on the next overwrite may become very low again. So, it is recommended to re-write the user data to the same ECC block by the host again to avoid unnecessary replacement by the file system, even if the ECC block is reported as defective. If re-writing fails, then a reallocation operation by the file system should be done.

4.20 Real-Time Stream Recording/Playback Model

4.20.1 General

Some applications (e.g. real-time audio and video recording/playback) require a minimally consistent data rate. Although the desired data rates are typically, significantly below the media surface rates, delays due to recovery operations and accessing fragmented data may slow the average data rate such that it falls below the application's minimum requirement. A large semiconductor buffer may provide some advantage through data rate averaging, however delays are only redistributed and a buffer of sufficient size for all cases may be impractical. The Real-time Stream Recording/Playback model defines several mechanisms that address the specific problems independently.

4.20.2 Real-Time Stream Playback

The presence of the Real-time Streaming Feature specifies that the MM reader has implemented functions that aid in real-time stream reading.

The MM reader shall implement:

a) The GET PERFORMANCE command in order to notify the Host's application of sustainable read data rates.
b) The SET STREAMING command in order to receive the application's data rate requirements.
c) The SET READ-AHEAD command in order that the application may navigate the MM reader's read-ahead process.
d) The READ (12) command in order that the application may specify that data rate is more important than data quality.

Real-time Stream Playback model addresses various causes of delay in streamed playback:

Controlling Stream Interruptions

When the media surface data rate is significantly higher than the data rate demanded by the application, the MM reader may use its read-ahead buffer as a mechanism to cover a stream interruption. If the reader has options for controlling the duration of a data stream interruption, knowledge of the required data rate may provide the application with seamless data delivery.

The application may notify the MM reader of the minimum data rate requirements by specifying them in the SET STREAMING command. The MM reader may limit certain operations (typically recovery) in order to maintain the minimum requirement.

Fragmented Storage

Even with no error recovery loss in the data, the MM device may be unable to use a read-ahead mechanism to cover data rate loss due to physical fragmentation of the logical flow due to data set navigation requirements.

The SET READ-AHEAD command provides a real-time method by which the application may schedule a redirection of the read-ahead function. This maximizes buffer utilization in data rate averaging over the loss due to seeking.

Read Retries

Many physical properties of the reader system may yield uncorrected data upon the initial read attempt, but corrected data after some number of read retries. The cost of each read retry is a full media rotation.

Each read retry is performed at a cost of one full revolution of the disc. If the application is tolerant of small error bursts, it may use the READ (12) command with the stream bit set to 1. The MM reader may return sector data that has not been completely corrected. The MM reader may still choose to perform retries if it is determined that it is possible to maintain data rate specified by the SET STREAMING command.

Accessing Defect Replacements

This is similar to the fragmented storage case. The hardware defect management system built into the media format redirects the MM reader to defect replacements. This typically causes 2 seek losses for access to only a small amount of data.

If the application is tolerant of large error bursts, it may use the READ (12) command with the stream bit set to 1. The MM reader may disable its hardware defect management system and deliver fabricated data. The MM reader may still choose to insert defect replacements into the data stream if it is determined that the SET STREAMING specified data rate may be maintained.

Sector not found, loss of tracking errors

Some serious errors may result in several contiguous, unrecoverable sectors.

If the application is tolerant of large bursts of missing data, it may use the READ (12) command with the stream bit set to 1. The MM reader may disable its hardware defect management system (if any) and deliver fabricated data (typically all zeros). The MM reader may still choose to insert defect replacements into the data stream if it is determined that the SET STREAMING specified data rate may be maintained.

Catastrophic Delays

The application may not have specified a required minimum data rate in the SET STREAMING command. Error recoveries are not time limited. This may lead to undesired and lengthy interruptions of read data.

The MM reader may optionally implement Group 3 timeouts in order to place a time limit on error recoveries.

4.20.3 Error Handling with Hardware or No Defect Management

An erroneous block encountered on Stream playback operation should be handled according to Table 76.

Table 76 — Stream Playback Operation Error Handling

Sector Status	Command	Description
Good block	Read (10) and Read (12) with Stream=0	No Error
	Read (12) with Stream=1	No Error
Defective block registered in defect list and replaced	Read (10) and Read (12) with Stream=0	No Error
	Read (12) with Stream=1	No Error (Defect list is ignored, Null (00h) data shall be returned for Blocks listed in a defect list)[1]
Defective block registered in defect list, but not replaced or defective block with Recording Type[3] bit set to 1	Read (10) and Read (12) with Stream=0	No Error (NULL (00h) or partially corrected data may be returned)[2]
	Read (12) with Stream=1	No Error (Erroneous data may be returned)
Defective block that is not registered in defect list (includes the DVD+R and DVD+RW defective block cases).	Read (10) and Read (12) with Stream=0	Report Error (Erroneous data shall not be returned when TB=0)
	Read (12) with Stream=1	No Error (Erroneous data may be returned)

[1]A legacy Drive that may not comply with this specification may return erroneous data and continue reading.
[2]This is defined to allow playback on a legacy system that uses the conventional READ command.
[3]Recording Type is defined only for DVD-RAM.

Cached data that contains an erroneous portion shall not be returned by the READ (12) command when the Streaming bit cleared. In such cases, cached data in a buffer memory is discarded and attempts to read with the conventional READ operation.

4.20.4 Real-Time Stream Recording

A hardware defect management scheme like a Linear Replacement Algorithm (

Figure 96) is applied when the Drive encounters a defective sector during the conventional WRITE operation. This is done to provide a defect free LBA space.

For Stream recording applications, a hardware defect management may insert delays, potentially violating the minimal data rates required by the application.

With Real-Time Stream Recording, the Drive shall not replace a defective block even if the Drive encounters a defective block during the recording operation.

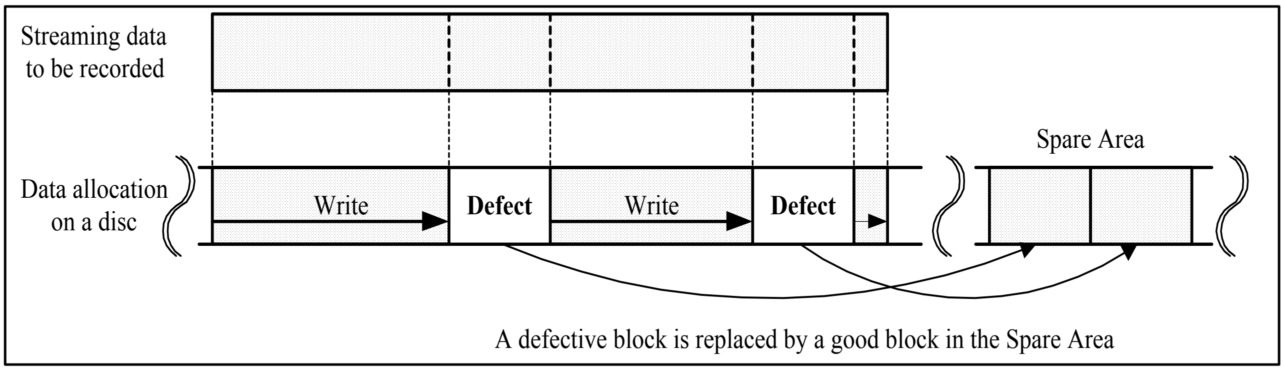


Figure 96 — Example of Data Allocation in case of Linear Replacement

The Drive that returns Real-Time Streaming Feature with Version field of 1 and SW bit of 1 shall supports the following functions.

An example of data allocation on a disc is shown in Figure 97. When the Stream recording operation is performed the Drive shall continue recording without reporting error even if a defective block is found on the Stream recording operation. The Streaming data recorded to the defective block may not be read correctly.

The Host should use WRITE (12) command with Streaming bit set to one to perform the Stream recording operation. The Drive shall not perform the Linear Replacement operation for defective block. The Drive's performance shall be at least 1x speed even if this prevents the Drive from retry or verify operation.

The Drive shall not report CHECK CONDITION status except fatal error, even if a defective block is found on Stream recording operation. The Drive returns a fatal error when the Stream recording operation may not be continued because of critical error such as hardware error.

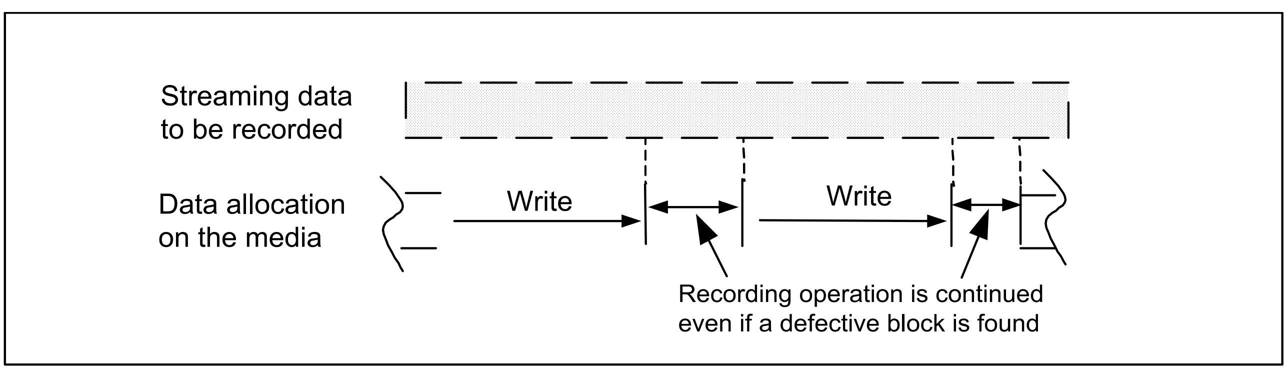


Figure 97 — An example of data allocation on the Stream recording operation

4.20.5 Error Handling with Hardware or No Defect Management

An erroneous block encountered on Stream recording operation should be handled according to Table 77. The defective block may be registered in the defect list but the linear replacement algorithm shall not be applied.

Table 77 — Error Handling on Stream Recording Operation

Sector Status	Command	Description
Good block	Write (10) and Write (12) with Stream=0	No Error
	Write (12) with Stream=1	No Error
Defective block registered in defect list and replaced	Write (10) and Write (12) with Stream=0	No Error
	Write (12) with Stream=1	Ignore defect list and keep recording (The data written on the defective block is not guaranteed)
Defective block registered in defect list, but not replaced or defective block with Recording Type[1] bit set to 1	Write (10) and Write (12) with Stream=0	No Error (The defective block should be replaced and the data should be written to an alternative block)
	Write (12) with Stream=1	No Error (The data should be written to the defective block without error reporting, and the defective block should still be registered in defect list)[2]
Defective block that is not registered in defect list (includes the DVD+R defective block and DVD+RW defective block cases).	Write (10) and Write (12) with Stream=0	No Error (The defective block should be replaced and the data should be written to an alternative block)
	Write (12) with Stream=1	No Error (The data should be written to the defective block without error reporting, and the defective block should be registered in defect list)[2]

[1]Recording Type is defined only for DVD-RAM.
[2]The defective block should be registered in defect list, but linear replacement shall not be applied.

4.20.6 Error Handling with Software Defect Management

When Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature (0029h) is current, error reporting shall follow the setting of the PER bit and the EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (01h). When the Drive transfers erroneous data to the Host or when the Drive writes data to defective blocks, and if error reporting is enabled by setting of the PER bit and/or the EMCDR field, the Drive shall complete the READ (12) command with Streaming bit set to one/WRITE (12) command with Streaming bit set to one with CHECK CONDITION status, RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT at the command completion.

4.20.7 Fatal error recovery model with Group 3 timeout

Group 3 timeout and commands that are included in Group 3 timeout are used for fatal error recovery at real-time stream recording/playback.

When a fatal error has occurred during real-time stream recording/playback operation, the Host needs some recovery action to climb over or fix the fatal error. e.g., in case of playback, application user may want to see further story than the suspended scene. In case of recording, application user may want to use the disc for another recording. If the Host did not perform any recovery action, the next recording may encounter the same fatal error again.

In recovering from fatal error, there are two points should be considered:

1. Reasonable response time
2. Avoid further damage

In the case of playback, when recovery action takes very long time and the system appears to freeze, the application user may user may become assume that a fatal condition has occurred. In the case of recording, Streaming data may be lost. Hence the recovery action should be limited and terminated within a reasonable time length.

A fatal error of Real-time Stream recording/playback is usually a physical problem of the Drive/media (e.g., to hinder the Drive from positioning the optical pickup to the target track, focusing the laser beam to the disc surface or finding the target sector). Too many retries may cause more physical damage of the Drive or the medium. Then Host needs to select the appropriate method and retry times. The Drive should limit retries.

4.21 Timely Safe Recording (TSR) method

4.21.1 General

Timely Safe Recording (TSR) defines a mechanism for defect management that permits the Host to share in the defect management with a Drive that supports the Hardware Defect Management Feature. By sharing the Host's larger buffer, computing resources, and the knowledge of the application needs, the efficiency of defect management is improved.

When a Drive performs recording with defect management, buffered data flows through the buffer attaining different status (Figure 98), based upon the recording process.

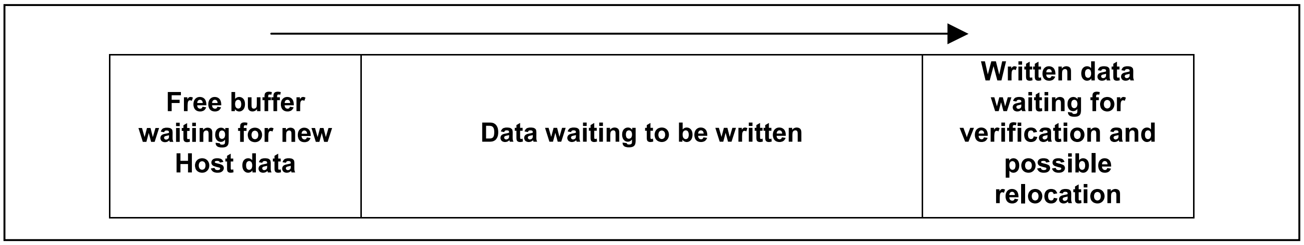


Figure 98 — Buffered Data Status

Verification is typically performed without the need to retain the data associated with the writable unit being verified. However, data awaiting verification is maintained in the Drive buffer in the event that a replacement is required. If a replacement is required, the recording process shall be stopped in order to perform the replacement. This may lead to irregular performance.

With TSR, the Host determines the sequencing and provides the part of the buffer that represents written data waiting for verification. Since the Host is providing the sequencing of the recording process, actual defect relocations may be performed at any time after the original recording process has been done. So, the linear process typically performed by the Drive may occur in a non-linear way. The Drive is required only to log the locations of defective writable units and notify the Host within a specified time that some defects have been detected.

This method is applicable to any media type with the Hardware Defect Management Feature. The resulting media is read-write backward compatible with legacy host-Drive pairs.

The Drive reports support of this feature through TSR Feature (Feature Code 0042h).

The Host and the Drive agree on an error reporting threshold via the Error Reporting Window length field of the Read/Write Error Detection and Recovery Parameters mode page. The Drive signals the necessity to read defect information via sense data. The host gathers this defect information using the GET PERFORMANCE command.

For this method, the recording is organized in two phases.

1. During phase 1, defect detection is enabled, however, defect replacement is disabled.
2. During phase 2, there are 3 options for processing the data:
   a. The Host may choose to write data associated with defective locations with the streaming bit set to zero in order to force replacement by the drive's defect management system. This is the typical action for non-streamed data.
   b. Ignore the defects – no defect management is performed. e.g. the defects are not serious enough to affect the application needs
   c. The Host may perform its own defect management. e.g. Using multiple extents within the file system. The method is completely determined by the Host to fit the application needs and is likely to differ significantly from what the Drive is able to do.

4.21.2 Two phase recording

4.21.2.1 Phase one – Fast recording and error detection

If the Pseudo-Overwrite Feature is present and current, the Host shall (during this phase) write only to unrecorded LBAs when the TSR bit is set to one.

During this phase, the host issues WRITE (10) or WRITE (12) commands with the TSR bit set to one. The Drive receives data from the Host and begins the recording process as soon as possible. Since the Drive is not

performing any defect replacements, it may view its buffer size to be the Host's buffer size. The Drive shall not record more than Error Report Window sectors before performing verification.

During the writing process, the Drive collects information about defective writes, but does not perform relocations, regardless of the setting of the AWRE bit in the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page. The collected defect information is kept in the Drive and the Host may read this information by sending the GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data). Once the data for Error Report Window sectors has been received by the Drive, the Drive should examine the status of verifications so far. If no defective sectors have been discovered, then the window range is shifted by the amount of verified sectors. If any defective sectors have been discovered, the Drive shall terminate the next WRITE, SYNC CACHE, or TEST UNIT READY command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/WRITE ERROR RECOVERY NEEDED. The Host reads the defect information using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data), and resumes writing. The host may retain both the data and its destination LBA for use in the next phase. Once the Host has taken the Defect Data Status, the Drive shall shift window range by the not less than the amount of reported sectors.

The Host concludes phase one with a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command. The Drive will finish any pending verification and report all found defective writable units (see 6.47.3 Command Processing). The host may have formed a list of defects pairs (data, LBA) at the end of this phase.

When TSR writing, the Host should avoid situations that lead to read-modify-write operations. Since the Host may not possess all of the data associated with a read-modify-write, relocation may be impossible.

When a TSR writing sequence is started, the Drive shall verify that the recording is possible according to the current performance parameters. If the Drive determines that TSR writing is unable to perform according to current performance parameters, the WRITE command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

When TSR writing with the Streaming bit in the WRITE (12) command set to one, the Drive shall perform verifications only within the limits permitted by the current performance parameters (as given by the SET PERFORMANCE command).

4.21.2.2 Phase two – defect management for non-streamed data

During this phase, for all non-streamed data, the Host issues write commands for defective writable units reported by the Drive during phase one. When the media is rewritable (e.g. BD-RE), the TSR bit set to zero during these writes. Otherwise TSR is set to one. The Drive may proceed with automatic reallocation / defect management.

4.21.3 Phase two – defect management for streamed data

For streamed data, the host may decide to take one of 3 different actions:

a. Use the Drive's Hardware Defect Management. The Host writes the defective writable units to the original addresses. This stream will have all the content but may have timing problems during real-time playback.

b. Allow the defects to remain. The streamed content may be played back and interruptions in the stream are possible due to the defective writable units. The the Host implementation simplified.

c. The Host application may perform defect relocations in order to minimize the effects on the application. For rewritable media, the Host deduces from the defect list free good locations where it reallocates the data. For write-once media, the unrecorded locations (as defined by valid NWAs) are assumed good. For both rewritable and write-once media, the Host updates the file system information to reflect this reallocation. This is performed by relocating discrete data content (e.g. a video chunk) as a file extent – rather than using a remapping table to relocate individual writable units. In order to avoid hardware reallocation, the process is a reiteration of the TSR method, but only for the file extents that are associated with the defects. There is a potential recursion if new defects are found, however the recursion is ended by either completion or exhausting the free space of the media.

The action c) is recommended.

4.21.4 Implementation notes for the Drive

The Drive may simplify its implementation by using the deferred error report possibility brought by the TSR error reporting threshold only for sequential recording segments. First, the Drive notes the starting LBA (SLBA) of the consecutive writing range. Next, the Drive performs verification:

when the LBA of a write command minus SLBA is greater than or equal to the Error Reporting Window size, or when a non-sequential recording interrupts the sequential recording, or at a time that is vendor specific.

If the application is terminated unexpectedly before completing Phase 2, defective writable units that are found during Phase 1 may remain unreadable. If a WRITE command that writes less than a writable unit is issued to such a defective writable unit, other sectors in the writable unit may be unreadable. When the media format supports a defect list entry that labels a writable unit defective but not relocated, the Drive may re-use such defect list entries when the actual relocation is performed. This also provides a back-up defect list that may be used when the Host has lost its defect list due to early termination.

On BD-RE discs, to avoid this problem, it is recommended that DFL entry type of PBA with the Status 2 field = 0100b is used by BD Drives to register the defective Clusters which are found during Phase 1 of TSR recording.

4.21.5 Example of TSR Recording over a Single LBA Range

Initially, the Host Buffer (32 MB) is empty, the Drive Buffer (1 MB) is empty. The maximum size of the Error Report Window is the Host buffer size. In this example, the Error Report Window size is exactly the Host buffer size. The Host has decided upon a specific LBA range to write (Figure 99).

Figure 99 — Initial conditions prior to starting TSR recording

In Figure 100, when the Host's buffer shows 16 MB delivered to the Drive. The status is as follows:

15 MB is written.

1 MB is in the Drive Buffer, and is in the process of being written.

It is not yet required that any of the written data be verified.

Figure 100 — Recording Begins

In **Figure 101**, 48 MB has been delivered through the Host buffer. The status is as follows:

The most recently delivered 32 MB remains in the Host Buffer.

47 MB has been written to the media.

1 MB is in the Drive Buffer, and is in the process of being written.

The Error Report Window has shifted by at the total amount of data sent minus the 32 MB window.

At least 15 MB has been verified – the amount no longer in the Error Report Window.

No defective writable units have been discovered so far.

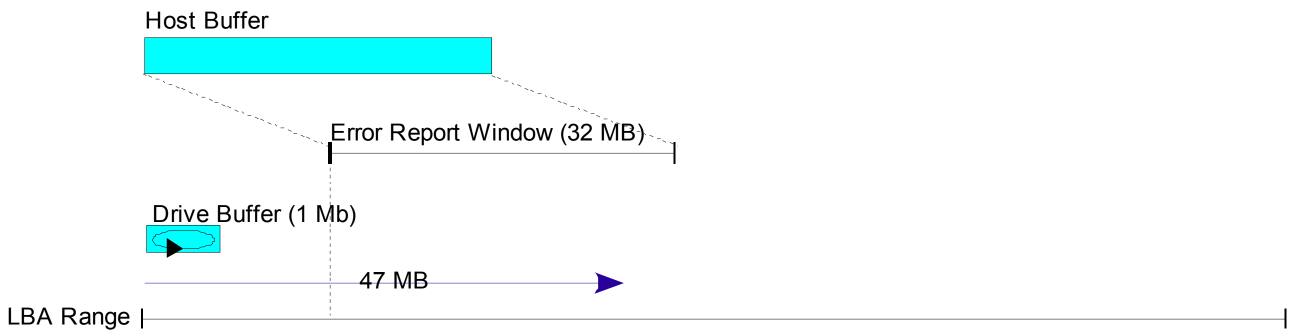


Figure 101 — Recording continues with no discovered defects

In Figure 102, 76 MB has been delivered to the Drive through the Host Buffer. The status is as follows:

75 MB has been written to the media.

1 MB is in the Drive Buffer, and is in the process of being written.

Two defective writable units have been written and are in the Error Report Window.

Verification has discovered the first defective writable unit.

When the defective writable units were written, the defects were not discovered. The defects are not discovered until verification. Once a the verification discovers the defective writable units, the Host may be notified of the defects. In this case, the defects have not yet been reported.

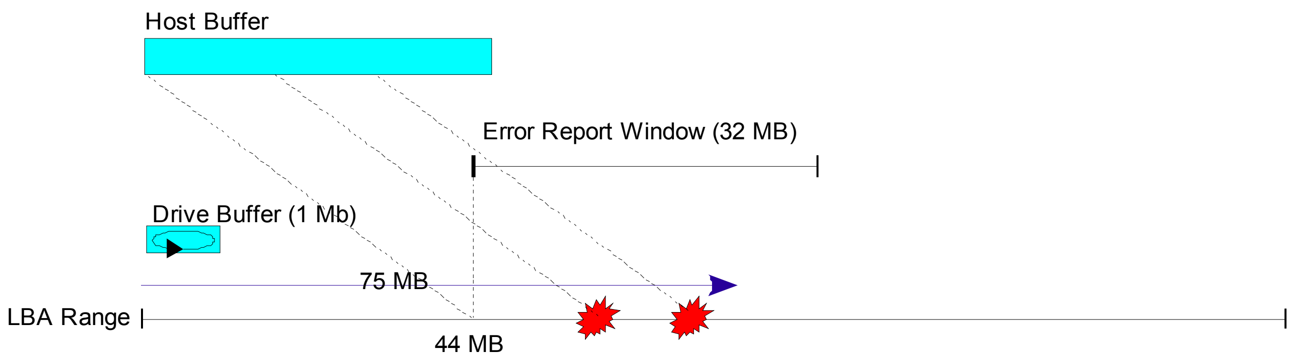


Figure 102 —Defects appear in the Error Report Window

In Figure 103, 92 MB has been delivered through the Host Buffer. The status is as follows:

91 MB has been written to the media.

1 MB is in the Drive Buffer, but writing is suspended.

The verification process has discovered the second defective writable unit.

Writing has been suspended until the Host collects the defect status by issueing the GET PERFORMANCE command.

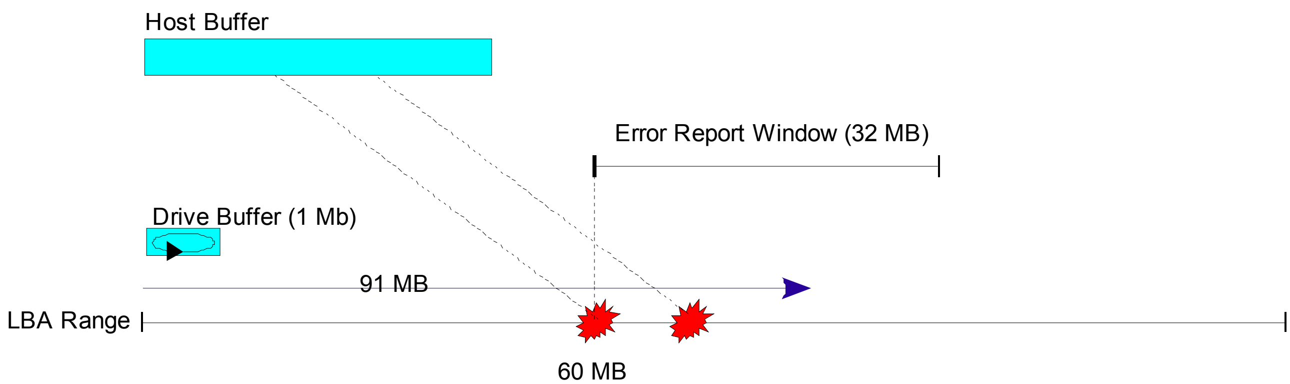


Figure 103 — Last Chance to Notify Host of Defects

After the existence of defects are reported:

In Figure 104, the LBA range of the Error Report Window is moved forward to the first writable unit that has not been verified and writing from the Drive Buffer is restarted..

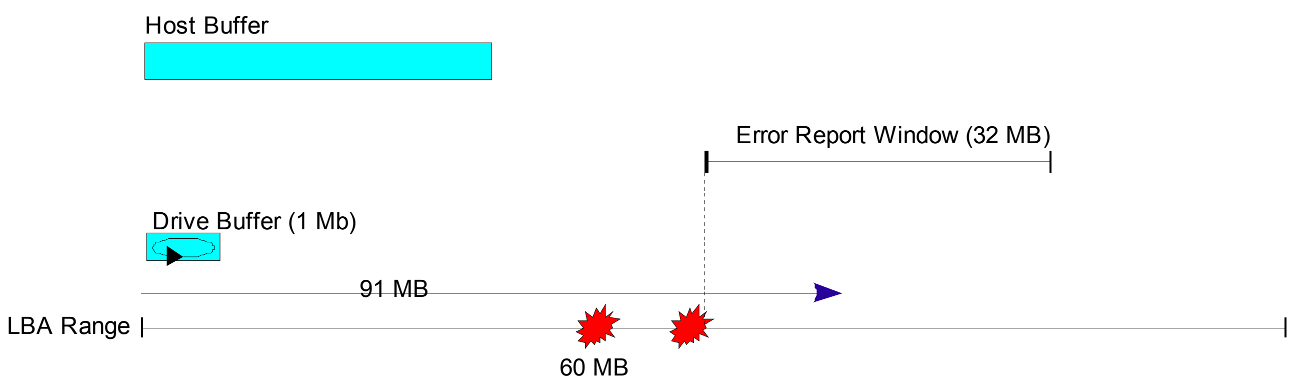


Figure 104 — Error Report Window Range is beyond known defects

The phase 1 recording process continues until the entire range of data has been written by the Host, recorded, and verified by the Drive.

4.22 Content Protection

4.22.1 Overview

4.22.1.1 General

A content protection scheme is intended to protect recorded data from being accessed by any unauthorized application. The data is typically mapped by some arithmetic encryption. A reading application finds the data unusable unless some number of decrypting secrets are known.

4.22.1.2 Block Ciphers

A block cipher is a symmetric key cipher that operates on fixed-length groups of bits – the block size - with an unvarying mapping. When encrypting, a block cipher takes a block of N bits of content, and outputs a corresponding N bit block of encrypted data. The exact mapping is controlled using a second input — the cipher key. Decryption is similar: the decryption algorithm takes an N bit block of encrypted data together with the cipher key, and yields the original N bit block of content.

To encrypt messages longer than the block size, a sequencing mechanism is used.

The Data Encryption Standard (DES) was first specified by FIPS in 1975. DES is a 64-bit block cipher with a 56-bit key.

DES was superceded by the Advanced Encryption Standard [AES] in 2001. AES has a fixed block size (128 bits) and multiple key sizes (128, 192 or 256 bits).

4.22.1.3 Stream Ciphers

A stream cipher is a symmetric key cipher in which the original content cells (bits, bytes, etc.) are encrypted one at a time. The mapping of successive bytes varies during the encryption process.

Stream ciphers represent a different approach to symmetric encryption from block ciphers. Block ciphers operate on large blocks of digits with a fixed, unvarying mapping function. This distinction is not always clear-cut: some modes of operation use a block cipher primitive in such a way that it then acts effectively as a stream cipher. Stream ciphers typically process at a higher speed than block ciphers and have lower hardware complexity. However, stream ciphers are typically susceptible to serious security problems if used incorrectly: e.g. the same starting state shall never be used twice.

4.22.1.4 Authentication

In order to protect the data from unauthorized access, neither the Drive nor the Host's application has sufficient information necessary for decryption. An authentication sequence is required in order that each entity is satisfied that the other is authorized to share its key information. This sequence is sometimes referred to as a key exchange.

The following describes the minimum key exchange:

Each entity possesses certain data: Challenge values C_H and C_D and functions K_H, and K_D.

1. The Host sends its challenge value, C_H, to the Drive.
2. The Drive calculates the value of $K_D(C_H)$.
3. The Host requests the Drive’s challenge value, C_D.
4. The Host calculates the value of K_H (C_D).

If both entities possess the correct “secrets” (i.e. K_H, K_D and the range from which C_H and C_D are selected), then the key is $K_D(C_H) = K_H (C_D)$.

The Content Protection schemes that follow use similar methods that have additional steps and mechanisms to add a higher degree of key protection.

4.22.2 Content-Scrambling System (CSS)

4.22.2.1 General

The Content-Scrambling System (CSS) is an encryption system used to protect video content on DVD. CSS uses a proprietary 40-bit encryption stream cipher algorithm.

Title keys are used for scrambling and descrambling actual data on DVD discs called titles.

Disc keys are used for decrypting title keys on DVD discs.

Player keys are used for decrypting disc keys on DVD discs. Each DVD player manufacturer is allocated a set of keys.

4.22.2.2 Authentication

A key exchange sequence is typically processed between the Host and Drive in order to establish a secure channel over which protected content key information may be transferred. This is performed using the REPORT KEY and SEND KEY commands. Actual key information is transferred over the secure channel using the READ DISC (DVD) STRUCTURE command.

The sequence is shown in Table 78.

Table 78 — CSS Authentication Sequence

Host Action[1]	Drive Action	Potential Error
Issue REPORT KEY command requesting AGID	Return AGID	Drive: No AGID available.
Issue SEND KEY command with Challenge to Drive	Receive Challenge and calculate reponse.	None.
Issue REPORT KEY command to receive Drive response	Return response to Host's Challenge.	Host: Drive's response may be invalid. If invalid, Host should abort Authentication.
Issue REPORT KEY command to receive Drive's Challenge	Send Challenge to Host.	None.
Issue SEND KEY command to respond to Drive's Challenge	Receive Host's response.	Drive: Response may be invalid. If Host's response is invalid, report error to Host, abort Authentication, and release AGID.
[1]If the Authentication sequence is not in the correct step, the Drive terminates the command, and sets sense to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR.		

The Host issues the READ DISC STRUCTURE command (format=02h) to receive the Disc Key encrypted by the Bus Key. At this point, the Authentication Success Flag (ASF) is set to one, indicating that reading encrypted data is permitted.

In order to be certain that the Drive will permit reading encrypted content, the Host should issue the REPORT KEY command (format=000101, Key Class=0) in order to receive ASF.

Once authentication has successfully completed, the Host issues the REPORT KEY command (Format=000100b, Key class=0) in order to receive the Title Key encrypted by the Bus Key.

4.22.3 Content Protection for Recordable Media and Pre-Recorded Media (CPRM/CPPM)

4.22.3.1 General

Content Protection for Recordable Media and Pre-Recorded Media (CPRM / CPPM) is a mechanism for controlling the copying, moving and deletion of digital media on a host device, such as a personal computer, or other digital player. CPRM/CPPM is a form of Digital rights management.

The CPRM / CPPM Specification defines a renewable cryptographic method for protecting entertainment content when recorded on physical media. The types of physical media supported include, but are not limited to, recordable DVD media and Flash memory.

4.22.3.2 Authentication

The Authentication sequence is essentially the same as for CSS.

4.22.4 Advanced Access Content System (AACS)

4.22.4.1 General

The Advanced Access Content System (AACS) is used to protect audiovisual content on discs such as BD and DVD. AACS Content Protection is made up of two basic concepts. The first is to encrypt the content of the data such that it decryption is required to use the data. The capability of encrypting/decrypting the content is provided only under conditions that require products to be compliant with rules governing the playback, recording, copying, moving and output of the content. The second concept is to use an “Authentication” process to verify legitimacy of a Host and a Drive and to ensure the integrity of information transfer between the Drive and the Host. AACS uses a proprietary authentication process (AACS Authentication).

For read-only discs, the following parameters are transferred from the Drive to the Host by using the AACS Authentication:

- AACS uses a Volume Identifier (Volume ID) to encrypt content recorded on a set of read-only discs produced from the same master. Before decrypting such content the host reads the Volume ID using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 80h.
- AACS may use a Pre-recorded Media Serial Number to identify each read-only disc. It is read by the host using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 81h, when necessary.

For writable discs, the following parameters are transferred from the Drive to the host by using the AACS Authentication:

- AACS uses a Media Identifier (Media ID) to bind protected content to the disc on which it is recorded. Before encrypting or decrypting such content the host reads the Media ID using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 82h.
- AACS uses a Binding Nonce to securely delete the content that is moved to another storage medium. Another purpose of the Binding Nonce is to bind keys that are used to encrypt contents to the disc. The Binding Nonce is generated and reported by a Drive by using the REPORT KEY command with Key Class 02h and KEY Format 100000b. The Drive memorizes the generated Binding Nonce with an associated LBA Extent provided by the REPORT KEY command and Authentication Grant ID for AACS (AACS AGID) used for the REPORT KEY command. The stored Binding Nonce is recorded onto the disc together with user data by using the WRITE (10), WRITE (12) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command for a LBA that is included in the LBA Extent provided by the REPORT KEY command in such a way that the Binding Nonce is recorded in a number of logical blocks specified by the Block Count for Binding Nonce field of AACS Feature Descriptor, starting from the LBA provided by the REPORT KEY command. If the Drive relocates logical blocks, the Binding Nonce recorded or to be recorded to the original logical blocks shall be recorded to corresponding spare blocks. Invalidating the AACS AGID invalidates the stored Binding Nonce. When writing user data to logical blocks designated by a write command and when a Binding Nonce is not generated for these logical blocks, the Drive shall initialize the field for Binding Nonce. A Binding Nonce recorded in the logical blocks other than designated by a write command shall be preserved through the read-modify-write operation. The host may read the Binding Nonce recorded by using the REPORT KEY command with Key Class 02h and KEY Format 100001b.
- AACS defines further protection of AACS-protected content called AACS Bus Encryption, in which the content is further encrypted on-the-fly when it is transferred between the Drive and the Host. When the Bus Encryption is introduced, the Data Keys are transferred by using the AACS Authentication by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 84h and the Write Data Key is transferred by using the AACS Authentication by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 84h.
- AACS uses a Media Key Block of CPRM when recording content onto CPRM-capable DVD writable media, i.e., DVD-RAM, DVD-R and DVD-RW with AACS content protection, in order to ensure the current media is a correct CPRM-capable media. Because the Media Key Block of CPRM is not self-protected, the AACS Authentication is required for reading the first pack of Media Key Block of CPRM by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 86h. AACS also uses “Media Key Block (MKB) of AACS”. In contrast to CPRM, the MKB of AACS is self-protected and does not require protection by an authentication. The MKB is read by the host using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 83h, when it is recorded in the Lead-in Area.

Note 6. AACS does not use the Authentication Success Flag (ASF) or the Region Playback Control (RPC) that are used in the CSS.

4.22.4.2 Authentication

The AACS Authentication is a state sequenced process of 7 states. There is an initial state from which the process is required to begin. If any process step fails, the authentication process is terminated and shall be restarted from the initial state. The Drive may perform up to four authentication processes concurrently in order to serve up to four Hosts/Host Applications.

1. Initial State

   In the initial state an authentication process may begin. The Drive shall ensure that all the processes are in this state after Power-on Reset, Hard Reset and upon disc eject. A Host starts an authentication process by requesting an Authentication Grant ID (AGID). This is done by issuing the REPORT KEY command for the AACS Key Class requesting AGID. If an AGID is available, the Drive returns an AGID, enters authentication state 2, and terminates the command with GOOD status. If there is no available AGID, the REPORT KEY command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SYSTEM RESOURCE FAILURE.

2. AGID Granted State

   The Host sends a Host Certificate Challenge to the Drive by issuing the SEND KEY command with AACS Key Class and requesting Host Certificate Challenge. The Drive validates the Host Certificate Challenge. If it is valid, the Drive enters Host Verified State and the command is terminated with GOOD status. If the Host Certificate Challenge is deemed not valid, the Drive enters the Initial state and the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE - AUTHENTICATION FAILURE.

3. Host Verified State

   The Host issues the REPORT KEY command for the AACS Key Class requesting a Drive Certificate Challenge. The Drive returns the Drive Certificate Challenge and enters Drive Verified State. The Host validates the Drive Certificate Challenge. If it is valid, the Host also enters Drive Verified State. If the Host Certificate Challenge is deemed not valid, the Host should reset the authentication by issuing the REPORT KEY command with AACS Key Class requesting “Invalidate AGID”.

4. Drive Verified State

   The Host issues the REPORT KEY command for AACS Key Class requesting Drive Key. The Drive responds by returning the key component called Drive Key and then enters the Wait for Host State. The Host uses the Drive Key to calculate a Bus Key and enters Wait for Host State.

5. Wait for Host State

   The host issues the SEND KEY command for AACS Key Class requesting Host Key. The Drive accepts the key component called Host Key, uses it to calculate a Bus Key, and enters Bus Key Established State.

6. Bus Key Established State

   The Host performs one of the following operations with an associated command. The Drive returns the requested value in a protected manner with using the Bus Key. For the first four and the last three operations, the Drive shall invalidate the AGID for AACS being used for the process upon completing the command and shall return to the Initial state. For reading existing Binding Nonce, the Binding Nonce shall be always read from the disc. It is recommended to issue SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command before reading the Binding Nonce. For generating a value of the Binding Nonce, the Drive shall store the generated value of the Binding Nonce together with LBA Extent designated by the REPORT KEY command and with the AGID for AACS for later recording and enters the Binding Nonce generated State. The length of LBA Extent shall be no less than the value in the Block Count for Binding Nonce field of AACS Feature Descriptor. If the length of LBA Extent designated by the REPORT KEY command is less than this value, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT BLOCK COUNT FOR BINDING NONCE RECORDING and the Drive shall return to the “Initial” state. The Drive may be capable of concurrently storing 4 sets of generated Binding Nonce value and its associated LBA Extent and AGID for AACS. If the designated LBA Extent is overlapped with other LBA Extent being stored, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/CONFLICT IN BINDING NONCE RECORDING and the Drive shall return to the Initial State.

   - Reading the Volume ID using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code 80h.

- Reading the Pre-recorded Media Serial Number using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code 81h.
- Reading the Media ID using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code 82h.
- Reading existing value of the Binding Nonce by using the REPORT KEY command with Key Class 02h and KEY Format 100001b
- Generating a value of the Binding Nonce to be recorded onto the disc by using the REPORT KEY command with Key Class 02h and KEY Format 100000b
- Reading the Data Keys using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code 84h.
- Sending the Write Data Key using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code 84h.
- Reading the first pack of Media Key Block of CPRM using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code 86h.

7. Binding Nonce Generated State

   The generated Binding Nonce value is ready to be recorded onto the disc together with user data by using the WRITE (10), WRITE (12) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command until the Binding Nonce is invalidated by invalidating the AGID. The recording of the stored Binding Nonce shall be made for a LBA that is included in the LBA Extent provided by the REPORT KEY command in such a way that the Binding Nonce shall be recorded in a number of logical blocks specified by the Block Count for Binding Nonce field of AACS Feature Descriptor, starting from the LBA provided by the REPORT KEY command.

   When the AGID for AACS is invalidated, the Drive shall discard the generated Binding Nonce and shall return to the Initial state.

4.22.4.3 AACS Bus Encryption

AACS defines further content protection called Bus Encryption, in which the content is further encrypted on-the-fly when it is transferred between the Drive and the Host. For the Bus Encryption, encryption keys called “Read Data Key” and “Write Data Key” are used for reading a sector and writing a sector, respectively. The Read Data Key is calculated from drive-oriented information called “Drive Seed” and the Volume ID if the disc is a prerecorded disc or the Media ID if the disc is a writable disc. The Write Data Key is set to the same value with the Read Data Key by the Drive after Power-on Reset, Hard Reset and when the disc is inserted. The host could change the Write Data Key to any value, however, for most applications, it is strongly recommended to use the same value with the Read Data Key in order to avoid file cache inconsistency.

- During the AACS Authentication process, if the Drive is capable of Bus Encryption and if the Drive finds from the Host Certificate Challenge that the host is not capable of Bus Encryption, the SEND KEY command with Key Class 02h and KEY Format 000001b shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE - AUTHENTICATION FAILURE and the Drive shall return to the Initial State.
- When reading AACS-protected content with Bus Encryption enabled, by a Drive that is capable of Bus Encryption, the Read Data Key is calculated by the Drive using the Drive Seed and the Volume ID if the disc is a pre-recorded disc or the Media ID if the disc is a writable disc and is used to encrypt the AACS-protected content whenever it is read by using READ (10) or READ (12) command. The AACS-protected content from specific sectors to which a flag is set in the sector header that denotes the sector is subject to the Bus Encryption are encrypted. The host needs the Read Data Key to decrypt the Bus Encryption to get the original AACS-protected content. The Read Data Key can be read by the host as encrypted by the Bus Key by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 84h after a successful AACS Authentication.
- When writing AACS-protected content with Bus Encryption enabled, to an AACS-capable disc by a Drive that is capable of Bus Encryption, if the host wants to use the default Write Data Key (the same as the Read Data Key), the Write Data Key can be read by the host as encrypted by the Bus Key by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 84h after a successful AACS Authentication. If the host wants to set the Write Data Key to a value different from the Read Data Key, the Write Data Key is sent from the host to the Drive as encrypted by the Bus Key by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 84h after a successful AACS Authentication. For most applications, it is strongly recommended to use the same value with the Read Data Key as the Write Data Key in order to avoid file cache inconsistency. Note that not all the AACS compliant software application are authorized to send the Write Data Key to the Drive. If the host is not authorized to send the Write Data Key but does send it, the

SEND DISC STRUCTURE command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT PERMISSION. The host also needs to specify LBA Extents by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 85h, to which the AACS-protected content is recorded by using the WRITE (10), WRITE (12) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command, and the recording is associated with a flag in the sector header that denotes the sector is subject to the Bus Encryption when it is read. The AACS-protected content to be recorded to the LBA Extents is encrypted by the host by using the Write Data Key and that Bus Encryption need to be decrypted by the Drive by using the Write Data Key before the content is recorded. The LBA Extents that the Drive currently has can be read by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 85h. The LBA Extents that the Drive currently has shall be discarded by another issuance of SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 85h, Hard Reset or medium eject.

4.22.5 SecurDisc content protection

4.22.5.1 General

SecurDisc describes a system that allows to protect data from copying and accessing on recordable optical media by encrypting the user data with a key, the Disc Unique ID (DUID) which is accessible by the drive only and unique to each disc. The DUID bind the recorded encrypted user data to the physical media. Encrypting and decrypting is done by the host using the DUID which is retrieved from the drive. The host can only read the DUID from the drive after a successful authentication has been performed. In order to protect the privacy of the user data optionally the user data can be encrypted and decrypted by the host using a user entered password. Recording can be performed on standard optical media without any pre-recorded area and can be applied for general user data, not for audio visual content only.

4.22.5.2 System description

Writing and reading SecurDisc protected user data is performed using the methods described in the appropriated model sections of each optical media type. When writing SecurDisc encrypted user data each sector of the user data is encrypted by the host with a key created from the DUID, the logical sector number and optionally with a hash value created from a user entered password using AES-128 encryption. When reading SecurDisc encrypted user data each sector has to be decrypted with a key created from the DUID, the logical sector number and optionally with the hash value from the user requested password accordingly.

In order to verify the correctness of the password, an Encrypted Pass phrase Verification Checksum (EPVC) is written in the user area of the disc.

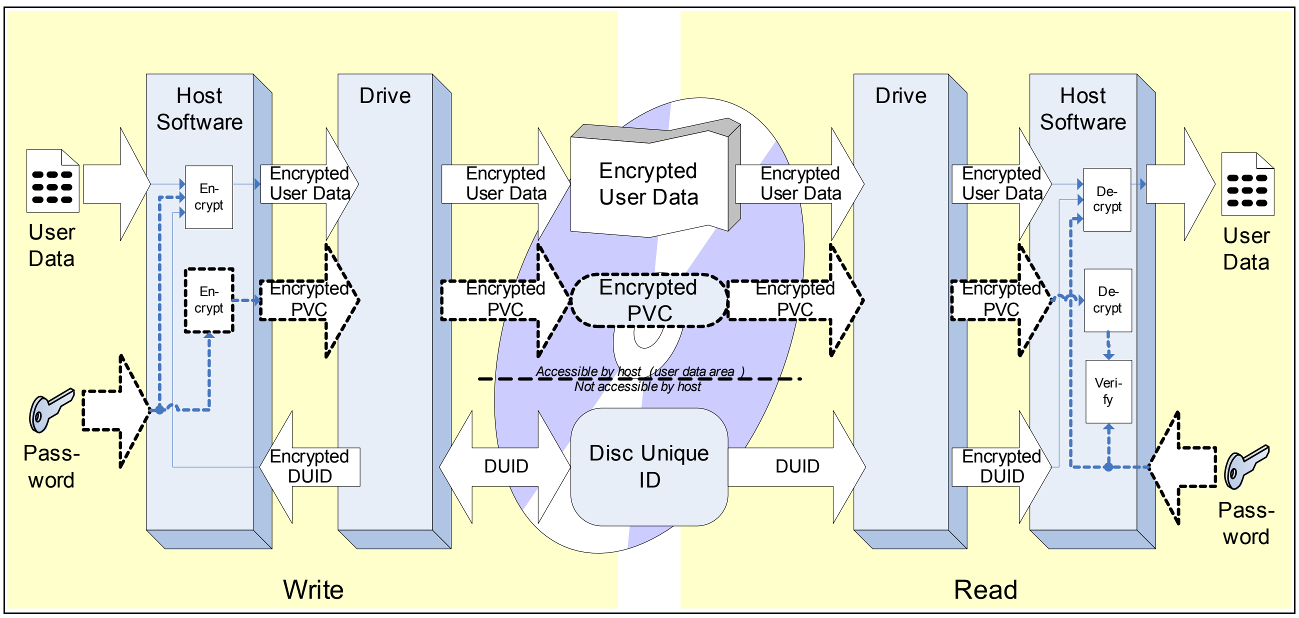


Figure 105 – SecurDisc system overview

The DUID is located outside the user data area of the disc and cannot be accessed by the host directly, only after a successful authentication has been performed (see 4.22.5.3 SecurDisc Authentication process). The exact location of the DUID is known to SecurDisc licensees only and depends on the used media type.

Drive and host each have a unique ID identifying a certain version and model of the drive and a certain version of the application. This unique ID can be used to revoke the drive by the application or the application by the drive.

After a disc containing SecurDisc protected content is loaded, the SecurDisc feature is current and the authentication has passed, the host can read the encrypted DUID from the loaded disc using the REPORT KEY command with Key Class 21h and KEY Format 000010b.

In case the loaded disc does not contain a DUID the DUID is created by the drive using a 128 bit random number when the host requests the DUID and written to the media when writing user data starts.

Once the Lead-In of a write once disc has been written without writing a DUID it is not possible to create and write a DUID when appending further sessions.

4.22.5.3 SecurDisc Authentication process

After the host has read the SecurDisc Feature Descriptor using the GET CONFIGURATION command with Feature Code 0113h, the host must make sure that it is working with a licensed SecurDisc drive. Reading the SecurDisc Feature Descriptor is mandatory for drive host authentication to work. During drive host authentication, in addition to make sure that both the host application and the drive are licensed components, a bus key (KB) is established. This bus key is used later to exchange cryptographic data (DUID) for copy protection. The bus key is not cleared automatically until the host invalidates the AGID for SecurDisc. Drive host authentication is mandatory before writing and reading any SecurDisc content.

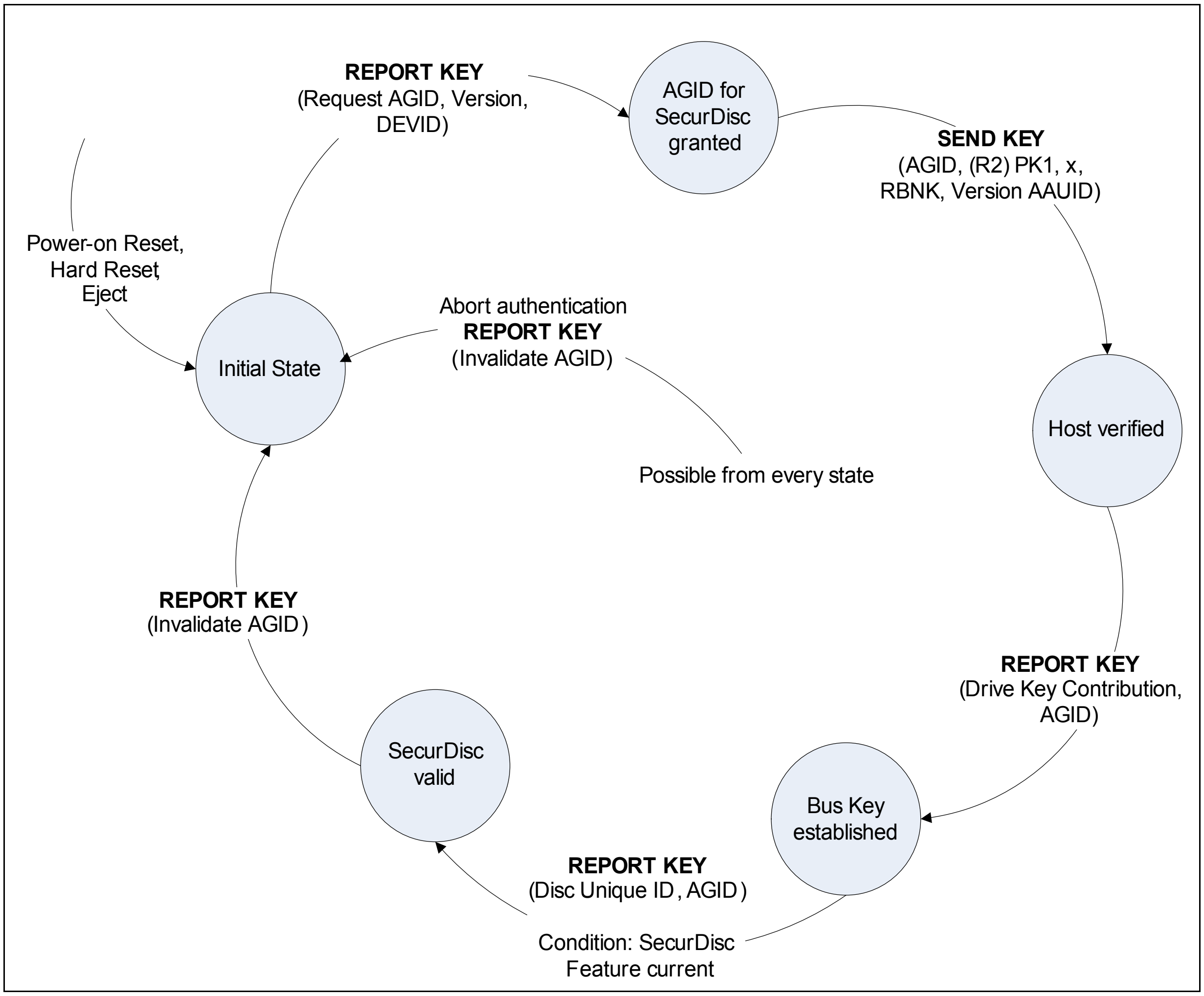


Figure 106 – Drive Host Authentication

This is a step by step explanation of the drive-host authentication process:

1. During the authentication, both the drive and the host create a 128 bit random number (drive: R1, host: R2).
2. The host should request a 2 bit AGID from the drive. It is from here on passed to every REPORT KEY and SEND KEY command to allow the drive to distinguish up to 4 parallel authentication sequences. In addition to AGID and version number, the drive returns its Device Unique ID (DEVID). If the host chooses to abort authentication it must do so by issuing a REPORT KEY Invalidate AGID command.
3. The host should create a random number (R2) encrypt it and send it along with the protocol version, the bit position index value <x>, the Revocation Block Node Key (RBNK) and the own Application Authentication Unique ID (AAUID) to the drive where the drive verifies the legitimacy of the host.

4. The host should issue a REPORT KEY command, requesting Drive Key Contribution which includes the Application Authentication Revocation Block's Node key (AARBNK) associated with bit position <x> which is also returned. <x> here relates to a different revocation block than <x> in 3.).
5. The drive calculates the bus key KB.
6. From the data the host received from the drive with step 4 it calculates the bus key KB.
7. If the media allows copy protection to be used (SecurDisc Feature is current), the host may issue a REPORT KEY Disc Unique ID command to receive the Disc Unique ID, encrypted with the bus key KB. It will decrypt and store the unique ID for use with encryption/decryption of file fragments. The REPORT KEY Disc Unique ID may only be issued as part of the drive host authentication sequence if the Current bit of the SecurDisc Feature descriptor is set to one. Even if the Current bit is set to one, this REPORT KEY command may be omitted, in which case the drive will not generate or read a DUID.
8. The host must release the AGID acquired in step 2 by issuing a REPORT KEY INVALIDATE AGID as the last step of the authentication sequence. This can be performed at any state of the authentication process.

4.22.6 TCG Optical Security System Class (OSSC)

4.22.6.1 Trusted Computing Group and the OSSC

The Trusted Computing Group (TCG) is an industry organization formed to develop, define, and promote open standards for hardware-enabled trusted computing and security technologies.

The TCG Storage Working Group (SWG) builds upon existing TCG technologies and philosophy to focus on standards for security services on dedicated storage systems. The Optical Security Sub-system Class specification [OSSC] has been developed within the TCG SWG.

4.22.6.2 OSSC Overview

The Optical Security Subsystem Class [OSSC] is a framework for implementing Full Disk Encryption (FDE) for optical drives and discs. The primary capabilities specified by [OSSC] are:

- Authentication - Verification of identity
- Authorization - Verification of permissions for an authenticated entity
- Privacy/Confidentiality - Making secret that which is intended to be secret, and maintaining secret that which is intended to be secret

Security is defined for use with two groups of media:

- Write-once and rewritable disc types with profiles that support the track/session model: CD-R/RW, DVD-R, DVD-RW, DVD+R and BD-R.
- Rewritable disc types with profiles that support a random writable model: DVD-RAM, DVD+RW, and BD-RE.

According to [OSSC], users secure data with one or more pass-codes. A disc that is recorded according to [OSSC] may be shipped by non-secure carrier or even become lost, and the user may be confident that the data will not be exposed to unauthorized parties.

When a blank disc is loaded, the Host is responsible for determining the usage. The Host may choose to initialize the disc as an OSSC disc, or the Host may choose to use the disc in a different way. It is permitted to configure the Drive to allow only secure recording according to [OSSC].

4.22.6.2.1 Users

A user is an entity that may be authenticated to access the OSSC disc. The OSSC Drive maintains a record of each user on the disc.

There are 2 user types:

1. Initializer

   An Initializer user has change access over the user list. Consequently, the Initializer may enroll Common users. The Initializer may modify or delete any user record. The Initializer is not permitted to provide access to the Secure Volume.
2. Common

   A Common user is not permitted to modify any other user's record. A Common user may provide LBA access only to the secured user data area.

4.22.6.2.2 OSSC Tables

OSSC format and security are managed by a set of tables and functions that operate on those tables. The set of OSSC tables that represent the newest tables is the OSSC Table Set: the Optical Security Provider Basis (OSPB) shown in Table 79.

Table 79 — OSSC Table Set (OSPB)

Table	Description
Anchor	Anchor enables interchange and indexes all tables that are on-disc.
Disc	Disc is a descriptor that includes properties that apply to the entire disc.
User	Each row inUser represents a single user. Each user is associated with an identifier (Name), a set of Pass-codes, and entity authentication codes. A row in User is known as a user record.
SessionMap	The TPer uses this table to manage table updates on disc formats that require a track/session recording methodology.

4.22.6.2.3 OSSC Methods

OSSC Security operations permit the Host to use the OSSC tables for the intended security purposes. The Host requests specific OSSC Security operations by using Security Protocol = 06h in both the SECURITY PROTOCOL IN and SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT commands.

The SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command is used to send a method execution request block. As a result of the method execution, the Drive generates a response block. The SECURITY PROTOCOL IN command is used to retrieve the response block.

4.22.6.3 OSSC Disc Formats - General

4.22.6.3.1 Physical Volume

According to the profile for the medium, there is a PSN = D that is associated with LBA = 0. The Physical Volume is the sequence of sectors that begins at D and proceeds until the maximum capacity of the user data area. See Figure 115.

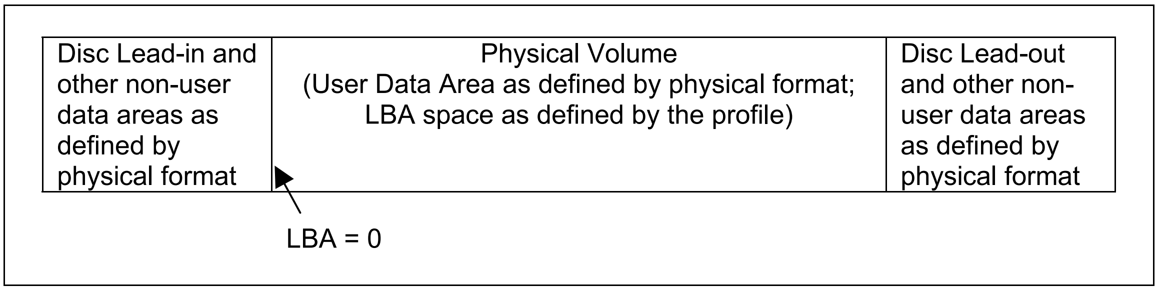


Figure 107 — Physical Volume

4.22.6.3.2 VolumeZero

In the OSSC Format, VolumeZero (Figure 108) begins at PSN = D and has a maximum length of 4 096 sectors (8 MB). VolumeZero is made available to the Host as a small, clear-text volume. One use for VolumeZero is to contain a read-only file system that may aid the Host in dealing with backward compatibility issues.

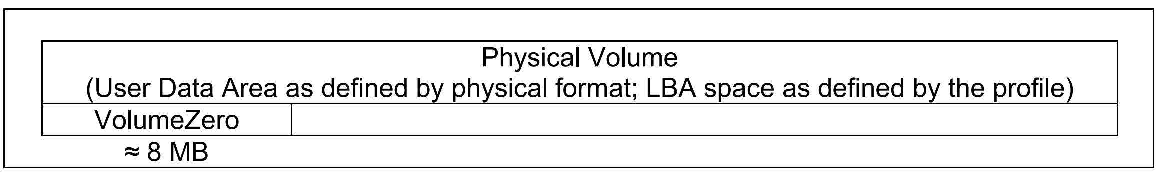


Figure 108 — VolumeZero

4.22.6.3.3 Protected Storage Area (PSA)

The [OSSC] requires a Protected Storage Area (PSA) – storage that is persistent, not included in the LBA space of the encrypted area, and not affected by Host partitioning. The PSA is defined in the disc's user data area in order to provide common security mechanisms over a wide range of optical media. The PSA contains the tables: Anchor, Disc, User, and SessionMap.

A PSA follows VolumeZero, however, the exact starting location and size are determined by the physical format of the media. When the media profile permits only sequential recording, additional areas may be taken for updating the PSA content.

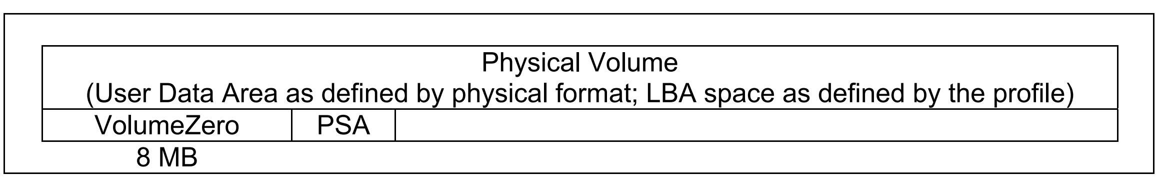


Figure 109 — General Location of the PSA

4.22.6.3.4 Secure Volume

The Secure Volume follows the PSA, however, the exact starting location and size are determined by the physical format of the media. When used according to the [OSSC], all user data sectors in the Secure Volume are encrypted.

Physical Volume (User Data Area as defined by physical format; LBA space as defined by the profile)		
VolumeZero	PSA	Secure Volume
8 MB		

Figure 110 — General Location of the Secure Volume

4.22.6.3.5 Supported Disc Types

Given a disc type with a supported OSSC format:

1. A common profile is selected for that disc type.
2. A small, contiguous area beginning with LBA 0 is allocated for a small, fixed length clear-text volume: VolumeZero. VolumeZero is followed by the initial PSA. The amount of the user data zone allocated for the PSA includes the disc type specific space allocated for the PSA plus any overheads associated with the method selected for the allocation.
3. The remainder of the disc is specified as the Secure Volume and is represented to the Host as a disc capable of the selected profile. LBA 0 is realigned to the first usable user data sector following the PSA allocation.

Two groups of OSSC formats are defined for:

1. Disc types and profiles that support a random writable model:

DVD-RAM	DVD-RAM Profile (0012h),
DVD+RW	DVD+RW Profile (001Ah),
BD-RE	BD-RE Profile (0043h).

2. Disc types and profiles that support a track/session model:

CD-R/RW	CD-R Profile (0009h) and CD-RW Profile (000Ah)
DVD-R	DVD-R Sequential Recording Profile (0011h),
DVD-RW	DVD-RW Sequential Recording Profile (0014h),
DVD+R	DVD+R Profile (001Bh),
DVD+R DL	DVD+R DL Profile (002Bh),
BD-R	BD-R Sequential Recording Profile (0041h).

4.22.6.4 OSSC Formats for the random writable model

4.22.6.4.1 Overview

This format may be applied to:

- DVD-RAM DVD-RAM Profile (0012h),
- DVD+RW DVD+RW Profile (001Ah),
- BD-RE BD-RE Profile (0043h).

Prior to being converted to the OSSC Format, the media shall be formatted according to the methods used for the specific media and applicable profile.

The OSSC Disc Format divides the physical volume into 3 distinct areas: VolumeZero, the PSA, and the Secure Volume. See Figure 119.

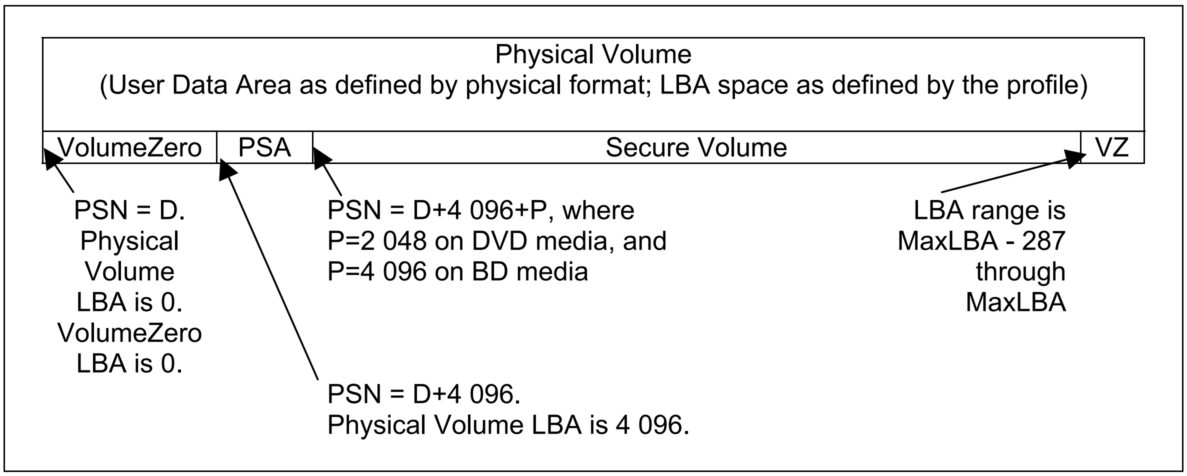


Figure 111 — OSSC Disc Format on the random writable model

4.22.6.4.2 VolumeZero

When the specified profile has the random writable model, VolumeZero has 2 components:

- The first is the 4 096 sector region beginning at Physical Volume LBA = 0 and ending at Physical Volume LBA = 4 095.
- The second is the region of 288 sectors beginning at Physical Volume LBA = Physical Volume Maximum LBA - 287 and ending at Physical Volume Maximum LBA.

This allocation in two disjoint areas permits the UDF file system to record mandatory structures at LBA = 256, LBA = MaxLBA, and LBA = MaxLBA - 256.

4.22.6.4.3 PSA Allocation

When the OSSC Format is applied to the random writable model:

- The PSA begins at the Physical Volume LBA = 4 096.
- The PSA size is set to 128 writable units. The writable unit size on DVD media is 16 sectors, and the writable unit size on BD media is 32 sectors.

4.22.6.4.4 The Secure Volume

The start address (LBA = 0) of the Secure Volume is Physical Volume LBA = 4 096+P, where P is the length of the PSA in sectors. The maximum address of the Secure Volume is Physical Volume Maximum LBA - (4 096 + P + 288).

4.22.6.4.5 Initializing a Disc to the OSSC Format

The OSSC Format is derived from the format established by the overlying profile. The entire disc shall be formatted for use according to that profile. If Hardware Defect Management is available, the disc should be formatted with the recommended defect management capability.

Initialization as an OSSC disc is done as follows:

1. The Host arranges the enrollment of the Initializer user followed by the enrollment of one or more common users.
2. Any new action that is anything other than enrollment or erasure of a common user represents a write event. The OSSC should construct and record the Anchor table, Disc table, User table, and an empty SessionMap table (the OSPB) in the first writable unit of the PSA.
3. The second through last writable units shall be written with zero filled sectors. This is done to ensure that only the most recently written Anchor table is the only one seen.

4.22.6.4.6 Mounting a Disc with the OSSC Format

A disc is loaded, spun up, and initialized according to the media physical format and established profile definitions. If the Drive is OSSC capable and the disc is not blank, the Drive shall also read the first writable unit starting at the Physical Volume that should correspond to the start of the PSA and test for an OSSC signature. If the OSSC signature is found, the newest version of the OSPB is located and the current bit in the OSSC Feature is set to one.

It is now the Host's responsibility to act upon the configuration information. If the Host is OSSC capable and discovers that the OSSC Feature is current, then:

1. The user is notified that authentication is necessary.
2. If successful authentication is performed, the Host may request that the Secure Volume be mounted.
3. The OSSC Drive responds to the mount request by sending a Media Removal Event (dismount Physical Volume) then Send a New Media Event.
4. Once connected the Host may read or write the Secure Volume. If the Host attempts to connect any other user, a Disconnect is automatically performed. If the Host chooses to eject the media, a Disconnect is automatically performed.

4.22.6.4.7 Updating the OSSC Tables

The Initializer user is the only user that is permitted to change any OSSC tables stored in the PSA. The Initializer may delete a common user’s record or create new user records by enrolling new users.

Any new action that is anything other than enrollment or erasure of a common user represents a write event. The OSSC should update the User table, update the Anchor table as necessary, and finally record the new OSPB.

Updating the OSPB in the PSA should have a generally sequential character in order to minimize the effects of rewrite wear-out. The first writable unit of the PSA shall be recorded with the first writable unit of the OSPB when the disc is converted to OSSC. This writable unit shall not be rewritten as part of an update. This is done for the purpose of consistent OSSC signature identification.

The process is illustrated in Figure 112.

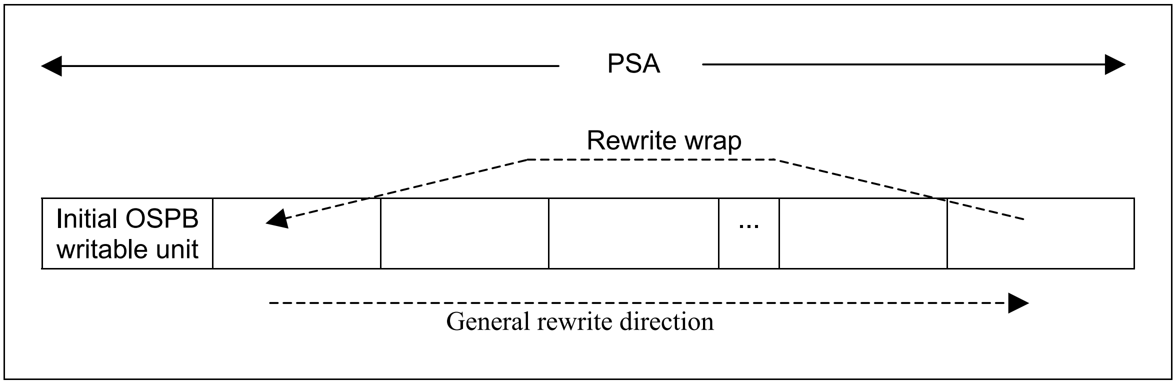


Figure 112 — OSPB Updates using Rewrite

4.22.6.5 OSSC Formats for the track/session model

4.22.6.5.1 Overview

This format may be applied to:

- CD-R CD-R Profile (0009h)
- CD-RW CD-RW Profile (000Ah)
- DVD-R DVD-R Sequential Recording Profile (0011h),
- DVD-RW SL DVD-RW Sequential Recording Profile (0014h),
- DVD+R DVD+R Profile (001Bh),
- DVD+R DL DVD+R DL Profile (002Bh),
- BD-R BD-R Sequential Recording Profile (0041h).

Only blank write-once media, blank rewritable media, or fully blanked rewritable media may utilize the OSSC format.

Due to the incremental recording nature of profiles that support the track/session model, the PSA and Secure Volume layout on the disc may vary with a given recorded state.

4.22.6.5.2 VolumeZero

Logical Track 1 is reserved for VolumeZero with a maximum length of 4 096 sectors. Once Logical Track 1 is closed, session 1 is also closed.

4.22.6.5.3 PSA Allocation

The initial PSA is Logical Track 2 with a maximum length of 1 024 sectors. Once the initial OSPB has been written, Logical Track 2 is closed and session 2 is closed. At this point, session 3 (open and empty) contains the Secure Volume. See Figure 113.

When the OSSC Format is applied to the track/session model:

- The initial PSA begins at the start of Logical Track 2 according to the Physical Volume.
- The PSA size is set to a maximum of 64 writable units. The writable unit size on DVD media is 16 sectors, and the writable unit size on BD media is 32 sectors.

Once the initial version of the OSPB has been recorded, Logical Track 2 is closed and session 2 is closed.

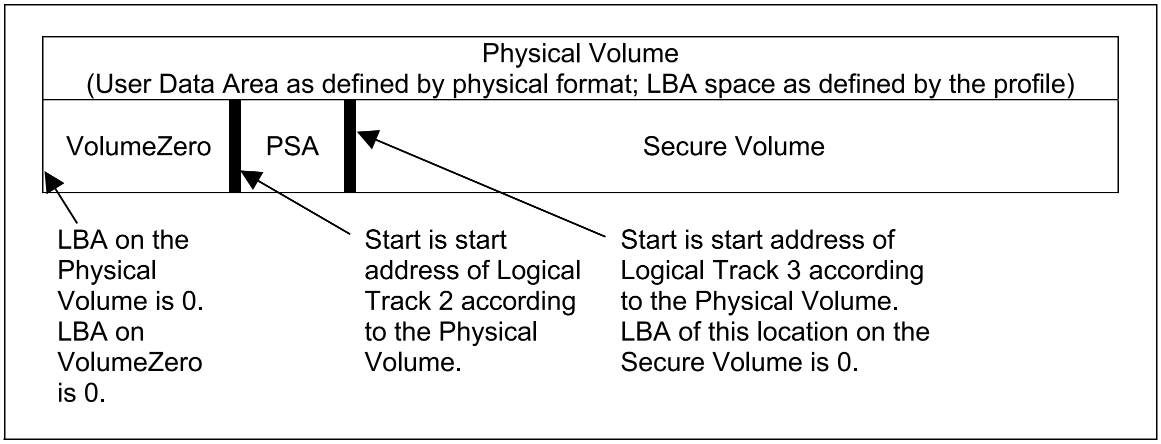


Figure 113 — OSSC Disc Format - initial state

The OSPB may be updated by appending a PSA update session to the last closed session in the Secure Volume. Each PSA update session is a single session containing a single Logical Track consisting of a maximum of 64 writable units.

4.22.6.5.4 Secure Volume

The Secure Volume begins at the start of Logical Track 3 according to the profile for the physical volume. The length of the Secure Volume is presumed to be the remainder of the Physical Volume.

4.22.6.5.5 Initializing a Disc to the OSSC Format

The OSSC Format is derived from the format established by the overlying profile. If formatting is required, the disc shall be formatted for use according to the associated profile. If Hardware Defect Management is available, the disc should be formatted with the recommended defect management capability.

The disc shall be ready for use: either blank or formatted when formatting is required.

Initialization as an OSSC disc is done as follows:

1. The Host arranges the enrollment of the Initializer user followed by the enrollment of one or more common users.
2. Any new action that is anything other than enrollment or erasure of a common user represents a write event. The OSSC should construct and record the Anchor table, Disc table, User table, and an empty SessionMap table (the OSPB) in the first writable unit of the PSA.
3. The Logical Track containing the PSA is closed and the Session is closed.

Since the action ends with closing the session that contains the OSPB, changes to that OSPB are no longer permitted. OSPB updating may occur only within a new PSA session.

4.22.6.5.6 Mounting a Disc with the OSSC Format

A disc is loaded, spun up, and initialized according to the media physical format and established profile definitions.

If the Drive is OSSC capable and the disc is not blank, the drive shall also read the first writable unit of Logical Track 2 (relative to the Physical Volume) and test for an OSSC signature. If the OSSC signature is found, the current bit in the OSSC Feature is set to one.

It is now the Host's responsibility to act upon the configuration information. If the Host is OSSC capable and discovers that the OSSC Feature is current, then the Host may initiate further action.

If the Host is OSSC capable and discovers that the OSSC Feature is current, then:

1. The user is notified that authentication is necessary.
2. If successful authentication is performed, the Host may request that the Secure Volume be mounted.
3. The OSSC Drive responds to the mount request by sending a Media Removal Event (dismount Physical Volume) then Send a New Media Event.
4. Once a user has been authenticated, the Host may read or write the Secure Volume. If the Host attempts to authenticate any other user, the Secure Volume is logically ejected.

4.22.6.5.7 Using a Mounted Secure Volume

When the Secure Volume is mounted, commands execute according to the overlying profile of the physical media with the restriction that the LBA space of the media is according to the OSSC format, session and Logical Track numbers presented to the Host are adjusted downward to exclude the initial PSA and the PSA updates.

4.22.6.5.8 PSA Updates

When the profile used for the OSSC disc follows the track/session model, updating the PSA is optional behavior for the Drive.

After some number of recordings, the Secure Volume may have multiple sessions (Figure 114).

<table>
<tr><td colspan="6">Physical Volume
(User Data Area as defined by physical format; LBA space as defined by the profile)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">VolumeZero Session</td><td rowspan="2">PSA Session</td><td colspan="4">Secure Volume</td></tr>
<tr><td>Closed Session</td><td>...</td><td>Closed Session</td><td>Open Session</td></tr>
</table>

Figure 114 — OSSC Disc Format - after recording multiple Secure Volume sessions

A PSA update is a session that may be appended to the existing session string. A PSA update is a session that contains a single Logical Track with a length of 64 writable units.

The only reason that the OSPB might change is due to a change in the user table – either by adding new users of deleting existing users.

If the disc is finalized, then the response to an attempt to change the OSPB is CHECK CONDITION with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM - INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT. If the disc is not finalized and last session is not empty, then the response to an attempt to change the OSPB is CHECK CONDITION with sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to BLANK CHECK/NO ADDITIONAL SENSE INFORMATION.

Once the Host has made changes to the OSPB and indicated that changes are complete, the Drive:

1. Reserves a Logical Track for the PSA,
2. Records the updated OSPB,
3. Closes the Logical Track, and
4. Closes the session.

4.22.6.5.9 Using the SessionMap Table

The OSPB contains a SessionMap table. SessionMap is a list of Session numbers and Logical Tracks numbers that do not belong to the Secure Volume. Those numbers are given relative to the Physical Volume.

An example of Logical Track and session mapping is shown in Table 80.

Table 80 — Example of Logical Track and Session Mapping

Area Usage	Session relative to Physical Volume	Logical Track relative to Physical Volume	Session relative to Secure Volume	Logical Track relative to Secure Volume	SessionMap entry
VolumeZero	1	1	N/A	N/A	1,1
PSA	2	2	N/A	N/A	2,2
User Data	3	3	1	1	-
User Data	4	4	1	2	-
PSA	5	5	N/A	N/A	5,5
User Data	6	6	2	3	-
User Data	6	7	2	4	-
User Data	6	8	2	5	-
User Data	7	9	3	6	-
User Data	7	10	3	7	-
PSA	8	11	N/A	N/A	8,11
Empty	9	12	4	8	-

Since VolumeZero is never explicitly mounted, the Logical Track/Session numbering for VolumeZero are coincident with the Physical Volume and reported accordingly.

The example shows Logical Track/Session numbering responses for the Physical Volume and the Secure Volume. Certain behavior is shown:

- Logical Tracks and Sessions are defined according to the overlying profile of the Physical Volume. The numbering is reported differently only when the Secure Volume is mounted.
- When the Secure Volume is mounted, all Logical Tracks and Sessions that do not contain user data are viewed as non-existent and their numbers are not reported.
- The SessionMap contains 4 entries.

4.22.6.6 Command Behavior

When an OSSC format disc is mounted, but no user has connected to the Secure Volume, the disc is viewed as the physical volume. Commands execute according to their definitions as specified by the profile.

Once a user has connected to the Secure Volume, commands execute according to their definitions as specified by the profile, but location references are likely to be different.

Table 81 shows how commands change behavior due to an LBA, Logical Track number or session number change.

Table 81 — Command Execution Change due to Addressing Reference Change

<table>
<tr><th>Command</th><th>Addressing Reference Change</th></tr>
<tr><td>BLANK</td><td>When a user is connected to the Secure Volume, the blanking operation is not performed and no error is reported.</td></tr>
<tr><td>FORMAT UNIT</td><td>When a user is connected to the Secure Volume, the formatting operation is not performed and no error is reported.
When no user is connected and a disc that has a profile that is random writable and is in the OSSC format, the format shall overwrite the first writable unit in the PSA with zeros.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SEEK (10)</td><td rowspan="6">The OSSC format for the random writable model specifies a sector offset. i.e. D_1 is the PSN that maps to LBA = 0 on the Secure Volume. If L is an LBA reference into the Secure Volume, the Drive shall map L to $L+D_1$.
The OSSC format for the track/session model offsets the LBA space to the start of the first session that is not in the SessionMap. D_2 is the PSN of the first sector of the first session not in the SessionMap. If L is an LBA reference into the Secure Volume, the Drive shall map L to $L+D_2$.
If writing to VolumeZero and the 8MB maximum capacity is exceeded, the data is taken and no error is reported.</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ (10)</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ (12)</td></tr>
<tr><td>WRITE (10)</td></tr>
<tr><td>WRITE (12)</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ CAPACITY</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ TOC/PMA/ATIP</td><td rowspan="7">The OSSC format for the random writable model shall behave according to the overlying profile with appropriate changes associated with the capacity difference.
In the case of the track/session model, PSA sessions and PSA Logical Tracks are mapped out of existence relative to the Host.</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ TRACK INFORMATION</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ DISC INFORMATION</td></tr>
<tr><td>GET PERFORMANCE</td></tr>
<tr><td>SET STREAMING</td></tr>
<tr><td>READ FORMAT CAPACITIES</td></tr>
<tr><td>RESERVE TRACK</td></tr>
</table>

4.23 Write Protect

4.23.1 Types of Write Protect

There are six write protection types:

a) Cartridge Write Protect
   The user may set or release a Write Protection Switch or tab to disable data modification on the media.
b) Media Specific Write Inhibit

Some Drives may disable writing to certain types of DVD-RAM media when the disc is not in a cartridge.

c) Software Write Protect until Power-down

A Host may request write inhibit by the Drive. This write protection is typically lost after a reset or power toggle.

d) Persistent Write Protect

The Drive may establish write inhibit by writing into a non-user area of the disc.

e) Write Inhibit DCB

   The Host may select from several write protect options. Although similar to PWP, there are more write protect options.

f) DWP PAC

   A specific way to implement PWP on BD writable discs.

g) Host Managed Protection

This is typically File System level protection. Host Managed Protection is beyond the scope of this document.

The write protect types available from the Drive are dependent upon the media type installed. The correlation is shown in Table 82.

Table 82 — Examples of Write Protection Associated with Media Types

Media	Software Write Protect until Power-down (SWPP)	Cartridge Write Protect (CWP)	Media Specific Write Inhibit (MSWI)	Persistent Write Protect (PWP[1])	Write Inhibit DCB (WDCB)	DWP PAC[2]
CD-RW	√					
DVD-RAM	√	√	√	√		
DVD-RW	√			√		
DVD+RW	√			√	√	
BD-R	√			√		√
BD-RE	√			√		√
[1]Based upon media type and format specifications, certain writing may be permitted when PWP is set to true. [2]Functions beyond PWP are available. See 4.18.4.						

4.23.2 SWPP

If the Drive supports Software Write Protect, the Write Protect Feature (0004h) shall be present and the SSWPP bit shall be set to one, however the feature need not be current.

If the SWPP bit is supported in the Timeout and Protect Page, then SWPP status may be read using the MODE SENSE (10) command and set or cleared by using the MODE SELECT (10) command.

The status of SWPP may also be read by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with format field = C0h.

4.23.3 CWP

If the Drive supports Cartridge Write Protect, the Write Protect Feature (0004h) need not be present.

The Write-Inhibit hole is the mechanical switch/tab on a cartridge. When this hole is closed, the Drive may write/modify information according to the other write protection conditions. When this hole on a cartridge is open, the Drive shall not write/modify/initialize any information on the disc (including user data, defect management information and Write-inhibit flag).

The Host may read the Write-inhibit hole condition as the CWP bit value using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format code C0h for all Media Type codes or Format code 09h for the DVD Media Type code.

4.23.4 MSWI

A Drive with DVD-RAM write capability, may elect to disallow writing when certain DVD-RAM media types are mounted without a cartridge. This is the Media Specific Write Inhibit case.

If the Drive supports Media Specific Write Inhibit, the Write Protect Feature (0004h) need not be present.

The Host may read the MSWI status by using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format code C0h for all Media Type codes or Format code 09h for the DVD Media Type code.

4.23.5 PWP

If the Drive supports Persistent Write Protect, the Write Protect Feature (0004h) shall be present. The Write Protect Feature shall be current when a media capable of accepting PWP is mounted and ready.

When the feature is present and current, the READ DISC STRUCTURE command, with format code = C0h, is used to determine the status of the write protection.

When the feature is present and current, the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command, with format code = C0h, is used to change the status of the write protection except when PWP is implemented by the DWP PAC mechanism or the WDCB mechanism.

4.23.6 WDCB

In the case of DVD+RW, write inhibit is implemented with a Write Inhibit DCB (WDCB). The WDCB provides for exactly one of 4 different write inhibits: no write inhibit, write inhibit the entire disc, write inhibit the data zone only, or write inhibit only the LBA space of defect managed area (disallows commands that direct the Drive to perform writing, but allows relocation during reading). The Host may choose to protect write access to the WDCB by use of a password.

The WDCB may be read using the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with format code = 30h. The WDCB may be written only by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with format code = 30h. An existing WDCB may be deleted only by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with format code = 30h. For details, see 6.22.3.2.25 and 6.36.3.2.10.

When the entire media is write protected by a WDCB, writing the WDCB via the SEND DISC STRUCTURE is the only writing permitted.

The WDCB may be password protected. If a WDCB is password protected, WDCB write protect status (or the password) may be changed only when the Host presents the correct password. If every byte of the password is ever set to FFh, the media shall become permanently write protected. This means that even formatting is not permitted.

4.23.7 DWP PAC

See 4.18.4.

4.23.8 Event Reporting

When Write Protection status of mounted medium and/or Drive is changed (e.g. all of Write protections are cleared or one of them is set to active), then any Feature that allows erasing/ formatting/ writing on the media is changed. In such a case an Operational Change Event shall be generated.

4.23.9 Error reporting

When a media is Write Protected, the Drive shall terminate with CHECK CONDITION status, any command that is capable of erasing/formatting/writing the media. The SENSE KEY shall be set to WRITE PROTECT, ASC shall be set to WRITE PROTECTED, and the ASCQ shall be set according to Table 83.

Table 83 — Write Protect ASCQ Reporting

Write Protect Status According to READ DISC STRUCTURE, format C0h				**ASCQ**
SWPP	CWP	MSWI	PWP	
1	-	-	-	DRIVE SOFTWARE WRITE PROTECTED
0	1	-	-	HARDWARE WRITE PROTECTED
0	0	1	-	NO ADDITIONAL SENSE CODE QUALIFIER
0	0	0	1	PERSISTENT WRITE PROTECTED

If a media is protected by a WDCB and the sector address is in a protected range, the ASCQ shall be set to NO ADDITIONAL SENSE CODE QUALIFIER. If the WDCB password contains FFh in each byte, the ASCQ shall be set to PERMANENT WRITE PROTECTED.

If the user data zone is protected by a DWP PAC or the user data zone is protected by the unknown PAC rules of some unknown PAC, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to DATAPROTECT/WRITE PROTECTED/PERSISTENT WRITE PROTECTED.

If the DWP PAC password contains FFh in each byte, the ASCQ shall be set to PERMANENT WRITE PROTECTED.

4.24 Changer Model

4.24.1 General

The changer is a Feature of a MM device. A Drive with an embedded changer supports the MECHANISM STATUS command (6.10) and LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM command (6.9).

A changer device provides a storage area for more than one MM Disc. This storage area contains multiple areas called slots. Each slot contains exactly one disc. Once a disc has been placed into a given slot, it becomes locked in that position. This standard provides no capability to move a disc from one slot to another. Thus when a Disc has been moved from a given slot into the playing position, it may only be moved back into the slot that it came from. This shall be followed even if power is lost while a Disc is in the playing position or while it was being moved.

There are two basic types of changer mechanisms, one that has individually addressable eject and load capability and another that uses a magazine to hold the discs. In the former, individual discs may be changed, while in the latter all the stored discs shall be changed at one time.

Any time a disc or magazine is removed or installed from the changer, the device shall generate a Unit Attention Condition. After the Host detects the unit attention condition on a known changer device, the Host may issue a MECHANISM STATUS Command. This provides the Host with information on what disc is present or was changed.

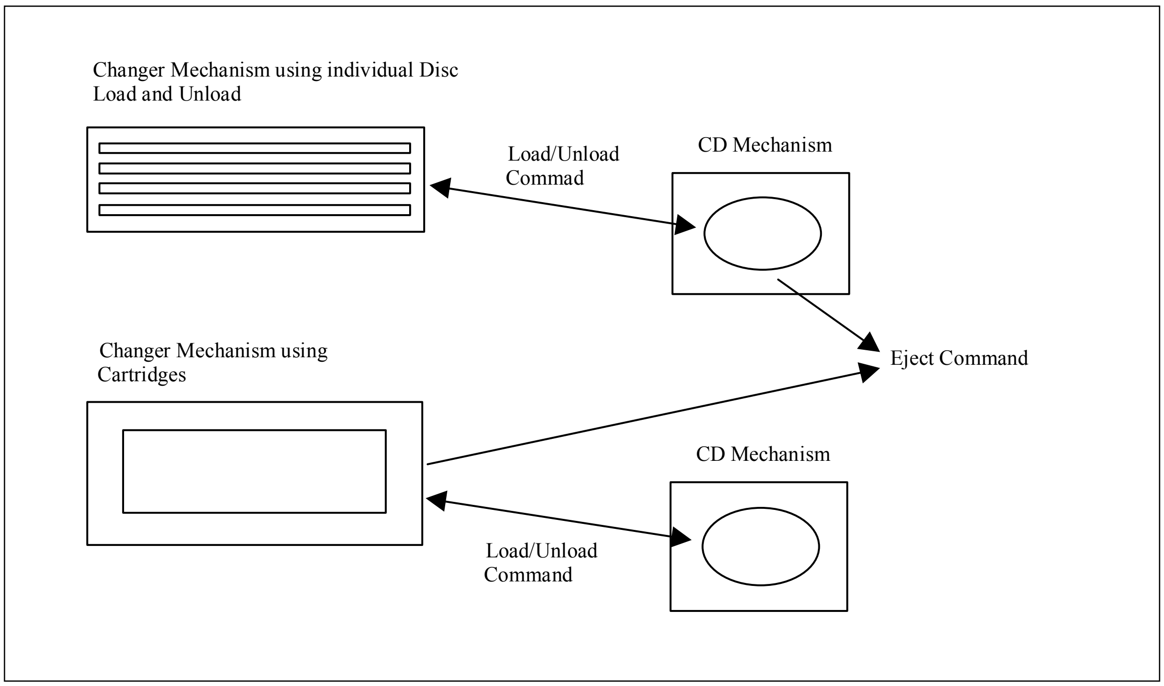


Figure 115 — Media Changer Mechanism Model

4.24.2 Side definition

4.24.2.1 Overview

As part of the DVD specifications, there is a type of media supported that includes data on more than one side of the Disc. This allows devices that are capable of automatically changing sides. For MM Devices, there is an optional capability to select each side of the Disc. Although this is not normally considered a changer type of operation, the two sides to the Disc are independent and changer like functions are a good match for selecting sides. When the Drive supports this functionality, each physical slot has two logical slots. e.g., slot 0 represents one side of the Disc, and slot 1 represents the other side.

There are two fundamental techniques used to select each side of DVD media. The first is the most space efficient. It simply moved the Pick Up (laser unit used to read the disc) to the other side. This does add complexity to the laser mechanism to be able to position it on either the bottom or top of the media. The second approach is to flip the media over.

For a Drive that supports changing sides (see Table 182), the number of Slots reported shall be even, and every other slot shall be an alternating side.

4.24.2.2 Side Changing Only Drive

A Drive that is capable of changing the side of the Disc, but does not have separate Slots from the playing position, reports that it has a Mechanism type that is not a changer, but also reports Side Change Capable. This style of Drive still uses the LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM command to change the currently selected side. The Drive shall report two slots available.

When the Drive is able to only change sides, and not discs, it does not perform any action. This appears to the Host as a Drive with a Delayed Load type of operation.

A DVD Drive that supports changing sides is not able to report if there is actually data on both sides until each side has been read.

4.24.2.3 Attention Conditions for Sided Discs

Devices that support changing sides shall set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to UNIT ATTENTION/NOT READY TO READY CHANGE/MEDIUM MAY HAVE CHANGED for changes that involve disc loading.

4.24.2.4 Error Conditions for Sided Discs

Devices that support changing disc sides shall set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/NO REFERENCE POSITION FOUND to report when the currently selected side does not contain valid data.

4.24.2.5 Initialization

The Changer shall perform its initialization routine at power on or hard reset.

"Initializing Changer" is a process that refers to gathering the information that is necessary to respond to the MECHANISM STATUS command. If a changer is in the process of initializing when it receives a MECHANISM STATUS command, it responds immediately and provides no slot table information (only the Header).

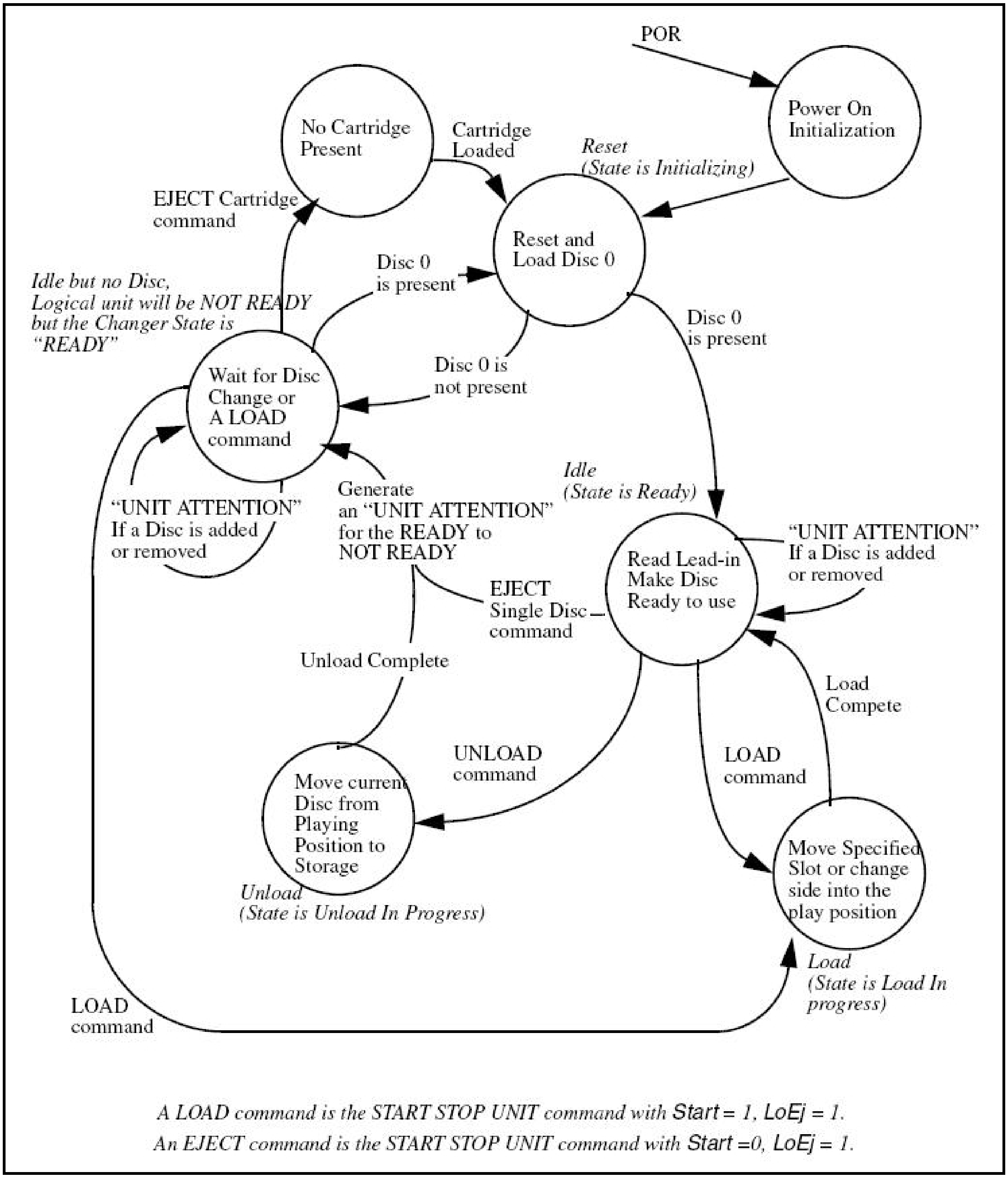


Figure 116 — Changer State Diagram

4.24.3 Changer Addressing

Several Changer specific commands use addresses called “Slots.”

If any commands related to Changer operations are implemented, then all the Changer commands shall be implemented. To determine if a Drive is a changer type device, the Embedded Changer Feature shall be reported in response to an appropriate GET CONFIGURATION command.

4.24.4 Automatic Load and Unload Operations

After initialization is complete the changer shall have Disc 0 loaded into the play position. This enables drivers that are not changer aware to work with a changer device as if it were a normal single MM device. This also ensures compatibility with a Bootable MM. In support of this goal the changer shall also load and unload (Eject) default Disc 0 if the changer supports loading and unloading (Ejecting) individual Discs unless otherwise commanded by the use of one of the changer specific Load/Unload commands.

When a LOAD/UNLOAD command is received and a Disc is present in the Playing position, it shall be unloaded automatically before the specified Load operation is performed.

4.24.5 Delayed Disc load operation

MM Changer Devices may either move a disc into the playing position immediately upon receipt of a LOAD command, or delay the loading of the disc until a media access command is received. It is recommended that the device not load discs into the playing position until data from a disc that is not cached is requested from the Host.

Host drivers should expect to encounter load mechanism delays on media accesses in addition to the spin up and seek delays normally introduced with these commands.

If the device supports delayed loading and the selected disc is not in the play position, then a READ (10), READ (12), READ CD, READ CD MSF, READ CD-ROM CAPACITY, or READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command shall move the selected disc into the play position when data that has not been cached has been requested by the Host.

If the device supports delayed loading and the selected disc is not in the play position, then a SEEK or START STOP UNIT command shall load the selected disc into the play position before execution of the command.

If the device supports delayed loading and the selected disc is not in the play position, then the commands in Table 84 shall not move the selected disc into the play position.

Table 84 — Commands that should not cause delayed loads to occur

Command
STOP PLAY/SCAN
START STOP UNIT (LoEj=0)
TEST UNIT READY
INQUIRY
MECHANISM STATUS
MODE SELECT
MODE SENSE
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL
REQUEST SENSE
SET CD SPEED

4.24.6 Prevent / Allow processing

There are two techniques for Prevent / Allow: either all the discs shall be prevented from being ejected by the user or each disc individually shall be prevented. If the device reports support for Software Slot Selection, then each slot shall be individually controlled by the Prevent / Allow command. Changer devices that use a Magazine and not individually controlled slots should not report the Software Slot Selection capability.

4.24.7 Error Reporting for Changers

If any of the following conditions occur during the execution of a command, the Changer shall return CHECK CONDITION status. The appropriate SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set. Table 85 lists some error conditions and the applicable sense keys. The list does not provide an exhaustive enumeration of all conditions that may cause the CHECK CONDITION status.

Table 85 — Error Conditions and Sense Keys for Changer Mechanisms

Condition	Sense Key
Invalid Slot Number	ILLEGAL REQUEST
Unsupported option requested	ILLEGAL REQUEST
Load or Unload to invalid slot or no Disc in source location	ILLEGAL REQUEST
Device Reset or medium change since last command	UNIT ATTENTION
Self diagnostic failed	HARDWARE ERROR

In the case of an invalid Slot number, the sense data information field shall be set to the Slot number of the first invalid address.

Attempts to eject a Disc if the changer type is magazine and there is a Disc in the playing position shall be rejected with a CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/MECHANICAL POSITIONING OR CHANGER ERROR.

4.25 Hybrid Discs

4.25.1 General

A Hybrid disc is a media type consisting of at least two independent types of recording layers. This sub-clause describes the physical and logical structure of the Hybrid disc and behavior of a Drive that supports Hybrid discs.

Many kinds of optical disc physical format are defined that have the same physical sizing parameters, e.g. radius, thickness, radius of the center hole, rotational direction, and spiral direction. Consequently, it is possible to construct one disc with two or more types of recording layers, each of which conforms to an independent physical format specification.

This type of the disc is called a Hybrid disc. Each type of recording layer included in a Hybrid disc is called a Format-layer in this specification. A Format-layer consists of one or more Layers (e.g., DVD Dual Layer disc).

4.25.2 Structure of a Hybrid disc

Typically, the depth of each Format-layer and the wavelength of the corresponding laser diode in the optical pickup are different. A Format-layer conforms to its physical format specification, e.g. CD, DVD. Figure 117 shows an example of format-layers in a hybrid disc.

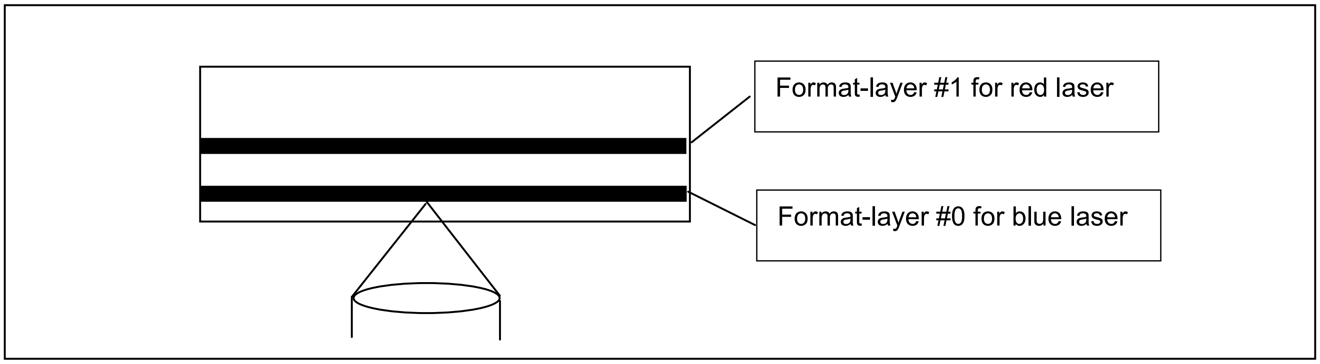


Figure 117 — Example of a Hybrid Disc

Since each Format-layer conforms to its own physical format specification, there is no change in the numbering of its physical sectors. Consequently, physical sector numbers assigned to the Format-layers may overlap partially or completely.

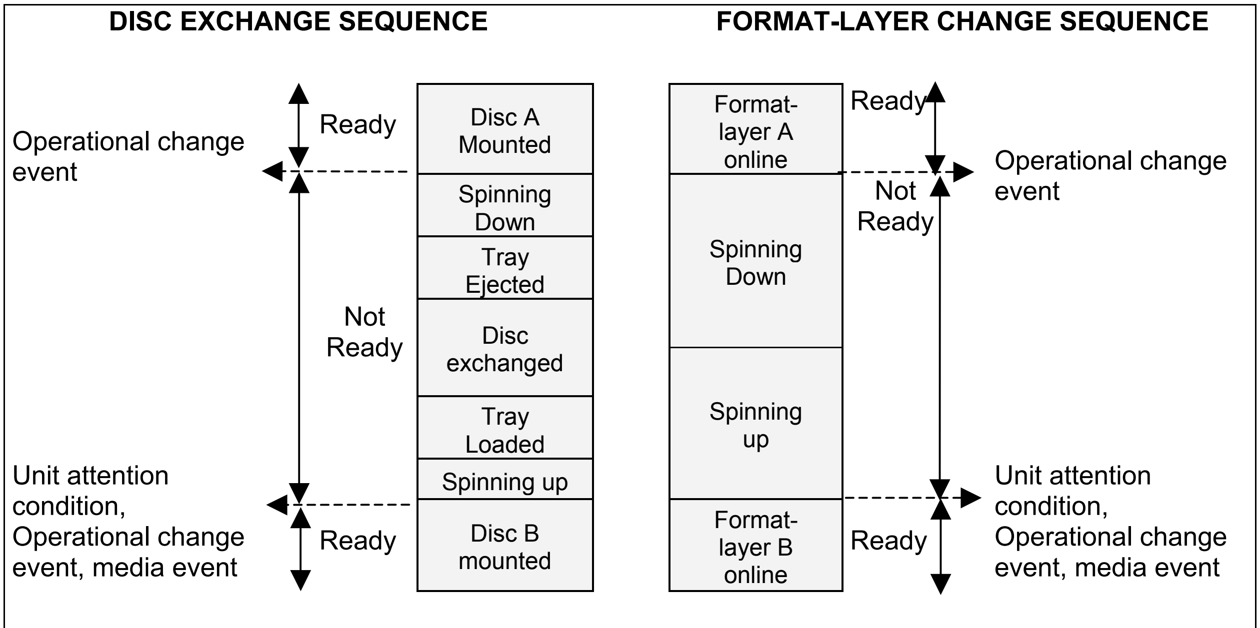
In order to support two or more Format-layers, the Drive has an optical pickup with the appropriate laser diodes and objective lenses for each supported Format-layer. Only one of the Format-layers may be accessed at any given time because only one of the laser diodes and its associated objective lens is able to access the inserted disc at that time. The Format-layer currently accessed by the optical pick up is called the online Format-layer. If the Drive is requested to access another Format-layer instead of the online Format-layer, it may take a very long time, e.g. 10 seconds, because power calibration and other servo and signal calibrations are necessary to access the newly selected Format-layer.

The Format-layer that becomes online when the disc is inserted is called the default Format-layer.

To access a user data recorded sector on a Format-layer specified by the Host, the Drive shall assign physical sector numbers to Logical Block Addresses. The online Format-layer consists of an LBA space that starts from zero and is incremented by one toward the end of the online Format-layer. If a different Format-layer becomes the online Format-layer, the Drive assigns the LBA space to the new online Format-layer, and the previous online Format-layer cannot be accessed until it is selected as the online Format-layer again.

4.25.3 Format-layer selection mechanism using the START STOP UNIT command

Format-layers are treated as if they are individual discs. From the Host's point of view, changing the online Format-layer appears the same as a disc exchange. Figure 118 shows the comparison of exchanging a disc and changing the online Format-layer.



This figure shows event correspondence. No timing relationship between the two examples should be assumed.

Figure 118 — Comparison of disc exchange and Format-layer change

Support for Hybrid discs in a Drive is indicated by a Hybrid disc Feature. This Feature exists when and only when the Drive supports Hybrid discs. This Feature becomes current when the Drive identifies two or more Format-layers in the mounted disc.

Format-layers are numbered from zero and incremented by one. The READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 90h returns a list of Format-layers ordered by layer type (See 6.22.3.1.8). Format-layers that are not supported by the Drive are not reported.

When the Hybrid disc Feature is current, the host is able to select the online Format-layer with the START STOP UNIT command with FL bit set to one and the Destination Format-layer # field is set to the number of the desired Formatlayer.

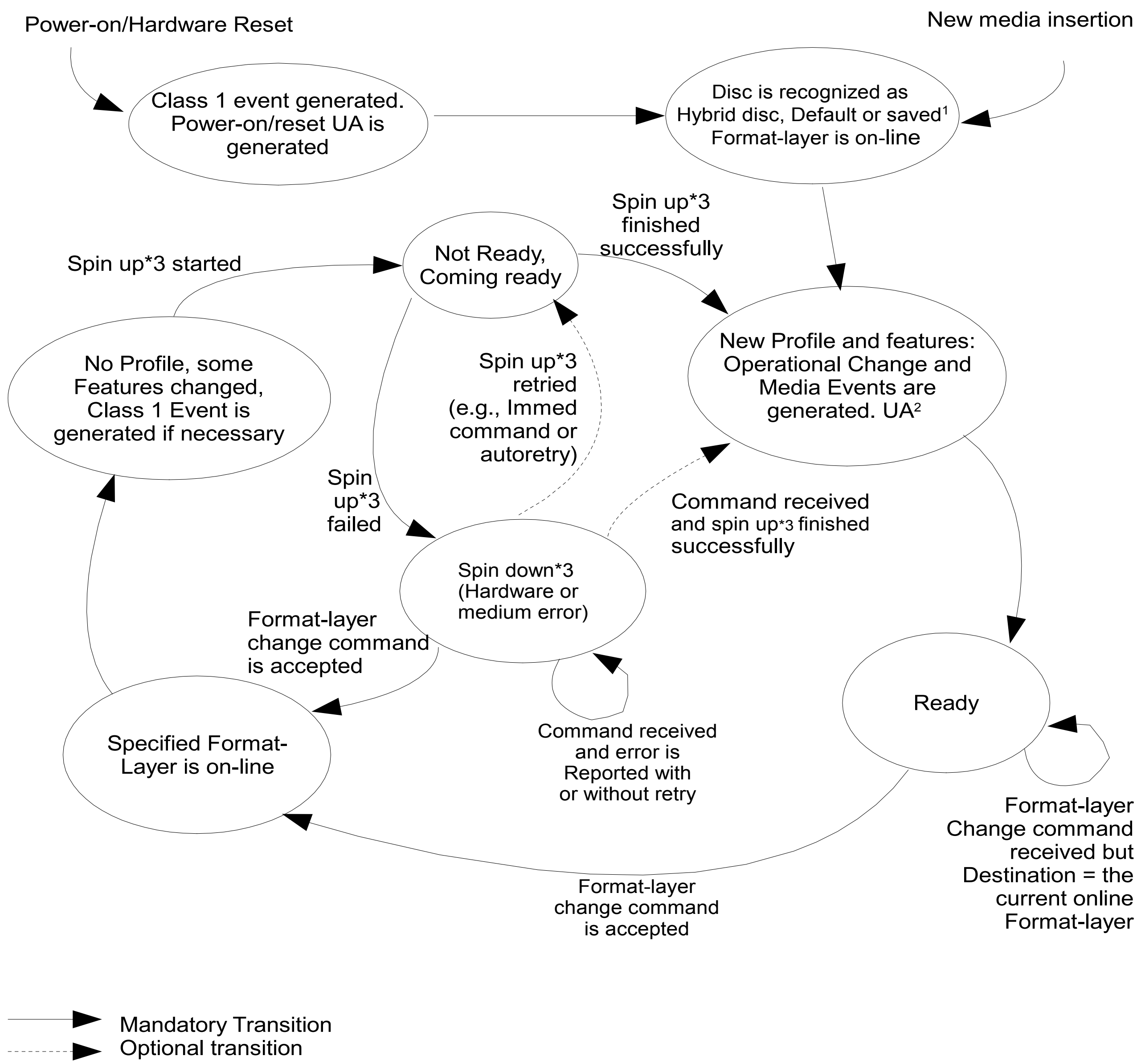
If the Drive receives this command when the Hybrid disc Feature is present but not current and FL is set to one, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDTION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The Drive treats this command as an immediate command and returns GOOD status as soon as the CDB is validated and the Drive starts changing the online Format-layer. The Drive generates an Operational Change Event and the destination Format-layer becomes online but no Profile is current. If the disc is prevented from being ejected with non-Persistent mode, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED.

While the Drive is changing the online Format-layer, the TEST UNIT READY command and any media accessing command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ is set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT IS IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY.

After successfully switching to a new online Format-layer, the Drive generates the UNIT ATTENTION condition and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ are set to UNIT ATTENTION/NOT READY TO READY CHANGE/FORMAT-LAYER MAY HAVE CHANGED. Operational Change and Media events are generated. The Profile(s) associated with the new online Format-layer becomes current. If the Drive fails to change the online Format-layer, the Drive reports the error as a deferred error. In this case, all Profiles are still not current and the Current Profile field of GET CONFIGURATION command is set to 00h. Upon receiving a hardware reset, the default Format-layer may become online if the RI bit in the Hybrid disc Feature is zero. If the RI bit is one, the Drive preserves the online Format-layer via the hardware reset.

Figure 119 shows a state diagram that illustrates Format-layer changing.



*1: In case of RI=1, saved Format-layer, otherwise default Format-layer may come online

*2: New media UA is generated if this state comes from power-on-reset, hardware reset or New media insertion.

*3: Much of the use of “Spin up” and “Spin down” in this figure refer to logical “Spin up/Spin down associated with Format-layer switch. It may also refer to actual physical “Spin up” and “Spin down”.

*4: Class 1 Event represents the Operational Change Request/Notification. Class Event Class 4 Event Is Media Class Event.

Figure 119 — State diagram of Format-layer changing

5 Features and Profiles for Multi-Media Devices

5.1 Introduction

A Multi-media Drive may appear differently to a Host depending on the type of media that is currently installed. The GET CONFIGURATION command provides a method by which the Host may discover detailed behavior information from the Drive. In response to the GET CONFIGURATION command, the Drive returns a list of descriptors that describe the situational capabilities and behaviors of the Drive. These descriptors are referred to as “Features” and “Profiles”.

A Feature is a set of commands, Mode Parameters and behaviors that specify the capabilities of a Drive and its associated medium. One or more Features may be supported by a particular Drive. In general, Features associated with device capabilities are static while Features associated with medium capabilities are dynamic. The presence of a Feature is optional, however, if a particular Feature is reported, the Drive shall implement all of the commands, mode parameters, and behaviors of that Feature.

A Profile is a base set of Features for specific Drive/media combination. A Drive may support Features in addition to those required by the Profile. A single device may implement more than one Profile, and more than one Profile may be active at any given time. Depending upon the currently mounted medium, some Features may not be active. If a device is not ready (i.e., NOT READY response to a TEST UNIT READY command), no Profile shall be current.

5.2 Feature and Profile Descriptors

5.2.1 Overview

To determine the Features supported by the Drive, the Host should issue a GET CONFIGURATION command (See 6.5). In response to the GET CONFIGURATION command the Drive shall respond with data as shown in Table 86. Response data consists of a header field and zero or more variable length Feature descriptors. The format of the Feature Header is shown in Table 87.

Table 86 — GET CONFIGURATION response data format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 7	Feature Header							
8 – n	Feature Descriptor(s)							

Table 87 — Feature Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Length						
1								
2								
3								(LSB)
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)	Current Profile						
7								(LSB)

The Data Length field indicates the amount of data available given a sufficient allocation length following this field. This length shall not be truncated due to an insufficient Allocation Length. If the Data Length is greater than 65 530 bytes, multiple GET CONFIGURATION commands with different Starting Feature Numbers are required for the Host to read all configuration data. This field is adjusted as appropriate for the given Starting Feature Number.

The Drive shall report a list of supported profiles in the Profile List Feature descriptor. The Current Profile field shall identify one of the profiles from the Profile List Feature. If there are no Profiles currently active, this field shall contain zero.

5.2.2 Feature Descriptor

A Feature Descriptor shall describe each Feature supported by a Drive. All Feature descriptors shall be a multiple of four bytes. The Feature Descriptor(s) generic format returned is defined in Table 88. Each individual Feature description is defined in the appropriate sub-clause.

Table 88 — Feature Descriptor generic format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length							
4 – n	Feature Dependent Data							

5.2.2.1 Feature Code

The Feature Code field shall identify a Feature supported by the Drive.

5.2.2.2 Version field

The Version field is reserved and shall be set to zero unless otherwise specified within the Feature Description. Future versions of a Feature shall be backward compatible; incompatible changes shall be included in a different Feature.

5.2.2.3 Persistent Bit

The Persistent bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that this Feature may change its current status. When set to one, shall indicate that this Feature is always active. The Drive shall not set this bit to one if the Current bit is, or may become, zero.

e.g., suppose that the feature is uniquely associated with a group of media types, each of which is removable. In that case, the Current bit shall become zero whenever the type of media mounted is not associated with the feature. For such a feature, the Persistent bit shall be set to zero.

5.2.2.4 Current Bit

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature Dependent Data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature Dependent Data is valid.

e.g., suppose that the feature is uniquely associated with a group of media types, each of which is removable. In that case, the Current bit shall become zero whenever the type of media mounted is not associated with the feature.

5.2.2.5 Additional Length Field

The Additional Length field indicates the number of Feature specific bytes that follow this header. This field shall be an integral multiple of 4.

5.2.3 Defined Features

Each defined Feature is assigned a unique code or number to identify the Feature. Feature codes are shown in Table 89. The maximum number of Feature sets is 65 536 and the Feature code value of 0000h is reserved for the list of Profiles supported by the Drive.

Table 89 — Feature Codes

Feature Code	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the Drive
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	The Drive is able to report operational changes to the Host and accept Host requests to prevent operational changes.
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0004h	Write Protect	The ability to control Write Protection status
0005h – 000Fh	Reserved	—
0010h	Random Readable	The ability to read sectors with random addressing
0011h – 001Ch	Reserved	—
001Dh	Multi-Read	The Drive is able to read all CD media types; based on OSTA MultiRead
001Eh	CD Read	The ability to read CD specific structures
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures
0020h	Random Writable	Write support for randomly addressed writes
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support for sequential recording
0022h	Sector Erasable	Legacy. See Annex E.
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media.
0024h	Hardware Defect Management	Ability of the Drive/media system to provide an apparently defect-free space.
0025h	Write Once	Write support for write-once media that is writable in random order.
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Write support for media that shall be written from Blocking boundaries only.
0027h	CD-RW CAV Write	The ability to write high speed CD-RW media
0028h	MRW	Legacy. See Annex E.
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	The ability to control RECOVERED ERROR reporting
002Ah	DVD+RW	The ability to recognize, read and optionally write DVD+RW media
002Bh	DVD+R	The ability to read DVD+R recorded media formats
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Write support for media that is required to be written from Blocking boundaries with length of integral multiple of Blocking size only.
002Dh	CD Track at Once	Ability to write CD with Track at Once recording
002Eh	CD Mastering	The ability to write CD with Session at Once or Raw write methods.
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	The ability to write DVD specific structures

Table 89 — Feature Codes (continued)

Feature Code	Feature Name	Description
0030h – 0032h	DDCD	Legacy, See Annex E.
0033h	Layer Jump Recording	The ability to record in layer jump mode
0034h	LJ Rigid Restricted Overwrite	The ability to perform Layer Jump recording on Rigid Restricted Overwritable media
0035h	Stop Long Operation	The ability to stop the long immediate operation by a command.
0036h	Reserved	—
0037h	CD-RW Media Write Support	The ability to report CD –RW media sub-types that are supported for write
0038h	BD-R POW	Logical Block overwrite service on BD-R discs formatted as SRM+POW.
0039h	Reserved	—
003Ah	DVD+RW Dual Layer	Legacy, See Annex E.
003Bh	DVD+R Dual Layer	The ability to read DVD+R Dual Layer recorded media formats
003Ch – 003Fh	Reserved	—
0040h	BD Read Feature	The ability to read control structures and user data from a BD disc
0041h	BD Write Feature	The ability to write control structures and user data to certain BD discs
0042h	TSR	Timely, Safe Recording permits the Host to schedule defect management.
0043h – 004Fh	Reserved	—
0050h	HD DVD Read	Legacy, See Annex E.
0051h	HD DVD Write	Legacy, See Annex E.
0052h	HD DVD-RW Fragment Recording	Legacy, See Annex E.
0053h – 007Fh	Reserved	—
0080h	Hybrid Disc	The ability to access some Hybrid Discs.
0081h – 00FFh	Reserved	—

Table 89 — Feature Codes (continued)

Feature Code	Feature Name	Description
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0101h	SMART	Ability to perform Self Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology
0102h	Embedded Changer	Single mechanism multiple disc changer
0103h	CD Audio External Play	Legacy, See Annex E.
0104h	Microcode Upgrade	Ability for the device to accept new microcode via the interface
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0106h	DVD-CSS	Ability to perform DVD CSS/CPPM authentication and RPC
0107h	Real Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
0108h	Drive Serial Number	The Drive has a unique identifier
0109h	Media Serial Number	Legacy, See Annex E.
010Ah	DCBs	The ability to read and/or write DCBs
010Bh	DVD CPRM	The Drive supports DVD CPRM authentication
010Ch	Firmware Information	Firmware creation date report
010Dh	AACS	The ability to decode and optionally encode AACS protected information
010Eh	DVD CSS Managed Recording	The ability to perform DVD CSS managed recording
010Fh	Reserved	—
0110h	VCPS	Legacy, See Annex E.
0111h - 0112h	Reserved	—
0113h	SecurDisc	The ability to encode and decode SecurDisc protected information
0114h – FEFFh	Reserved	—
0142h	OSSC Feature	TCG Optical Security Subsystem Class Feature
0114h – FEFFh	Reserved	—
FF00h – FFFFh	Vendor Specific	—

5.3 Feature Definitions

5.3.1 Profile List Feature (0000h)

This Feature identifies Profiles supported by the Drive. The Profile List descriptor returned is defined in Table 90. Profiles are defined as collections of Features and provide a method to quickly determine the Drive's type. This Feature is always current, even if none of the Profiles listed are current.

Table 90 — Profile List Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0000h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length							
4 – n	Profile Descriptor(s)							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0000h.

The Version field is reserved and shall be set to zero. Future versions of a Feature shall be backward compatible; incompatible changes shall be included in a different Feature.

The Persistent bit shall be set to one to indicate that the reporting of the Profile list is always supported.

The Current bit shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to ((number of Profile Descriptors) * 4).

The Profile Descriptors are shown in Table 91. All Profiles supported by the Drive shall always be reported. Profile descriptors are returned in the order of preferred operation – most desirable to least desirable. e.g., a DVD-ROM that is also able to read a CD-ROM should list the DVD-ROM Profile first and the CD-ROM Profile second.

Table 91 — Profile Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Profile Number						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							CurrentP
3	Reserved							

The Profile Number identifies a Profile to which the Drive conforms (Table 92).

The CurrentP bit, when set to one, shall indicate that this Profile is currently active. If no medium is present, no Profile should be active. Multifunction devices shall select the most appropriate Profile(s), if any, to set as current. The most appropriate current Profile is also reported in the Feature Header (See Table 87).

Table 92 — Profile List

Profile Number	Profile Name	Description
0000h	Reserved	—
0001h	Obsolete	Formerly Non-removable disk profile
0002h	Removable disk	Re-writable; with removable media
0003h	MO Erasable	Legacy, See Annex E.
0004h	Optical Write-Once	Legacy, See Annex E.
0005h	AS-MO	Legacy, See Annex E.
0006h – 0007h	Reserved	—
0008h	CD-ROM	Read only Compact Disc capable
0009h	CD-R	Write once Compact Disc capable
000Ah	CD-RW	Re-writable Compact Disc capable
000Bh – 000Fh	Reserved	—
0010h	DVD-ROM	Read only DVD
0011h	DVD-R Sequential Recording	Write once DVD using Sequential recording
0012h	DVD-RAM	Re-writable DVD
0013h	DVD-RW Restricted Overwrite	Re-recordable DVD using Restricted Overwrite
0014h	DVD-RW Sequential recording	Re-recordable DVD using Sequential recording
0015h	DVD-R Dual Layer Sequential Recording	Dual Layer DVD-R using Sequential recording
0016h	DVD-R Dual Layer Jump Recording	Dual Layer DVD-R using Layer Jump recording
0017h	DVD-RW Dual Layer	Legacy, See Annex E.
0018h	DVD-Download Disc Recording	Write once DVD for CSS managed recording
0019h	Reserved	—
001Ah	DVD+RW	DVD+ReWritable
001Bh	DVD+R	DVD+Recordable
001Ch – 001Fh	Reserved	—
0020h – 0022h	Legacy	Legacy, See Annex E.
0023h – 0029h	Reserved	—
002Ah	DVD+RW Dual Layer	Legacy, See Annex E.
002Bh	DVD+R Dual Layer	DVD+Recordable Dual Layer
002Ch-003Fh	Reserved	—

Table 92 — Profile List (Continued)

Profile Number	Profile Name	Description
0040h	BD-ROM	Blu-ray Disc ROM
0041h	BD-R SRM	Blu-ray Disc Recordable – Sequential Recording Mode
0042h	BD-R RRM	Blu-ray Disc Recordable – Random Recording Mode
0043h	BD-RE	Blu-ray Disc Rewritable
0044h – 004Fh	Reserved	—
0050h	HD DVD-ROM	Legacy, See Annex E.
0051h	HD DVD-R	Legacy, See Annex E.
0052h	HD DVD-RAM	Legacy, See Annex E.
0053h	HD DVD-RW	Legacy, See Annex E.
0054h – 0057h	Reserved	—
0058h	HD DVD-R Dual Layer	Legacy, See Annex E.
0059h	Reserved	—
005Ah	HD DVD-RW Dual Layer	Legacy, See Annex E.
005Bh - FFFEh	Reserved	—
FFFFh	Drives Not Conforming to a Standard Profile	The Drive does not conform to any Profile.

5.3.2 Core Feature (0001h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that supports functionality common to all devices. The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 93.

Table 93 — Core Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0001h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 8							
4	(MSB)	Physical Interface Standard						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	Reserved						INQ2	DBE = 1
9	Reserved							
10	Reserved							
11	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0001h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to one.

The Current bit shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 8.

The INQ2 bit permits the Drive to indicate support for certain features of the INQUIRY command. If INQ2 is set to one, the Drive shall support validation of EVPD, Page Code, and the 16-bit Allocation Length fields as described in [SPC-3].

DBE (Device Busy Event) shall be set to one. DBE set to zero is legacy (see 6.6.2.8).

The Physical Interface Standard field shall be set to a value selected from Table 94.

Table 94 — Physical Interface Standard

Physical Interface Standard	Description
00000000h	Unspecified
00000001h	SCSI Family
00000002h	ATAPI
00000003h	IEEE 1394 – 1995
00000004h	IEEE 1394A
00000005h	Fibre Channel
00000006h	IEEE 1394B
00000007h	Serial ATAPI

Physical Interface Standard	Description
00000008h	USB (both 1.1 and 2.0)
00000009h – 0000FFFEh	Reserved
0000FFFFh	Vendor Unique
00010000h – 0001FFFFh	Defined by INCITS
00020000h – 0002FFFFh	Defined by SFF
00030000h – 0003FFFFh	Defined by IEEE
00040000h – FFFFFFFFh	Reserved

Note 7. It is possible that more than one physical interface exists between the Host and Drive, e.g., an IEEE1394 Host connecting to an ATAPI bridge to an ATAPI Drive. The Drive may not be aware of interfaces beyond the ATAPI.

All Drives that conform to this standard shall implement the Core Feature set of commands specified in Table 95.

Table 95 — Core Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
46h	GET CONFIGURATION	6.5
4Ah	GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION	6.6
12h	INQUIRY	6.8
55h	MODE SELECT (10)	6.11
5Ah	MODE SENSE (10)	6.12
03h	REQUEST SENSE	6.30
00h	TEST UNIT READY	6.44

5.3.3 Morphing Feature (0002h)

This Feature identifies the ability of the Drive to notify a Host about operational changes and accept Host requests to prevent operational changes.

Support for this Feature is enabled using the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command (Persistent Bit), and the media status is retrieved using the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 96.

Table 96 — Morphing Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0002h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved						OCEvent	ASYNC
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0002h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to one.

The Current bit shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4.

OCEvent (Operational Change Request/Notification Class Events) shall be set to one.

The ASYNC bit, when set to zero, indicates that the Drive supports only the polling implementation of GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION. When set to one, indicates that the Drive supports both polling and asynchronous GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION. ATAPI implementations shall set ASYNC to 0.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 97.

Table 97 — Morphing Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
46h	GET CONFIGURATION	6.5
4Ah	GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION	6.6
1Eh	PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (with Persistent bit set to one)	6.13

5.3.4 Removable Medium Feature (0003h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that has a medium that is removable. Media shall be considered removable if it is possible to remove it from the loaded position, i.e., a single mechanism changer, even if the media is captive to the changer.

The Drive shall generate Events for media changes. Event Notification Class 4 (Media Events) shall be supported. This includes reporting user requests to load/eject the medium.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned is defined in Table 98.

Table 98 — Removable Medium Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0003h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Loading Mechanism Type			Load	Eject	Pvnt Jmpr	DBML	Lock
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0003h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to one.

The Current bit shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4.

The Loading Mechanism Type field shall be set according to Table 99.

Table 99 — Loading Mechanism Type

Loading Mechanism Type	Description
000b	Caddy/Slot type loading mechanism
001b	Tray type loading mechanism
010b	Pop-up type loading mechanism
011b	Reserved
100b	Embedded changer with individually changeable discs
101b	Embedded changer using a magazine mechanism
110b – 111b	Reserved

If the Load bit is set to zero, the Drive is unable to load the medium or cartridge via the START STOP UNIT command with the LoEj bit set to one, e.g. the tray type loading mechanism that is found in many portable PCs. If the Load bit is set to one, the Drive is able to load the medium or cartridge.

The Eject bit, when set to zero, indicates that the device is unable to eject the medium or magazine via the normal START STOP UNIT command with the LoEj bit set. When set to one, indicates that the device is able to eject the medium or magazine.

The Pvnt Jmpr bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Prevent Jumper is present. The Drive shall power up to the allow state and locking the Drive with the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command shall not prevent insertion of the media. When set to one, the Prevent Jumper is not present. The Drive shall power up to the prevent state (locked) and shall not accept new media or allow the ejection of media already loaded until a PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL (allow) command is issued. The Pvnt Jmpr bit shall not change state,

even if the physical jumper is added or removed during operation. Drives that do not have a Prevent Jumper available should set this bit to 0 to indicate that the Drive behaves as described for a jumper being present.

If DBML is set to one, the Drive reports Device Busy Class events during medium loading/unloading that is not due to any command from the Host. If DBML is set to zero, the Drive does not claim reporting Device Busy Class events during medium loading/unloading that is not due to any command from the Host.

If Lock is set to zero, there is no locking mechanism for locking the medium into the Drive. If Lock is set to one, the Drive is capable of locking the media into the Drive.

Drives that support the Removable Medium Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 100.

Table 100 — Removable Medium Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
4Ah	GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, Media Events shall be supported	6.6
BDh	MECHANISM STATUS	6.10
1Eh	PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL with the Persistent Prevent bit set to zero.	6.13
1Bh	START STOP UNIT and load eject (LoEj) bit	6.42

If a changer type Drive uses media status operation, it shall use the following variations. If the changer Drive supports individual slot load and unload capability, the slot number(s) exhibiting the media status change shall be reported in the slot fields of the Media Status Event Data. If the changer Drive uses a magazine load mechanism, the slot fields shall be set to the start and end slot numbers present in the magazine.

For non-immediate GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands, the Host should use exactly one GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION request for the entire changer Drive. The Drive shall respond as indicated in the Asynchronous Operation section above, indicating the slot information in the Request Sense Data as described above.

5.3.5 Write Protect Feature (0004h)

This Feature identifies reporting capability and changing capability for Write protection status of the Drive. The Write Protect Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 101.

Table 101 — Write Protect Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0004h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved				DWP	WDCB	SPWP	SSWPP
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0004h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit, when set to zero, indicates that this Feature is not currently active and that the Feature dependent data may not be valid. When set to one, this Feature is currently active and the Feature dependent data is valid.

The Current bit, when set to one, indicates that Drive is capable of changing some write protect status on the medium surface. This bit shall be set to zero if the Drive is unable to set/release some write protect status on the medium surface. The reporting capability of the Write Protect status is persistent and shall be supported regardless of the setting of the Current bit.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

If SSWPP is set to one, the Drive supports the SWPP bit of the Timeout and Protect mode page. If SSWPP is set to zero, the Drive claims no support of the SWPP bit of the Timeout and Protect mode page. The setting of SSWPP does not affect the Current bit of this Feature Descriptor.

If SPWP is set to one, the Drive supports set/release of PWP status. If SPWP is set to zero, the Drive claims no ability to change PWP status.

The WDCB bit indicates that the Drive supports writing the Write Inhibit DCB on DVD+RW media. If WCDB is set to one, the READ/SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Media Type = 0 and format code = 30h shall be supported.

The DWP bit indicates that the Drive supports reading/writing the Disc Write Protect PAC on BD-R/-RE media. If DWP is set to one, the READ/SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Media Type = 1 and format code = 30h shall be supported.

If the Drive supports reporting Write Protection status but does not support changing, the Drive returns this Feature descriptor, however the Current bit is never set to one in the descriptor.

Drives with installed medium that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 102.

Table 102 — Write Protect Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE when Media type=0 Format code C0h when WDCB = 0 Format codes 30h and C0h when WDCB = 1	6.22
	READ DISC STRUCTURE when Media type=1 Format codes 30h, C0h when DWP = 1	6.22
BFh	SEND DISC STRUCTURE when Media type=0 Format code C0h when SPWP = 1 Format code 30h when WDCB = 1	6.36
	SEND DISC STRUCTURE when Media type=1 Format codes 30h when DWP = 1	6.36

Drives that claim the Write Protect Feature shall implement the mode pages as specified in Table 103.

Table 103 — Write Protect Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
1Dh	Time-out and Protect mode page, SWPP bit shall be supported when Feature Descriptor SSWPP bit is set to one. Otherwise, support for this mode page is not required.	7.8

5.3.6 Random Readable Feature (0010h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to read data from logical blocks referenced by Logical Block Addresses, but not requiring that either the addresses or the read sequences occur in any particular order.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 104.

Table 104 — Random Readable Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0010h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 08h							
4	(MSB)	Logical Block Size						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Blocking						
9								(LSB)
10	Reserved							PP
11	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0010h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 8.

The Logical Block Size shall be set to the number of bytes per logical block. This is the value reported by the READ CAPACITY command.

The Blocking field contains the number of logical blocks in a device readable unit. In the case of HDD, this value is 1. For DVD media, this number is 10h. For BD media, this number is 20h. Reads of any sector or sector count, shall be allowed. If there is more than one Blocking on the medium possible, the Blocking field shall be set to zero. See the READ TRACK INFORMATION command for more information.

The PP (Page Present) bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page may not be present. When set to one, shall indicate that the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page is present.

If the PP bit in the Feature Descriptor is set, the TB, RC, PER, DTE, and DCR bits of the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page shall be supported. An Error Recovery Parameter field of 0 in the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page shall be supported. Support for other bits and values in the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page are optional.

Drives that claim the Random Readable Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 105.

Table 105 — Random Readable Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
28h	READ (10)	6.14

Drives that claim the Random Readable Feature shall implement the mode pages as specified in Table 106.

Table 106 — Random Readable Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery, TB, RC, PER, DTE, and DCR bits (mandatory only when PP is set to one)	7.3

5.3.7 Multi-Read Feature (001Dh)

The Drive shall conform to the OSTA Multi-Read specification 1.00, with the exception of CD Play capability (the CD Audio Feature is not required).

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 107.

Table 107 — Multi-Read Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 001Dh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 00h							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 001Dh.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 00h.

Drives that support the Multi-Read Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 108

Table 108 — Multi-Read Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
28h	READ (10)	6.14
BEh	READ CD	6.19
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26

5.3.8 CD Read Feature (001Eh)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to read CD specific information from the media and is able to read user data from all types of CD sectors.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 109.

Table 109 — CD Read Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 001Eh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	DAP	Reserved					C2 Flags	CD-Text
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 001Eh.

The Version field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

If DAP is set to one, the READ CD and READ CD MSF commands support the DAP bit in bit 1, byte 1 of the CDB.

The C2 Flags, when set to one, indicates the Drive supports the C2 Error Pointers. When set to zero the Drive does not support C2 Error Pointers.

The CD-Text bit, when set to one, indicates the Drive supports Format Code 5h of the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command. When set to zero, CD-Text is not supported.

Drives that read CD-ROM media shall support the commands specified in Table 110.

Table 110 — CD READ Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
BEh	READ CD	6.19
B9h	READ CD MSF	6.20
43h	READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (Format codes 0h, 1h, and 2h shall be supported. If the CD-TEXT bit is set to one, Format code 5h shall also be supported.)	6.25

5.3.9 DVD Read Feature (001Fh)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to read DVD specific information from the media.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 111.

Table 111 — DVD Read Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 001Fh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							MULTI110
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved						Dual-RW	Dual-R
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 001Fh.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to zero.

If MULTI110 is set to one, the Drive shall be compliant with the DVD Multi Drive Read-only specifications as defined in [DVD-Ref8].

If Dual-RW bit is set to one, the Drive is capable of reading the Complete state DVD-RW DL media. The Dual-RW bit of zero indicates that the logical unit may be unable to read the DVD-RW DL media. The Dual-RW bit is obsolete and should be ignored. See E.18.

If the DVD-R Dual Layer (Dual-R) bit is set to one, the Drive shall support reading all recording modes (i.e., Sequential recording and Layer Jump recording modes) of DVD-R DL discs. The Drive shall support re-mapping on DVD-R DL discs.

Drives that read DVD-ROM media shall support the commands specified in Table 112.

Table 112 — DVD READ Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
28h	READ (10)	6.14
A8h	READ (12)	6.15
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE (format codes 00h, 01h, 03, and 04h)	6.22
43h	READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (Supports Format codes 0h and 1h.)	6.25

5.3.10 Random Writable Feature (0020h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write data to logical blocks specified by Logical Block Addresses. There is no requirement that the addresses in sequences of writes occur in any particular order. The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 113.

Table 113 — Random Writable Feature Descriptor Format

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0020h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 0Ch							
4	(MSB)	Last Logical Block Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Logical Block Size						
9								
10								
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)	Blocking						
13								(LSB)
14	Reserved							PP
15	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0020h.

The Version field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 0Ch.

The Last Logical Block Address is the logical block address of the last addressable block on the medium.

The Logical Block Size field specifies the number of bytes per logical block. This value shall be the same as reported by the Random Readable Feature and the READ CAPACITY command.

The Blocking field shall indicate the number of logical blocks per writable unit. For DVD media, this number is 10h. For BD media, this number is 20h. Writes of any sector or sector count, shall be allowed. If there is more than one Blocking on the medium possible, the Blocking field shall be set to zero. See the READ TRACK INFORMATION command for more information.

When the PP (Page Present) bit is set to zero, the Drive does not claim to support the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page. When PP is set to one, the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page shall be supported.

Drives that may be used as a random writable block device shall implement the commands as specified in Table 114.

Table 114 — Random Writable Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46
2Eh	WRITE AND VERIFY (10)	6.48
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE (The Immediate bit shall be supported)	6.43

Drives that claim the Random Writable Feature shall implement the mode pages specified in Table 115.

Table 115 — Random Writable Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery (mandatory only when PP is set to one)	7.3

5.3.11 Incremental Streaming Writable Feature (0021h)

The Incremental Streaming Writable Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write data to a contiguous region, and is able to append data to a limited number of locations on the media. On CD media, this is known as packet recording, on DVD media it is known as Incremental Recording, and on a BD-R disc it is known as SRM recording. The Feature descriptor response data is defined in Table 116.

Table 116 — Incremental Streaming Writable Feature Descriptor Format

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0021h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0011b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 4 + (Number of Link Sizes) + (Number of Pad bytes)							
4	(MSB)	Data Block Types Supported						
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved					TRIO	ARSV	BUF
7	Number of Link Sizes (L)							
8	Link Size #1							
9	Link Size #2							
...	...							
L+7	Link Size #L							
L+7+P	3 – [(L+3) MOD 4] Zero Pad bytes to ensure a structure size that is an integral multiple of 4							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0021h.

The Version field is set to 0011b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4 + (Number of Link Sizes) + (Number of Pad bytes).

If Current is set to one, all parameters after the Additional Length field are specific to the currently mounted media.

The Data Block Types Supported field is a bit field that identifies the supported Data Types for CD as defined in the Write Parameters mode page description. A bit set to zero indicates the Data Type is not supported. A bit set to one indicates the Data Type is supported. Bit 0 represents Data Type 0, bit 1 represents Data Type 1, etc.

The Track Resource Information and Open (TRIO) bit provides a way for the Drive to report its support for the Track Resources Information of the READ DISC INFORMATION command and the Open bit of READ TRACK INFORMATION command.

Table 117 — Meaning of TRIO Bit

Current	TRIO	Meaning
0	0	The Drive claims no support for either Track Resources Disc Information or the Open bit for any supported media.
0	1	The Drive supports Track Resources Disc Information and the Open bit for some supported media.
1	0	The Drive claims no support for either Track Resources Disc Information or the Open bit for the currently mounted media.
1	1	The Drive supports Track Resources Disc Information and the Open bit for the currently mounted media.

The Address Mode Reservation (ARSV) bit provides a way for the Drive to report its support for Address Mode reservation of the RESERVE TRACK command.

Table 118 — Meaning of ARSV Bit

Current	ARSV	Meaning
0	0	The Drive claims no support for Address Mode reservation for any supported media.
0	1	The Drive supports Address Mode reservation for some supported media.
1	0	The Drive claims no support for Address Mode reservation for the currently mounted media.
1	1	The Drive supports Address Mode reservation for the currently mounted media.

Note 8. Both TRIO and ARSV are media type dependent.

If the BUF bit is set to 1, the Drive is capable of zero loss linking.

The Number of Link Sizes shall specify the number of link sizes available for the current media. For most media, this field should be 1. If the only available link size is zero, then this field shall be set to one and zero shall be listed as a Link Size. If both zero and at least one non-zero link size are available, then zero shall be reported as a link size.

Each Link Size field shall indicate the number of logical blocks per link. Links occur on sequentially written media between independent write operations. The link size does not include any logical blocks written by the Drive to satisfy the writable unit specified by the Blocking field in the Random Readable Feature. There is exactly one link size for writable CD media, 7. Writable DVD-R/-RW media may report a link size of 1 and/or 16. The order for reporting Link Size fields is determined solely according to Drive implementation.

If the Drive does not require linking for the currently mounted media (e.g. BD-R), the Drive may:

1. Set the Number of Link Sizes to zero.
2. Set the Number of Link Sizes to one and include a single Link Size field, set to zero.

The Pad field is present to make the length of the Feature Descriptor a multiple of 4 bytes. The Pad field shall contain zeros. The number of Pad bytes shall be 3 – [(Number of Link Sizes+3) MODULO 4].

If a Drive reports this feature, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 119.

Table 119 — Command Support Required by the Incremental Streaming Writable Feature

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A1h	BLANK Mandatory when either the Restricted Overwrite Feature or the Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature is present. Blanking is attempted only on CD-RW or DVD-RW. If supported, Blanking Types 000b, 001b, and 100b are mandatory for CD-RW and Blanking Types 000b and 001b are mandatory for DVD-RW.	6.2
5Bh	CLOSE TRACK SESSION	6.3
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION Standard Disc Information shall be supported. If TRIO is set to one, Track Resources Disc Information shall be supported.	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION If TRIO is set to one, the Open bit shall be supported.	6.26
53h	RESERVE TRACK If ARSV is set to one, the ARSV bit in the RESERVE TRACK CDB shall be supported.	6.31
54h	SEND OPC INFORMATION (Shall be supported if OPC information is ever returned in the READ DISC INFORMATION return data.)	6.38
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages shown in Table 120.

Table 120 — Incremental Streaming Writable Feature Parameters

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
05h	Write Parameters (Use of this mode page is not defined for BD)	7.4

5.3.12 Formattable Feature (0023h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to format media into logical blocks. The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 121.

Table 121 — Formattable Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0023h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 8							
4	**Options for formatting BD-RE**							
	Reserved				RENoSA	Expand	QCert	Cert
5	FRF	Reserved						
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	**Options for formatting BD-R**							
	Reserved							RRM
9	Reserved							
10	Reserved							
11	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0023h.

The Version field shall be set to 0010b.

Version 0000b of this feature shall be considered compliant with this standard.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

If a blank BD-R disc or any write enabled rewritable disc is present and the response to the TEST UNIT READY command is GOOD status, then the Current bit of this feature shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 8.

If the RENoSA bit is set to zero, Format Type 31h (BD-RE with no spares allocated) is not supported for BD-RE disc. If the RENoSA bit is set to one, Format Type 31h shall be supported for BD-RE disc.

If the Expand bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support Format Type 01h (Spare Area Expansion). If the Expand bit is set to one, Format Type 01h is supported for the expansion of the spare area on formatted BD-RE discs.

If the Qcert bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support Format Sub-type 11b (Quick Certification) during formatting of previously formatted BD-RE disc. If the QCert bit is set to one, Format Type 30h with Format Sub-type 11b shall be supported for BD-RE disc.

If the Cert bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support Format Sub-type 10b (Full Certification) on formatting BD-RE disc. If the Cert bit is set to one, Format Type 30h with Format Sub-type 10b shall be supported for BD-RE disc.

If the BD-RE Profile is not supported, byte 4 of this feature descriptor shall be set to zero.

The Fast Re-Format (FRF) bit of one shall indicate that the Drive supports the formatting on Format Type = 18h (Fast Re-format) of the FORMAT UNIT command.

If the BD-RE Profile is supported, the FORMAT UNIT command shall support Format Types 00h and 30h with Format Sub-type 00b. Quick Reformat shall be supported.

If any BD-R Profiles are supported and a blank BD-R disc is present and ready, then:

1. If a WRITE (10), WRITE (12), WRITE AND VERIFY (10), or RESERVE TRACK command is sent to the Drive, then the disc shall be formatted as SRM-POW with no spare areas allocated.
2. If the FORMAT UNIT command is used to select a BD-R format, SRM-POW with defect management shall be an option (Format Sub-type 01b of Format Types 00h and 32h).

3. If the FORMAT UNIT command is used to select a BD-R format, SRM+POW shall be an option (Format Sub-type 00b of Format Types 00h and 32h).
4. If the RRM bit is set to one, then the FORMAT UNIT command shall provide RRM as an option (Format Sub-type 10b of Format Types 00h and 32h).

If no BD-R Profile is supported, byte 8 of this feature descriptor shall be set to zero.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 122.

Table 122 — Formattable Feature Commands

Op Code	Command	Reference
04h	FORMAT UNIT, Format Type 00h is mandatory for all Formattable discs. For BD-RE Format Sub-type 01b is mandatory.	6.4
23h	READ FORMAT CAPACITIES	6.23
03h	REQUEST SENSE	6.30
2Fh	VERIFY (10)	6.45

5.3.13 Hardware Defect Management Feature (0024h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that shall have defect management available to provide a defect-free contiguous address space.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 123.

Table 123 — Defect Management Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0024h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	SSA	Reserved						
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0024h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4h.

An SSA bit of one shall indicate that the Drive supports the READ DISC STRUCTURE command for Media Type code = 0 with Format Code 0Ah (Spare Area Information).

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands as specified in Table 124.

Table 124 — Defect Management Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE, format code 0Ah (mandatory only when SSA is set to one)	6.22

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages listed in Table 125.

Table 125 — Defect Management Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery Parameters (AWRE and ARRE shall be supported if the medium is Writable.)	7.3

5.3.14 Write Once Feature (0025h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that shall have the ability to record to any previously unrecorded logical block. The recording of logical blocks may occur in any order. Previously recorded blocks shall not be overwritten.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 126.

Table 126 — Write Once Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 00025h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 08h							
4	(MSB)	Logical Block Size						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Blocking						
9								(LSB)
10	Reserved							PP
11	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 25h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 08h.

The Logical Block Size is the number of bytes per logical block. This value shall be the same as reported by the Random Readable Feature and the READ CAPACITY command.

The Blocking field specifies the number of logical blocks per Drive writable unit. BD-R with the RRM format has the Write-Once Feature. For BD-R RRM, the Blocking field is 20h. The Blocking field reported in the Feature Descriptor is for performance optimization only. A write of any sector or sector count shall be allowed.

If the medium has more than one Blocking factor, the Blocking field shall be set to zero. See the READ TRACK INFORMATION command for more information.

If the PP (Page Present) bit is set to zero, the Drive does not claim to support the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page. If PP is set to one, the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page shall be supported.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 127.

Table 127 — Write Once Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46
2Eh	WRITE AND VERIFY (10)	6.48

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages as specified in Table 128.

Table 128 — Write Once Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery (Mandatory only when PP is set to one)	7.3

5.3.15 Restricted Overwrite Feature (0026h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that shall have the ability to overwrite logical blocks only in fixed sets at a time.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 129.

Table 129 — Restricted Overwrite Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0026h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 00h							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0026h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3. This bit shall be set to zero if the medium is removable.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. This bit shall be set to zero if Restricted Overwrite medium is not present.

The Additional Length field shall be set to zero.

Drives that claim this Feature shall support the commands specified in Table 130.

Table 130 — Restricted Overwrite Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that claim this Feature shall support the mode pages specified in Table 131.

Table 131 — Restricted Overwrite Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
05h	Write Parameters	7.4

5.3.16 CD-RW CAV Write Feature (0027h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that has the ability to write CD-RW media that is designed for CAV recording. The Drive shall conform to the Orange Book Part 3 Volume 2 specification. This Feature shall not be current if high-speed recordable CD-RW media is not mounted. Drive with write-protected media shall not have this Feature current.

The CD-RW CAV Write Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 132.

Table 132 — CD-RW CAV WRITE Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0027h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0027h.

The Version field shall be set to zero.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

Drives with installed medium that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 133.

Table 133 — CD-RW CAV Write Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives with installed medium that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 134.

Table 134 — CD-RW CAV Write Feature Parameters

Page Code	Parameter	Reference
05h	Write Parameters	7.4

5.3.17 Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature (0029h)

The Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature identifies a Drive that has the ability to perform media certification and RECOVERED ERROR reporting for Drive assisted software defect management. In case of Persistent-DM mode, the READ (12) command with Streaming bit = 1 may be performed without medium certification.

When this Feature is current, the Hardware Defect Management Feature shall not be current. This Feature may be current when Restricted Overwrite formatted media or Rigid Restricted Overwrite formatted media is present.

The Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 135.

Table 135 — Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0029h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 4							
4	Reserved							DRT-DM
5	Number of DBI cache zones							
6	(MSB)	Number of entries						
7								(LSB)

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0029h

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3. This bit shall be set to zero if the medium is removable.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. This bit shall be set to zero if Hardware Defect Management feature is current. This bit is not affected by the EMCDR field and the PER bit settings.

When this Feature is current, Hardware Defect Management Feature shall not be current. This Feature may be current if Restricted Overwrite formatted media or Rigid Restricted Overwrite formatted media is loaded.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0029h.

DRT-DM bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports DRT-DM mode. If set to 0, shall indicate that the Drive supports Persistent-DM mode.

Number of DBI cache zones field (Table 136) specifies possible maximum number of regions that Drive is able to handle DBI cache separately. If this field is set to 0, the Drive supports “Simple DBI memory model” (see 4.19.4.5.2). If this field is set to 1, the Drive supports “Large DBI buffer memory model” (see 4.19.4.5.3). In case of “Small DBI cache memory model” (see 4.19.4.5.4), the Number of DBI cache zones field shall be set to 2 or higher (minimum number of this field is 2). The value of Number of DBI cache zones field may be changed by media type. If the Feature is not current, this field is invalid.

Table 136 — Relation between Number of DBI cache zones and DBI memory model type

DRT-DM	Number of DBI cache zones field value	Number of entries	DBI buffer model type of Drive
0	0	m (≥ 10)	simple memory model, cleared at the beginning of medium certification
0	1	0	large DBI buffer model
0	2 or higher	m (≥ 10)	small DBI cache model
1	0	N/A	Reserved
1	1	0	large DBI buffer model
1	2 or higher	m (≥ 10)	small DBI cache model

Number of entries filed indicates that the number of entries that in the worst case may cause DBI memory overflow. In case of large DBI buffer model, this field shall be set to zero. For other DBI memory model, this filed shall be set to 10 or higher. The value of this field may be changed by media type. If this Feature is not current, this field is invalid.

Drives that support this feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 137.

Table 137 — Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
4Ah	GET PERFORMANCE with Type = 4	6.7
28h	READ (10)	6.14
A8h	READ (12) with Streaming bit =0	6.15
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46
AAh	WRITE (12) with Streaming bit =0	6.47
2Fh	VERIFY (10)	6.45
2Eh	WRITE AND VERFY (10)	6.48
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE with Implicit Sync Cache	6.43

Drives that support this feature shall implement the mode pages listed in Table 138.

Table 138 — Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Parameters

Page Code	Parameter	Reference
01h	PER bit and EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page	7.3

Drives that support this feature and have DRT-DM capabilities shall implement the commands listed in Table 139 in addition to the commands listed in Table 137.

Table 139 — Enhanced Defect Reporting DRT-DM Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A8h	READ (12) with Streaming bit =1	6.15
AAh	WRITE (12) with Streaming bit =1	6.47

Drives that support this feature and if small DBI cache memory model is supported, shall implement the commands listed in Table 140 in addition to the commands listed in Table 137.

Table 140 — Enhanced Defect Reporting small DBI cache memory model Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
ACh	GET PERFORMANCE with Type = 4, 5	6.7
B6h	SET STREAMING with Type =5	6.41

5.3.18 DVD+RW Feature (002Ah)

The presence of the DVD+RW Feature indicates that the Drive is capable of reading a recorded DVD+RW disc that is formatted according to [DVD+Ref2]. The DVD+RW Feature descriptor is shown in Table 141.

Table 141 — DVD+RW Feature Descriptor

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="2">Feature Code = 002Ah</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="2">Reserved</td><td colspan="4">Version = 0001b</td><td>Persistent</td><td>Current</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="8">Additional Length</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="7">Reserved</td><td>Write</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="6">Reserved</td><td>Quick Start</td><td>Close Only</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
</table>

The Feature Code field shall be set to 002Ah

The Version field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

This feature may be present only to represent additional capability for the DVD-ROM Profile. If the Write bit is set to zero, then no additional capability is claimed. A device may report this feature only when Profile 10h (DVD-ROM) is reported. No additional commands or mode parameters are required.

If the Write bit is set to one, then the Drive is also capable of background formatting DVD+RW discs according to [DVD+Ref2] and is capable of writing DVD+RW discs that have been formatted according to [DVD+Ref2].

If the Close Only bit is set to zero, then the Drive supports both forms of background format stop. If the Close Only bit is set to one, then the Drive supports only the read compatibility stop.

If the Quick Start bit is zero, the FORMAT UNIT command does not support quick start formatting. If the Quick Start bit is set to one, the FORMAT UNIT command supports quick start formatting.

A Drive that reports this feature with the Current bit set to one shall support the commands shown in Table 142.

Table 142 — Command Support Required by the DVD+RW Feature

Op Code	Write Bit	Command Description	Reference
5Bh	1	CLOSE TRACK SESSION	6.3
04h	1	FORMAT UNIT	6.4
ADh	-	READ DISC STRUCTURE (format field values 0, 1, 3, 4, 5, 30h, and FFh)	6.22
43h	-	READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	6.25
BFh	1	SEND DISC STRUCTURE (format field value 05h)	6.36
2Ah	1	WRITE (10)	6.46
AAh	1	WRITE (12)	6.47
2Eh	1	WRITE AND VERIFY (10)	6.48

The DVD+RW Feature does not require the use of the Write Parameters mode page. If the Write Parameters mode page is supported for other media types, the Drive shall accept valid mode selects to the Write Parameters mode page. The Host should be aware that the Drive shall ignore the Write Parameters mode page when the DVD+RW Feature is current.

5.3.19 DVD+R Feature (002Bh)

The presence of the DVD+R Feature indicates that the Drive is capable of reading a recorded DVD+R disc that is written according to [DVD+Ref1]. Specifically, this includes the capability of reading DCBs. The DVD+R Feature descriptor is shown in Table 143.

Table 143 — DVD+R Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 002Bh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length							
4	Reserved							Write
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 002Bh

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. When Current = 0, either no disc is mounted or the disc currently mounted is not a DVD+R disc. When Current = 1, a disc is mounted and it is a DVD+R disc.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

This feature may be present only to represent additional capability to the DVD-ROM Profile. If the Write bit is set to zero, then no additional capability is claimed. A device may report this feature only when Profile 10h (DVD-ROM) is reported. No additional commands or mode parameters are required.

If the Write bit is set to one, then the Drive is also capable of writing DVD+R discs according to [DVD+Ref1]. If a Drive reports this feature with the Current bit set to one, then it shall support the commands shown in Table 144.

Table 144 — Command Support Required by the DVD+R Feature

Op Code	Write Bit	Command Description	Reference
5Bh	1	CLOSE TRACK SESSION	6.3
51h	-	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
ADh	-	READ DISC STRUCTURE (format field values 0, 1, 3, 4, 5, 30h, and FFh)	6.22
43h	-	READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	6.25
52h	-	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
53h	1	RESERVE TRACK	6.31
BFh	1	SEND DISC STRUCTURE (format field value 05h)	6.36
35h	1	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	1	WRITE (10)	6.46
AAh	1	WRITE (12)	6.47

The DVD+R Feature does not require the use of the Write Parameters mode page. If the Write Parameters mode page is supported for other media types, the Drive shall accept valid mode selects to the Write Parameters mode page. The Host should be aware that the Drive shall ignore the Write Parameters mode page when the DVD+R Feature is current.

5.3.20 Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature (002Ch)

This Feature identifies a Drive that has the ability to perform writing only on Blocking boundaries. This Feature is different from the Restricted Overwrite Feature (0026h) because each Write command is also required to end on a Blocking boundary. This Feature replaces the Random Writable Feature for Drives that do not perform read-modify-write operations on write requests smaller than Blocking. This Feature may be present when DVD-RW Restricted Over writable media is loaded. Drives with write protected media shall not have this Feature current. This Feature shall not be current if the Random Writable Feature is current. If this Feature is current, the Random Writable Feature shall not be current. The Feature descriptor response data is defined in Table 145.

Table 145 — Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 002Ch						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved				DSDG	DSDR	Inter-mediate	Blank
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 002Ch.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Defect Status Data Generate (DSDG) bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports to generate Defect Status data during formatting. A disable certification (DCRT) bit (Table 240) shall be supported. If DSDG is set to 0, the Drive does not support generating of Defect Status Bitmap.

The Defect Status Data Read (DSDR) bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports to read Defect Status data recorded on a medium. A disable certification (DCRT) bit (Table 240) shall be supported. If DSDR is set to 0, the Drive does not support reading of Defect Status data.

The Intermediate bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports writing on an intermediate state Session and quick formatting (Format Type of 15h – Quick Format). If Intermediate is set to 0, the Drive does not support writing on an intermediate state Session and quick formatting.

The Blank bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports BLANK command with Blanking Type 00h and 01h. If Blank is set to 0, the Drive does not support BLANK command.

If more than one Track/Session is present on the media, the Host should use the READ DISC INFORMATION and READ TRACK INFORMATION commands to obtain a description of the medium such as Blocking factor.

Writing from the Host into the media shall be in units of Blocking. Writing shall begin and shall stop at Blocking boundaries. The writable units may be sent via multiple WRITE (10) commands. If a Write does not begin on a Blocking boundary, the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE. If a Write does not end on a Blocking boundary the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands identified in Table 146.

Table 146 — Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A1h	BLANK with Blanking Type = 00h, 01h (Whenever Blank = 1)	6.2
ACh	GET PERFORMANCE with Type =2 (whenever DSDR = 1)	6.7
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Fh	VERIFY (10)	6.45
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

5.3.21 CD Track at Once Feature (002Dh)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write data to a CD track.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 147.

Table 147 — CD Track at Once Feature Descriptor Format

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 002Dh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved	BUF	Reserved	R-W Raw	R-W Pack	Test Write	CD-RW	R-W Sub-code
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)	Data Type Supported						
7								(LSB)

The Feature Code field shall be set to 002Dh.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The following bits indicate Feature support. When the bit is zero, the Feature is not supported. When the bit is one, the Feature is supported.

The BUF bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive is capable of zero loss linking.

The R-W Raw bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports writing R-W Sub code in the Raw mode. The R-W Sub-code bit shall be set if this bit is set.

The R-W Pack bit, if set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports writing R-W Sub code in the Packed mode. The R-W Sub-code bit shall be set if this bit is set.

The Test Write bit indicates that the Drive is able to perform test writes. See 7.4**.** The CD-RW bit indicates support for overwriting a Track at Once track with another.

The R-W Sub-code bit indicates that the Drive is able to record the R-W Sub-channels with user-supplied data.

The Data Type Supported field is defined in 5.3.11.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands and Features identified in Table 148.

Table 148 — CD Track at Once Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A1h	BLANK (Blanking Type 000b, 001b, and 100b shall be implemented if the currently mounted media is CD-RW.)	6.2
5Bh	CLOSE TRACK SESSION	6.3
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
53h	RESERVE TRACK	
54h	SEND OPC INFORMATION (Shall be implemented if OPC Information is returned in the READ DISC INFORMATION returned data.)	6.38
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages identified in Table 149.

Table 149 — CD Track at Once Feature Mode Parameters

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
05h	Write Parameters	7.4

5.3.22 CD Mastering (Session at Once) Feature (002Eh)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write a CD in Session at Once or Raw mode.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 150.

Table 150 — CD Mastering Feature Descriptor

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 002Eh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Resvd	BUF	SAO	Raw MS	Raw	Test Write	CD-RW	R-W
5	(MSB)	Maximum Cue Sheet Length						
6								
7								(LSB)

The Feature Code field shall be set to 002Eh.

The Version Field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The following bits indicate Feature support. If zero, the Feature is not supported. If one, the Feature is supported.

If BUF is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability of zero loss linking. If BUF is one, the Drive is capable of zero loss linking.

If SAO is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability of recording the Session At Once write type. If SAO is one, the Drive is capable of recording the Session at Once write type.

If Raw MS is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability of recording multi-session in raw mode. If Raw MS is one, the Drive is capable of recording multi-session in raw mode.

If Raw is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability of recording in the raw write type. If Raw is one, the Drive is capable of recording using the raw write type.

If Test Write is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability to perform Test Writing. If Test Write is one, the Drive is capable of performing Test Writing.

If CD-RW is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability to record and overwrite CD-RW media. If CD-RW is one, the Drive is capable if writing and overwriting on CD-RW media.

If R-W is zero, the Drive does not claim the ability to record R-W sub-channels with user supplied data. If R-W is one, the Drive is capable of recording the R-W Sub-channels with user supplied information.

The Maximum Cue Sheet Length field indicates the maximum length of a Cue Sheet that is possible to be accepted by the Drive for Session at Once recording. If the SAO bit is zero, this field shall be set to zero.

Drives that support Session at Once mastering shall implement the commands listed in Table 151.

Table 151 — CD Mastering (Session at Once) Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
5Dh	SEND CUE SHEET	6.35
54h	SEND OPC INFORMATION (Shall be implemented if OPC Information is returned in the READ DISC INFORMATION returned data.)	6.38
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that support Session at Once mastering shall implement the parameters listed in Table 152.

Table 152 — CD Mastering (Session at Once) Feature Mode Parameters

Page Code	Parameter	Reference
05h	Write Parameters – Session-At-Once Write type shall be supported.	7.4

Drives that support mastering in RAW mode shall implement the commands listed in Table 153.

Table 153 — CD Mastering (RAW) Feature Commands

Op Code	Command	Reference
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that support mastering in RAW mode shall implement the parameters listed in Table 154.

Table 154 — CD Mastering (RAW) Feature Mode Parameters

Page Code	Parameter	Reference
05h	Write Parameters RAW Write Type shall be supported Data Block Type 2 and 3 shall be supported when R-W bit is set to one.	7.4

5.3.23 DVD-R/-RW Write Feature (002Fh)

This Feature identifies a Drive that has the ability to write data to DVD-R/-RW in Disc at Once mode. The DVD-R/-RW Write Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 155.

Table 155 — DVD-R/-RW Write Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 002Fh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved	BUF	Reserved		RDL	Test Write	DVD-RW SL	Reserved
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 002Fh.

The Version Field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3. This bit shall be set to zero if the medium is removable.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. This bit shall be set to zero if DVD-R/-RW media is not present.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The BUF bit, when set to one, indicates the Drive is able to perform Buffer Under-run Free recording.

The RDL bit, when set to 1, shall indicate that the Drive supports writing DVD-R Dual Layer media. The READ DISC STRUCTURE command for DVD Media Type with Format Code 20h shall be supported.

The Test Write bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Drive is not capable of performing test writes. When set to one, the Drive is capable of performing test writes.

The DVD-RW SL bit indicates support for writing and erasing on DVD-RW SL media. If this bit set to one, the Drive supports the BLANK command, Blanking Types 00h and 01h.

Drives that write and read DVD-R/-RW media shall support the commands as specified in Table 156.

Table 156 — DVD-R/-RW Write Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A1h	BLANK with Blanking Type 00h and 01h (This requirement applies only to DVD-RW SL; i.e. it shall be implemented if DVD-RW SL bit = 1.)	6.2
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
53h	RESERVE TRACK	6.31
BFh	SEND DISC STRUCTURE (format field values 04h, 05h, and 0Fh)	6.36
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that write and read DVD-R/-RW media shall support the parameters identified in Table 157.

Table 157 — DVD-R/-RW Write Feature Parameters

Page Code	Parameter	Reference
05h	Write Parameters - Session at Once Write Type shall be supported	7.4

5.3.24 Layer Jump Recording Feature (0033h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write data to contiguous regions that are allocated on multiple Layers, and is able to append data to a limited number of locations on the media. The Drive may write two or more recording Layers sequentially and alternately.

The Layer Jump Recording Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 158.

Table 158 — Layer Jump Recording Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0033h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 4+L+7+P							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Number of Link Sizes (L)							
8	Link Size							
9	Link Size							
...	...							
L+7	Link Size							
L+7+P	3 – [(L+3) MOD 4] Zero Pad bytes to ensure a structure size that is an integral multiple of 4							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0033h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4 + (Number of Link Sizes) + (Number of Pad bytes).

The Number of Link Sizes shall specify the number of link sizes available for the current media. For DVD-R DL, this field may be set to one.

Each Link Size field shall indicate the number of logical blocks per link. Links occur on sequentially written media between independent write operations. The link size does not include any logical blocks written by the Drive to satisfy the writable unit specified by the Blocking field in the Random Readable Feature. Link Size fields are reported by the Drive in the Drive's preferred order, most desirable first.

For DVD-R Dual Layer Ver. 3.0, this field shall be 1 or 16.

The Pad field shall contain zeros. The number of Pad bytes shall be 3- [(Number of Link Sizes+3) MODULO 4]. The Pad field is present to make the length of the Feature Descriptor a multiple of 4 bytes.

Drives that support the Layer Jump Recording Feature shall implement the commands as specified in Table 159.

Table 159 — Layer Jump Recording Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
5Bh	CLOSE TRACK/SESSION, Close Function field = 010b shall be supported. When CLJB bit is set to one, Close Function field = 001b shall also be supported.	6.3
25h	READ CAPACITY	6.18
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION, Data Type field = 000b shall be supported.	6.21
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE, Format Code field = 20h, 21h, 22h, 23h, and 24h shall be supported.	6.22
52h	READ TRACK INFORMATION: CDB Open bit shall be supported. LJRS, Next Layer Jump Address, and Last Layer Jump Address fields shall be supported.	6.26
BFh	SEND DISC STRUCTURE, Format Codes 21h, 22h, 23h, 24h shall be supported.	6.36
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE (10)	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46

Drives that support the Layer Jump Recording Feature shall implement the mode pages as specified in Table 160.

Table 160 — Layer Jump Recording Feature Mode Pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
05h	Write Parameters Data Block Type 8 shall be supported. Buffer Under-run Free recording shall be available for the current mounted media.	7.4

5.3.25 Stop Long Operation Feature (0035h)

The Stop Long Operation Feature identifies the ability to stop a long immediate operation (e.g., formatting and closing). The CLOSE TRACK/SESSION command is used to stop long operation commands that are typically associated with timeout type 2.

The Stop Long Operation Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 161.

Table 161 — Stop Long Operation Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0035h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 00h							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0035h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4.

Drives that support the Stop Long Operation Feature shall implement the commands as specified in Table 164.

Table 162 — Stop Long Operation Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
5Bh	CLOSE TRACK/SESSION, Close Function field = 000b shall be supported. The Immed bit shall be supported.	6.3
03h	REQUEST SENSE Reporting of the Progress Indication field shall be supported.	6.30

5.3.26 CD-RW Media Write Support Feature (0037h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that has the ability to perform writing CD-RW media. This Feature shall not be current if CD-RW media is not mounted. The CD-RW Media Write Support Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 163.

Table 163 — CD-RW Media Write Support Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0037h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							
5	CD-RW media sub-type support (when Disc Type = 1)							
	Subtype7	Subtype6	Subtype5	Subtype4	Subtype3	Subtype2	Subtype1	Subtype0
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0037h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

CD-RW media is identified in the media Lead-in ATIP when Disc Type = 1. The specific CD-RW media type is identified in the Disc sub-type code, a 3 bit value. Byte 5 identifies the sub-types supported by the Drive. If SubtypeX = 0, then the Drive does not support writing SubtypeX. If SubtypeX = 1, then the Drive supports writing SubtypeX. Refer to System Description ReWritable Compact Disc Systems, part III Volume 2: CD-RW for details of the specific media identified by Disc Type and Disc Sub-type codes.

No specific command or mode page support is required by the presence of this feature.

5.3.27 BD-R Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) Feature (0038h)

A Drive that reports the feature is able to provide Logical Block overwrite service on BD-R discs that are formatted as SRM+POW. The feature descriptor is defined in Table 164.

Table 164 — BD-R Pseudo-OverWrite Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0038h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 4							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0038h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

When this feature is current, the Drive shall provide Pseudo-overwrite services as described in [UDF]. The physical implementation shall be according to the rules for Pseudo-OverWrite described in [BD-Ref2]. See 4.15.5.4, Pseudo-OverWrite (POW) for a description of implementation requirements. This feature shall not be supported on multi-session discs.

Drives that report this feature shall support the commands specified in Table 165.

Table 165 — Pseudo OverWrite Feature Commands

Op Code	Command	Reference
51h	READ DISC INFORMATION with Data Type = 010b	6.21
53h	RESERVE TRACK with support of the ARSV bit	6.31

5.3.28 DVD+R Dual Layer Feature (003Bh)

The presence of the DVD+R Dual Layer Feature indicates that the drive is capable of reading a recorded DVD+R Dual Layer disc that is written according to [DVD+Ref3]. The DVD+R Dual Layer Feature descriptor is shown in Table 166.

Table 166 — DVD+R Dual Layer Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 003Bh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length							
4	Reserved							Write
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 003Bh.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. When Current = 0, either no disc is mounted or the disc currently mounted is not a DVD+R Dual Layer disc. When Current = 1, a disc is mounted and it is a DVD+R Dual Layer disc. Single Layer DVD+R command operation is not compatible with Dual Layer DVD+R command operation. Consequently, when Dual Layer DVD+R media is present in a Dual Layer DVD+R drive, the Current bit of Feature 2Bh (Single Layer DVD+R Feature) shall be set to zero, and the Current bit of Profile 1Bh (Single Layer DVD+R Profile) shall be set to zero.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

If Write is zero, then no DVD+R Dual Layer write capability is claimed.

If Write is one, then the drive claims the ability to write DVD+R Dual Layer.

A device may report this feature only when Profile 10h (DVD-ROM) is reported.

If a drive reports this feature with the Current bit set to one, Table 167 shows commands that shall be supported based upon the setting of the Write bit.

Table 167 — Command Support Required by the DVD+R Dual Layer Feature

Op Code	Write Bit	Command Description	Reference
5Bh	1	CLOSE TRACK SESSION	6.3
28h	-	READ (10)	6.14
AAh	-	READ (12)	6.15
51h	-	READ DISC INFORMATION	6.21
ADh	-	READ DISC STRUCTURE (format field values 20h and FFh are mandatory)	6.22
52h	-	READ TRACK INFORMATION	6.26
53h	1	RESERVE TRACK	6.31
BFh	1	SEND DISC STRUCTURE (format field value 20h)	6.36
54h	1	SEND OPC INFORMATION	6.38
35h	1	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	1	WRITE (10)	6.46
AAh	1	WRITE (12)	6.47

The DVD+R Dual Layer Feature does not require the use of the Write Parameters mode page.

Note 9. If the Write Parameters mode page is supported for other media types, the drive shall accept valid mode selects to the Write Parameters mode page. The Host should be aware that the drive will always ignore the Write Parameters mode page when the DVD+R Dual Layer Feature is current.

5.3.29 BD Read Feature (0040h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to read control structures and user data from the BD disc specified by the class bitmaps. The BD Read Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 168.

Table 168 — BD Read Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0040h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 28							
4	Reserved							BCA
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Obsolete							
9	Obsolete					RE2	RE1	Obsolete
10-15	Obsolete							
16	Obsolete							
17	Obsolete						R	Obsolete
18-23	Obsolete							
24	Obsolete							
25	Obsolete						ROM	Obsolete
26 - 31	Obsolete							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0040h.

The Version field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. The Current bit shall be set to one whenever:

- A BD-ROM disc is present and recognized as a version that is readable by the Drive, or
- A BD-R disc is present and recognized as a version that is readable by the Drive, or
- A BD-RE disc is present and recognized as a version that is readable by the Drive.

Otherwise, the Current bit is set to zero.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 1Ch.

If the BCA bit is set to one, the Drive supports reporting disc BCA data via the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Media Type = 1h and Format Code = 03h. If the BCA bit is set to zero, the Drive does not support reporting the BCA data.

Class Bitmaps for BD-RE and BD-R are obsolete in version 1 of this feature.

The RE2 bit indicates that the Drive supports reading BD-RE Ver.2 media.

The RE1 bit indicates that the Drive supports reading BD-RE Ver.1 media.

The R bit indicates that the Drive supports reading BD-R Ver.1 media.

The ROM bit indicates that the Drive supports reading BD-ROM Ver.1 media.

If a Drive reports this feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 169.

Table 169 — Command Support Required by the BD Read Feature

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
28h	READ (10)	6.14
A8h	READ (12)	6.15
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE (format = 0, 30h, FFh). When BCA is set to one, the Drive shall also support format = 3.	6.22
43h	READ TOC/PMA/ATIP (format 0 and 1)	6.25

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages shown in Table 170.

Table 170 — BD Read Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery	7.3

5.3.30 BD Write Feature (0041h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to write control structures and user data to certain BD discs.
The BD Write Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 171.

Table 171 — BD Write Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0041h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 20							
4	Reserved							SVNR
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Obsolete							
9	Obsolete					RE2	Obsolete	
10-15	Obsolete							
16	Obsolete							
17	Obsolete						R	Obsolete
18 - 23	Obsolete							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0041h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit is set to zero when this Feature is not available. The Current bit is set to one when this Feature is available. This Feature becomes current when a formatted BD-RE disc or non-finalized BD-R disc is mounted. If a BD disc is permanently write protected (e.g., a BD-R disc is closed or the password field of DWP PAC for BD-R/RE is set to all FFh), this Feature shall not become current.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 14h.

If the SVNR bit (Supports Verify Not Required) is set to one, then the WRITE (12) command supports the VNR bit set to one.

The RE2 bit indicates that the Drive supports writing BD-RE Ver.2 media.

The R bit indicates that the Drive supports writing BD-R Ver.1 media.

If a Drive reports this feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 172.

Table 172 — Command Support Required by the BD Write Feature

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
04h	FORMAT UNIT	6.4
2Ah	WRITE (10) If SVNR = 1, VNR = 1 shall be supported	6.46

5.3.31 TSR Feature (0042h)

A Drive that reports the TSR (Timely Safe Recording) feature is able to detect and report defective writable units and to manage the defect or not according to instructions from the host. The feature descriptor is defined in Table 173.

Table 173 — TSR Feature Descriptor

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0042h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 0							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0042h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 00h.

When this feature is present and current, the Drive provides error detection and reporting within selectable threshold, and controllable hardware defect management.

If a Drive reports this feature with the Current bit set to one, then the Drive shall support the commands shown in Table 174.

Table 174 — Command Support Required by the TSR Feature

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
ACh	GET PERFORMANCE (Support for Type = 2 is mandatory)	6.7
35h	SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	6.43
2Ah	WRITE (10)	6.46
AAh	WRITE (12)	6.47

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the mode pages shown in Table 175.

Table 175 — TSR Feature mode pages

Page Code	Mode Page	Reference
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery	7.3

5.3.32 Hybrid Disc Feature (0080h)

This feature is present when the Drive is able to access some Hybrid Discs.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 176.

Table 176 — Hybrid Disc Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0080h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							RI
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0080h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. This bit shall be set to one only when the Drive detects a supported hybrid disc.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Reset Immunity (RI) bit, when set to one, indicates the ability to maintain the online Format-layer through any reset and power-cycle. If the RI bit is set to one, the Drive shall preserve the selection of the Format-layer through power-cycle and reset. If the RI bit is set to zero, the online Format-layers before and after the power-cycle or reset may be different. The Drive may or may not clear the preservation of the online Format-layers at disc ejection. If the Drive supports recording of a writable Format-layer, the RI bit shall be set to one. Otherwise the Drive shall treat the recordable Format-layer as Read-only except the recordable Format-layer is the default Format-layer.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 177.

Table 177 — Hybrid Disc Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE (Format code 90h shall be supported)	6.22
1Bh	START STOP UNIT (FL and Format-Layer Number fields shall be supported)	6.42

5.3.33 Power Management Feature (0100h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to perform Host and Drive directed power management.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 178.

Table 178 — Power Management Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0100h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 00h							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0100h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to zero.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 179.

Table 179 — Power Management Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
4Ah	GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (Power Management Class events shall be supported)	6.6
1Bh	START STOP UNIT (Power Condition field shall be supported)	6.42

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the the mode parameters specified in Table 180.

Table 180 — Power Management Feature Parameters

Page Code	Page Description	Reference
1Ah	Power Condition mode page	7.6

5.3.34 S.M.A.R.T. Feature (0101h)

The S.M.A.R.T. Feature (Table 181) identifies a Drive that is able to perform Self-Monitoring Analysis and Reporting Technology. S.M.A.R.T. was developed to manage the reliability of data storage Drives. S.M.A.R.T.

Peripheral data storage Drives may suffer performance degradation or failure due to a single event or a combination of events. Some events are immediate and catastrophic while others cause a gradual degradation of the Drive's ability to perform. It is possible to predict a portion of the failures, but S.M.A.R.T. is unable to and shall not predict all future Drive failures.

It is the responsibility of a S.M.A.R.T. Drive to predict an impending failure and report that failure via an Informational Exception Condition.

Table 181 — S.M.A.R.T. Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0101h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							PP
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0101h.

The Version field shall be set to 0h.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

If the Page Present (PP) bit is set to zero, then this Drive claims no support for the Infromational Exceptions Control mode page (1Ch).

If the Page Present (PP) bit is set to one, then the this Drive supports the Informational Exceptions Control mode page (1Ch).

If the Informational Exceptions Control mode page is not supported the Drive shall use the following default values:

1. Performance (Perf) bit shall be 0 (Delays are acceptable).
2. Enable Warning (Ewasc) bit shall be 0 (Disable WARNING Sense Code reporting).
3. Disable Exception Control (Dexcept) bit shall be 0 (Do not Disable reporting of exception conditions). Test bit shall be 0.
4. Method of Reporting Informational Exceptions (MRIE) shall be 4 (Unconditionally generate recovered error).
5. Interval Timer shall be set to 6 000.

5.3.35 Embedded Changer Feature (0102h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to move media from a storage area to a mechanism and back.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 182.

Table 182 — Embedded Changer Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0102h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved			SCC	Reserved	SDP	Reserved	
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved			Highest Slot Number				

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0102h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4.

The SCC (Side Change Capable) bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Drive is not capable of selecting both sides of the media. When set to one, shall indicate that the Drive is capable of selecting both sides of the media.

The SDP (Supports Disc Present) bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Drive is unable to report the contents of the slots after a reset or magazine change. When set to one, shall indicate that the Drive is able to report the contents of the slots after a reset or magazine change and that the response to the MECHANISM STATUS command shall contain valid Disc is Present status information for all slots.

Highest Slot Number shall be set to the number of slots minus one.

If this Feature is current, the Removable Medium Feature shall be current. Drives that support an embedded changer shall implement the commands specified in Table 183.

Table 183 — Embedded Changer Feature Command

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A6h	LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM	6.9
BDh	MECHANISM STATUS (If the Drive supports Write Protect Feature (0004h), the Media Cartridge Write Protection status bits (CWP_V, CWP) of the MECHANISM STATUS command shall be supported.)	6.10

5.3.36 Microcode Upgrade Feature (0104h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to upgrade its internal microcode via the interface.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 184.

Table 184 — Microcode Upgrade Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0104h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							M5=1
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0104h.

The Version field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4.

The M5 bit is used to specify that the Drive supports validating the 5-bit Mode field of the READ BUFFER and WRITE BUFFER commands. If M5 is set to one, the Drive shall validate the Mode field of both the READ BUFFER and WRITE BUFFER commands as a 5-bit field as described in [SPC-3].

Drives that support microcode upgrades shall implement the commands specified in Table 185.

Table 185 — Microcode Upgrade Feature Command

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
3Ch	READ BUFFER with Mode 03h (Buffer descriptor)	6.16
3Bh	WRITE BUFFER with Mode 07h (Download microcode with offset and save)	6.49

5.3.37 Timeout Feature (0105h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to always respond to commands within a set time period. If a command is unable to complete normally within the allotted time, it completes with an error.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 186.

Table 186 — Timeout Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0105h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0001b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							Group3
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)	Unit Length						
7								(LSB)

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0105h.

The Version field shall be set to 0001b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Group3 bit of one indicates that the Drive supports the G3Enable bit and the Group3 Timeout field in Timeout & Protect mode page (1Dh). If this bit is set to 1, the Drive shall also support VERIFY (10) command and handling of G3tout bit in VERIFY (10) command. See 11.1.1, "Group 3 timeout for Real Time Stream recording/playback" on page 217. If Real-Time Streaming Feature (0107h) is not supported, this bit shall be set to zero.

The Unit Length field indicates a unit of block length, in sectors, corresponds to increase a unit of Group 3 time unit. When the Group3 bit is set to 0, Unit Length field is not valid.

Drives that support this Feature shall support the parameters listed in Table 187.

Table 187 — Timeout Feature Parameter

Page Code	Parameter	Reference
1Dh	Timeout and Protect mode page	7.8

Drives that support queuing shall support Device Busy Event Notification. If queuing is not supported, the current command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

5.3.38 DVD CSS Feature (0106h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to perform DVD CSS/CPPM authentication and key management for playback. This Feature identifies Drives that support CSS for DVD-Video and CPPM for DVD-Audio. The Drive shall maintain the integrity of the keys by only using DVD CSS authentication and key management procedures. This Feature shall be current only if a media containing CSS-protected DVD-Video and/or CPPM-protected DVD-Audio content is loaded.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 188.

Table 188 — DVD CSS Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code 0106h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	CSS Version							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0106h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be set to zero if DVD CSS/CPPM media is not present. Otherwise, this bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4.

The CSS version shall be set to 01h.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands specified by Table 189.

Table 189 — DVD CSS Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A4h	REPORT KEY, Key Class = 0 except Key Format 010001b (The Key Format 000100b (TITLE KEY) does not succeed for CPPM protected sectors, since they do not contain a Title Key.)	6.28
A3h	SEND KEY, Key Class = 0	6.37
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE with Format Code 02h	6.22

5.3.39 Real Time Streaming Feature (0107h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to perform reading and writing within Host specified (and Drive verified) performance ranges. This Feature also indicates whether the Drive supports the Stream playback operation.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 190.

Table 190 — Real Time Streaming Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0107h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0101b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length =04h							
4	Reserved		SMP	RBCB	SCS	MP2A	WSPD	SW
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0107h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0101b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Set Minimum Performance bit (SMP) bit indicates that the Drive supports the HIE bit in the Performance Descriptor of the SET STREAMING command.

The Read Buffer Capacity Block (RBCB) bit indicates that the Drive supports the READ BUFFER CAPACITY command and its Block bit.

The Set CD Speed (SCS) bit of one indicates that the Drive supports the SET CD SPEED command. Otherwise, the Drive does not support the SET CD SPEED command.

The mode page 2A (MP2A) bit of one indicates that the MM Capabilities & Mechanical Status mode page (2Ah) with the Drive Write Speed Performance Descriptor Blocks is supported. Otherwise, the MM Capabilities & Mechanical Status mode page (2Ah), with the Drive Write Speed Performance Descriptor Blocks are not supported by the Drive.

Note 10. The MM Capabilities & Mechanical Status mode page is a legacy structure. Implementing mode page 2Ah is not recommended.

A Write Speed Performance Descriptor (WSPD) bit of one indicates that the Drive supports the Write Speed (Type field = 03h) data of GET PERFORMANCE command and the WRC field of SET STREAMING command. This bit shall be set to one, if Drive supports writing speed selection.

A Stream Writing (SW) bit of one indicates that the Drive supports the Stream recording operation. A SW bit of zero indicates that the Drive may not support the Stream recording operation (see 4.20.4)

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 191.

Table 191 — Real Time Streaming Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
ACh	GET PERFORMANCE with Type field of 00h, and Type field 01h when SW bit is set to one and Type field of 03h when WSPD bit is set to one	6.7
A8h	READ (12), the Streaming bit shall be supported	6.15
5Ch	READ BUFFER CAPACITY with Block bit of 1 (Shall be implemented when RBCB set to 1)	6.17
B6h	SET STREAMING (WRC field of SET STREAMING command shall be supported when WSPD bit is set to 1.)	6.41
AAh	WRITE (12) with Streaming bit when SW bit is set to one	6.47

5.3.40 Drive Serial Number Feature (0108h)

This Feature identifies a Drive that has a unique serial number. The vendor ID, model ID, and serial number is able to uniquely identify a Drive that has this feature.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 192.

Table 192 — Drive Serial Number Feature Descriptor

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 0108h						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length							
4 – n	Serial Number							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0108h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to a multiple of 4.

The Serial Number shall be ASCII graphic codes (i.e., codes 20h – 7Eh). Any unused bytes in the Serial Number shall be padded with spaces (20h). There should not be more than three pad bytes.

5.3.41 Disc Control Blocks (DCBs) Feature (010Ah)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to read and/or write DCBs from or to the media.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 193.

Table 193 — DCBs Feature Descriptor

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)			Feature Code = 010Ah				
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3				Additional Length				
4	(MSB)							
5				Supported DCB entry 0				
6								
7								(LSB)
…				…				
4*(n-1)	(MSB)							
4*(n-1) + 1				Supported DCB entry n-1				
4*(n-1) + 2								
4*(n-1) + 3								(LSB)

The Feature Code field shall be set to 010Ah.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 4*n, where n is the number of Supported DCB entries. The Supported DCB entry n fields shall each contain the Content Descriptor of a supported DCB. Entries shall be sorted in ascending order.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 194.

Table 194 — DCBs Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
Adh	READ DISC STRUCTURE (Format Code 30h shall be supported.)	6.22
BFh	SEND DISC STRUCTURE (If any DCB's are identified as writable, format code = 30h of this command shall be supported.)	6.36

5.3.42 DVD CPRM Feature (010Bh)

This Feature identifies a Drive that is able to perform DVD CPRM and is able to perform CPRM authentication and key management. This Feature shall be current only if a DVD CPRM recordable or rewritable medium is loaded.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 195.

Table 195 — DVD CPRM Feature Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 010Bh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	CPRM version							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 010Bh.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4.

The Additional Length field shall be set 04h.

The CPRM version field shall be set to 01h.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands listed in Table 196.

Table 196 — DVD CPRM Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A2h	REPORT KEY (Key Class=0, Key formats 000001b, 000010b, 010001b, 111111b)	6.28
A3h	SEND KEY (Key Class=0, Key formats 000001b, 000011b, 111111b)	6.37
Adh	READ DISC STRUCTURE (Media Type=0, Format codes 06h, 07h)	6.22

5.3.43 Firmware Information Feature (010Ch)

This Feature shall indicate that the Drive provides the date and time of the creation of the current firmware revision loaded on the device. The date and time shall be the date and time of creation of the firmware version. The date and time shall be GMT. The date and time shall not change for a given firmware revision. The date and time shall be later on “newer” firmware for a given device. This Feature shall be persistent and current if present. No commands are required for this Feature.

The Feature descriptor response data to be returned to the Host is defined in Table 197.

Table 197 — Firmware Information

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 010Ch						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 10h							
4	(MSB)	Century						
5								(LSB)
6	(MSB)	Year						
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Month						
9								(LSB)
10	(MSB)	Day						
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)	Hour						
13								(LSB)
14	(MSB)	Minute						
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)	Second						
17								(LSB)
18	Reserved							
19	Reserved							

The Feature Code field shall be set to 010Ch.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to one.

The Current bit shall be set to one.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 10h.

The creation year is represented as 4 decimal digits:

The Century field contains the two high order decimal digits of the creation year in decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation year is 2013, the Century field shall contain 3230h).

The Year field contains the two low order decimal digits of the creation year in decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation year is 2013, the Year field shall contain 3133h).

The Month field contains the creation month in decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation month is August, the Month field shall contain 3038h).

The Day field contains the creation day in decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation day is August 12, the Day field shall contain 3132h).

The Hour field contains the creation hour in decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation time is 1:20:43 PM, the Hour field shall contain 3133h).

The Minute field contains the creation minute in decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation time is 1:20:43 PM, the Minute field shall contain 3230h).

The Second field contains the creation second represented as decimal ASCII (e.g. If the creation time is 1:20:43 PM, the Seconds field shall contain 3433h).

5.3.44 AACS Feature (010Dh)

The AACS Feature (Table 198) identifies a Drive that supports AACS and is able to perform AACS authentication process. This Feature shall be current only if an AACS or AACS capable medium is present.

Table 198 — AACS Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code = 010Dh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0010b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Reserved			RDC	RMC	WBE	BEC	BNG
5	Block Count for Binding Nonce							
6	Reserved				Number of AGIDs			
7	AACS Version							

The Feature Code shall be set to 010Dh.

The Version field shall be set to 0010b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. When the Current bit is set to one, an AACS or AACS capable Disc is present and ready.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

If RDC is set to one, the Drive supports the reading the Drive Certificate from an AACS licensed Drive (REPORT KEY command with Key Class = 2 and Key format = 111000b). Otherwise, RDC is set to zero.

If RMC is set to one, the Drive supports the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with format code 86h (Media Key Block of CPRM). Otherwise, RMC is set to zero.

If WBE is set to one, the Drive supports writing sectors subject to Bus Encryption. If WBE is set to zero, the Drive supports Bus Encryption only from the Drive to the host.

If BEC is set to one, the Drive supports Bus Encryption. Otherwise, BEC shall be set to zero.

If BNG is set to one, the Drive supports generating the Binding Nonce. Otherwise BEC shall be set to zero.

The Block Count for the Binding Nonce field specifies the number of media blocks required to store the Binding Nonce.

The Number of AGIDs field indicates the maximum number of AGIDs that the Drive supports concurrently.

The AACS Version field shall be set to 01h.

Drives that support this Feature shall implement the commands specified by Table 199.

Table 199 — AACS Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A4h	REPORT KEY command, Key Class 02h, KEY Formats 000000b, 000001b, 000010b, 100001b, and 111111b. When RDC is set to 1, KEY format 111000b shall also be supported. When BNG is set to 1, KEY format 100000b shall also be supported.	6.28
A3h	SEND KEY command, Key Class 02h	6.37
ADh	READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Codes 80h, 81h, 82h, and 83h. When BEC is set to one, Format Code 84h shall also be supported. When WBE is set to one, Format Code 85h shall also be supported. When RMC is set to one, Format Code 86h shall also be supported.	6.22
BFh	SEND DISC STRUCTURE command is optional except when both BEC and WBE are set to one. In that case, Format Codes 84h and 85h shall be supported.	6.36

5.3.45 DVD CSS Managed Recording Feature (010Eh)

The DVD CSS Managed Recording Feature identifies a Drive that supports CSS Managed recording on DVD-Download discs. This Feature shall be current only if a recordable DVD-Download disc is loaded.

The DVD CSS Managed Recording Feature descriptor is shown in Table 200.

Table 200 — DVD CSS Managed Recording Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code (010Eh)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 04h							
4	Maximum number of Scramble Extent information entries							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Feature Code shall be set to 010Eh.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. If the Current bit is set to zero, a recordable DVD-Download disc is not present.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 04h.

The Maximum number of Scramble Extent information entries field shall be set to maximum number of entries that the Drive can handle in a single SEND DISC STRUCTURE command. This number shall not be less than 15.

A Drive reporting the DVD CSS Managed Recording Feature shall support the commands shown in Table 201.

Table 201 — Commands required by the DVD CSS Managed Recording Feature

Op Code	Command Name	Reference
Adh	READ DISC STRUCTURE, Format code = 02h shall be supported.	6.22
A4h	REPORT KEY, Key Class = 00h shall be supported	6.28
BFh	SEND DISC STRUCTURE, Format Code = 17h shall be supported	6.36
A3h	SEND KEY, Key Class = 00h and all KEY Formats except 010001b shall be supported. The KEY Format 000100b (TITLE KEY) shall not succeed for CPPM protected sectors, since they do not contain a Title Key.	6.37

5.3.46 SecurDisc Feature (0113h)

The SecurDisc Feature identifies a Drive that supports SecurDisc content protection and is able to perform SecurDisc authentication process. This Feature shall be current only when an optical disc currently in the Drive can be used with SecurDisc. The Feature shall be current regardless of whether an optical disc has already been written to using SecurDisc or not.

The SecurDisc Feature descriptor is shown in Table 202.

Table 202 — The SecurDisc Feature Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Feature Code (0113h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved		Version = 0000b				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 00h							

The Feature Code shall be set to 0113h.

The Version field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.3.

The Current bit shall be defined as in 5.2.2.4. If the Current bit is set to zero, a SecurDisc content protection capable medium is not present.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 00h.

A Drive reporting the SecurDisc Feature shall support the commands as specified in Table 203.

Table 203 — Commands required by the SecurDisc Feature

Op Code	Command Name	Reference
A4h	REPORT KEY, Key Class = 21h with KEY Formats 000000b, 000001b, 000010b and 111111b shall be supported	6.28
A3h	SEND KEY, Key Class = 21h with KEY Format 000001b shall be supported	6.37

5.3.47 OSSC Feature

When the OSSC Feature is present in the feature list, the Drive claims support for the Trusted Computing Group capabilities described by the Optical Security Subsystem Class.

Table 204 — OSSC Feature Descriptor Format

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Feature Code = 0142h							
1								
2	Reserved		Version				Persistent	Current
3	Additional Length = 2*P+2							
4	PSAU	LOSPB	Reserved					ME
5	Number of Profiles (P)							
6	1^{st} Profile Number							
7								
8	2^{nd} Profile Number							
9								
…								
2*P+4	Last Profile Number							
2*P+5								

The Feature Code field shall be set to 0142h.

The Version Field shall be set to 0000b.

The Persistent bit shall be set to zero.

If the Current bit is set to zero, the currently mounted medium is not recognized as a TCG initialized medium. If the Current bit is set to one, the currently mounted medium is recognized as a TCG initialized medium.

The Additional Length field shall be set to 2*P+2, where P is the Number of Profiles.

When PSAU is set to zero, the Drive does not support PSA updates on write-once media. When PSAU is set to one, the Drive supports PSA updates on write-once media.

When LOSPB is set to zero, the Drive does not support linked OSPBs, limiting the number of users to independently connectable users to 112. When LOSPB is set to one, the Drive does supports linked OSPBs.

When ME (Mandatory Encryption) is set to one, the Drive is restricted to recording only the OSSC Disc Format.

The Number of Profiles field specifies the number of profiles for which the OSSC Feature may become current.

The list of profile numbers that follow the Number of Profiles field is a list of profiles for which the OSSC Feature may become current. Each profile number shall appear in the list exactly once. The list shall be sorted from smallest to largest profile number.

Drives that claim the OSSC Feature shall implement the commands specified in Table 205.

Table 205 — OSSC Feature Commands

Op Code	Command Description	Reference
A2h	SECURITY PROTOCOL IN Security Protocol 06h with Security Protocol Specific codes 7007h and 7008h shall be supported	
B5h	SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT Security Protocol 06h with Security Protocol Specific codes 7007h and 7008h shall be supported	

5.4 Profile Definitions

5.4.1 Overview

Profiles define a base set of functions for Drives. A Drive that specifies a Profile as current shall support all Features required by that Profile, but not all Features may be current. If the Drive is not ready (i.e., a Not Ready response to a TEST UNIT READY command) no Profile shall be current (e.g., a Drive, with unformatted media, may not be able to read or write and the corresponding Features are not current). However, the Profile corresponding to the Drive/media system may be current, (e.g.., a DVD-RAM Drive with unformatted media loaded may claim compliance to the DVD-RAM Profile, while a DVD-RAM Drive with no media loaded shall claim no Profile as current.)

Each profile shall include the Core, Morphing, and Removable Media Features its mandatory feature list.

Drives may support Features in addition to those required by the Profile. A single device may implement more than one Profile, and more than one Profile may be current at any given time. Table 92 shows the list of profiles defined in this document.

5.4.2 No Current Profile (0000h)

The Feature Header (Table 87) contains the Current Profile field. When no supported profile is current, the Current Profile field shall be zero. Consequently, no profile shall be defined for profile number 0000h.

When the Current Profile number is 0000h, the Core, Morphing, and Removable Media Features shall be Current.

5.4.3 Removable Disk Profile (0002h)

Drives identifying Profile 0002h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 206.

Table 206 — Mandatory Features for Removable Disks

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing.
0020h	Random Writable	Write support for randomly addressed writes
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
0024h	Defect Management	Ability of the Drive/media system to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time

5.4.4 CD-ROM Profile (0008h)

Drives identifying Profile 0008h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 207.

Table 207 — Mandatory Features for CD-ROM

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing.
001Eh	CD Read	The ability to read CD specific structures
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time

5.4.5 CD-R Profile (0009h)

Drives identifying Profile 0009h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 208.

Table 208 — Mandatory Features for CD-R

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Eh	CD Read	The ability to read CD specific structures
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support of sequential recording
002Dh	CD Track at Once	Ability to write CD with Track at Once recording
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters

5.4.6 CD-RW Profile (000Ah)

Drives identifying Profile 000Ah as current shall support the Features listed in Table 209.

Table 209 — Mandatory Features for CD-RW

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Dh	Multi-Read	The Drive complies with OSTA Multi-Read
001Eh	CD Read	The ability to read CD specific structure
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support of sequential recording
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Write support for media that shall be written in multiples of logical blocks
002Dh	CD Track at Once	Ability to write CD with Track at Once recording
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters

5.4.7 DVD-ROM Profile (0010h)

Drives identifying Profile 0010h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 210.

Table 210 — Mandatory Features for DVD-ROM

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing.
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read using Host requested performance parameters

5.4.8 DVD-R Sequential recording Profile (0011h)

Drives identifying Profile 0011h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 211.

Table 211 — Mandatory Features for DVD-R Sequential recording

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support for sequential recording
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Ability to write data in Disc At Once mode
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
0108h	Drive Serial Number	Ability to provide Drive serial number

5.4.9 DVD-RAM Profile (0012h)

Drives identifying Profile 0012h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 212.

Table 212 — Mandatory Features for DVD-RAM

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing.
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures.
0020h	Random Writable	Write support for randomly addressed writes
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
0024h	Defect Management	Ability of the Drive/media system to provide an apparently defect-free space
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters.

5.4.10 DVD-RW Restricted Overwrite Profile (0013h)

Drives identifying Profile 0013h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 213.

Table 213 — Mandatory Features for DVD-RW Restricted Overwrite

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing.
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures.
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Ability to write DVD-RW specific structure
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters.
0108h	Drive Serial Number	Ability to provide Drive serial number

5.4.11 DVD-RW Sequential Recording Profile (0014h)

Drives identifying Profile 0014h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 214.

Table 214 — Mandatory Features for DVD-RW Sequential recording

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures.
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support for sequential recording
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Ability to write data in Disc At Once mode
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
0108h	Drive Serial Number	Ability to provide Drive serial number

5.4.12 DVD-R Dual Layer Sequential Recording Profile (0015h)

Drives identifying Profile 0015h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 215.

Table 215 — Mandatory Features for DVD-R Dual Layer Sequential recording

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures.
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support for sequential recording
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Ability to write data in Disc At Once mode
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
0108h	Drive Serial Number	Ability to provide Drive serial number

5.4.13 DVD-R Dual Layer Jump Recording Profile (0016h)

Drives identifying Profile 0016h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 216.

Table 216 — Mandatory Features for DVD-R Dual Layer Jump recording

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures.
0033h	Layer Jump Recording	Write support for Layer Jump recording
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
0108h	Drive Serial Number	Ability to provide Drive serial number

5.4.14 DVD-Download Disc Recording Profile (0018h)

Drives identifying Profile 0018h as current shall support the Features listed in Table 217.

Table 217 — Mandatory Features for DVD-Download Disc Recording

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures.
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Ability to write data in Disc At Once mode
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to response to all commands within a specific time
0106h	DVD CSS	The ability to perform DVD CSS/CPPM authentication and RPC
0107h	Real-Time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
0108h	Drive Serial Number	Ability to provide Drive serial number
010Eh	DVD CSS Managed Recording	Ability to perform DVD CSS managed recording

5.4.15 DVD+RW Profile (001Ah)

Drives identifying Profile 001Ah as current shall support the features listed in Table 218.

Table 218 — Mandatory Features for DVD+RW

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures
0020h	Random Writable	Write support for randomly addressed writes
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
002Ah	DVD+RW	Support for reading and optionally writing DVD+RW Media
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
010Ah	DCBs	The ability to read and optionally write DCBs.

5.4.16 DVD+R Profile (001Bh)

Drives identifying Profile 001B as current shall support the features listed in Table 219.

Table 219 — Mandatory Features for DVD+R

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures
002Bh	DVD+R	Support for reading and optionally writing DVD+R Media and formats
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
010Ah	DCBs	The ability to read and optionally write DCBs.

5.4.17 DVD+R Dual Layer Profile (002Bh)

Drives identifying Profile 002B as current shall support the features listed in Table 220.

Table 220 — Mandatory Features for DVD+R

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP=1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
001Fh	DVD Read	The ability to read DVD specific structures
003Bh	DVD+R Dual Layer	Support for reading and optionally writing DVD+R Dual Layer Media and formats
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read and write using Host requested performance parameters
010Ah	DCBs	The ability to read and optionally write DCBs.

5.4.18 BD-ROM Profile (0040h)

Drives identifying Profile 0040h as current shall support the features listed in Table 221.

Table 221 — Mandatory Features for BD-ROM

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	Device changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
0040h	BD Read	The ability to read BD specific structures
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters.

5.4.19 BD-R Sequential Recording (SRM) Profile (0041h)

Drives identifying Profile 0041h as current shall support the features listed in Table 222.

Table 222 — Features For BD-R SRM Profile

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	Device changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Write support for sequential recording
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
0024h	Defect Management[1]	The Drive/media system is able to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space
0038h	BD-R POW[2]	The ability to permit logical overwrites from the user data area of the disc
0040h	BD Read	The ability to read BD specific structures
0041h	BD Write	The ability to write BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters.

[1] Defect Management Feature shall be marked not Current when no spares are allocated.
[2] If both the BD-R SRM profile and the BD-R POW feature are current, then the basic characteristics of sequential recording are maintained, but limited Pseudo-Overwrite is permitted. Such a disc is SRM+POW.

5.4.20 BD-R Random Recording (RRM) Profile (0042h)

Drives identifying Profile 0042h as current shall support the features listed in Table 223.

Table 223 — Features For BD-R RRM Profile

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	Device changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
0024h	Defect Management[1]	The Drive/media system is able to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space
0025h	Write-once	Write support for write-once media that is writable in random order
0040h	BD Read	The ability to read BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures
0041h	BD Write	The ability to write BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters.

[1] Defect Management Feature shall be marked not Current when no spares are allocated.

5.4.21 BD-RE Profile (0043h)

Drives identifying Profile 0043h as current shall support the features listed in Table 224.

Table 224 — Mandatory Features for BD-RE

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Mandatory behavior for all devices
0002h	Morphing	Device changes operational behavior upon events external to the Host
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0010h	Random Readable, PP = 1	Read ability for storage devices with random addressing
0020h	Random Writable	Write support for randomly addressed writes
0023h	Formattable	Support for formatting of media
0024h	Defect Management[1]	The Drive/media system is able to provide an apparently defect-free LBA space
0040h	BD Read	The ability to read BD specific structures
0041h	BD Write	The ability to write BD user data areas and certain BD specific structures
0100h	Power Management	Host and device directed power management
0105h	Timeout	Ability to respond to all commands within a specific time
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Ability to read (and optionally write) using Host requested performance parameters.
[1] Defect Management Feature shall be marked not Current when no spares are allocated.		

5.4.22 Profile FFFFh: Drives Not Conforming to a Standard Profile

Profile FFFFh is reported for media that has no defined profile.

Drives identifying Profile FFFFh as current shall support the Features listed in Table 225.

Table 225 — Mandatory Features for Drives Not Conforming to a Standard Profile

Feature Number	Feature Name	Description
0000h	Profile List	A list of all Profiles supported by the device
0001h	Core	Basic Functionality
0002h	Morphing	The device changes its operational behavior due to external events
0003h	Removable Medium	The medium may be removed from the device
0100h	Power Management	Host and Drive power management

6 Commands

6.1 Overview

The commands described in this clause are defined uniquely for Multi-Media Drives or have a unique behavior when performed by a Multi-Media Drive.

Certain commands or command options that were present in earlier versions of this standard have been defined as Legacy and are no longer recommended for use in Multi-Media devices and are not described in this clause. Those commands and command options are described in Annex E.

Some commands that may be implemented by MM Drives are not described in this standard, but are found in other SCSI standards. For a complete list of these commands refer to [SPC-3].

The commands described in this clause are listed in Table 226 and Table 227.

Table 226 — Commands for Multi-Media Drives in Alphabetic order

Command Name	Op Code	Reference
BLANK	A1h	6.2
CLOSE TRACK SESSION	5Bh	6.3
FORMAT UNIT	04h	6.4
GET CONFIGURATION	46h	6.5
GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION	4Ah	6.6
GET PERFORMANCE	Ach	6.7
INQUIRY	12h	6.8
LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM	A6h	6.9
MECHANISM STATUS	BDh	6.10
MODE SELECT (10)	55h	6.11
MODE SENSE (10)	5Ah	6.12
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	1Eh	6.13
READ (10)	28h	6.14
READ (12)	A8h	6.15
READ BUFFER	3Ch	6.16
READ BUFFER CAPACITY	5Ch	6.17
READ CAPACITY	25h	6.18
READ CD	Beh	6.19
READ CD MSF	B9h	6.20
READ DISC INFORMATION	51h	6.21
READ DISC STRUCTURE	Adh	6.22
READ FORMAT CAPACITIES	23h	6.23
READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER (Also known as the SERVICE ACTION IN (12) command, Service Action = 01h)	Abh/01h	6.24
READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	43h	6.25
READ TRACK INFORMATION	52h	6.26
REPAIR TRACK	58h	6.27
REPORT KEY	A4h	6.28
REPORT LUNS	A0h	6.29
REQUEST SENSE	03h	6.30
RESERVE TRACK	53h	6.31
SECURITY PROTOCOL IN	A2h	6.32
SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT	B5h	6.33

Table 226 — Commands for Multi-Media Drives in Alphabetic order (continued)

Command Name	Op Code	Reference
SEEK (10)	2Bh	6.34
SEND CUE SHEET	5Dh	6.35
SEND DISC STRUCTURE	BFh	6.36
SEND KEY	A3h	6.37
SEND OPC INFORMATION	54h	6.38
SET CD SPEED	BBh	6.39
SET READ AHEAD	A7h	6.40
SET STREAMING	B6h	6.41
START STOP UNIT	1Bh	6.42
SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	35h	6.43
TEST UNIT READY	00h	6.44
VERIFY (10)	2Fh	6.45
WRITE (10)	2Ah	6.46
WRITE (12)	Aah	6.47
WRITE AND VERIFY (10)	2Eh	6.48
WRITE BUFFER	3Bh	6.49

Table 227 — Commands for Multi-Media Drives in Operation code order

Command Name	Op Code	Reference
TEST UNIT READY	00h	6.44
REQUEST SENSE	03h	6.30
FORMAT UNIT	04h	6.4
INQUIRY	12h	6.8
START STOP UNIT	1Bh	6.42
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	1Eh	6.13
READ FORMAT CAPACITIES	23h	6.23
READ CAPACITY	25h	6.18
READ (10)	28h	6.14
WRITE (10)	2Ah	6.46
SEEK (10)	2Bh	6.34
WRITE AND VERIFY (10)	2Eh	6.48
VERIFY (10)	2Fh	6.45
SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	35h	6.43
WRITE BUFFER	3Bh	6.49
READ BUFFER	3Ch	6.16
READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	43h	6.25
GET CONFIGURATION	46h	6.5
GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION	4Ah	6.6

Table 227 — Commands for Multi-Media Drives in Operation code order (continued)

Command Name	Op Code	Reference
READ DISC INFORMATION	51h	6.21
READ TRACK INFORMATION	52h	6.26
RESERVE TRACK	53h	6.31
SEND OPC INFORMATION	54h	6.38
MODE SELECT (10)	55h	6.11
REPAIR TRACK	58h	6.27
MODE SENSE (10)	5Ah	6.12
CLOSE TRACK SESSION	5Bh	6.3
READ BUFFER CAPACITY	5Ch	6.17
SEND CUE SHEET	5Dh	6.35
REPORT LUNS	A0h	6.29
BLANK	A1h	6.2
SECURITY PROTOCOL IN	A2h	6.32
SEND KEY	A3h	6.37
REPORT KEY	A4h	6.28
LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM	A6h	0
SET READ AHEAD	A7h	6.40
READ (12)	A8h	6.15
WRITE (12)	Aah	6.47
READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER (Also known as the SERVICE ACTION IN (12) command, Service Action = 01h)	Abh/01h	6.24
GET PERFORMANCE	Ach	6.7
READ DISC STRUCTURE	Adh	6.22
SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT	B5h	6.33
SET STREAMING	B6h	6.41
READ CD MSF	B9h	6.20
SET CD SPEED	BBh	6.39
MECHANISM STATUS	BDh	6.10
READ CD	Beh	6.19
SEND DISC STRUCTURE	BFh	6.36

6.2 BLANK Command

6.2.1 Introduction

ReWritable media that reports either the Restricted Overwrite Feature or the Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature carries the restriction that it shall be recorded in a sequential way. When those features are present, it becomes necessary to provide a re-initialization of the media to the blank state. The blanking action performed may be either Logical or physical. E.g., CD-RW data is overwritten with Mode 0 data, while the blanking action performed on DVD-RW is a physical erase. The BLANK command provides this capability. Features that specify the use of the BLANK command are listed in Table 228.

Table 228 — Features Associated with the BLANK Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory for CD-RW and DVD-RW
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory for DVD-RW
002Dh	CD Track At Once	Mandatory for CD-RW
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Mandatory for DVD-RW
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.2.2 The CDB and its Parameters

6.2.2.1 The CDB

The BLANK CDB is shown in Table 229.

Table 229 — BLANK CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (A1h)							
1	Reserved			Immed	Reserved	Blanking Type		
2	(MSB) Start Address/Logical Track Number							
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							
9	Reserved							
10	Reserved							
11	Control							

6.2.2.2 Immed

If Immed is zero, then the requested operation is processed to completion prior to returning status. If Immed is one, then status is returned once the operation has begun.

6.2.2.3 Blanking Type

Blanking Type identifies the method and coverage of blanking. Blanking Type codes for CD-RW are defined in Table 230 and Blanking Type codes for DVD-RW are defined in Table 231.

6.2.2.4 Start Address/Track Number

Start Address/Logical Track Number meanings are defined within the specific Blanking Type cases as shown in Table 230 and Table 231.

Table 230 — Blanking Types CD-RW

Value	Name	Description
000b	Blank the disc	The entire disc is to be blanked. The Start Address parameter is ignored. The PCA may be excluded. At completion of the operation: the entire PMA, the area from the start time of the Lead-in through the last possible start time of Lead-out plus 6 750 blocks is blanked.
001b	Minimally blank the disc	Blanks only the PMA, disc Lead-in and the pre-gap of the first track. The Start Address parameter is ignored. This is used for blanking a disc quickly. After completion of this command the disc is treated as a blank disc. Caution should be exercised when using this command since the program area may still contain user data.
010b	Blank a Track	Blanks the track specified in the Start Address/Track Number field. This command blanks the track only; it does not blank the TOC or the PMA. The track to be blanked shall be in the incomplete session. If the Start Address/Track Number does not reference a track in the incomplete session, then this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
011b	Un-reserve a Track	All data for the last track in the incomplete session shall be blanked. If the track has a PMA entry, the PMA entry shall be blanked. If the disc is blank, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status. The Start Address/Track Number parameter is ignored.
100b	Blank a Track Tail	This blank type is valid only for packet tracks within the incomplete session. If Start Address/Track Number specifies a valid LBA within a track and the LBA is the first sector of a packet, then the area between the LBA and the end of the track that shall be blanked. If the LBA does not exist in any track within the incomplete session, or if the LBA is not the first sector of a packet, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE. If the track is not a packet track, then this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
101b	Unclose the last complete session	If the disc is blank or the last session is not empty and not closed, then this command shall be terminated with GOOD status. If the last session is empty or if the disc is finalized, the Lead-in and Lead-out of the last complete session shall be blanked.
110b	Blank the last non-empty Session	If the last session is empty, then the Lead-in, program area, and Lead-out of the last compete session shall be blanked. If the last session is incomplete, its program area shall be blanked. Each PMA item for each track in the newly blanked session shall be blanked. If the disc is blank, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.
111b	Reserved	

Table 231 — Blanking Types for DVD-RW SL media

Value	Name	Description
000b	Blank the disc	The entire disc is to be blanked. The area from the RMA through the end of Last address of data area plus 3 ECC blocks into the Lead-out area shall be blanked. The RMA Lead-in and six RMD blocks at the beginning of RMA shall not be blanked. The Start Address or Track Number parameter is ignored. If a disc is to be blanked that is already fully blanked, no error shall be reported.
001b	Minimally blank the disc	This operation is used for blanking a disc quickly. The Lead-in and the RMA shall be blanked. The RMA Lead-in and six RMD blocks at the beginning of RMA shall not be blanked. The Start Address or Track Number parameter is ignored. Caution should be exercised when using this command since the data area still contains user data. If a disc is to be blanked that is already fully/minimally blanked, no error shall be reported.
010b	Reserved	
011b	Un-reserve a Track	This operation is valid only when the last session has the incomplete state. If the last track is invisible, the track that immediately precedes the invisible track and its RMD entry are blanked. If the last track is incomplete, the incomplete track is blanked. The Start Address or Track Number parameter is ignored.
100b	Blank a Track Tail	This blanking type is valid for only a incrementally recorded track. The track to be blanked shall be in an incomplete session. Blank the area between the LBA specified in Start Address or Track Number field and the end of the track that includes the LBA specified. When the track that is to be blanked is complete track and if the next track is recorded, the last ECC block of the complete track shall be retained as BSGA to guarantee next track readable. If attempting to blank a track that causes generation of fourth NWA, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/NO MORE TRACK RESERVATIONS ALLOWED. The LBA specified shall be the first user data block of an ECC block and shall be an existing linking block of a track. If the start address sector is not a linking block, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.
101b	Unclose the last complete session	This blanking type is valid for only a incrementally recorded track. If the disc is blank or the last session is not empty and not closed, then this command shall be terminated with GOOD status. If the last session is empty or if the disc is finalized, the Lead-in and Lead-out of the last complete session shall be blanked.
110b	Blank Session	If the last session is complete, its Lead-in/Border-in through the end of the Lead-out/Border-out shall be blanked. If the last session is incomplete state, all track(s) in the incomplete session shall be blanked. If the last session is empty state, the complete session immediately preceding the empty session shall be blanked. If the disc is blank, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.
111b	Reserved	

6.2.3 Command Processing

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

During a Blanking operation that began with the CDB Immed bit set to one, the Drive shall respond to commands as follows:

1. In response to all commands except REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, and TEST UNIT READY, the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS.
2. In response to the TEST UNIT READY command, the Drive should return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS. Some legacy implementations allowed for a GOOD status response to a TEST UNIT READY command. This behavior is not recommended.
3. In response to the INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands, the Drive shall respond as commanded.
4. In response to the REQUEST SENSE command, unless an error has occurred, the Drive shall return a SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS, with the sense key specific bytes set for progress indication.

If the Drive changes to a not ready state during execution, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. When execution is completed and the state returns to ready, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. If the blanking results in one or more features changing currency, an additional Operational Change Event shall be generated.

Ready polling should be done by repetitively issuing the READ DISC INFORMATION command.

6.2.4 Timeouts

The BLANK command belongs to timeout group 2 when Immed is zero. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

When the Immed is set to one, status shall be returned within a Group 1 timeout.

6.2.5 Error Reporting

When the command operation began with the CDB Immed bit set to one, it is possible that a deferred error may be reported in some future command.

Recommended error reporting is defined in Table 232.

Table 232 — Recommended Errors for the BLANK Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Write errors	Table F.7	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.3 CLOSE TRACK SESSION Command

6.3.1 Introduction

The CLOSE TRACK SESSION command allows closure of either a Logical Track or a session. The features associated with this command are shown in Table 233.

Table 233 — Features Associated with the CLOSE TRACK SESSION command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
002Ah	DVD+RW	Mandatory (when Write bit is one)
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory (when Write bit is one)
002Dh	CD Track At Once	Mandatory
0033h	Layer Jump Recording	Mandatory
0034h	Layer Jump Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0035h	Stop Long Operation	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R Dual Layer	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.3.2 The CDB and its Parameters

6.3.2.1 The CDB

The CLOSE TRACK SESSION CDB is shown in Table 234.

Table 234 — CLOSE TRACK SESSION CDB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (5Bh)							
1	Reserved							Immed
2	Reserved					Close Function		
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Logical Track Number						
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							
9	Control							

6.3.2.2 Immed

The Immed bit allows execution of the close function as an immediate operation. If Immed is zero, then the requested close operation is processed to completion prior to returning status. If Immed is one, then status is returned once the close operation has begun.

6.3.2.3 Close Functions

The Close Functions are specific to disc type. If the Close Function is reserved for the currently mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.2.4 Logical Track Number

Logical Track Number meanings are defined within the specific Close Function cases.

6.3.3 Command Processing

6.3.3.1 Close Function Definitions for CD-R/-RW

6.3.3.1.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, 110b, and 111b are reserved when CD-R/-RW media is present.

If the Close Function is 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, 110b, or 111b when CD-R/-RW is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.1.2 Close Function 001b: Close a Logical Track

If this is the incomplete track, the Drive shall pad with all zero user data to the minimum length of 4 seconds. No other padding shall be done. If this is the invisible track, it is recommended that the Drive perform no close operation and terminate the command with GOOD status.

If this is a partially recorded or empty reserved track, the Drive shall pad until the end of the track. In the case of an empty track, the Drive shall write the track according to the Write Parameters Page. If the Write Parameters Page is inconsistent with the PMA, CHECK CONDITION status shall be returned and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK. For a partially recorded reserved track, the Drive shall continue writing in the same mode as the data already recorded.

If this is the invisible track, the Drive

6.3.3.1.3 Close Function 010b: Close Session/Finalize disc

If any reserved track in the last session is open, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/EMPTY OR PARTIALLY WRITTEN RESERVED TRACK.

If the incomplete track in the last Session is open, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR – INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION.

Behavior of the closing operation is dependent on the Multi-Session field in the Write Parameters Page (05h). If the last session is empty, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and no recording shall occur.

6.3.3.2 Close Function Definitions for DVD-R/-RW

6.3.3.2.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 000b, 100b, 101b, 110b, and 111b are reserved when DVD-R/-RW media is present.

If the Close Function is 000b, 100b, 101b, 110b, or 111b when DVD-R/-RW is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.2.2 Close Function 001b: Close a Logical Track

If this is the Partially Recorded Reserved Rzone or the Empty Reserved Rzone, the Drive shall pad the Rzone with 00h bytes. If the Rzone status is Invisible, no close operation is to be done. In the case of an Incomplete Rzone, no padding is to be done and the cached RMD shall be written into the RMA.

6.3.3.2.3 Close Function 010b: Close Session

If any Rzone in the last Session is not complete, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR – INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION. If any empty or partially recorded, reserved Rzones exist in the incomplete Session, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/EMPTY OR PARTIALLY WRITTEN RESERVED TRACK. Behavior of the closing operation is dependent on the Multisession/Border field in the Write Parameters mode page (05h). Closing an empty Session/Border shall not result in an error and a write to the media shall not occur.

For DVD-RW media in Restricted Overwrite mode, when the last Bordered Area is in the intermediate state (see 4.6.5.3), Lead-in and/or Border-out are recorded to make the Bordered Area complete state. If the first Bordered Area is to be closed, Lead-in and Border-out shall be recorded. If the second or a later Bordered Area is to be closed, only the Border-out shall be recorded.

6.3.3.2.4 Close Function 011b: Finalize the disc

For DVD-RW media, if the disc is in DVD-RW restricted overwrite mode and the last Bordered Area is complete state and Lead-out is not written, Lead-out shall be appended after the last Border-out. If the last Bordered Area is intermediate state, Border-out and Lead-out is recorded. If the disc is not formatted, the Drive shall report CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

For all other media, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.3 Close Function Definitions for DVD-R DL

6.3.3.3.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, 110b, and 110b are reserved when DVD-R DL media is present.

If the Close Function is 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, 110b, or 110b when DVD-R DL is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.3.2 Close Function 001b: Close a Logical Track

When the recording mode is Incremental Recording, closing an Rzone on DVD-R DL is the same as closing an Rzone on DVD-R.

When the recording mode is Layer Jump recording, closing an Rzone is different since the Rzone occupies both layers. Unrecorded blocks of an Rzone shall be padded by the Drive when the Rzone is closed. The Blank Area between a Complete Rzone and the Rzone to be closed may be padded during the Rzone closing operation (e.g., A Blank Area on L1 between the two Rzones). The Blank Area that is adjacent to a non-Complete Rzone shall not be padded

When an Invisible Rzone is closed, no action is performed. When the disc or the Border is closed, the Shifted Middle Area or Border-out is recorded from the NWA of the Invisible Rzone.

When an Incomplete Rzone of Manual Layer Jump or Regular Interval Layer Jump is closed, a Complete Rzone and Invisible Rzone are created. The LRA of new Complete Rzone is the same address of the LRA of old Incomplete Rzone. LRA means logical block address of the latest recorded user data sector.

When the NWA of an Incomplete Rzone is located on L0, a new Invisible Rzone is created from the NWA. The last sector of the ECC block that contains the last recorded sector on L0 becomes Layer Jump Address of the Complete Rzone. The unrecorded part of L1 shall be padded. If the previous Rzone is a Complete Rzone, the Blank Area may be padded.

6.3.3.3.3 Close Function 010b: Close Session

When the recording mode is Incremental Recording, the disc is single session. Otherwise, the description of closing the session on DVD-R DL is the same as DVD-R.

The Border Zone and multi-border recording are defined only for Layer Jump recording on DVD-R DL with Format 4 RMD.

The Border Zone size is dependent on its starting address. The Border-out start address shall be located after PSN 3FEFFh. The Drive shall pad with 00h data through PSN 3FEFFh when Bordered Area is closed and user data is recorded less than LBA 0FEFFh. The Next Border-in start address of Empty/Incomplete Bordered Area is calculated from the Start PSN of the first Rzone in the Bordered Area.

In Layer Jump recording mode, when the remaining user data capacity is not sufficient to record Border-out, the Borderout is recorded differently. When the remaining area is less than the Border-out size, the Border-out size is reduced to fit the remaining data recordable area and a part of Border-out (7 ECC blocks) is recorded at the innermost Middle Area with the Middle Area attribute. This assures the proper linear logical volume space.

When a Border is to be closed, the replacement data on a ECC block of an AP are copied to both Superficial Border-out and Superficial Border-in. If a ECC block of an AP is remapped, the corresponding RBVF shall be set to 1 except when the remapping is canceled in the first Bordered Area.

6.3.3.4 Close Function Definitions for DVD+R

6.3.3.4.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 000b, 011b, 100b, and 111b are reserved when DVD+R media is present.

If the Close Function is 000b, 011b, 100b, or 111b when DVD+R is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.4.2 Close Function 001b: Close the Logical Track

If the current track is reserved and blank or partially written, the Drive shall pad the track to its defined length. User data areas in all pad sectors shall be zero filled. If the track being closed is the incomplete track and the incomplete track is not blank, then a new Session DCB shall be appended into the Session Identification Zone defining the existence of the track. If the track being closed is the incomplete track and the incomplete track is blank, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and sense data shall be set to NO SENSE/NO ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.

6.3.3.4.3 Close Function 010b: Close Session

If not all Tracks in the last Session are closed, the DVD+R Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense data shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR/ INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION.

Without closing the session, determine the number of ECC blocks remaining if the session is closed. If that number is less than 65, the disc shall be finalized. Otherwise, the session should be closed.

If the session being closed is session number 154, when the close session is requested, the Drive shall instead finalize the disc.

6.3.3.4.4 Close Function 101b: Finalize the Disc with minimal radius

Close the last session and finalize the disc. Once this close function has been processed, no more writing to the disc is allowed. If not all Tracks in the last Session are closed, the DVD+R Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense data shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR/ INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION.

In order to assure maximum interchange compatibility with read only devices, Guard Zone 2 shall be recorded to a device defined PSN that approximates a disc radius of 30 mm. Suggested value: 70DE0h (462 304).

6.3.3.4.5 Close Function 110b: Finalize the Disc

Close the last session and finalize the disc. Once this close function has been processed, no more writing to the disc is allowed. If not all Tracks in the last Session are closed, the DVD+R Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense data shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR/ INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION.

6.3.3.5 Close Function Definitions for DVD+R DL

6.3.3.5.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 000b, 011b, and 111b are reserved when DVD+R DL media is present.

If the Close Function is 000b, 011b, or 111b when DVD+R DL is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.5.2 Close Function 001b: Close a Logical Track

Close the fragment associated with the track number in the CDB as follows:

If the specified fragment is reserved and either blank or partially written, the DVD+R Dual Layer Drive shall pad the fragment to its defined length. User data areas in all pad sectors shall be zero filled. If the fragment being closed is the incomplete fragment and the incomplete fragment is not blank, then a new DCB shall be appended into the Session Identification Zone defining the existence of the fragment. If the fragment being closed is the incomplete fragment and the incomplete fragment is blank, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and sense data shall be set to NO SENSE/NO ADDITIONAL INFORMATION.

6.3.3.5.3 Close Function 010b: Close Session

If the session is not session 1 and finalization is not required, closing the session will not cause any Lead-out recording to be performed. When the first session is closed, a nominal Lead-out shall be recorded on L1. The close process is described as follows:

1. If the disc has been finalized, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.
2. If the disc contains an open session and the open session is blank, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.
3. If the disc contains an open session, and the open session is not blank, then the Drive shall verify that each defined fragment within the session is closed and that the incomplete fragment is blank. If this verification fails, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR/ INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION.
4. If the session is session 1, the Lead-in Zone shall be recorded. If the session is not session 1, the session Intro shall be recorded.
5. Resources for adding new sessions may be exhausted, thereby requiring finalization.
   a) If it is expected that processing the command results in less than 65 ECC blocks remaining, the disc shall instead be finalized.
   b) If the TOC Zone contains exactly one available entry, then the TOC Zone will be full once the instance of this session is recorded. In this case, the disc shall be finalized.

   Otherwise, the session closure shall be recorded, the TOC Zone shall be updated to include this session's instance, and the disc shall be left open.
6. If the last ECC block of the session closure is on L1 and the middle zones are not recorded, the middle zones shall be recorded.

L1	Lead-out Area	Data Zone 1			Middle Zone 1	
L0	Lead-in Area	Data Zone 0	Session with closure		Middle Zone 0	

7. If the session just closed is session 1 the nominal Lead-out shall be recorded on L1.

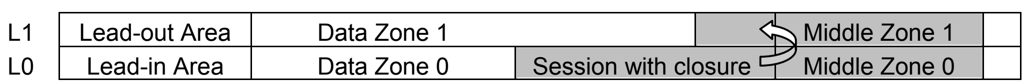
L1	Lead-out Area			Middle Zone 1	
L0	Lead-in Area	Session 1		Middle Zone 0	

6.3.3.5.4 Close Function 100b: Close Session with minimal radius

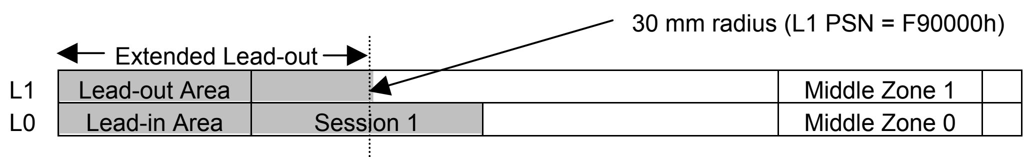
If the session is not session 1 and finalization is not required, closing the session will not cause any Lead-out recording to be performed. When the first session is closed, an extended Lead-out shall be recorded on L1 when conditions permit. The close process is described as follows:

1. If the disc has been finalized, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.
2. If the disc contains an open session and the open session is blank, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.
3. If the disc contains an open session, and the open session is not blank, then the Drive shall verify that each defined fragment within the session is closed and that the incomplete fragment is blank. If this verification fails, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SESSION FIXATION ERROR/ INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION.
4. If the session is session 1, the Lead-in Zone shall be recorded. If the session is not session 1, the session Intro shall be recorded.
5. Resources for adding new sessions may be exhausted, thereby requiring finalization.
   a) If the last ECC block of the session data is at or beyond the start of the extended Lead-out area, the disc shall be finalized and the command shall be terminated.
   b) If it is expected that processing the command results in less than 65 ECC blocks remaining, the disc shall instead be finalized, and the command shall be terminated.
   c) If the TOC Zone contains exactly one available entry, then the TOC Zone will be full once the instance of this session is recorded. In this case, the disc shall be finalized and the command shall be terminated.

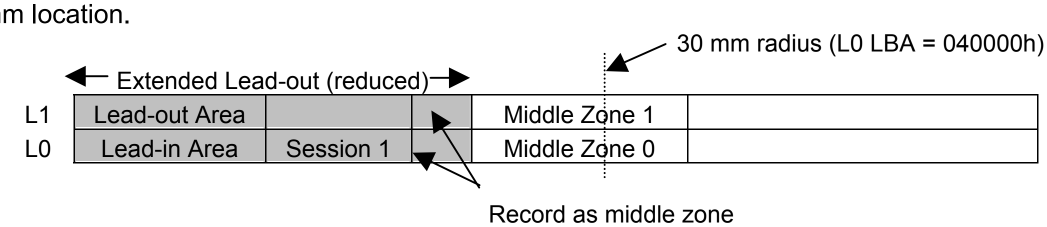
   Otherwise, the session closure shall be recorded, the TOC Zone shall be updated to include this session's instance, and the disc shall be left open.
6. If the last ECC block of the session closure is on L1 and the middle zones are not recorded, the middle zones shall be recorded.



7. If the session just closed is session 1, and the L0 middle zone start address is at least at a 30 mm radius, the extended Lead-out shall be recorded on L1.



8. If the session just closed is session 1, and the L0 middle zone start address is less than a 30 mm radius (approximately LBA 40000h), the disc shall be finalized. If recording is completed within L0, the L0 middle zone start address shall be moved to immediately following the last recorded data on L0 before finalizing the disc. If the L0 middle zone ends prior to the 30mm radius, the middle zone recording shall be extended to the 30mm location.



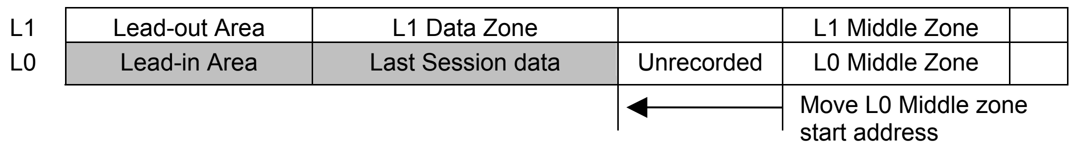
6.3.3.5.5 Close Function 101b: Finalize with Minimal Radius

If the disc has been finalized, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NO SENSE/NO ADDITIONAL SENSE.

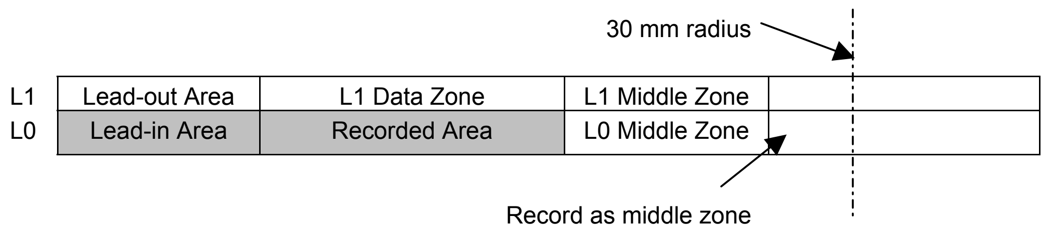
If the disc has not been finalized, finalization shall proceed as follows:

First ensure that L0 is completed:

1. If the L0 middle zone has been written, then the session to close is on L1. If the L0 middle zone ends prior to the 30 mm radius, the middle zone recording shall be extended to the 30 mm location.
2. If the L0 middle zone has not been written, then completing L0 is performed as follows:
   a) If recording is completed within L0, the L0 middle zone start address shall be changed to the first ECC block after the last recorded data.



   b) The session intro (Lead-in, if session 1) shall be recorded. The L0 middle zone shall be recorded to a nominal length starting at the L0 middle zone start address.
   c) If the L0 middle zone ends prior to the 30 mm radius, the middle zone recording shall be extended to the 30 mm location.



Next complete L1:

1. Write the L1 middle zone. It is strongly recommended that the L1 middle zone start at the radially equivalent position at which the L0 middle zone ends. The L1 middle zone recording should end at the radially equivalent position of the start of the L0 middle zone.
2. If the last session intro area is on L1, record the session intro.
3. All remaining, unrecorded L1 data zone ECC blocks shall be recorded as Lead-out. If unrecorded ECC blocks remain within the Lead-out area, those ECC blocks shall be recorded as Lead-out.

6.3.3.5.6 Close Function 110b: Finalize

In order to maximize read compatibility with DVD-RO devices, it is recommended to use close function 101b. Close function 101b is preferred due to its minimal radius requirements.

If the disc has been finalized, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NO SENSE/NO ADDITIONAL SENSE.

If the disc has not been finalized, finalization shall be performed as follows:

First ensure that L0 is completed:

1. If the L0 middle zone has been written, then the session to close is on L1.
2. If the L0 middle zone has not been written, then completing L0 is performed as follows:
   a) If recording is completed within L0, the L0 middle zone start address shall be changed to the first ECC block after the last recorded data.

L1	Lead-out Area	L1 Data Zone		L1 Middle Zone	
L0	Lead-in Area	Session	Unrecorded	L0 Middle Zone	

Move L0 Middle zone start address

   b) The session intro (Lead-in if session 1) shall be recorded. The L0 middle zone shall then be recorded to a nominal length starting at the L0 middle zone start address.

Next complete L1:

1. Write the L1 middle zone. It is strongly recommended that the L1 middle zone start at the radially equivalent position at which the L0 middle zone ends. The L1 middle zone recording should end at the radially equivalent position of the start of the L0 middle zone.
2. If the last session intro area is on L1, record the session intro.
3. All remaining, unrecorded L1 data zone ECC blocks shall be recorded as Lead-out. If unrecorded ECC blocks remain within the Lead-out area, those ECC blocks shall be recorded as Lead-out.

6.3.3.6 Close Function Definitions for DVD+RW

6.3.3.6.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 001b, 100b, 101b, 110b, and 111b are reserved when DVD+RW media is present.

If the Close Function is 001b, 100b, 101b, 110b, and 111b when DVD+RW is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.3.3.6.2 Close Function 000b: Quick Stop Background Format

Optional behavior for DVD+RW media is defined. If a background format is in progress and de-icing is not completed, the format de-icing operation shall be stopped at some DVD+RW ECC block boundary. No further writing shall occur. If the medium mounted is DVD+RW and there is no background format in progress, then no operation shall occur and this shall not be considered an error. In this case, the Drive shall support FDCB bit maps.

6.3.3.6.3 Close Function 010b: Compatibility Stop Background Format with minimal radius

If a background format is in progress, the format operation shall be stopped and the disc shall be structured for removal according to [DVD+Ref2] for the specific purpose of providing DVD-RO compatibility. In general, this means that a partial Lead-in shall be written, a temporary Lead-out shall be appended and all unrecorded gaps between Lead-in and temporary Lead-out shall be format written. The radius difference between the start of the temporary Lead-out and the end of the temporary Lead-out shall approximate 1 mm. The data zone shall be expanded to ensure that the total recorded area reaches at least a radius of 30 mm.

6.3.3.6.4 Close Function 011b: Compatibility Stop Background Format

If a background format is in progress, the format operation shall be stopped and the disc shall be structured for removal according to [DVD+Ref2] for the specific purpose of providing DVD-RO compatibility. In general, this means that a partial Lead-in shall be written, a temporary Lead-out shall be appended and all unrecorded gaps between Lead-in and temporary Lead-out shall be format written. The radius difference between the start of the temporary Lead-out and the end of the temporary Lead-out shall approximate 1 mm.

6.3.3.7 Close Function Definitions for BD-R

6.3.3.7.1 Reserved Close Functions

Close Functions 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, and 111b are reserved when BD-R media is present.

If the Close Function is 000b, 011b, 100b, 101b, or 111b when BD-R is the mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The Drive shall finalize the disc if there is no remaining space for recording of user data. This occurs automatically and is not related to the CLOSE TRASK SESSION command.

6.3.3.7.2 Close Function 001b: Close Logical Track

Close the Logical Track (SRR) identified by Logical Track Number field (T) in the CDB.

A BD-R SRR is closed by removing its number from the list of open SRRs in the SRRI. Padding is not required. Since the disc is not finalized, the updated SRRI shall be written into the current TDMA as a TDMS update unit. The actual write may be deferred.

If T is invisible, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status and sense data shall be set to NO SENSE/NO ADDITIONAL INFORMATION. If T is incomplete and not blank, then the length of T shall be set to its recorded length, creating a new, blank invisible SRR with Logical Track Number = T+1.

If a Logical Track is closed, it may contain some blank Clusters. If the Host chooses to read a sector from a blank Cluster of a closed Logical Track, the Drive shall return all zeros in place of sector data.

6.3.3.7.3 Close Function 010b: Close Session

Close the currently open session on a SRM-POW Disc.

If the currently mounted disc is formatted SRM+POW, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the currently mounted disc is SRM-POW and the currently open session is empty, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

If the currently mounted disc is SRM-POW and the currently open session is non-empty, each open SRR in the last Session shall be closed by the Drive prior to closing the session.

6.3.3.7.4 Close Function 110b: Finalize Disc

Close the last session and finalize the disc. Once this close function has been processed, no more writing to the disc is allowed. Each open SRR in the last Session shall be closed by the Drive prior to closing the session.

The disc shall be closed by writing the four DMA zones of the disc and the DMA access indicator.

6.3.3.8 General Execution Characteristics

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

During a Close Track/Session operation that began with the Immed bit set to one, the Drive shall respond to commands as follows:

a) In response to all commands except REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, and TEST UNIT READY, the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS.
b) In response to the TEST UNIT READY command, the Drive should return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS. Some legacy implementations allowed for a GOOD status response to a TEST UNIT READY command. This behavior is not recommended.
c) In response to the INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands, the Drive shall respond as commanded.
d) In response to the REQUEST SENSE command, unless an error has occurred, the Drive shall return with SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS or NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS, with the sense key specific bytes set for progress indication.

If the Drive changes to a not ready state during execution, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. When execution is completed and the state returns to ready, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. If the Closing a Track or Session results in one or more features changing currency, an additional Operational Change Event shall be generated.

6.3.4 Timeouts

The CLOSE TRACK SESSION command belongs to timeout group 2 when Immed is zero. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

When the Immed is set to one, status shall be returned within a Group 1 timeout.

6.3.5 Error Reporting

When the command operation began with the CDB Immed bit set to one, it is possible that a deferred error may be reported in some future command.

Recommended error reporting is defined in Table 235.

Table 235 — Recommended Errors for the CLOSE TRACK SESSION Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
Protocol errors	Table F.4	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Write errors	Table F.7	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.4 FORMAT UNIT Command

6.4.1 Introduction

The FORMAT UNIT command formats a medium into Host addressable logical blocks according to Host defined options. The medium may be certified and control structures created for the management of the medium and defects. The medium may or may not be altered.

The features associated with this command are shown in Table 236.

Table 236 — Features Associated with the FORMAT UNIT Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0023h	Formattable	Mandatory
002Ah	DVD+RW Basic Format	Mandatory when the Write bit is one
0041h	BD Write	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.4.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.4.2.1 The CDB

The FORMAT UNIT CDB is shown in Table 237.

Table 237 — FORMAT UNIT CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (04h)							
1	Restricted for [SBC-2]			FmtData	CmpList	Format Code		
2	Reserved							
3	Obsolete							
4	Obsolete							
5	Control							

6.4.2.2 FmtData

If the FmtData bit is zero, there is no parameter list. If FmtData is one, a parameter list is available from the Host. For all Multi-media Drives, FmtData shall be set to one. If FmtData is zero, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.4.2.3 CmpList

The CmpList bit is used in conjunction with the DCRT (Disable Certification) bit to determine usage of the existing G1-list, G2-list and SDL to construct new G1-list and G2-list (Table 238) on DVD-RAM media. If CmpList is set to zero, then the parameter list provided is in addition to those already available to the Drive. If CmpList is set to one, then the parameter list is complete and the Drive is to ignore any existing parameters. On CD-RW, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, BD-R, and BD-RE media, CmpList bit shall be set to zero.

Table 238 — DVD-RAM Defect List Handling

CmpList	DCRT	Certification	PDL			SDL	Remarks
			P-list	G1-list	G2-list		
0	0	Yes	Preserved	New from Certification	Disposed	Disposed	Slow initialization
0	1	No	Preserved	Preserved	Old + New from SDL	Disposed	Change linear replacement to slipping, quickly
1	0	Yes (Partial) Obsolete	Preserved	Old plus New from Certification	Disposed	Disposed	Create new defect list by disposing all except P-list and G1-list
1	1	No	Preserved	Preserved	Disposed	Disposed	Return to original slipping at the latest certification, quickly

6.4.2.4 Format Code

The Format Code identifies the parameter list format. The Format Code shall be set to one (001b).

6.4.3 Format Parameter List

6.4.3.1 List Format

The FORMAT UNIT parameter list (Table 239) consists of three descriptors: the Format List Header, the Initialization Pattern Descriptor, and the Format Descriptor.

Table 239 — Format Unit Parameter List

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 3	Format List Header							
4 – (n-1)	Initialization Pattern Descriptor (present when IP = 1)							
n to n+7	Format Descriptor							

For MM devices, there is no Initial Pattern Descriptor and exactly one Format Descriptor. Consequently, the Format Unit Parameter List length is 12 bytes.

6.4.3.2 Format List Header

The Format List Header (Table 240) provides several format control bits. Drives that implement these bits give Hosts additional control over the formatting operation. If the Host attempts to select any function not implemented by the Drive, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

Table 240 — Format List Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved							
1	FOV	DPRY (0)	DCRT	STPF (0)	IP (0)	Try-out	Immed	VS
2	(MSB) Format Descriptor Length							
3								(LSB)

If the Format Options Valid (FOV) bit is zero, the Drive shall use its default settings for the values of DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, and Try-out. When the FOV bit is zero, the Host should set DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, and Try-out to zero. If any of these bits are not zero, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST. If FOV is one, the Drive shall examine the setting of the DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, and Try-out.

The DPRY, DCRT, STPF, IP, and Try-out, Immed, and VS bits are defined as follows:

a) A Disable Primary (DPRY) bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Drive shall retain the manufacturer's certification list (Plist). When set to one, shall indicate that the manufacturer's certification list be retained but not used for defect management. DPRY bit shall be set to zero. If DPRY is set to one, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
b) If the Disable Certification (DCRT) bit is set to zero, the Drive shall perform a vendor-specific medium certification operation. A DCRT bit of one indicates that the Drive shall not perform the vendor-specific medium certification process or format verification operation while executing the FORMAT UNIT command.
c) The STPF bit is reserved. If STPF is not zero, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
d) If the Initialization Pattern (IP) bit is set to zero, an initialization pattern descriptor is not included and that the Drive shall use its default initialization pattern. If IP is set to one, an initialization pattern descriptor is sent to the Drive as part of the FORMAT UNIT Parameter List. IP shall be set to zero. If IP is set to one, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.
e) If Try-out is set to zero, the Drive shall perform format the disc as specified. If Try-out is set to one, the Drive shall determine the possibility of formatting the media, but the Drive shall not write to the media. If formatting is possible, then the command shall be terminated with GOOD status. If the Drive determines that error free formatting is not possible, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED.
f) If the immediate (Immed) bit is zero, status shall be returned only after the format operation has completed. If the Immed bit is set to one, the Drive shall return status as soon as the CDB and the Format Descriptor have been validated and it is determined that the format process is able to begin.
g) The Vendor Specific (VS) bit has a vendor-specific definition.

The Format Descriptor Length shall be set to 8. If any other value is found in this field, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

6.4.3.3 Format Descriptor

When the CDB Format Code is 001b, a Format Descriptor is included in the FORMAT UNIT Parameter List. The Format Descriptor (Table 241) is an eight-byte entry.

Table 241 — Format Code 001b Format Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1	Number of Blocks							
2								
3								(LSB)
4	Format Type						Format Sub-type	
5	(MSB)							
6	Type Dependent Parameter							
7								(LSB)

The Format Type field (Table 242) specifies the type of formatting. Format Sub-type identifies special characteristics for formatting the type. If not specified, the Format Sub-type field is reserved. Contents of the Number of Blocks field and the Type Dependent Parameter field depend on Format Type.

Table 242 — Format Types

Format Type	Description	Type Dependent Parameter
00h	Full Format	Block Length (0800h)
01h	Spare Area Expansion	Block Length (0800h)
10h	CD-RW/DVD-RW Full Format	CD Fixed Packet Size/ECC block size (16)
11h	CD-RW/DVD-RW Grow Session	CD Fixed Packet Size/ECC block size (16)
12h	Legacy, see Annex E.	—
13h	DVD-RW Quick Grow Last Border	ECC block size (16)
14h	Legacy, see Annex E.	—
15h	DVD-RW Quick Format	ECC block size (16)
16h	HD DVD-R Expand Test Zone, see Annex E.	—
17h	HD DVD-R DL and HD DVD-RW DL Instant Recording Setup for L1, see Annex E.	—
18h	DVD-RW DL Fast Re-format, see Annex E.	—
20h	Full Format with Sparing Parameters	Sparing Parameters
26h	DVD+RW Basic Format	New/Restart Format
30h	BD-RE Full Format with Spare Areas	Spare area size in Clusters
31h	BD-RE Full Format without Spare Areas	Block Length (0800h)
32h	BD-R Full Format with Spare Areas	Sparing Parameters

6.4.4 Command Processing

6.4.4.1 Overview

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

6.4.4.2 Formatting According to Format Type

6.4.4.2.1 Format Type = 00h (Full Format)

Formatting the entire media is specified. Unless otherwise specified, the Format Sub-type field is reserved. Typically, the Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks for the entire disc and the Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Block Length.

6.4.4.2.1.1 CD-RW

The entire media shall be format written in fixed length packets using parameters from the Write Parameter mode page information. After formatting ,the number of LBAs on the media shall be at least Number of Blocks. The Number of Blocks parameter may be rounded up. The Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Block Length (0800h).

6.4.4.2.1.2 DVD-RAM

The defect list handling is specified by the combination of the CmpList bit and the DCRT bit as shown in Table 238. In the case that the CmpList bit is set to zero and the DCRT bit is set to one, the Number of Blocks field shall be ignored and the number of addressable blocks shall be retained. Otherwise, the Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks for the whole disc. The Number of Blocks value shall be the value returned by the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command. The Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Block Length.

6.4.4.2.1.3 DVD-RW

This format operation is always available when DVD-RW media is present. The area from the beginning of the RMA to the end of the Lead-out shall be recorded. There is only one session on the medium and the number of Logical Tracks is one after this operation. The Disc Status field of Format 3 RMD shall be set to 12h when the operation is completed.

6.4.4.2.1.4 DVD+RW

When supported, this format type shall be defined identically to Format Type 26h (See 6.4.4.2.8).

6.4.4.2.1.5 BD-R

Format Type 00h requires that the Drive process the formatting process by using its default User Data Zone size, default spares allocation, and default TDMA allocation.

The Drive ignores the Number of Blocks field, and the Type Dependent Parameter.

Format Sub-type selects a variation of Format Type 00h for BD-R as shown in Table 243.

Table 243 — Format Sub-type Field

Format Sub-type Value	Description
00b	SRM+POW
01b	SRM-POW (with spare area(s) allocated)
10b	RRM
11b	Reserved

The total User Data Zone on the disc shall be the default size as reported by the Format Type 00h format descriptor returned by READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command.

As a part of the format process, the Drive shall allocate TDMA and spare areas according to vendor specific defaults. Table 244 shows an example of defaults for different BD-R discs.

Table 244 — Example of Default Allocations for Format Type 0, Format Sub-type 0

BD-R Disc	Allocations			
	Area	Spares	TDMA	Totals
80 mm Single Layer	ISA0	2 048	2 048	4 096
	OSA0	0	0	0
80 mm Dual Layer	ISA0	2 048	2 048	4 096
	OSA0	0	0	0
	OSA1	0	0	0
	ISA1	2 048	2 048	4 096
120 mm Single Layer	ISA0	2 048	2 048	4 096
	OSA0	4 096	4 096	8 192
120 mm Dual Layer	ISA0	2 048	2 048	4 096
	OSA0	4 096	4 096	8 192
	OSA1	4 096	4 096	8 192
	ISA1	2 048	2 048	4 096

6.4.4.2.1.6 BD-RE

Format Type 00h requires that the Drive process the formatting process by using its default User Data Zone size. The Drive ignores the Number of Blocks field, and the Block Length field. The Format Sub-type field is reserved. The default behavior of the format process is Quick Reformat.

The total User Data Zone on the disc shall be the default size as reported by the Format Type 00h format descriptor returned by READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command.

The Spare Area size shall be the default size as resulting from the default User Data Zone Size.

6.4.4.2.2 Format Type = 01h (Spare Area Expansion)

This Format Type is defined for DVD-RAM, and BD-RE media.

6.4.4.2.2.1 DVD-RAM

In order to keep more Spare area, this formatting is used. Eventually the capacity of the formatted area is reduced. Therefore, this formatting type is just available with the case of reduction of formatted capacity.

The Drive shall ignore the defect list handling specified by the combination of the CmpList bit and the DCRT bit. The defect list entries and the written user data within the range of the area that is specified by this command shall be preserved through the execution of this command. The number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks for the whole disc and the Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Block Length. Neither field is changeable from the values reported by the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command (6.23).

6.4.4.2.2.2 BD-RE

If the Expand bit is set to one in the Formattable Feature descriptor, Format Type 01h is supported and is used to convert some of the User Data Zone into Spare Area. Spare areas are permitted to be expanded when the total spare area size is non-zero. If the current disc formatting has no spare area allocated, then this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and the sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If the Number of Blocks field does not provide space for additional spare area, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

Only the last spare area may be expanded. On a SL disc, only the OSA0 may be expanded. On a DL disc, only the ISA1 may be expanded.

The Host should determine the location and size of the part of the User Data Zone that it expects to be taken as spares. User Data in that area should be preserved by the Host and all address links to that User Data should be removed.

Although defect status may change, each registered defect within the range of the area taken as spares shall remain a registered defect after the execution of this command. The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks for the whole disc and the Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Block Length.

Once formatting has completed, if space is available, the Host should restore any data that was copied off the disc.

6.4.4.2.3 Format Type = 10h (CD-RW, DVD-RW Full Format)

Formatting to create a session on CD/DVD-RW media is specified. The created session shall become the only session on the medium. The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks for the new session and the Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Fixed Packet Size for CD or set to ECC block size (16) for DVD-RW. The number of blocks field may be adjusted to a value less than or equal to the values reported by the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command (6.23). The Drive shall round the Number of Blocks up to be an integral multiple of the packet size for CD or set to ECC block size (16) for DVD-RW. The Packet Size field shall not be adjusted. In the case of CD media, if a different Fixed Packet Size is desired, the Host should modify the Write Parameters Page. If the Fixed Packet Size in the Type Dependent Parameter is different from the Fixed Packet Size in the Write Parameters mode page, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

On DVD-RW media, this format operation is always available. The track number in the created session is one after this operation. The Disc Status field of Format 3 RMD shall be set to 12h when the operation is completed.

6.4.4.2.4 Format Type = 11h (CD-RW, DVD-RW Grow Session)

In the case of CD-RW, formatting to expand the last session is specified. The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks to be enlarged and the Type Dependent Parameter field specifies the Packet Size. The Number of Blocks field may be adjusted to a value greater than the existing Session size and less than or equal to the values reported by the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command. The Drive shall round the Number of Blocks up to be an integral multiple of the packet size. The Packet Size field shall not be adjusted. If the Fixed Packet Size in the Type Dependent Parameter is different from the Fixed Packet Size in the Write Parameters mode page, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

In the case of DVD-RW, formatting to expand the last session and enter the last session program area into intermediate state is specified. The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks to be added to current session capacity and the Type Dependent Parameter field is set to ECC block size (16). The Drive shall round the Number of Blocks up to be an integral multiple of the ECC block size.

This format operation is available only when a disc is in restricted overwrite mode and the last session is in a complete state. Growing of session operation shall start from the next sector of End Sector Number of Track #n field that is corresponded to the last track. End PSN of Data Area and Start PSN of the current Lead-out/Border-out field of Lead-in/Border-in shall be changed to reflect the expanded session. The number of sessions and tracks does not change after this operation.

6.4.4.2.5 Format Type = 13h (DVD-RW Quick Grow the last Session)

Formatting to expand the last session and enter the last session into intermediate state of a DVD-RW medium is specified. The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks to be added to current session capacity and the Type Dependent Parameter field is set to ECC block size (16). The Drive shall round the Number of Blocks up to be an integral multiple of the ECC block size.

This format operation is available only when the disc is in restricted overwrite mode and the last session is complete state. Growing of session operation shall start from the next sector of End Sector Number of Track #n field that is corresponded to the last track.

The number of sessions and tracks does not change after this operation. The Disc Status field of Format 3 RMD shall be set to 13h when the operation is completed. End PSN of Data Area field in Lead-in/Border-in of the last session shall be set to 30000h. And Start PSN of the current Border-out and Start PSN of the next Border-in field in Lead-in/Border-in of the last session shall be set to 00h.

6.4.4.2.6 Format Type = 15h (DVD-RW Quick)

Formatting to create an Intermediate State session on DVD-RW media is specified. The created session shall become the only session on the medium. The Number of Blocks field specifies the number of addressable blocks for the new session and the Type Dependent Parameter field is set to ECC block size (16). The Number of Blocks field may be adjusted to a value less than or equal to the values reported by the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command. The Drive shall round the Number of Blocks up to be an integral multiple of the ECC block size for DVD.

This format operation is always available. If a disc is to be formatted that is blanked, new intermediate state session is created at the beginning of the disc and the recording mode is changed to restricted overwrite mode. The number of track in the created session is one after this operation. The Disc Status field of Format 3 RMD shall be set to 13h when the operation is completed.

6.4.4.2.7 Format Type = 20h (Full Format with sparing parameters)

This Format Type is defined for DVD-RAM media.

The Number of Blocks field specifies the maximum number of addressable blocks for the whole disc. The Type Dependent Parameter is shown in Table 245. M specifies SL where SL = 2^M, 4 ≤ M ≤ 15 or SL = 0 if M = 0 and N identifies SI where SI = 2^N, 4 ≤ N ≤ 24.

Table 245 — Type Dependent Parameter for Format Type 20h

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
5	Integer M such that M = 0 or 4 ≤ M ≤ 15							
6	Reserved							
7	Integer N such that							

The drive shall verify that SL and SI are usable values (will not cause overflow of the SDL).

6.4.4.2.8 Format Type = 26h, (DVD+RW Basic Format)

If the currently mounted medium is not DVD+RW, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

The Number of Blocks field shall be selected according to the following:

1. The Number of Blocks (X) value returned by the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command format descriptor for format type 26h is permitted.
2. In the case of DL, the Host may shift the middle zones by selecting a non-zero integral multiple of 32 that is less than X.
3. If the Host selects FFFFFFFFh, the Drive shall substitute the value X.

If the Host sends any other value, then the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

Formatting operates in background for Format Type 26h. The Host may suspend a format in progress and may restart the format. Implementation of background format is mandatory.

The Type Dependent Parameter is shown in Table 246.

Table 246 — Type Dependent Parameter for Format Type 26h

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
5	Reserved							
6								
7	Reserved						Quick Start	Restart

When Quick Start is zero, the format operation shall initialize the Lead-in according to [DVD+Ref2] prior to declaring the format command complete. When Quick Start is one, the format operation shall not initialize the entire Lead-in prior to sending GOOD status for the format command. The amount of the Lead-in initialized by Quick Start formatting is vendor specific.

When Restart is set to zero, the Drive shall perform a new format.

When Restart is set to one, the DVD+RW Drive shall continue a suspended background format. All other fields in the Type Dependent Parameter shall be ignored. If there is no suspended background format to continue, the DVD+RW Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense data to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR.

DCRT has no meaning when formatting type 26h. The device ignores DCRT.

6.4.4.2.9 Format Type = 30h (Format BD-RE with Spare Areas)

6.4.4.2.9.1 General

Format Sub-type (Table 247) selects a variation of Format Type 30h that is independent of the setting of the DCRT bit in the Format List Header.

Table 247 — Format Sub-type Field

Format Sub-type Value	Description
00b	Quick Reformat: If the disc is unformatted, the format process shall simply initialize the disc structures with no certification. If the disc has been previously formatted, a Quick Reformat shall be performed. Quick Reformat consists of declaring that all Clusters marked as defective in the DFL become marked as possibly bad during the reformat. Assigned spares are released.
01b	No Certification: No certification shall be applied to the data area after disc structures have been initialized. The defect tables shall be initialized to indicate no media defects.
10b	Full Certification: The entire data area shall be certified. The defect tables shall be initialized with defects discovered during the certification process.
11b	Quick Certification: If the media has been previously formatted, the defect tables shall be reconstructed by certifying only the Clusters that were previously declared to be defective. If the disc is unformatted, the format process shall only initialize the disc structures with no certification of the data zone.

Format Type 30h requires that the Drive format the disc in order that the User Data Zone contains at least Number of Blocks. The number of spare Clusters allocated shall be less than or equal to:

S = FI[(Data Zone Size – Number of Blocks)/32].

(FI = Floor Integer, see 3.1)

Allocation rules (Table 248) for spare areas vary for number of layers, but are unaffected by disc size (i.e. 80mm or 120mm).

Table 248 — Maximum Spare Area Sizes on BD-RE

Disc / Spare Area	80 mm Single Layer	80 mm Dual Layer	120 mm Single Layer	120 mm Dual Layer
ISA0[1]	4 096	4 096	4 096	4 096
OSA0[2]	0	0	16 384	8 192
OSA1[2,3]	-	-	-	8 192
ISA1[2]	-	16 384	-	16 384
Totals	4 096	20 480	20 480	36 684

[1]The size of ISA0 is fixed at 4 096 Clusters, regardless of number of layers.
[2]The spare area is allocated in increments of 256 Clusters.

Since the formatted capacity of the media may be larger than the Number of Blocks field, when formatting has completed, the Host should send the READ CAPACITY command in order to determine the actual capacity.

Format Sub-type identifies certification to be performed as described in Table 247. The Spare Area size in Clusters field is ignored by the Drive.

6.4.4.2.9.2 Spares Allocation on 80 mm Single Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4 096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

6.4.4.2.9.3 Spares Allocation on 80 mm Dual Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4 096. If S is less than 4 096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If S > 4096, then set S_1 = MIN(256*FI[(S – 4096)/256], 16384). OSA1 shall be allocated S_1 spare Clusters.

6.4.4.2.9.4 Spares Allocation on 120 mm Single Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4096. If S is less than 4096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

ISA0 shall be allocated 4096 Clusters.

If S > 4096, then set S_1 = MIN(256*FI[(S – 4 096)/256], 16 384). OSA0 shall be allocated S_1 spare Clusters.

6.4.4.2.9.5 Spares Allocation on 120 mm Dual Layer BD-RE

S shall be at least 4096. If S is less than 4096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

ISA0 shall be allocated 4096 Clusters.

Due to the fixed size of ISA0, it is preferred to allocate OSA0, OSA1, and ISA1 such that the size of ISA1 is at least twice the size of OSA0. Thus, when S > 4096, the preferred allocations for ISA1, OSA0, and OSA1 are given by the following:

SizeofOSA0 = SizeofOSA1 = MIN(256*FI[(S – 4 096)/(4*256)], 16 384)

and

SizeofISA1 = MIN(256*FI[((S – 4 096)/256) – 2* SizeofOSA0], 16 384)

6.4.4.2.10 Format Type = 31h (Format BD-RE without Spare Areas)

If the RENoSA bit is set to one in the Formattable Feature descriptor, Format Type 31h is supported. Format Type 31h specifies the drive to process the formatting process with no Spare Area.

Number of Blocks specifies the total number of user accessible blocks on all layers of the disc.

Format Sub-type identifies certification to be performed as described in Table 247.

The Type Dependent Parameter specifies the Block Length in bytes.

On BD-RE discs, the Drive shall ignore the Number of Blocks field and the Type Dependent Parameter.

6.4.4.2.11 Format Type = 32h (Format BD-R with Spare Areas)

6.4.4.2.11.1 Overview

Format Type 32h permits formatting a BD-R disc in SRM+POW, SRM-POW, or RRM. When formatted with Format Type 32h, the BD-R disc is required to allocate a non-zero number of spares.

Table 249 shows the Type Dependent Parameter for Format Type 32h.

Table 249 — Type Dependent Parameter for Format Type = 32h

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
5	ISA_V	Reserved			Spare Area Distribution Parameter			
6	TDMA_V	Reserved			TDMA Distribution Parameter			
7	Reserved							

Number of Blocks contains the minimum number of LBAs that shall be formatted on the disc.

As shown in Table 250, Format Sub-type selects a variation of format Type 32h.

Table 250 — Format Sub-type Field

Format Sub-type Value	Description
00b	SRM+POW
01b	SRM-POW
10b	RRM
11b	Reserved

If ISA_V is set to one, the Spare Area Distribution Parameter is valid. If ISA_V is set to zero, a vendor specific default shall be assigned for the numeric value of the Spare Area Distribution Parameter.

The Drive shall interpret Spare Area Distribution Parameter as the integer between 1 and 15 that most nearly satisfies:

$$\frac{SpareAreaDistributionParameter}{16} = \frac{ISA0size + ISA1size}{TotalSAsize} = \frac{4096 + ISA1size}{S}$$

If TDMA_V is set to one, the TDMA Distribution Parameter is valid.

If TDMA_V is set to zero, a vendor specific default shall be assigned for the numeric value of the TDMA Distribution Parameter.

The Drive shall interpret TDMA Distribution Parameter as the nearest integer that satisfies:

$$\frac{TDMADistributionParameter}{16} = \frac{TDMAsize}{TotalSAsize}$$

Consequently,

$$TDMAsize = TotalSAsize * \frac{TDMADistributionParameter}{16}$$

6.4.4.2.11.2 Calculating Spare Size

Allocation rules for spare areas differ for disc size (i.e. 80mm or 120mm) and number of layers as shown in Table 251.

Table 251 — Maximum Spare Area Sizes on BD-R

Disc Spare Area	80 mm Single Layer	80 mm Dual Layer	120 mm Single Layer	120 mm Dual Layer
ISA0[1]	4 096	4 096	4 096	4 096
OSA0[2]	65 536	65 536	196 608	196 608
OSA1[2]	-	65 536	-	196 608
ISA1[2]	-	16 384	-	16 384
Max Possible Allocatable Spares	69 632	151 552	200 704	413 696
[1]The size of ISA0 is fixed at 4096 Clusters, regardless of size of number of layers. [2]The spare area shall be allocated in increments of 256 Clusters.				

Since the formatted capacity of the media may be larger than the Number of Blocks field, when formatting has completed, the Host should send the READ CAPACITY command for the disc in SRM+POW and should send the READ TRACK INFORMATION command for the disc in SRM-POW in order to determine the actual capacity. Format Type 32h requires that the Drive format the disc in order that the User Data Zone contains at least Number of Blocks. The number of spare Clusters allocated shall be at most:

$$S = 256 * FI\left(\frac{DataZoneSize - NumberOfBlocks}{256 * 32}\right).$$

S is a count of Clusters that is an integral multiple of 256.

S shall be at least 4096. If S is less than 4096, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If the disc is single layer and S > 4096, then

$$ISA0size = 4096$$

and

$$OSA0size = MIN\left[MaxOSA0size, S - 4096\right].$$

If the disc is dual layer and S > 4096, then

$$ISA0size = 4096,$$

$$ISA1size = MIN\left[MaxISA1size, 256 * FI\left(\frac{\frac{S * SADP}{16} - 4096}{256}\right)\right],$$

and

$$OSA0size = OSA1size = MIN\left[MaxOSA0size, 256 * FI\left(\frac{S - 4096 - ISA1size}{2 * 256}\right)\right].$$

6.4.4.2.11.3 Calculating Additional TDMA Space

Spare area sizes shall be determined prior to calculating the TDMA allocations.

Inner Zone TDMAs has a fixed size of 2048 Clusters each. Additional TDMA space is taken from the spare areas. The amount of each spare area that is allocated for TDMA is determined by the TDMA Distribution Parameter.

When the BD-R disc is single layer:

$$TDMA0size = 2048,$$

$$TDMA1Size = 256 * FI\left(\frac{4096 * TDMADistributionParameter}{16 * 256}\right), \text{ and}$$

$$TDMA2Size = 256 * FI\left(\frac{OSA0size * TDMADistributionParameter}{16 * 256}\right).$$

When the BD-R disc is dual layer:

$$TDMA0size = 2048,$$

$$TDMA1size = 2048,$$

$$TDMA2Size = 256 * FI\left(\frac{4096 * TDMADistributionParameter}{16 * 256}\right),$$

$$TDMA3Size = TDMA4size = 256 * FI\left(\frac{OSA0size * TDMADistributionParameter}{16 * 256}\right), \text{ and}$$

$$TDMA5Size = 256 * FI\left(\frac{ISA1size * TDMADistributionParameter}{16 * 256}\right)$$

6.4.4.3 Use of the Immed Bit

If the Immed bit is set to zero, the Drive shall format the entire media according to the Format Unit Parameter List and shall not terminate the command until completed. This is undesirable when the Host/Device interface has limited or no disconnect/reselect capability.

If the Immed bit is set to one, the Drive shall verify that execution of the Format Unit command may begin without error and then terminate the command with GOOD status. Stop Long Operation may be applicable. See CLOSE TRACK SESSION command (see 6.3).

During a format operation that began with the Immed bit set to one, the Drive shall respond to commands as follows:

a) In response to all commands except REQUEST SENSE, INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, and GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION, the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/FORMAT IN PROGRESS. If the Drive changes ready state, an Operational Change Event shall be generated. If appropriate, other events may be generated (e.g. Media Events).

b) In response to the INQUIRY, GET CONFIGURATION, GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands, the Drive shall respond as commanded.

In response to the REQUEST SENSE command, unless an error has occurred, the Drive shall return a SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to NOT READY/FORMAT IN PROGRESS, with the sense key specific bytes set for progress indication (Table 252). The normative description is found in [SPC-3]. SKSV shall be set to one and the Progress Indication field shall contain 16 bit unsigned value such that (Progress Indication)/65 536 X 100%

approximates the percentage of completion of the operation. Once the operation is completed, SKSV shall be set to zero.

Table 252 — Sense Key Specific Bytes in Sense Data

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
15	SKSV	Reserved						
16	(MSB)	Progress Indication						
17								(LSB)

6.4.4.4 Background Formatting

6.4.4.4.1 Overview

Background formatting is defined for DVD+RW (Format Type 26h). Background Formatting is divided into 2 processes: the foreground format process, and the background format process. The foreground format process is performed first. Once the foreground process has completed, the background format process begins. Of total format time required, the foreground format process should represent a very small part, while the background format process represents a significantly larger part.

Once the background format process has begun, the Host may request a suspension of the format operation for the purpose of media removal. If a suspension is requested, the Drive shall write to the media in such a way that the format state and level of completion may be identified for the purpose of continuing the background format process.

During the term of the background format, its state (Completed (3), Not Complete and running (2), Not complete and not running (1)) shall be reported in the returned data of the READ DISC INFORMATION command. See 6.21.3.1.14.

6.4.4.4.2 The Foreground Part of the Format Process

During the foreground format process, basic media structures shall be minimally initialized such that the media Format State may be identified. Relative to the Host, the operation is no different from other formatting. The foreground format process is completed when:

1. The specific format type is identifiable based upon written media structures.
2. Format restart information indicates that a suspended background format may be continued with an indication that zero amount of the background format process has been performed.

If the Immed bit is set to zero, then once the foreground format process has completed, the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

If the Immed bit is set to one, the Format Unit Command should be terminated with GOOD status once the CDB and parameter list have been validated.

6.4.4.4.3 The Background Format Process

Once the foreground part of the formatting has completed, the Drive shall continue the format in background. It is at this point that BG format status in the READ DISC INFORMATION returned data becomes non-zero. If the formatting had begun with Immed = 0, the Format Unit Command shall terminated with GOOD status. At this point, the media is viewed as “write accessible”. If any media accessing command is issued before this time, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/FORMAT IN PROGRESS.

Regardless of the setting of Immed, once the disc has become write accessible, and there are no pending errors, a response to the REQUEST SENSE command shall have sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to NO SENSE/FORMAT IN PROGRESS and the sense key specific bytes (Table 252) shall be set as a progress indicator.

Note 11. Drive panel indicators (e.g. LEDs) may normally indicate writing. Implementors should choose to modify this behavior during background formatting in order to avoid confusing the user.

6.4.4.4.4 Stopping and Restarting Background Format

If a format is executing in background:

a) The CLOSE TRACK SESSION Command shall be used to stop the formatting process. See 6.3 for details.
b) The inactivity timer (CD-ROM mode page) is disabled. This insures that lack of Host activity does not allow a spin down during background formatting.
c) If the Host sends a SCSI command that requires that the medium spin down, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense data to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/FORMAT IN PROGRESS. Examples: START STOP UNIT command is issued with Start = 0, START STOP UNIT command with power controls that require a spin-down.
d) If the Host/Drive physical interface provides a command layer with commands that may cause the medium to spin down, then those commands shall be terminated with the appropriate error status. E.g. if the interface is ATA and the command is EXECUTE DIAGNOSTICS, IDLE or SLEEP, then the command shall be terminated with the status register ERROR bit set to true.
e) If any other command is issued to the Drive, it shall be processed normally.

The format process may be restarted with a FORMAT UNIT Command in which the format descriptor is sent with the type dependent parameter set to 000001h. If the format has been completed, restarting the background format function shall not be considered an error. The command shall terminate with GOOD status and the BgformatCompleted event shall be posted.

The Drive may also restart the format process automatically. If a write is requested at an address within the final media capacity and beyond the current user formatted space, the background format shall be restarted using parameters saved on the media. The BgformatRestarted Media Event shall be posted. The format state shall be changed to “Not Complete and Running”, and the write shall proceed accordingly.

6.4.4.4.5 Writing During the Background Format Process

Writing to the media during different format states sometimes requires different action by the Drive. The cases are shown in Table 253.

Table 253 — Writing During different Format States

State of Format	Write Range	Action By Drive
Completed	All valid user space addresses	The Host’s data is written as provided.
Not Complete and running	All valid user space addresses	The Host’s data is written as provided. Format state shall not be changed.
Not complete, not running	Valid user space addresses in formatted region	The Host’s data is written as provided. Format state shall not be changed.
	Valid user space addresses beyond formatted region.	The background format shall be restarted using parameters saved on the media. The BgformatRestarted Media Event shall be posted. The format state is now “Not Complete and Running”, so the write shall proceed accordingly.

6.4.4.4.6 Recovering an Incomplete Format

The background format may be stopped in a controlled way as described in 6.4.4.4.4, above. An interface level RESET or loss of power may also stop a background format operation, but not in a controlled way. This may produce a disc that is partially formatted, however, it may also contain recoverable data. The format may not be recoverable, however, user data should be recoverable. After a catastrophic power loss, some use data may be lost.

A Host operated recovery application may be produced in order to recover data from the disc. Refer to the appropriate physical format documents.

6.4.5 Timeouts

The FORMAT UNIT command belongs to timeout group 2 when Immed is zero. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

When the Immed is set to one, status shall be returned within a Group 1 timeout.

6.4.6 Error Reporting

When the command operation began with the CDB Immed bit set to one, it is possible that a deferred error may be reported in some future command. Recommended error reporting is defined in Table 254.

Table 254 — Recommended Errors for the FORMAT UNIT Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
Protocol errors	Table F.4	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Write errors	Table F.7	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.5 GET CONFIGURATION Command

The GET CONFIGURATION command provides a Host with information about Drive capabilities; both current and potential. The command shall not return a CHECK CONDITION Status due to a pending UNIT ATTENTION Condition. Any pending UNIT ATTENTION Condition shall not be cleared for the Drive issuing the GET CONFIGURATION Command.

Features that specify implementation of the GET CONFIGURATION command are listed in Table 255.

Table 255 — Features Associated with the GET CONFIGURATION Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core	Mandatory
0002h	Morphing	Mandatory

6.5.1 The CDB and its Parameters

6.5.1.1 The CDB

The Get Configuration CDB is shown in Table 256.

Table 256 — GET CONFIGURATION CDB

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (46h)							
1	Reserved						RT	
2	(MSB)	Starting Feature Number						
3								(LSB)
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.5.1.2 RT Field

The RT field identifies the type of data to be returned by the Drive. The possibilities and meanings for the RT field are listed in Table 257.

Table 257 — RT Field Definitions

RT value	Definition
00b	The Drive shall return the Feature Header and all Feature Descriptors supported by the Drive without regard to currency.
01b	The Drive shall return the Feature Header and only those Feature Descriptors in which the Current bit is set to one.
10b	The Feature Header and the Feature Descriptor identified by Starting Feature Number shall be returned. If the Drive does not support the specified feature, only the Feature Header shall be returned.
11b	Reserved

6.5.1.3 Starting Feature Number

The Starting Feature Number field indicates the first Feature number to be returned. All supported Feature numbers higher than the Starting Feature Number shall be returned.

6.5.1.4 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum length in bytes of the Get Configuration response data. An Allocation Length field of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

6.5.2 Command Processing

6.5.2.1 GET CONFIGURATION Response Data

The GET CONFIGURATION response Data (Table 258) consists of a header field and zero or more variable length feature descriptors.

Table 258 — GET CONFIGURATION response data format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 7	Feature Header							
8 – n	Feature Descriptor(s)							

The Feature Header field to be returned is shown in Table 259.

Table 259 — Feature Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Length						
1								
2								
3								(LSB)
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)	Current Profile						
7								(LSB)

The Data Length field indicates the amount of data available given a sufficient allocation length following this field. This length shall not be truncated due to an insufficient Allocation Length. If the Data Length is greater than 65 530 bytes, multiple GET CONFIGURATION commands with different Starting Feature Numbers are required for the Host to read all configuration data. This field is adjusted as appropriate for the given Starting Feature Number.

The maximum number of definable Features is 65 536. The maximum number of bytes that a Drive may return to describe its Features in one Command is 65 534. Feature lists longer than 65 534 bytes require multiple Commands.

Note 12. In this standard, the entire set of defined feature descriptors amounts to less than 2 KB. A size limit is indeterminate for Drives that specify vendor unique features and/or profiles

The Current Profile field shall indicate the Drive's current Profile. The Drive shall select the current Profile from the list of Profiles (see Table 92) with their CurrentP bit set. If more than one Profile is current, the largest Profile number is used. If no Profile is currently active, this field shall contain zero.

6.5.2.2 Features

Features are the smallest set of commands, pages, and behavior that may be implemented. A list of defined features is shown in Table 89.

The Feature Descriptor(s) generic format returned is defined in Table 88. Each individual Feature description is defined in the appropriate sub-clause.

6.5.2.3 Profile List

This Feature identifies Profiles supported by the Drive. Profiles are defined as collections of Features and provide a method to quickly determine the Drive's type. This Feature is always current, even if none of the Profiles listed is current.

The Profile Descriptor format is shown in Table 91. All Profiles supported by the Drive shall always be reported. The Profile Number identifies a Profile to which the Drive conforms. See 5.4. Profile descriptors are returned in descending numerical order.

6.5.3 Timeouts

Command Processing timeouts as specified by the Timeout Feature do not apply to the GET CONFIGURATION command.

6.5.4 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting is defined in Table 260.

Table 260 — Recommended Errors for the GET CONFIGURATION Command

Error	Reference
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.6 GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION Command

The GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command requests that the Drive report events and statuses according to a Notification Class as a method of asynchronous notification. Two modes of operation are defined: polling and asynchronous. Features that specify implementation of the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command are listed in Table 261.

Table 261 — Features Associated with the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core	Mandatory
0002h	Morphing	Mandatory

6.6.1 The CDB and its Parameters

6.6.1.1 The CDB

The GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION CDB is shown in Table 262.

Table 262 — GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (4Ah)							
1	Reserved							Polled
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Notification Class Request							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.6.1.2 Polled

When Polled is set to zero, the Host is requesting asynchronous operation. If the Drive does not support asynchronous operation (i.e. command queuing), the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and the values for SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If the Drive supports command queuing and none of the requested events has occurred, the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command shall be queued until one of the requested events occurs. If a Group 2 timeout command is executing, the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command may be queued, and never terminate.

When Polled is set to one, the Host is requesting polled operation. The Drive shall return event information for the highest priority requested event. If no event has occurred, the Drive shall report the “No Change” event for the highest priority requested event class.

If the Drive supports Physical Interface Asynchronous Notification such as SATA AN, then upon such a notification, the Host should collect event status by issuing the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command with Polled = 1. When a Drive supports Physical Interface Asynchronous Notification, the Drive shall generate the Physical Interface Asynchronous Notification for changes in any and all Events from any and all Classes.

A description of the usage of SATA AN is included in Annex A.

6.6.1.3 Notification Class Request

Notification Class Request field specifies that the Drive report event(s) from the event classes requested in this field. Table 263 defines the codes listed in this field.

Table 263 — Notification Class Request field definition

Bit	Definition
0	Reserved
1	Operational Change
2	Power Management
3	External Request
4	Media
5	Multi-Host
6	Device Busy
7	Reserved

Lowest class number has highest priority.

Bit 7 is reserved for future standardization and shall be treated as unsupported event class. Bit 0 is perpetually reserved. If either of these bits is set to one, it shall not be considered an error.

A Notification Class Request field of zero shall not be considered an error.

6.6.1.4 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field indicates the maximum number of bytes that shall be transferred from the Drive. If Allocation Length is 4 or less, then the Drive shall transfer Event Header only and shall not clear any event. An event shall be considered reported for all Allocation Lengths greater than 4. An Allocation Length of zero shall not be considered an error. The Host should set Allocation Length field to 8 or greater in order to retrieve Event Data correctly.

6.6.2 Command Processing

6.6.2.1 General

When polling, the Host should issue GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands at periodic intervals. The Drive shall complete this command with the most recently available event status requested. The Drive shall support polling mode.

Asynchronous operation requires a transport that provides command queuing and disconnect. The Host should issue a single GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command. The Drive shall process the command and return requested event information only when some requested event has occurred.

Only one event class per GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command shall be reported. The priority of event reporting shall be by Event Class number where lowest Classes are higher priority.

This command shall not return CHECK CONDITION status to report a unit attention condition. Any pending unit attention condition for which a corresponding event is reported shall not be cleared for the Drive.

6.6.2.2 Event Status Notification Data

The Event Status Notification Response (Table 264) is a 4-byte header followed by an Event Descriptor associated with exactly one event class.

Table 264 — Event Status Notification Response

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 3	Event Header							
4 – n	Event Descriptor							

The Event Header content defined in Table 265.

Table 265 — Event Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Event Descriptor Length						
1								(LSB)
2	NEA	Reserved				Notification Class		
3	Supported Event Class							

The Event Descriptor Length field specifies the number of bytes of data that follows the Event Descriptor Length field.

If NEA (No Event Available) is set to one, the Drive supports none of the requested notification classes. If NEA is set to zero, at least one of the requested notification classes is supported.

The Notification Class field specifies the class of notification as defined in Table 266. If NEA is set to one, this field shall contain 000b and only the Event Header is returned.

Table 266 — Notification Class Field Values

Field	Description
000b	No requested Event Classes are supported
001b	Operational Change Request/Notification
010b	Power Management
011b	External Request
100b	Media
101b	Multiple Hosts
110b	Device Busy
111b	Reserved

Supported Event Classes field specifies the event classes that the Drive supports. If an Event Class is supported, the bit corresponding to the Event Class identified in Table 263 is set to one.

The general format of the Event Descriptor is shown in Table 267.

Table 267 — General Event Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved				Event Code			
1 – N	Specific Event Information							

When Event Code is zero, no change has occurred. Non-zero values for Event Code are Event specific.

Upon reporting an event to the Host, this field is reported as 0h on subsequent GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands until a new event of the same class occurs.

6.6.2.3 Operational Change Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 001b, an Operational Change Event Descriptor (Table 268) follows the header.

An Operational Change event indicates that the operational capabilities or parameters may have changed for this Drive.

Table 268 — Operational Change Event Descriptor

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="4">Reserved</td><td colspan="4">Event Code</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Persistent Prevented</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td><td colspan="4">Operational Status</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="7" rowspan="2">Operational Change</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
</table>

Persistent Prevented bit reports the current state of the persistent prevent for the Drive. See 5.3.4.

The Event Code (Table 269) identifies the operational change. Some Event codes present in earlier standards are reserved in this standard. Those codes are legacy. See Annex E.

Table 269 — Event Codes For the Operational Change Class

Code	Status	Description
0h	NoChg	No changes in the Drive Operational state
1h	Reserved	-
2h	Drive has changed Operational state	The Drive has changed Operational state
3h – Fh	Reserved	-

If a new Event occurs before an existing Event is reported to the Host, the new event shall replace the old Event if the new Event has a higher Code than the old Event. Otherwise, the new Event shall be deleted.

The Operational Status field is reserved and shall be set to zero (0h) by Drives that comply with this standard. Non-zero values in the Operational Status field are Legacy; see Annex E.

The Operational Change field (Table 270) reports the source of the change. If this field contains a non-zero value, the Host should send a GET CONFIGURATION command in order to discover any configuration changes. Some Operational Chane field codes present in earlier standards are reserved in this standard. Those codes are Legacy. See Annex E.

Table 270 — Operational Change

Code	Event	Description
0h	NoChg	No changes in operational state requested or performed
1h	Feature Change	An unspecified event may have changed Feature currency
2h – 5h	Legacy	-
6h – FFFFh	Reserved	-

6.6.2.4 Power Management Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 010b, a Power Management Event Descriptor (Table 271) follows the header.

A Power Management Event is reported whenever there is a change to power status. Power changes may occur due to a command from the Host or a timeout as specified in the Timeout and Protect mode page (see 7.8).

Table 271 — Power Management Event Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved				Event Code			
1	Power Status							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Power Event field (Table 272) identifies the power change event.

Table 272 — Power Event Field

Code	Event	Description
0h	NoChg	No changes in power state, or in power state transition
1h	PwrChg-Successful	The Drive successfully changed to the specified power state
2h	PwrChg-Fail	The Drive failed to enter the last requested state, and is still operating at the power state specified in the Power Status field.
3h – Fh	Reserved	

If the Drive is commanded to go the same state that it is currently in, the next GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (Power Management Class) command shall report a Power Change Successful event.

The Power Status field (Table 273) indicates the current power state of the Drive. The Drive shall be set to Standby (3h) by a Hard reset, a power-on reset or a Device reset (issued from a Sleep state).

Table 273 — Power Status Field

Code	Status	Description
0h	Reserved	-
1h	Active	The Drive is in Active state
2h	Idle	The Drive is in Idle state
3h	Standby	The Drive is in Standby state
4h	Sleep	The Drive is about to enter Sleep state
5h – Fh	Reserved	-

6.6.2.5 External Request Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 011b, an External Request Event Descriptor (Table 274) follows the header. The Load/Eject button is not included as an external event.

The External Request Event field reports external requests to change state and notifications of changes in Drive state.

Table 274 — External Request Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved				Event Code			
1	Persistent Prevented	Reserved			External Request Status			
2	(MSB)	External Request						
3								(LSB)

The External Request Events are listed in Table 275.

Table 275 — External Request Events

Code	Event	Description
0h	NoChg	No changes in the Drive Operational state performed or requested
1h	Drive Key Down	A front, back, or remote button has been depressed
2h	Drive Key Up	A front, back, or remote button has been released
3h	External Request Notification	The Drive has received a command from another Host that requires an action that may interfere with the Persistent Prevent owner’s operation.
4h – Fh	Reserved	-

The Host may respond to Events 1-3 with no action, an appropriate action, or with a SEND EVENT command. If a Persistent Prevent is in place for the Host, the Drive shall not perform the requested action. If a Persistent Prevent is not in place for the Host, the Drive shall notify the Host of actions that change Drive state.

The Host may respond to Event 4 with a GET CONFIGURATION command. Events 1 and 2 should occur in pairs.

The Persistent Prevented bit reports the current state of the persistent prevent for the Drive. This bit shall be set to 1 if any Host has performed a persistent reservation.

The External Request Status field (Table 276) reports the Drive’s ability to respond to the Host.

Table 276 — External Request Status Codes

Code	Status	Description
0h	Ready	The Drive is ready for operation
1h	Other Prevent	Indicates that another Host has an active Persistent Prevent. The Persistent Prevented bit shall be set to one.
2h – Fh	Reserved	Reserved

The External Request field (Table 277) reports the operation requested or operation that has been performed. The request usually originates from the unit’s own user interface (i.e., front panel buttons) or from another Host.

Table 277 — External Request Codes

Code	Status	Description
0h	No Request	No requests are pending
1h	Overrun	The Request Queue has overflowed, External Request Events may be lost.
2h – 100h	Reserved	
101h	Play	The play button was pressed or another Host requested a play operation.
102h	Rewind/back	The rewind/back button was pressed or another Host requested a rewind/back operation.
103h	Fast Forward	The fast/forward button was pressed or another Host requested a fast/forward operation.
104h	Pause	The pause button was pressed or another Host requested a pause.
105h	Reserved	
106h	Stop	The stop button was pressed or another Host requested a stop.
107h – 1FFh	Reserved	
200h – 2FFh	ASCII Button	A front panel button was pressed or equivalent action requested by another Host. The button has an associated ASCII value. The ASCII value shall be the least significant 8 bits of the Code.
300h – EFFFh	Reserved	
F000h – FFFFh	Vendor Unique	

6.6.2.6 Media Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 100b, a Media Event Descriptor (Table 278) follows the header.

Table 278 — Media Event Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved				Event Code			
1	Media Status							
2	Start Slot							
3	End Slot							

6.6.2.6.1 Event Code

The Media Event field is defined in Table 279.

Table 279 — Media Event Format

Code	Event	Description
0h	NoChg	Media status is unchanged
1h	EjectRequest	The Drive has received a request from the user (usually through a mechanical switch on the Drive) to eject the specified slot or media.
2h	NewMedia	The specified slot (or the Drive) has received new media, and is ready to access it.
3h	MediaRemoval	The media has been removed from the specified slot, and the Drive is unable to access the media without user intervention. This applies to media changers only.
4h	MediaChanged	The user has requested that the media in the specified slot be loaded. This applies to media changers only.
5h	BgformatCompleted	A DVD+RW background format has completed. Since DVD+RW Drives are capable of generating multiple media events concurrently, such Drives shall be capable of queuing media events.
6h	BgformatRestarted	A DVD+RW background format has been automatically restarted by the Drive. Since DVD+RW Drives are capable of generating multiple media events concurrently, such Drives shall be capable of queuing media events.
7h – Fh	Reserved	

6.6.2.6.2 Media Status

The Media Status byte is defined in Table 280.

Table 280 — Media Status Byte Definition

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved						Media Present	Door or Tray open

If the Media Present bit is set to zero, no media is present in the Drive. If the Media Present bit is set to one, media is present in the Drive.

If the Door or Tray Open bit is set to zero, the Tray or Door mechanism is in the closed state. If the Door or Tray Open bit is set to one, the Tray or Door mechanism is in the open state. If the Drive does not have either a tray or a door, this bit shall be set to zero.

6.6.2.6.3 Start Slot

Start Slot field defines the first slot of a multiple slot Drive the media status notification applies to. For Drives that do not support multiple slots, this field shall be reserved.

The slot numbers are defined in the MECHANISM STATUS command, see 6.10.

6.6.2.6.4 End Slot

End Slot field defines the last slot of a multiple slot Drive the media status notification applies to. For Drives that do not support multiple slots, this field shall be reserved.

The slot numbers are defined in the MECHANISM STATUS command, see 6.10.

6.6.2.7 Multiple Host Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 101b, a Multiple Host Event Descriptor (Table 281) follows the header. Multi-Host Class Events notify the Host of requests for control by other Hosts.

Table 281 — Multiple Host Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved				Event Code			
1	Persistent Prevented	Reserved			Multiple Host Status			
2	(MSB)	Multiple Host Priority						
3								(LSB)

The Multi-Host Event field reports requests for control of and reporting of changes in Drive state. If a Persistent Prevent is in place for that Host, the Drive shall not perform the action requested. If a Persistent Prevent is not in place for that Host, the Drive shall notify the Host of actions that change the Drive state. The Multi-Host Events are listed in Table 282.

Table 282 — Multiple Host Event Format

Code	Event	Description
0h	NoChg	No changes in the Drive Operational state performed or requested
1h	Control Request	Another Host has requested Drive control.
2h	Control Grant	Another Host has received Drive control.
3h	Control Release	Another Host has released Drive control.
4h – Fh	Reserved	

The Host may respond to Events 1-3 with no action or an appropriate Persistent Prevent or Persistent Allow.

The Persistent Prevented bit reports the current state of the Persistent Prevent for the Drive.

The Multiple Host Status (Table 283) filed reports the Drive ability to respond to the Host.

Table 283 — Multiple Host Status Codes

Code	Status	Description
0h	Ready	The Drive is ready for operation
1h	Other Prevent	Indicates that another Host has an active Persistent Prevent. The Persistent Prevented bit shall be set to one.
2h – Fh	Reserved	Reserved

The Multiple Host Priority (Table 284) reports the other Host's relative priority.

Table 284 — Multiple Host Priority Codes

Code	Status	Description
0h	No Request	No requests are pending
1h	Low	There are no tasks pending on the Host for this Drive.
2h	Medium	There are no critical tasks pending on the Host for this Drive.
3h	High	There are critical tasks pending on the Host for this Drive
4h – FFFFh	Reserved	

6.6.2.8 Device Busy Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 110b, a Device Busy Event Descriptor (Table 285) follows the header.

Device Busy Events are used to notify the Host of commands that are executing but that require an abnormally long time to complete. Conditions that may cause the Drive to become Busy are defined in 4.1.6.2.

Table 285 — Device Busy Event Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved				Event Code			
1	Device Busy Status							
2	(MSB)	Time						
3								(LSB)

The Device Busy Event code is defined in Table 286.

Table 286 — Device Busy Event Codes

Code	Event	Description
0h	NoChg	The Drive Busy state has not changed.
1h	Change	The Drive Busy state has changed
2h	LoChange[1]	Drive Busy condition has been changed by Loading/Unloading operation that is not caused by command execution.
3h – Fh	Reserved	

[1]The Drive normally reports the Device Busy Change event associated with Loading/Unloading when that action is started by a Host command (e.g. START/STOP UNIT with the LoEj bit set to 1). The LoChange event is reported when the Loading/Unloading action is not started by any Host command and when the LoChange bit is set in the REMOVABLE MEDIUM Feature descriptor (Table 98).

The Device Busy Status byte is defined in Table 287.

Table 287 — Device Busy Status

Code	Status	Description
00h	Not Busy	The Drive is Not Busy.
01h	Busy	The Drive is Busy.
02h – FFh	Reserved	

The Time field is the predicted amount of time remaining for the Drive to become not busy, in units of 100ms. If the Device Busy Status is Not Busy, the contents of the Time field are unspecified.

In order to assure accurate timing information, any command that may cause the Drive Busy condition should not be queued.

If both the Host and the Drive support command queuing, the Host should issue a GESN command requesting only the Device Busy Event class with the Polled bit in the CDB set to zero prior to issuing the command that may cause a Drive Busy condition. If the Drive becomes busy, the first GESN command shall be performed to report the Change (Not-Busy to Busy transition). The Host may issue another GESN command for the purpose of being notified of completion. Once the command has stopped executing, the second GESN command shall be performed to report the Change (Busy to Not-Busy transition).

Figure 120 shows the flow of execution of a command that may cause a Drive Busy condition.

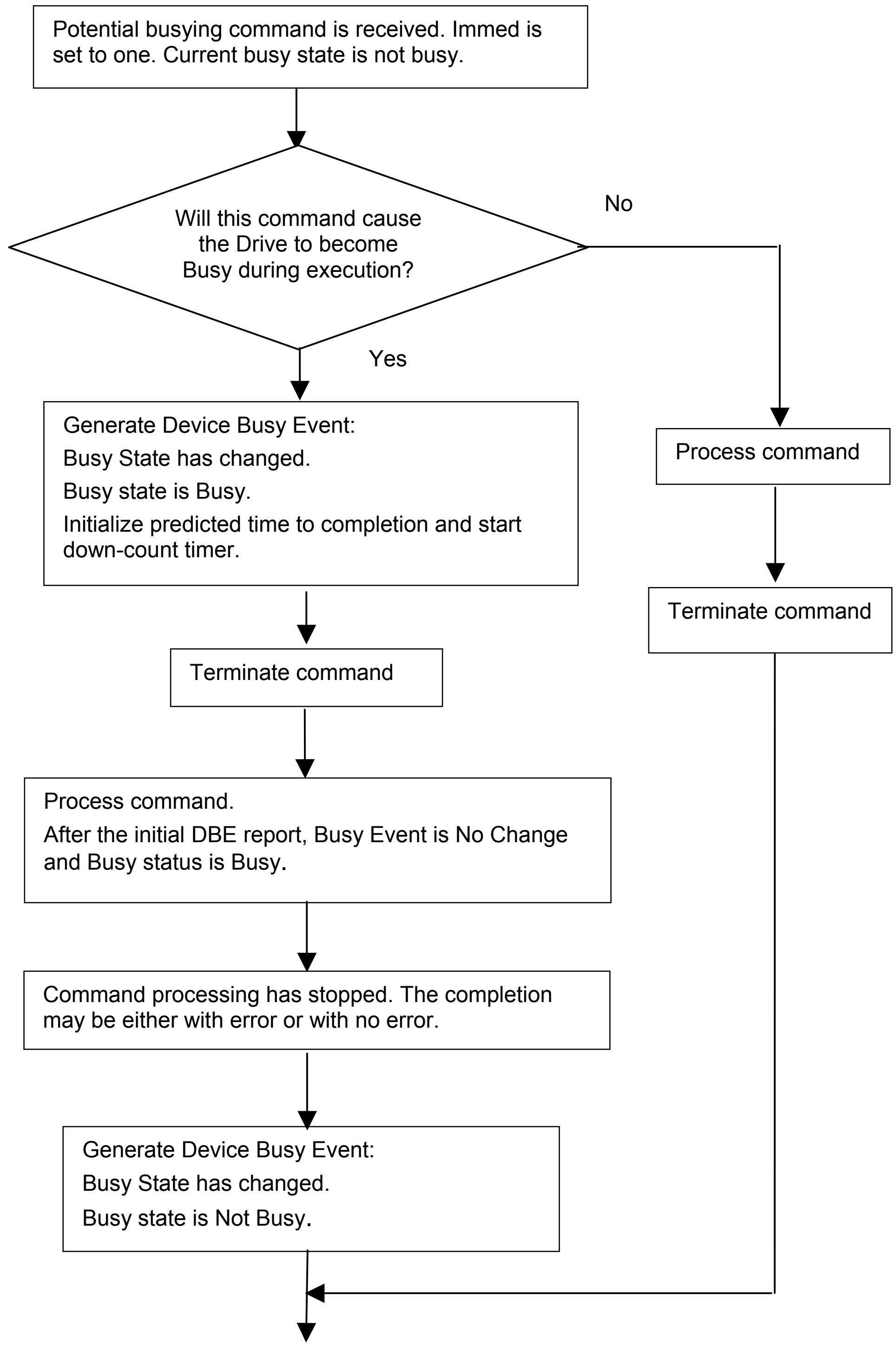


Figure 120 — Execution of a command that may cause Drive Busy

Figure 121 shows the flow of manual loading operation that may cause a LoChange event of Device Busy Class Events.

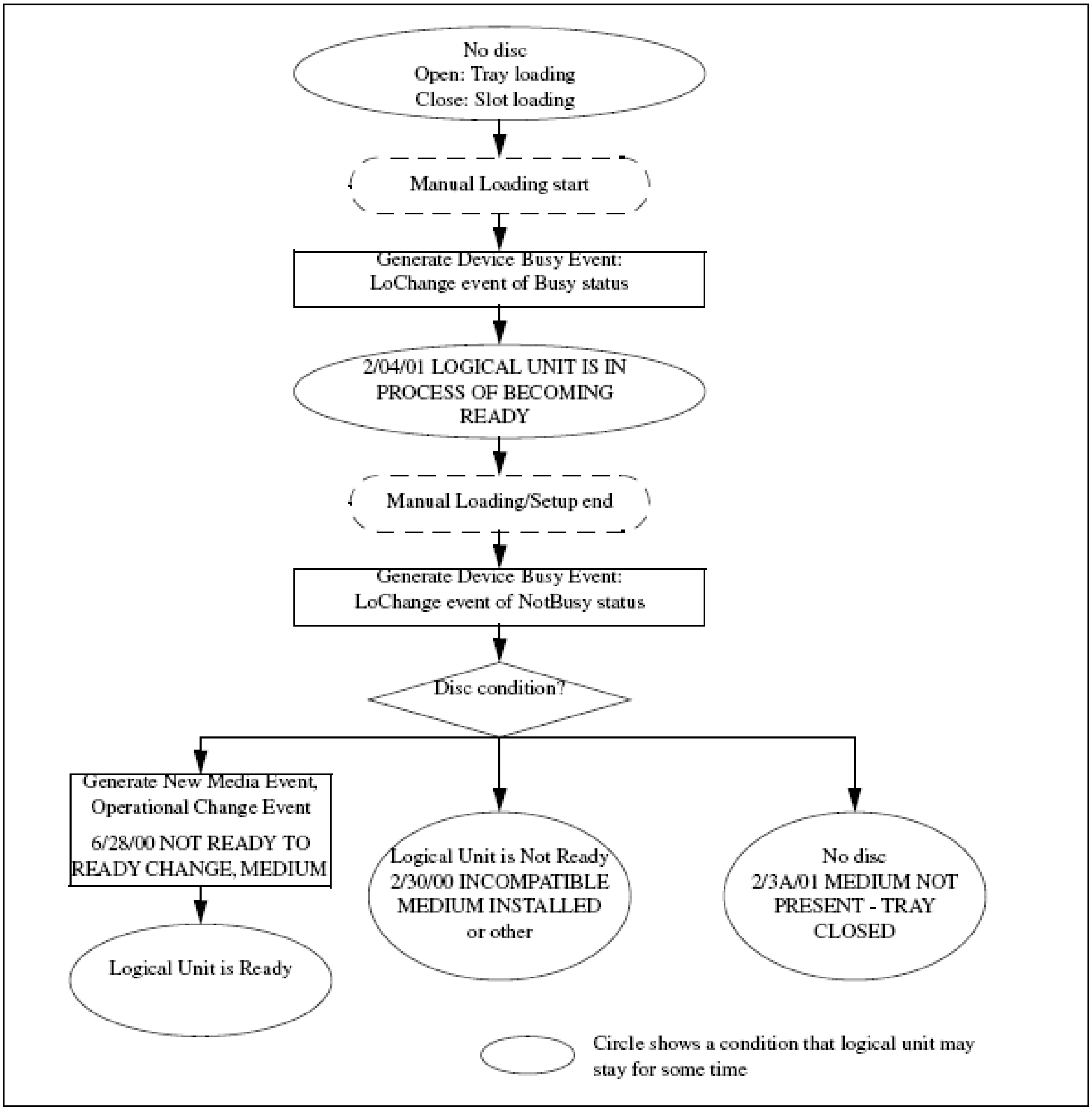


Figure 121 — Manual **L**oading that causes Device Busy Class Events

Figure 122 shows the flow of manual unloading operation that may cause a LoChange event of Device Busy Class Events.

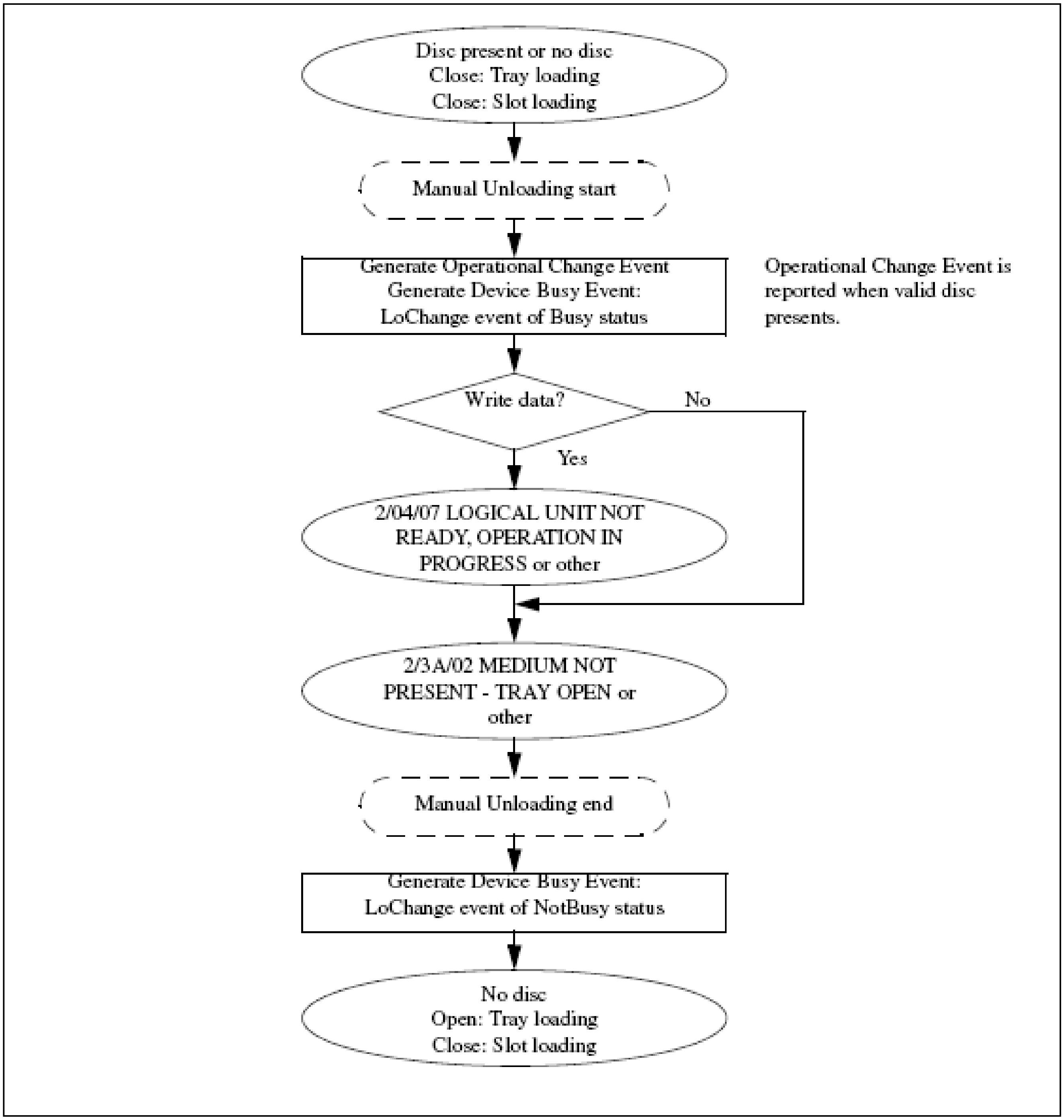


Figure 122 — Manual unloading that causes of Device Busy Class Events

6.6.3 Timeouts

Command Processing timeouts as specified by the Timeout Feature do not apply to the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command.

6.6.4 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION Command is defined in Table 288.

Table 288 — Recommended Errors for the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION Command

Error	Reference
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.7 GET PERFORMANCE Command

6.7.1 Introduction

The GET PERFORMANCE command provides a method for the Host to obtain detailed information about the performance of the Drive. The command also provides a means for the Host to get current status and events that occurred during Stream recording/playback operation. Performance parameters are reported separately for read and write.

Table 289 shows the features associated with the GET PERFORMANCE command.

Table 289 — Features Associated with the GET PERFORMANCE Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.7.2 The CDB and its Parameters

6.7.2.1 The CDB

The GET PERFORMANCE CDB is shown in Table 290.

Table 290 — GET PERFORMANCE CDB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (Ach)							
1	Reserved			Data Type				
2	(MSB) Starting LBA							
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	(MSB) Maximum Number of Descriptors							
9								(LSB)
10	Type							
11	Control							

6.7.2.2 Data Type

The Data Type field definition is dependent upon the Type field value.

6.7.2.3 Starting LBA

Use of the Starting LBA field is determined by the contents of the Type field.

6.7.2.4 Maximum Number of Descriptors

The Drive shall not return more performance descriptors than specified by the Maximum Number of Descriptors field. If Maximum Number of Descriptors is zero, then only the descriptor header shall be returned.

6.7.2.5 Type

The Type field specifies the type of data requested. Table 291 shows the valid values for Type.

Table 291 — Type Field Definitions

Type Field	Description	Remarks
00h	Performance data	Required by the Real-time Streaming Feature
01h	Unusable Area data	Required when SW bit of Real-time Streaming Feature is set to 1
02h	Defect Status data	Required when TSR Feature is supported
03h	Write Speed Descriptor	Required if WSPD bit of Real-time Streaming Feature is set to 1
04h	DBI	Optional for BD drives
05h	DBI Cache Zone	Optional for BD drives
06h – FFh	Reserved	

If the Drive does not support the specified value of Type field for the mounted medium, the Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.7.3 Command Processing

6.7.3.1 Overview

The performance response (Table 292) shall contain a Performance header and zero or more Performance descriptors.

Table 292 — Performance response format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 7	Performance Header							
8 – n	Performance Descriptor(s)							

The Performance Header is defined in Table 293.

Table 293 — Performance Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1				Performance Data Length				
2								
3								(LSB)
4	Reserved						Write	Except
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The Performance Data Length field shall specify the amount of result data not including the Performance Data Length. This value is not modified when the allocation length indicated by the Maximum Number of Descriptors is insufficient to return all of the data available.

If Write = 0, the result data is for read performance. If Write = 1, the result data is for write performance.

If Except = 0, the result data is for nominal performance. If Except = 1, the result data is for exception conditions.

Write and Except are valid only for Type field = 00h.

6.7.3.2 Performance (Type field = 00h)

The command reports its characteristics of reading/writing performance.

The CDB Data Type Field (Table 294) is a collection of bit fields that specify the form of the returned descriptor.

Table 294 — Data Type Field Definitions for Type = 00h

<table>
<tr><th colspan="5">Data Type Bit Fields</th></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Tolerance</td><td>Write</td><td colspan="2">Except</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">00b = Reserved</td><td rowspan="2">0b = Read Performance</td><td colspan="2">00b = nominal performance</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">01b = Reserved</td><td colspan="2">01b = Entire performance list</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">10b = 10%, nominal; 20%, exceptions</td><td rowspan="2">1b = Write Performance</td><td colspan="2">10b = performance exceptions only</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">11b = Reserved</td><td colspan="2">11b reserved</td></tr>
</table>

The Starting LBA field in the CDB is valid only when Except = 01b. If Except = 01b, the Starting LBA field shall indicate the starting point for returning performance data. All performance data shall be for logical block addresses greater than or equal to this LBA.

The Except field, when set to 00b, shall indicate that the nominal performance parameters be returned (see Table 295). When set to 01b, the entire performance exception list, qualified by the Starting LBA**,** shall be returned. When set to 10b, only performance exceptions that cause the performance to fall outside the nominal shall be reported (Table 296). For example, slipped sectors may not be included in the 10b list, but would be included in the 01b list. An Except field of 11b is reserved.

The Write bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the performance parameters for reading shall be returned. When set to one, the performance parameters for writing shall be returned.

The Tolerance field, when set to 10b, shall indicate that the descriptors returned have a 10% performance tolerance for the nominal performance and a 20% time tolerance for the exception list. All other values are reserved for future standardization.

The Maximum Number of Descriptors field shall indicate the maximum number of descriptors that the Drive returns. The Maximum Number of Descriptors field should not be set to zero. If the Maximum Number of Descriptors field is set to zero, only the Performance Header shall be returned.

The Performance Descriptors (Table 295) for nominal performance are intended to give the Host an approximation of Drive performance. All numbers are nominal. With CD media, performance is reported for 2 352 byte sectors. For all other media performance is reported for 2 048 byte sectors. The descriptor includes a Start LBA value, a Start Performance value in increments of 1 000 Bytes/second, an End LBA value, and an End Performance value in increments of 1 000 Bytes/second.

Table 295 — Performance Descriptor – Nominal Performance

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
…				Start LBA				
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)							
…				Start Performance				
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)							
…				End LBA				
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)							
…				End Performance				
15								(LSB)

The Start LBA field contains the first logical block address of the extent described by this descriptor.

The Start Performance field contains the nominal Drive performance at the Start LBA.

The End LBA field contains the last logical block address of the extent described by this descriptor.

The End Performance field contains the nominal Drive performance at the End LBA.

Note 13. These fields return only the informational value that is expected before start reading/writing. The exact start location of the extent may vary based upon the disc/drive condition. In some cases, one or more descriptors reported may not reflect actual performance due to the disc/drive condition. To examine the CAV performance the End LBA field is important.

Table 296 — Performance Descriptor – Exceptions

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1				LBA				
2								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)			Time				
5								(LSB)

The LBA field shall indicate that there is a seek delay between (LBA – 1) and LBA.

The Time field shall indicate the expected additional delay between (LBA – 1) and LBA from nominal, in units of tenths of milliseconds (100 microseconds). This seek delay may be due to linear replacement, zone boundaries, or other media dependent Features. The expected additional delay should represent the typical time expected for the type of exception described.

Note 14. A block replaced by linear replacement may cause two exceptions to appear in the Exception Descriptor list – one between the non-replaced area and the beginning of the replaced block, and one from the end of the replaced block back to the non-replaced area.

6.7.3.3 Unusable Area Data (Type=01h)

This command reports data to the Host about how physically unusable areas for recording streaming data are allocated on the mounted writable media. If the mounted media is not a writable media, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the Drive is unable to report Unusable Area Data because the medium is not formatted, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5.

The corresponding parameter field allocation is specified in Table 297.

The Unusable Area Type field specifies the type of the unusable area to be transferred. See Table 297.

Table 297 — Unusable Area Type values

Data Type field	Description	LBA	Number of Unusable Physical Blocks
00000b	Physical boundary information	Last LBA prior to the unusable area	Reserved
00001b	Slipped Area information		Number of physical blocks included in the specified unusable area.
00010b	Defective Blocks information	First LBA of the unusable area	
Others	Reserved		

The Write and Except bits in the Performance Header for Unusable Area data are not used and shall be set to zeros.

All Unusable Area data shall be for LBAs that are greater than or equal to the Starting LBA specified in the CDB. Each Unusable Area Descriptor (Table 298) shall be transferred to the Host in ascending order.

On BD-RE media, the number of Clusters identified by a LBA entry with unknown length is treated as one.

Table 298 — Unusable Area Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1				LBA				
2								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)							
5				Number of Unusable Physical Blocks				
6								
7								(LSB)

The LBA field shall specify the first LBA of the unusable area if the Unusable Area Type field in CDB is set to 00010b. The LBA field shall specify the LBA just before the unusable area when the Unusable Area Type field in CDB is set to 00000b or 00001b.

The Number of Unusable Physical Blocks field shall specify number of physical blocks included in the specified unusable area. When the Unusable Area Type field in CDB is set to 00000b, this field is reserved (see Table 297).

6.7.3.4 Defect Status data (Type=02h)

This command reports Defect Status data to the Host that is created by certification on Restricted Overwrite media or by TSR writing. If the mounted media is not a Restricted Overwrite media or if the Drive does not support certification, and if the Drive does not support TSR on the current media, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The Data Type field in CDB shall be set to zero.

All Defect Status data is for LBAs that are greater than or equal to the Starting LBA specified in the CDB. In the case of TSR, the host when reading defect information after the Drive reported CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ MEDIUM ERROR/WRITE ERROR. RECOVERY NEEDED shall set the Starting LBA in the CDB to the lowest LBA for which the host knows the data (according the Error Reporting Window size).

The Write and Except bits in the Performance Header for Defect Status data are not used and shall be set to zeros.

Defect Status Descriptors shall be transferred to the Initiator in ascending order. If the certified areas are non-contiguous and scattered, separate descriptors, to exclude the void areas shall return the Defect Status Descriptor(s).

The Defect Status Data Length field shall specify the amount of data that follows the Defect Status Data Length field. If there is no Defect Status data on the medium, Defect Status Data Length field shall be set to 4 and no Defect Status Descriptor (Table 299) shall be transferred.

Table 299 — Defect Status Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
…	Start LBA							
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)							
…	End LBA							
7								(LSB)
8	Blocking Factor							
9	Reserved					First Bit Offset		
10	DS #8	DS #7	DS #6	DS #5	DS #4	DS #3	DS #2	DS #1
…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…	…
2047	DS # 16 304	DS # 16 303	DS # 16 302	DS # 16 301	DS # 16 300	DS # 16 299	DS # 16 298	DS # 16 297

The Start LBA field contains the start Logical Block Address of the certified sector where the following Defect Status (DS #n bits) starts. The returned Logical Block Address shall be the first sector of a Block that contains logical blocks specified by the Blocking Factor field.

The End LBA field contains the end Logical Block Address of the certified sector where the following Defect Status (DS #n bits) ends. The returned Logical Block Address shall be the last sector of a Block that contains logical blocks specified by the Blocking Factor field.

The Blocking Factor field shall indicate the number of logical blocks per DS #n bit. In the case of DVD-RW and DVD-RAM, this field is set to 16 as an ECC Block. In the case of BD-R and BD-RE, this field is set to 32 as an ECC Block or Cluster.

The First Bit offset field shall indicate the start valid bit number in byte 10. The lower bits in byte 10 are invalid. E.g., if First Bit offset field contains 3, bit 3 of byte 10 has the defect status of the block that contains the Logical block specified Start LBA field. From bit 2 to bit 0 are invalid in this case.

DS #n bit contains the certification result of the block #m. When DS #n bit is set to 0, indicate that the block has no defect and is able to read and write the block safely. When DS #n bit is set to 1, indicates that the block has defects and successful read or write may not be possible.

6.7.3.5 Write Speed (Type=03h)

This command reports a list of possible Write Speed descriptors. If recordable media is mounted, the Drive shall report the list of speeds that are available for the Blocks of the currently mounted medium. If no recordable media is mounted, the Drive shall report the most appropriate list of speeds or only the maximum recording speed. Write Speed descriptors (Table 300) shall be reported in descending order of the Write Speed value. If the Drive supports both CLV and CAV on the media, then the Drive shall report all CLV descriptors first. The Host may determine a desired write speed descriptor from the result of this command, then set the Write Speed accordingly via the SET STREAMING command. To apply this descriptor to the SET STREAMING command, the Start LBA field is set to 0, the Read Time field and the Write Time field are set to 1 000 (1sec).

Table 300 — Write Speed Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved			WRC		RDD	Exact	MRW
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)							
5				End LBA				
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)							
9				Read Speed				
10								
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)							
13				Write Speed				
14								
15								(LSB)

The Write Rotation Control (WRC) field specifies the type of the medium Rotation Control. See Table 301.

Table 301 — Write Rotation Control values

WRC value	Description
00b	Default Rotation Control
01b	CAV
Others	Reserved

Media default rotation control is the rotation control is defined by media specifications. Typical default rotation controls are shown in Table 302.

Table 302 — Typical Default Rotation Controls

Media	Default Rotation Control	Media	Default Rotation Control
CD-R/RW	CLV	DVD+RW	CLV
DVD-R/-RW	CLV	BD	CLV
DVD-RAM	ZCLV		

If default rotation control is CAV, this field shall be set to zero.

The RDD bit shall be set to zero.

Exact bit of one indicates that the Drive may perform the recording operation specified by Write Speed Descriptor on the whole media mounted. If the Drive is uncertain, this bit shall set to zero.

The MRW bit indicates that this Write Speed Descriptor is suitable for mixture of read and write (e.g. overwrite mode).

The End LBA field shall indicate the medium capacity if a medium is mounted. The value shall be same as the value reported by READ CAPACITY command. If no medium is mounted, the Drive shall report the maximum capacity of the most appropriate media.

The Read Speed field should indicate the highest read performance data of all Blocks in kilobytes per second. The value FFFFFF00h shall mean an automatic read speed setting by the Drive.

When the Drive reports automatic read speed setting (FFFFFF00h) in Read Speed field the Drive may ignore the Read Size field in Performance Descriptor of SET STREAMING command.

Note 15. A Drive may set a reference value in Read Speed field to set a value with the paired Write Size/Write Time in the Performance Descriptor sent with the SET STREAMING command.

The Write Speed field should indicate the highest write performance data of all Blocks in kilobytes per second.

The value of Read Speed field and Write Speed field shall indicate the case of the maximum size of the medium format. For example when 8cm recordable medium is mounted, the value of 12cm disc shall be reported. This rule is not applied to the End LBA field.

Note 16. The Write Speed (Type field = 03h) format may not be able show the difference between 6X CLV and 6X-8X ZCLV on DVD-R/+R media. 6X-8X ZCLV may be regarded as 8X CLV. The correct write speed profile and read speed profiles that are selected are shown by Performance (Type field = 00h) format.

6.7.3.6 DBI (Type=04h)

This command reports a list of Defective Block Information (DBI) data that is a certification result of the medium. To keep compatibility among three DBI memory models described in 4.19.4.5, “DBI memory management”, the Host should specify the correct logical block address to be read for defect information in the Starting LBA field of GET PERFORMANCE CDB.

If the Drive supports Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature but this Feature is not current, only DBI data Header shall be reported. If the Drive does not support Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The result data shall be formatted as shown in Table 303, Table 304, and Table 305.

Table 303 — DBI data

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0-7	DBI data Header							
8-n	DBI Descriptor(s)							

Table 304 — DBI data Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1	DBI Data Length							
2								
3								(LSB)
4-7	Reserved							

The DBI Data Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following result data. The DBI Data Length value does not include the DBI Data Length field itself. This value is not modified when the Maximum number of descriptors is insufficient to return all of the DBI data available.

Table 305 — DBI Descriptor

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1				Start LBA of defective blocks				
2								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)			Number of consecutive defective blocks				
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved			DBIF	Error Level Type			
7	Reserved							

The Start LBA of defective blocks field indicates the start LBA of defective blocks on the medium. The value shall be the packet start LBA that the packet includes the sector specified by the Starting LBA field in CDB.

The Number of consecutive defective blocks field indicates the number of consecutive defective blocks from the LBA specified by the Start LBA of defective blocks field.

The DBI Full (DBIF) bit indicates that incomplete verify operation occurs due to DBI memory full when Simple DBI memory model or small DBI cache memory model is used (see 4.19.4.5, “DBI memory management”). If this bit is set to 1, the VERIFY (10) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command was terminated at the address calculated from this descriptor before certification completion of specified number of blocks in CDB. The actual terminated address of VERIFY (10) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command is “Start LBA of defective blocks” + “Number of consecutive defective blocks” – 1. To continue the verification of the blocks, the Host should issue VERIFY (10) command from “Start LBA of defective blocks” + “Number of consecutive defective blocks” address.

If this bit is set to 0, indicates that the VERIFY (10) or WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command is terminated without DBI memory full.

At the beginning of the next VERIFY (10)/WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command or at the medium change, the DBIF bit shall be set to zero. By transferring the DBI descriptor of DBIF = 1 or by performing of READ (10)/READ (12) command, this bit shall not be cleared.

In the case of small DBI cache memory model, when WDBI cache is updated by the WRITE (10)/WRITE (12) command, the DBIF bit shall be set to zero.

The Error Level Type field indicates the type of the error level of the defective blocks. See Table 306.

Table 306 — Error Level Type values

Error Level Type value	Error Level Type	Description
0	Type 1	Recovered light defect in specified defective blocks. Data in the blocks may be recovered by error correction.
1	Type 2	Recovered heavy defect in specified defective blocks. Data in the blocks may be recovered by error correction and multiple retry seek/read action.
2	Type 3	Un-recovered read/seek error defect in specified defective blocks.
3	Type 4	Write error occurs in the specified defective blocks. Data had not be written on the sectors.
Others	Others	Reserved

6.7.3.7 DBI cache zone (Type=05h)

This command reports a list of Defective Block Information (DBI) data that is a certification result of the medium. To keep compatibility among three DBI memory models described in 4.19.4.5, “DBI memory management”, the Host should specify the correct logical block address to be read for defect information in the Starting LBA field of GET PERFORMANCE CDB.

If the Drive supports Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature but this Feature is not current, only DBI data Header shall be reported. If the Drive does not support Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The result data shall be formatted as listed in Table 626, Table 627, and Table 628.

The DBI cache zone descriptor provides a way for the Host to indicate to the Drive that the application has specific request for Drive behavior of small DBI cache model in DRT-DM mode. Disc volume space is divided into a few DBI cache zones. RDBI and WDBI memory shall be allocated for each DBI cache zones. Minimally 2 DBI cache zones shall be supported. Number of supported DBI cache zone is shown in Number of DBI cache zones field of Table 135 — Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Descriptor.

If the Drive supports “Simple DBI memory model” (see 4.19.4.5.2), the Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If the Drive supports “Large DBI buffer memory model” (see 4.19.4.5.3), the Drive shall report single DBI cache zone that starts from LBA 0 to the end of the medium.

The descriptor data shall be formatted as listed in Table 628 — DBI cache zone Descriptor(s).

6.7.4 Timeouts

The GET PERFORMANCE command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.7.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting is defined in Table 307.

Table 307 — Recommended Errors for the GET PERFORMANCE Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.8 INQUIRY Command

6.8.1 Introduction

The INQUIRY Command requests that information regarding identification of the Drive be sent to the Host. Options allow the Host to request additional information about the Drive. Features that specify implementation of the INQUIRY command are listed in Table 308.

Table 308 — Features Associated with the INQUIRY Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core Feature	Mandatory

The INQUIRY command is described in [SPC-3]. The description of command behavior is consistent for all Drives, however, there are variations in INQUIRY data for ATAPI and USB connected Drives.

6.8.2 INQUIRY Data for ATAPI and USB Drives

MM Drives shall have at least 36 bytes if INQUIRY data available according to Table 309.

Table 309 — INQUIRY Data for ATAPI and USB Drives

Field	Value
Peripheral Device Type	00101b
Peripheral Qualifier	000b
RMB	1b
Version	According to [SPC-3]
Response Data Format	0010b
HiSup	0b[1]
NormACA	0b[1]
Protect	0b
3PC	0b
TPGS	0b
ACC	0b
SCCS	0b
ADDR16	0b
MCHNGR	0b
MultIP	0b
VS1	0b
EncServ	0b
BQUE	0b
VS2	0b
CmdQue	0b
LINKED	0b
SYNC	0b
WBUS16	0b
Vendor Identification	According to [SPC-3]
Product Identification	According to [SPC-3]
Product Revision Level	According to [SPC-3]
[1][Fuji-Ref1] defines bits 7-4 of byte 3 as ATAPI Transport Version. An ATAPI or USB Drive that is compliant with [Fuji-Ref1] sets Version = 0 and ATAPI Transport Version = 3.	

Any and all fields beyond byte 35 shall be according to [SPC-3].

ATAPI and USB attached MM Drives do not support multiple Hosts and do not support multiple LUNs. For this reason, ATAPI and USB attached MM Drives typically set the Version field to 00h.

In order that a MM Drive claim compliance with this standard, the value 04E0h should appear in the list of Version Descriptors.

In the Device Identification VPD Page, MM Drives shall minimally report the SCSI Target Device Identification Descriptor.

6.8.3 Timeouts

Command Processing timeouts as specified by the Timeout Feature do not apply to the INQUIRY command.

6.8.4 Error Reporting

Table 310 describes errors that may occur during the operation of the Command or that may cause a CHECK CONDITION status to be reported.

Table 310 — INQUIRY Command Errors

Error	Reference
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.9 LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM Command

6.9.1 Introduction

The LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM command requests the Drive Changer to load or unload a Disc. This command is associated with the features listed in Table 311.

Table 311 — Features Associated with the LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0102h	Embedded Media Changer	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.9.2 The CDB and its Parameters

6.9.2.1 The CDB

The LOAD/ONLOAD MEDIUM CDB is shown in Table 312.

Table 312 — LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (A6h)							
1	Reserved							Immed
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved						LoUnlo	Start
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Slot							
9	Reserved							
10	Reserved							
11	Control							

6.9.2.2 Immed

If the Immed is set to zero, the command shall not be terminated until the load/unload operation has completed. If the Immed bit is set to one the Drive shall return status as soon as the CDB has been validated.

6.9.2.3 Start and LoUnlo

Meanings of the Start and LoUnlo bits are defined in Table 313.

Table 313 — LoUnlo/Start Operation

LoUnlo	Start	Operation
0	0	Abort any prior changer command
0	1	Reserved
1	0	Unload media. The Slot parameter has no meaning
1	1	Either move the disc in the selected slot to the play position or select the specified slot for use with media access commands

6.9.2.4 Slot

The Slot field indicates the Slot to be loaded. The Drive should always initialize (Load) Slot 0 at Power On or Hard Reset.

If a Load is requested when the requested slot does not contain a disc, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION Status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to NOT READY/MEDIUM NOT PRESENT.

If an Unload is requested when the Play Position does not contain a disc, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION Status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB for the Slot Byte.

6.9.3 Command Processing

No UNIT ATTENTION Condition shall be generated for the Host issuing the LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM Command when discs are loaded or unloaded from the playing position.

6.9.4 Timeouts

The LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM command belongs to timeout group 2 when Immed is zero. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

When the Immed is set to one, status shall be returned within a Group 1 timeout.

6.9.5 Error Reporting

When the command operation began with the CDB Immed bit set to one, it is possible that a deferred error may be reported in some future command.

Table 314 describes errors that may occur during the operation of the Command or that may cause a CHECK CONDITION status to be reported.

Table 314 — Recommended Error Reporting for the LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.10 MECHANISM STATUS Command

6.10.1 Introduction

The Mechanism Status command requests that the Drive respond with the current status of the device, including any Changer Mechanism that adheres to this standard. This command is intended to provide information to the Host about the current operational state of the Drive. The Drive takes operational direction from both the Host and the user. Movement of media in/out of the Drive as well as Play operations may be due to external controls or Host commands. This command provides a method that allows the Host to know what has transpired with the changer mechanism.

Table 315 shows the features associated with this command.

Table 315 — Features Associated with the MECHANISM STATUS Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0003h	Removable Medium	Mandatory
0102h	Embedded Media Changer	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.10.2 The CDB and its Parameters

The MECHANISM STATUS CDB is shown in Table 316.

Table 316 — MECHANISM STATUS CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (BDh)							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
9								(LSB)
10	Reserved							
11	Control							

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum length, in bytes, of the Mechanism Status Parameter list that shall be transferred from the Drive to the Host. An Allocation Length field of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

6.10.3 Command Processing

The Mechanism Status Parameter list returned contains a header followed by zero or more fixed-length Slot Tables (Table 317). If the Drive does not support the changer commands, then the number of slot tables returned to the Host should be zero.

Table 317 — Mechanism Status Parameter List Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 7	Mechanism Status Header							
8 – n	Slot Tables							

The Mechanism Status Header format is shown in Table 318.

Table 318 — Mechanism Status Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Fault	Changer State		Current Slot (Low order 5 bits)				
1	Mechanism State			Door open	Reserved	Current Slot (High order 3 bits)		
2	(MSB)	Current LBA (Legacy)						
3								
4								(LSB)
5	Number of Slots Available							
6	(MSB)	Length of Slot Tables						
7								(LSB)

The Fault bit indicates that the changer failed to complete the operation reported in the Changer State field.

The Changer State field (Table 319) indicates the current state of the changer.

Table 319 — Changer State Field

Changer State	Definition
0h	Ready
1h	Load in Progress
2h	Unload in Progress
3h	Initializing

The Current Slot field (an 8-bit field) indicates the Current Slot selected. Changers compatible with a bootable device specification should always initialize (Load) Slot zero on power-on reset or hard reset. This value shall only be changed when a LOAD/UNLOAD command is processed. Operations initiated by a user shall not cause this value to change. If the Drive is not a changer, then this field is reserved.

The Mechanism State field (Table 320) encodes the current operation of mechanism.

Table 320 — Mechanism State Field

Mechanism State	Definition
0h	Idle
1h	Legacy definition - Playing (Audio or Data)
2h	Legacy definition - Scanning
3h	Legacy definition – Active with Host, Composite or Other Ports in use (i.e., READ)
4h-6h	Reserved
7h	No State Information Available

The Slot Table response data format is shown in Table 321. Each slot shall respond with the status defined.

The Door open bit, when set to one, indicates that the Door(s) or Tray(s) is open or the magazine is not present. If the Drive does not have either a tray or a door, this bit shall be set to zero.

The Current LBA value returns the location that was last used while reading or playing. Once a Read or Play operation has been completed the value of this field may be undefined. While a Read or Play is in progress this field shall contain the LBA of the current block being processed. This field is defined as Legacy and should be set to zero.

The Number of Slots Available field indicates the number of slots available. The maximum number of slots is 255.

The Length of Slot Tables field specifies the length in bytes of the all the slot information that follows (e.g. for a 2 slot Drive this value is 8). The Slot Table format is shown in Table 321.

Table 321 — Slot Table Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Disc Present	Reserved						Change
1	Reserved						CWP_V	CWP
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Disc Present bit indicates that there is a Disc in this slot. The reporting of this information is optional after a reset or Disc change. If this capability is not supported, the bit shall be set to one after a reset condition or when a medium has been changed. When the Drive is given a load command for a slot that contains no Disc, the bit corresponding to that slot shall then contain a zero for any following response.

The Change bit indicates that the Disc in that slot has been changed since the last time the disc was loaded. The Change bit is mandatory.

CWP_V, if set to one, indicates that the Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) of the Cartridge in that slot has been checked and CWP bit is valid. If CWP_V is zero, the CWP bit is invalid.

CWP, if set to 1, indicates that the CWP status is active on the Cartridge. If CWP_V is set to 0, CWP bit is invalid and shall be set to zero.

6.10.4 Timeouts

The MECHANISM STATUS command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.10.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the MECHANISM STATUS command is defined in Table 322.

Table 322 — Recommended Errors for the Mechanism Status Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.11 MODE SELECT (10) Command

6.11.1 Introduction

The MODE SELECT (10) command provides a means for the Host to specify medium, Drive, or peripheral device parameters. Hosts should issue MODE SENSE (10) prior to each MODE SELECT (10) to determine supported mode pages, mode page lengths, and current settings.

Table 323 shows the features associated with the MODE SELECT command.

Table 323 — Features Associated with the Mode Select Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core Feature	Mandatory

The MODE SELECT (10) command is described in [SPC-3].

See clause 7 for detailed descriptions of mode pages, parameters and formats.

6.11.2 Timeouts

The MODE SELECT (10) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.11.3 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the MODE SELECT (10) command is defined in Table 324.

Table 324 — Recommended Errors for the Mode Select (10) Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.12 MODE SENSE (10) Command

6.12.1 Introduction

The MODE SENSE (10) command provides a means for the Host to specify medium, Drive, or peripheral device parameters. Hosts should issue MODE SENSE (10) prior to each MODE SELECT (10) to determine supported mode pages, mode page lengths, and current settings.

Table 325 shows the features associated with the MODE SENSE command.

Table 325 — Features Associated with the Mode Sense Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core Feature	Mandatory

The MODE SELECT (10) command is described in [SPC-3].

See clause 7 for detailed descriptions of mode pages, parameters and formats.

Note 17. Since MM Drives do not support sub-pages of mode pages, the Sub-Page field of the MODE SENSE (10) command is ignored by the Drive.

Note 18. Since MM Drives do not support Block Descriptors (see 7.2.1), the LLBAA bit in the MODE SENSE (10) CDB has no meaning and is ignored by the Drive.

6.12.2 Timeouts

The MODE SENSE (10) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.12.3 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the MODE SENSE (10) command is defined in Table 326.

Table 326 — Recommended Errors for the Mode Sense (10) Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.13 PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command

6.13.1 Introduction

The PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command requests that the Drive enable or disable the removal of the medium in the Drive. The Drive shall not allow medium removal if any Host currently has medium removal prevented. The method of prevention of medium removal is vendor specific.

[SPC-3] describes a PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command; however, the [SPC-3] description does not apply to MM devices.

Table 327 shows the Features associated with the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command.

Table 327 — Features Associated with the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0002h	Morphing	Mandatory
0003h	Removable Medium	Mandatory

6.13.2 The CDB and its Parameters

The PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL CDB is shown in Table 328.

Table 328 — PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Eh)							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved						Persistent	Prevent
5	Control							

The Drive maintains two separate Prevent states: Prevent and Persistent Prevent as described in 4.1.7. The Persistent and Prevent bits are used to independently select values for these states. See Table 329.

Table 329 — State Selection

Persistent	Prevent	Meaning
0	0	Prevent State shall be cleared (Unlocked)
0	1	Prevent State shall be set (Locked)
1	0	Persistent Prevent State shall be cleared (Persistent Allow)
1	1	Persistent Prevent State shall be set (Persistent Prevent)

The recommended default state at power-on or hard reset is Prevent State cleared and Persistent Prevent State cleared.

6.13.3 Command Processing

6.13.3.1 Overview

The selected state begins upon successful completion of the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command.

6.13.3.2 Persistent Prevent State

Upon entering the Persistent Prevent state, the Drive shall disable any eject mechanisms, and all media after initial media spin up shall remain locked in the Drive until the Host issues an eject request, or the Persistent Prevent status is reset and the hardware eject mechanism again becomes available.

The Persistent Prevent status shall be reset upon receipt of a PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command (from the same Host that originally set the Persistent Prevent state) with the Persistent bit set and the Prevent bit cleared, a bus reset, or a power reset condition.

Upon insertion of new media, under Persistent Prevent conditions, the Drive eject controls shall remain functional up until the Drive generates or reports a New Media event as defined in the Media Events section. After this event has been generated or reported, the media shall remain locked as defined above. The Drive is

allowed to morph from the no medium present state to the medium present state without explicit direction from the Host.

The Drive shall not report a New Media Event if the medium is removed between the generation of the Event and the next GET EVENT/STATUS NOTIFICATION command issued.

The Persistent Prevent state shall not prevent an eject request from the Host from succeeding.

6.13.3.3 Prevent State

The Prevent State (Locked) is entered upon successful completion of the PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command where Prevent State is set.

The prevention of medium removal for the Drive shall terminate:

1. After the Host has issued a PREVENT/ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command clearing Prevent State and the Drive has successfully performed a flush cache operation; or
2. Upon a Hard Reset condition; or
3. Upon a DEVICE RESET in an ATAPI environment; or

While a prevention of medium removal condition is in effect the Drive shall inhibit mechanisms that normally allow removal of the medium by an operator. This is also the case for changers.

Unlocked is the recommended default state of the Drive at power on.

This command affects the actions of the START STOP UNIT command (6.42) and other mechanisms (e.g. manual ejection / media removal systems).

Table 330 — Actions for Lock/Unlock/Eject

Operation	Current Prevent State	No Media Present	Media Present and READY
Unlock	Unlocked	No error	No error.
	Locked	No error, medium may be inserted.	No error, medium may be removed.
Lock	Unlocked	No Error, media insertion is not permitted	No Error, media to be removal is not permitted
	Locked	No error	No error
Start/Stop Unit with Start=0 and LoEj=1	Unlocked	No error. Media mount mechanism is opened.	No error. Media is ejected.
	Locked	CHECK CONDITION, SK/ASC/ASCQ = NOT READY/MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED	CHECK CONDITION, SK/ASC/ASCQ = ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED
Manual Eject	Unlocked	Media mount mechanism is opened.	Media is ejected.
	Locked	No visible operation occurs.	No visible operation occurs.

6.13.4 Timeouts

The PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.13.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL command is defined in Table 331.

Table 331 — Recommended Errors for the PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.14 READ (10) Command

6.14.1 Introduction

The READ (10) command requests that the Drive transfer data to the Host. The most recent data value written in the addressed logical block region shall be returned.

Table 332 shows the Features associated with the READ (10) command.

Table 332 — Features Associated with the READ (10) Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0010h	Random Readable	Mandatory
001Dh	MultiRead	Mandatory
001Fh	DVD Read	Mandatory
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature	Mandatory
0040h	BD Read	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.14.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.14.2.1 The CDB

The READ (10) CDB is shown in Table 333.

Table 333 — READ (10) CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (28h)							
1	Restricted for [SBC-2]			DPO	FUA	Reserved	Restricted for [SBC-2]	Obsolete
2	(MSB)							
3	Starting Logical Block Address							
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved			Restricted for [SBC-2]				
7	(MSB) Transfer Length							
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.14.2.2 DPO

For MM Drives, the Disable Page Out (DPO) bit shall be set to zero. For a description of DPO, see [SBC-2].

6.14.2.3 FUA

A Force Unit Access (FUA) bit of one indicates that the Drive shall access the media in performing the command. The READ (10) command shall access the specified logical blocks from the media (i.e., the data is not directly retrieved from the cache). In the case where the cache contains a more recent version of a logical block than the media, the logical block shall first be written to the media.

An FUA bit of zero indicates that the Drive may satisfy the command by accessing the cache memory. For read operations, any logical blocks that are contained in the cache memory may be transferred to the Host directly from the cache memory.

6.14.2.4 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field contains the LBA of the first block from which data shall be returned. If the Logical Block Address is beyond the range of recorded data, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE.

6.14.2.5 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length field specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

6.14.3 Command Processing

The block size for the READ (10) command shall be 2 048 bytes. If the block size of a requested sector is not 2 048, the Drive shall:

1. Terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status,
2. Set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK,
3. The ILI bit in sense data byte 2 shall be set to one, and
4. Set the sense Information bytes to the LBA of the sector.

Any read by the Host to a Logical Block with a Title Key present in the sector (DVD-ROM Media Only), when the Authentication Success Flag (ASF) is set to zero, shall be blocked. The command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/READ OF SCRAMBLED SECTOR WITHOUT AUTHENTICATION.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW with basic formatting operating in background, the READ (10) command operation shall be as follows:

1. If any of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in a blank area of the media where format writing has not yet occurred, the blank sectors shall not be read and the command shall fabricate and return data as if the sectors had been format written.
2. If all of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in an area of the media where format writing has occurred, the command shall operate normally.

When Restricted Overwrite method is performed (Restricted Overwrite Feature (0026h) or Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature (002Ch)), READ (10) command or READ (12) command shall be performed normally after data in buffer is written on the disc.

If Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature (0029h) is current, the Drive shall follow the setting of the PER bit and the EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (01h). See clause 4.19.

6.14.4 Timeouts

The READ (10) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.14.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ (10) command is defined in Table 334.

Table 334 — Recommended Errors for the READ (10) Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.15 READ (12) Command

6.15.1 Introduction

The READ (12) command requests that the Drive transfer data to the Host. The most recent data value written in the addressed logical block shall be returned.

Table 335 shows the Features associated with the READ (12) command.

Table 335 — Features Associated with the READ (12) Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
001Fh	DVD Read	Mandatory
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory
0040h	BD Read	Mandatory
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.15.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.15.2.1 The CDB

The READ (12) CDB is shown in Table 336.

Table 336 — READ (12) CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (28h)							
1	Restricted for [SBC-2]			DPO	FUA	Reserved	Restricted for [SBC-2]	Obsolete
2	(MSB)	Starting Logical Block Address						
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	(MSB)	Transfer Length						
7								
8								
9								(LSB)
10	Streaming	Reserved		Restricted for [SBC-2]				
11	Control							

6.15.2.2 DPO

For MM Drives, the Disable Page Out (DPO) bit shall be set to zero. For a description of DPO, see [SBC-2].

6.15.2.3 FUA

A Force Unit Access (FUA) bit of one indicates that the Drive shall access the media in performing the command. The READ (12) command shall access the specified logical blocks from the media (i.e., the data is not directly retrieved from the cache). In the case where the cache contains a more recent version of a logical block than the media, the logical block shall first be written to the media.

An FUA bit of zero indicates that the Drive may satisfy the command by accessing the cache memory. For read operations, any logical blocks that are contained in the cache memory may be transferred to the Host directly from the cache memory.

6.15.2.4 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field contains the LBA of the first block from which data shall be returned. If the Logical Block Address is outside the range of recorded data, the Drive shall terminate the command with

CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE.

6.15.2.5 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length field specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be transferred.

6.15.2.6 Streaming

The Streaming bit of one specifies that the Stream playback operation shall be used for the command (see 4.20.2). The Streaming bit of zero specifies that the conventional READ operation shall be used for the command. If the Streaming bit is set to one, the WCE and RCD bits in the Caching mode page may be ignored. If the Streaming bit is set to one, linear replacements shall not be performed.

If Streaming bit is set to 1 and if the Drive supports Group3 timeout and if G3Enable bit in Timeout & Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, the Drive shall terminate this command within Group 3 timeout. If G3Enable bit is set to 0, this command is categorized as Group 1 timeout.

When the Streaming bit is set to one, the FUA bit shall be set to zero. If the Streaming bit is set to one and the FUA bit is set to one, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.15.3 Command Processing

The block size for the READ (12) command shall be 2 048 bytes. If the block size of a requested sector is not 2 048, the Drive shall:

1. Terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status,
2. Set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK,
3. The ILI bit in sense data byte 2 shall be set to one, and
4. Set the sense Information bytes to the LBA of the sector.

Any read by the Host to a Logical Block with a Title Key present in the sector (DVD-ROM Media Only), when the Authentication Success Flag (ASF) is set to zero shall be blocked. The command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/READ OF SCRAMBLED SECTOR WITHOUT AUTHENTICATION.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW with basic formatting operating in background, the READ (12) command operation shall be as follows:

a) If any of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in a blank area of the media where format writing has not yet occurred, the blank sectors shall not be read and the command shall fabricate and return data as if the sectors had been format written.
b) If all of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in an area of the media where format writing has occurred, the command shall operate normally.

6.15.4 Timeouts

The READ (12) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

If the Drive supports Group3 timeout and the G3Enable bit in Timeout and Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, READ (12) with Streaming = 1 is re-categorized as Group 3 timeout. Refer to 4.1.9.5.

6.15.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ (12) command is defined in Table 337.

Table 337 — Recommended Errors for the READ (12) Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.16 READ BUFFER Command

6.16.1 Introduction

In MM devices, the READ BUFFER command is used in conjunction with the WRITE BUFFER command for upgrading microcode.

The READ BUFFER command may also be used in conjunction with the WRITE BUFFER command as a diagnostic function for testing memory in the device and the integrity of the service delivery subsystem.

Execution of this command shall not alter the medium.

Table 338 shows the Features associated with the READ BUFFER command.

Table 338 — Features Associated with the READ BUFFER Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0104h	Microcode Upgrade	Mandatory for mode = 03h (Buffer Descriptor)
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

The READ BUFFER command is described in [SPC-3].

6.16.2 Timeouts

The READ BUFFER command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.16.3 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ BUFFER command is defined in Table 339.

Table 339 — Recommended Errors for the READ BUFFER Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.17 READ BUFFER CAPACITY Command

6.17.1 Introduction

During certain streamed write operations, the READ BUFFER CAPACITY command returns the Drive's total length of buffer and its length of available buffer. The Drive reports the length of the buffer during Track at Once Recording, Session at Once Recording, or Disc at once recording.

Table 340 shows the Features associated with the READ BUFFER CAPACITY command.

Table 340 — Features Associated with the READ BUFFER CAPACITY Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Mandatory. Conditional for Block bit = 1.
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.17.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.17.2.1 The CDB

The READ BUFFER CAPACITY CDB is shown in Table 341.

Table 341 — READ BUFFER CAPACITY CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (5Ch)							
1	Reserved			Reserved				Block
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.17.2.2 Block

When the Block bit is zero, the Host is requesting that buffer length information be reported as bytes. The Block bit, if set to one, indicates that the Host is requesting buffer length information reported as blocks. If the Drive does not support the case for Block = 1, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.17.2.3 Allocation Length

If Allocation Length is 12 or greater, the entire Buffer Capacity structure shall be returned. If Allocation Length is less than 12, the returned data shall be truncated to that length. An Allocation Length of zero is not an error.

6.17.3 Command Processing

6.17.3.1 Reporting Available Buffer in Bytes

If the Real-time Streaming Feature is present and current, the Drive shall return the Buffer Capacity structure associated with Block = 0 (Table 342).

Table 342 — Buffer Capacity Structure, when Block = 0

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Length of the Buffer						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Blank Length of Buffer						
9								
10								
11								(LSB)

The Data Length field defines the number of data bytes to be transferred by the Drive. The Data Length value does not include the Data Length field itself.

The Length of Buffer indicates the whole capacity of the buffer in bytes.

The Blank Length of Buffer is the length of the unused area of the buffer in bytes. If the Real-time Streaming Feature is present, but not current, the contents of this field are not defined.

6.17.3.2 Reporting Available Buffer in Blocks

If the Real-time Streaming Feature is present and current, and the RBCB bit in the Feature Descriptor is set to one, the Drive shall return the Buffer Capacity structure associated with Block = 1 (Table 343).

Table 343 — Buffer Capacity Structure, when Block = 1

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							Block
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	(MSB)	Available Length of Buffer						
9								
10								
11								(LSB)

The Data Length field defines the number of data bytes to be transferred by the Drive. The Data Length value does not include the Data Length field itself.

The Available Length of Buffer field indicates the number of blocks of buffer currently available to be written to by the Host. The Drive shall be able to immediately accept at least this much data for writing. If the Available Length of Buffer becomes zero, the Drive shall begin writing. The Drive may begin writing before the Available Length of Buffer reaches zero.

6.17.4 Timeouts

The READ BUFFER CAPACITY command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.17.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ BUFFER CAPACITY command is defined in Table 344.

Table 344 — Recommended Errors for the READ BUFFER CAPACITY Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.18 READ CAPACITY Command

6.18.1 Introduction

The READ CAPACITY command provides a means for the Host to request information regarding the capacity of media currently loaded into the Drive. The READ CAPACITY command is used to determine read LBA limits for Read-Only devices. For capacity associated with writing operations, see 6.23, READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Command and 6.26, READ TRACK INFORMATION Command.

Table 345 shows the Features associated with the READ CAPACITY command.

Table 345 — Features Associated with the READ CAPACITY Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0010h	Random Readable	Mandatory
0020h	Random Writable	Mandatory
0025h	Write-Once	Mandatory
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0027h	CD-RW CAV Write	Mandatory
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory

6.18.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.18.2.1 The CDB

The READ CAPACITY CDB is shown in Table 346.

Table 346 — READ CAPACITY CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (25h)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="7">Reserved</td><td>Obsolete</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="4">Logical Block Address=0000 0000h</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="7">Reserved</td><td>PMI=0</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.18.2.2 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field is not used by MM Drives. The Drive may ignore this field.

6.18.2.3 PMI

The PMI field is not used by MM Drives and shall be set to zero.

6.18.3 Command Processing

The Drive shall respond to this command by returning eight bytes of READ CAPACITY response data. The format of response data is shown in Table 347.

Table 347 — READ CAPACITY Response Data

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1	Logical Block Address							
2								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)							
5	Block Length in Bytes = 2 048d							
6								
7								(LSB)

The returned Logical Block Address is dependent upon media and format type. Table 348 shows the reporting for each MM case.

Table 348 — Logical Block Address Reporting

Media/Format	Logical Block Address
CD	If the Start address of last recorded Lead-out minus 1 is a run-out block, this value is the Start address of last recorded Lead-out minus 2. Otherwise, this value is the Start address of last recorded Lead-out minus 1. The Logical Address calculation shall be according to the addressing method of the track that immediately precedes the Lead-out. If no complete session exists on the medium, this field shall be set to zero.
DVD	The last addressable user data block (= Last Recorded Address) in the last track of the last complete session.
BD-ROM	The first PSN in the User Data Zone is 00100000h. The Last PSN of the User Data Zone, L, is specified in the DI. The READ CAPACITY LBA is L – 00100000h.
Unformatted DVD-RAM, BD-RE	The command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to either MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED or MEDIUM ERROR/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED.
Formatted DVD-RAM, BD-RE	The READ CAPACITY LBA is the last recordable LBA on the media. That LBA is calculated from DDS[1] contents.
Blank BD-R or BD-R SRM-POW with no complete sessions	The LBA reported is 00000000h.
BD-R SRM-POW with at least one complete session	The LBA of the last addressable user data block (= Last Recorded Address) in the last track of the last complete session.
BD-R RRM and BD-R SRM+POW	LBA of the last sector of the last writable Cluster in the User Data Zone. The (T)DDS contains a field named: Last LSN of User Data Zone. The contents of that field is the READ CAPACITY LBA.
[1]The format of the DDS is different for each media type.	

In the case of DVD+RW, the Logical Block Address reported shall be the expected final value when BG formatting is in progress and not completed (i.e., when the READ DISC INFORMATION command response for BG format status is non-zero).

For all MM media and format types, the Block Length shall be reported, in bytes, as 2 048.

6.18.4 Timeouts

The READ CAPACITY command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.18.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ CAPACITY command is defined in Table 349.

Table 349 — Recommended Errors for the READ CAPACITY Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6

6.19 READ CD Command

6.19.1 Introduction

The READ CD command provides a method for accessing most fields within any CD sector. This command has a large variety of execution outcomes due the numerous parameters.

Table 350 shows the Features associated with the READ CD command.

Table 350 — Features Associated with the READ CD Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement[1]
001Dh	MultiRead	Mandatory
001Eh	CD Read	Mandatory
[1]The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.19.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.19.2.1 The CDB

The READ CD CDB is shown in Table 351.

Table 351 — READ CD CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (Beh)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td><td colspan="3">Expected Sector Type</td><td>DAP</td><td>Obsolete</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="4">Starting Logical Block Address</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="3">Transfer Length</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">9</td><td colspan="5">Main Channel Selection Bits</td><td colspan="2" rowspan="2">C2 Error Information</td><td rowspan="2">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>SYNC</td><td colspan="2">Header Codes</td><td>User Data</td><td>EDC & ECC</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="5">Reserved</td><td colspan="3">Sub-channel Selection Bits</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.19.2.2 Expected Sector Type

The Expected Sector Type field (Table 352) is used to restrict reading to a specific CD sector type. A transfer operation is terminated as soon as data is encountered that does not match one of those specified in the sector type field of the command. The sector/sectors that do not match shall not be transferred to the Host.

Table 352 — Expected Sector type field bit definitions

Sector Type	Definition	Description	Requirement
000b	All types	No checking of the data type is performed. If there is a transition between CD data and CD-DA data, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK.	Mandatory
001b	CD-DA	Only IEC 908 (CD-DA) sectors shall be returned. If any other sector type is encountered, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK.	Mandatory
010b	Mode 1	Only sectors with a user data field of 2 048 bytes shall be returned. If any other sector type is encountered, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK.	Mandatory
011b	Mode 2 formless	Only sectors with the expanded user data field (2 336 bytes) shall be returned. If any other sector type is encountered, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK.	Optional
100b	Mode 2 form 1	Only sectors that have a user data field of 2 048 bytes shall be returned. If any other sector type is encountered, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK.	Mandatory
101b	Mode 2 form 2	Only sectors that have a user data field of 2 324 bytes shall be returned. If any other sector type is encountered, the command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS THIS TRACK.	Mandatory
110b-111b	Reserved	—	—

6.19.2.3 DAP

Digital Audio Play (DAP) is used to control error concealment when the data being read is CD-DA. If the data being read is not CD-DA, DAP shall be ignored. If the data being read is CD-DA and DAP is set to zero, then the user data returned to the Host should not be modified by flaw obscuring mechanisms such as audio data mute and interpolate. If the data being read is CD-DA and DAP is set to one, then the user data returned to the Host should be modified by flaw obscuring mechanisms such as audio data mute and interpolate.

6.19.2.4 Starting Logical Block Address

The Starting Logical Block Address field specifies the logical block that the read operation shall begin.

6.19.2.5 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length field specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length field of zero indicates that no transfer of data shall occur. This condition shall not be considered an error.

6.19.2.6 Main Channel Selection Bits

The Main Channel Field Selection Bits identify fields of the 2 352 bytes of main channel that the Host is requesting for each sector:

When Sync is zero, the sync field of data sectors shall not be included in the read data stream. If Sync is one, the 12-byte sync field (Figure 17) of data sectors shall be included in the read data stream.

The Header Codes refer to the sector header and the sub-header that is present in mode 2 formed sectors as shown in Table 353.

Table 353 — Header Codes

Header Code	Field Specification
00b	No header information shall be transferred.
01b	The 4-byte sector header (Table 19) of data sectors shall be transferred,
10b	The 8-byte sector sub-header (Table 24) of mode 2 formed sectors shall be transferred.
11b	Both sector header and sub-header (12 bytes) shall be transferred. Header shall be transferred first.

When User Data is zero, the User Data field shall not be included in the read data stream. If User Data is one, the User Data field shall be included in the read data stream. The size of the user data field varies according to sector type.

When EDC & ECC is zero, no field that follows the user data field shall be included in the read data stream. If EDC & ECC is one, all fields that follow the user data field shall be included in the read data stream. The size of the EDC/ECC field varies according to sector type.

A few problems arise:

a. The main channel fields selected may not actually be present in a given CD sector.
b. It is not practical to provide data from 2 or more non-contiguous fields.

In these cases, the combination may be either considered invalid or mapped to a valid combination according to the following rules:

1. If no field is requested, then regardless of sector type, no data shall be transferred. This shall not be considered an error.
2. If the sector is CD-DA and any non-zero number of fields is requested, then the entire 2 352 bytes of main channel shall be transferred.
3. If the sector is a CD data type and the Host has selected fields that are non-contiguous for that sector type, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD in CDB.

Table 354 shows a complete mapping of Main Channel Selection bits.

Table 354 — Main Channel Selection and Mapped Values

Main Channel Selection	Main Channel Selection Value[1]	Require-ment[2]	CD-DA	Mode 1	Mode 2 Formless	Mode 2 Form 1	Mode 2 Form 2
If the Host selects these fields	—	—	The Drive shall map the selection to this value.				
No fields	00h	M	00h	00h	00h	00h	00h
EDC/ECC Only	08h	O	10h	08h	10h	08h	08h
User Data	10h	M	10h	10h	10h	10h	10h
User Data + EDC/ECC	18h	O	10h	18h	10h	18h	18h
Header	20h	O	10h	20h	20h	20h	20h
Header Only + EDC/ECC	28h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Header & User Data	30h	O	10h	30h	30h	Invalid	Invalid
Header & User Data + EDC/ECC	38h	O	10h	38h	30h	Invalid	Invalid
Sub-Header Only	40h	O	10h	00h	00h	40h	40h
Sub-Header Only + EDC/ECC	48h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sub-Header & user data	50h	O	10h	10h	10h	50h	50h
Sub-Header & user data + EDC/ECC	58h	O	10h	18h	10h	58h	58h
All Headers Only	60h	O	10h	20h	20h	60h	60h
All Headers Only + EDC/ECC	68h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
All Headers & user data	70h	O	10h	30h	30h	70h	70h
All Headers & user data + EDC/ECC	78h	O	10h	38h	38h	78h	78h
Sync Only	80h	O	10h	80h	80h	80h	80h
Sync + EDC/ECC	88h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & User Data	90h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & User Data + EDC/ECC	98h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Header Only	A0h	O	10h	A0h	A0h	A0h	A0h
Sync & Header Only + EDC/ECC	A8h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Header + User Data	B0h	O	10h	B0h	B0h	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Header + User Data + EDC/ECC	B8h	O	10h	B8h	B0h	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Sub Header Only	C0h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Sub Header Only + EDC/ECC	C8h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Sub Header & User Data	D0h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & Sub Header & User Data + EDC/ECC	D8h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & All Headers Only	E0h	O	10h	A0h	A0h	E0h	E0h
Sync & All Headers Only + EDC/ECC	E8h	O	10h	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid	Invalid
Sync & All Headers & user data	F0h	O	10h	B0h	B0h	F0h	F0h
Sync & All Headers & user data + EDC/ECC	F8h	M	10h	B8h	B0h	F8h	F8h

[1]This is CDB Byte 9 logically ANDed with F8h.
[2]M = Mandatory, O = Optional

6.19.2.7 C2 Error Information

The C2 Errors code (Table 355) provides for the inclusion of fabricated information based upon the results of C2 error correction (on main channel).

Table 355 — C2 Errors Codes

C2 Errors Code	Number of Bytes	Description
00b	0	No error information is returned.
01b	294	A bit is associated with each of the 2 352 bytes of main channel where: 0 = No C2 error and 1 = C2 error. This results in 294 bytes of C2 error bits. Return the 294 bytes of C2 error bits in the data stream.
10b	296	The Block Error Byte = Logical OR of all of the 294 bytes of C2 error bits. First return Block Error Byte, then a pad byte of zero and finally the 294 bytes of C2 error bits.
11b	—	Reserved

6.19.2.8 Sub-channel Selection bits

The Sub-channel Selection bits (Table 356) allow the Host to request that certain sub-channel information be included in the data stream.

Table 356 — Sub-Channel Selection Field Values

Sub-Channel Selection Bits	Meaning of Host Request	Field Size in Bytes
000b	No Sub-channel data shall be returned.	0
010b	Formatted Q sub-channel data shall be transferred (See Table 357).	16
011b	Reserved	—
100b	Corrected and de-interleaved R-W sub-channel data shall be transferred.	96
101b	Reserved	—
110b	Reserved	—
111b	Reserved	—

The Host may select multiple fields in CDB bytes 9 and 10. The Drive shall transfer the selected fields in the following order:

1. Sync
2. Header
3. Sub-header
4. User Data
5. EDC
6. Mode 1 pad
7. ECC parity
8. C2 block error bytes
9. C2 Error flags
10. Sub-channel

6.19.3 Command Processing

6.19.3.1 Main Channel Field Formats

6.19.3.1.1 Sync Field

Synchronization for CD-DA sectors is performed by scanning sub-channel; there is no sync pattern in the main channel of CD-DA.

Synchronization for CD data sectors is performed by scanning for the sync pattern in the main channel. This 12-byte pattern is identical for all types of data sectors. See Figure 17 in 4.2.3.8.1.

6.19.3.1.2 Headers

The specific sector address identification is based upon its synchronization method. A CD-DA sector address is identified by the Q sub-channel that follows its sub-channel synchronization pattern. So, a CD-DA sector does not contain a header in main channel.

Data sectors are synchronized in main channel, so the address identification is also in main channel: the header. The 4-byte header has the same format for all data sector types. See Table 19 in the models clause.

Only Mode 2 formed data types have a sub-header. The sub-header is 4 bytes in length, but is repeated so that it appears as the 8 bytes that immediately follows the sector header. See Table 24.

6.19.3.1.3 User Data

The user data is defined according to Sector Type field of the CDB:

For CD-DA, User Data is all 2 352 bytes of main channel.

For data Mode 1, User Data is 2 048 bytes beginning at offset 16 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel. See Table 21.

For data Mode 2 formless, User Data is 2 336 bytes beginning at offset 16 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel. See Table 22.

For data Mode 2, form 1, User Data is 2 048 bytes beginning at offset 24 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel. See Table 23.

For data Mode 2, form 2, User Data is 2 324 bytes beginning at offset 24 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel. See Table 25.

6.19.3.1.4 EDC and ECC

The presence and size of EDC redundancy or ECC parity within the 2 352 bytes of main channel is defined according to sector type:

CD-DA sectors have neither EDC redundancy nor ECC parity.

Data Mode 1 sectors have 288 bytes of EDC redundancy, Pad, and ECC parity beginning at offset 2 064 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel (see Table 21).

Data Mode 2 formless sectors have neither EDC redundancy nor ECC parity (see Table 22).

Data Mode 2 form 1 sectors have 280 bytes of EDC redundancy and ECC parity beginning at offset 2 072 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel (see Table 23).

Data Mode 2 form 2 sectors optionally have 4 bytes of EDC redundancy beginning at offset 2 348 of the 2 352 bytes of main channel (see Table 25).

6.19.3.1.5 C2 Errors

A bit is associated with each of the 2 352 bytes of main channel where: 0 = No C2 error and 1 = C2 error. The resulting bit field is ordered exactly as the main channel bytes. Each 8-bit boundary defines a byte of flag bits.

6.19.3.2 Sub-Channel Field Formats

6.19.3.2.1 Overview

Sub-channel data may be collected into 96 bytes of P-W sub-channel as it is separated from main channel during the read process. P and Q sub-channel is typically copied elsewhere for independent construction of 12 bytes each of P and Q sub-channel. See 4.2.1.3.

6.19.3.2.2 RAW P-W Sub-channel

Raw P-W sub-channel is the 96 bytes of sub-channel returned in the order received from the disc surface.

6.19.3.2.3 P and Q Sub-Channel

P sub-channel is recorded with the same bit value in each sub-channel byte. Due to potential media flaws and the lack of error correction, the most accurate method of determining P is by a redundancy vote.

Q sub-channel has a wide variety of formats (see 4.2.3.4 through 4.2.3.7), however all formats are based on one basic format of 10 bytes of data with 2 bytes of CRC. Both P and Q sub-channel are accessible via the READ CD command in a format shown in Table 357.

Table 357 — Formatted Q- Subchannel Data

Byte	Description
0	Control (4 MS bits), ADR (4 LS bits)
1	Track number
2	Index number
3	Min
4	Sec
5	Frame
6	ZERO
7	AMIN
8	ASEC
9	AFRAME
10	CRC or 00h (CRC is optional)
11	CRC or 00h (CRC is optional)
12	00h (pad)
13	00h (pad)
14	00h (pad)
15	Bits 6-0 shall be set to zero, Bit 7 may (optionally) contain the P Sub-channel value. If P sub-channel reporting is not supported, then bit 7 shall be set to zero.

6.19.3.2.4 Corrected and De-interleaved R-W Sub-channel

R-W sub-subchannel may contain graphical information (CD+G) or music controls (CD+MIDI). These forms may occur only on CD audio tracks.

The data from each sector is sepatated into 24-byte “packs” for de-interleaving. The interleaving is 8/24, so 3 contiguous sectors are needed to deinterleave the first pack. Consequently, in order to deliver the correct number of sector sets of R-W sub-channel, the Drive shall include an additional 2 sectors internally.

Once deinterleave has been performed, each pack has Reed-Solomon correction applied and resulting data are sent to the Host in groups of 3 packs – 96 bytes.

For information on deinterleaving and error correction of R-W sub-channel, see System Description Compact Disc Digital Audio Addemdum: R-W Sub-channels.

6.19.3.2.5 CD-Text

CD-Text may appear in CD audio tracks and the Lead-in of a CD audio disc. CD-Text is packed, but the processing of the data is slightly different.

When the Starting Logical Block Address is set to F000 0000h and P-W raw data is selected, the Drive returns P-W raw data from the Lead-in area. If there is no data recorded in the Lead-in area, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set the values of SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK or ILLEGAL REQUEST/INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED.

If the Starting Logical Block Address is set to FFFF FFFFh after the above command, the Sub-channel data shall be returned from the current location within the Lead-in area. It is the responsibility of the Host to convert this data to CD-TEXT format without losing streaming.

For information on deinterleaving and error correction of R-W sub-channel, see System Description Compact Disc Digital Audio Addemdum: CD-TEXT.

6.19.4 Timeouts

The READ CD command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.19.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ CD command is defined in Table 358.

Table 358 — Recommended Errors for the READ CD Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.20 READ CD MSF Command

6.20.1 Introduction

The READ CD MSF command provides a method for accessing most fields within any CD sector. This command is valuable for reading CD digital audio.

Table 359 shows the Features associated with the READ CD MSF command.

Table 359 — Features Associated with the READ CD MSF Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
001Eh	CD Read	Mandatory
NOTE 1: The command requirement is valid only when the feature is current.		

6.20.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.20.2.1 The CDB

The READ CD MSF CDB is shown in Table 360.

Table 360 — READ CD MSF CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (B9h)							
1	Reserved			Expected Sector Type			DAP	Reserved
2	Reserved							
3	Starting M Field							
4	Starting S Field							
5	Starting F Field							
6	Ending M Field							
7	Ending S Field							
8	Ending F Field							
9	Main Channel Selection Bits					C2 Errors		Reserved
	SYNC	Header Codes		User Data	EDC & ECC			
10	Reserved					Sub-channel Selection Bits		
11	Control							

6.20.2.2 Expected Sector Type

See 6.19.2.2 for the definition of the Expected Sector Type field.

6.20.2.3 DAP

See 6.19.2.3 for the definition of the DAP field.

6.20.2.4 Starting M, Starting S, and Starting F Fields

The Starting M field, the Starting S field, and the Starting F field specify the absolute MSF address where the Read operation shall begin. The Starting MSF shall not begin earlier than the start of the first Lead-in on the disc.

6.20.2.5 Ending M, Ending S, and Ending F Fields

The Ending M field, the Ending S field, and the Ending F field specify the absolute MSF address where the Read operation shall end. The Ending MSF shall not end later than 1.5 minutes beyond the start address of the last Lead-out of the disc.

All contiguous sectors between the starting and ending MSF addresses shall be read.

Note 19. Reading across some CD structural boundaries may result in data errors.

If the Starting MSF Address is not found, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set the values of SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the Starting MSF Address is equal to the Ending MSF Address, no read operation occurs. This shall not be considered an error.

If the Starting MSF Address is greater than the Ending MSF Address, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set the values of SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.20.2.6 Main Channel Selection bits

See 6.19.2.6 for the definition of the Main Channel Selection bits field.

6.20.2.7 C2 Error Information

See 6.19.2.7 for the definition of the C2 Error Information field.

6.20.2.8 Sub-channel Selection bits

See 6.19.2.8 for the definition of the Sub-channel Selection bits field.

6.20.3 Command Processing

This command operates identically to the READ CD command (6.19) with the exception of how the Host selects the address range.

6.20.4 Timeouts

The READ CD MSF command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.20.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ CD MSF command is defined in Table 361.

Table 361 — Recommended Errors for the READ CD MSF Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.21 READ DISC INFORMATION Command

6.21.1 Introduction

The READ DISC INFORMATION command allows the Host to request information about the currently mounted MM disc. When this command is required by an implemented Feature, the command shall always function, even if that Feature's Current bit becomes zero.

Table 362 shows the Features associated with the READ DISC INFORMATION command.

Table 362 — Features Associated with the READ DISC INFORMATION Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
001Dh	Multi-Read	Mandatory
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0027h	CD-RW CAV Write	Mandatory
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory
002Ah	DVD+RW	Mandatory
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
002Dh	CD Track at once	Mandatory
002Eh	CD Mastering	Mandatory
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Mandatory
0038h	BD-R POW	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory

6.21.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

The READ DISC INFORMATION CDB is shown in Table 363.

Table 363 — READ DISC INFORMATION CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (51h)							
1	Reserved					Data Type		
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control Byte							

6.21.2.1 Data Type

When a disc is present, Data Type defines the specific information requested. Defined data types are shown in Table 364.

Table 364 — Disc Information Data Types

Data Type	Returned Data
000b	Standard Disc Information
001b	Track Resources Information
010b	POW Resources Information
011b – 111b	Reserved

If the Drive does not support the requested Data Type for the currently mounted medium, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If Data Type is 010b and the currently mounted disc does not support SRM+POW, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.21.2.2 Allocation Length

The number of Disc Information bytes returned is limited by the Allocation Length parameter of the CDB. An Allocation Length of zero shall not be considered an error. If the Allocation Length is greater than the amount of available Disc Information Data, only the available data is transferred.

6.21.3 Command Processing

6.21.3.1 Disc Information Data Type 000b: Standard Disc Information

The Drive shall gather information about the medium, format it as shown in Table 365, and transfer to the Host, limited by the Allocation Length.

Table 365 — Disc Information Block

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Information Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Disc Information Data Type = 000b			Erasable	State of last Session		Disc Status	
3	Number of First Track on Disc							
4	Number of Sessions (Least Significant Byte)							
5	First Track Number in Last Session (Least Significant Byte)							
6	Last Track Number in Last Session (Least Significant Byte)							
7	DID_V	DBC_V	URU	DAC_V	Reserved	Legacy	BG Format Status	
8	Disc Type							
9	Number of Sessions (Most Significant Byte)							
10	First Track Number in Last Session (Most Significant Byte)							
11	Last Track Number in Last Session (Most Significant Byte)							
12	(MSB)							
...		Disc Identification						
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)							
...		Last Session Lead-in Start Address						
19								(LSB)
20	(MSB)							
...		Last Possible Lead-out Start Address						
23								(LSB)
24	(MSB)							
...		Disc Bar Code						
31								(LSB)
32	Disc Application Code							
33	Number of OPC Tables							
34 – n	OPC Table Entries							

6.21.3.1.1 Disc Information Length
The Disc Information Length is the number of bytes Disc Information available. The Disc Information Length excludes itself. The value is 32 + 8*(Number of OPC Tables).

6.21.3.1.2 Disc Information Data Type
The Disc Information Data Type field shall be set to 000b when reporting Standard Disc Information.

6.21.3.1.3 Erasable Bit
The Erasable bit, when set to one, indicates that CD-RW, DVD-RAM, DVD-RW, DVD+RW, or BD-RE media is present and the Drive is capable of writing the media. If the Erasable bit is set to zero, then either the medium is not erasable or the Drive is unable to write the media.

6.21.3.1.4 State of Last Session
The State of Last Session field (Table 366) specifies the recorded state of the last session, regardless of the number of sessions on the disc.

Table 366 — State of Last Session

Session State	Definition
00b	Empty Session
01b	Incomplete Session[1]
10b	Damaged Session / Finalization suspended / Reserved: • On DVD-R and DVD-RW media, this code indicates that the last Bordered area is damaged. • For the other media, this code is reserved.
11b	Complete Session[2] (valid only for Disc Status = 10b or 11b)
[1]When a disc is DVD-RW in restricted overwrite mode and the last session is in the Intermediate State, 01b is returned. [2]Non-blank DVD+RW reports 11b.	

6.21.3.1.5 Disc Status

The Disc Status field (Table 367) indicates the recorded status of the disc. A Drive that does not have the ability to write the inserted medium shall return only COMPLETE (10b) status.

Table 367 — Disc Status

Status	Definition	Description
00b	Empty Disc	A recordable disc is present and is either logically or physically blank.
01b	Incomplete Disc[1]	The currently mounted disc is recorded/recordable serially in sessions. The last session is either blank or partially recorded. If the disc is in restricted overwrite mode and the disc is in the Intermediate state, this code is returned regardless of write protection status. For the other media, this code is reserved.
10b	Finalized Disc[2]	User data is not appendable on the medium. On sequential recording media, the disc is finalized. If the disc is in restricted overwrite mode and has the Complete state, this code is returned regardless of write protection status. For the other media where the disc is not writable (e.g., the disc may be write-protected) or the disc is stamped (ROM), this code is returned.
11b	Others	This code is reserved for other sequential recording media and restricted overwrite media. In all other cases, the medium is neither sequential recording medium nor restricted overwrite media and the disc is not write-protected.

6.21.3.1.6 Number of First Track on Disc
The Number of First Track on Disc is the track number of the Logical Track that contains LBA 0. The value reported in based upon media type and recorded status:

a) For CD-ROM the value is the smallest track number recorded in the first TOC on the disc.
b) For CD-R/RW recorded as ROM (i.e., the PMA is blank, but the first TOC is written), the value is the smallest track number recorded in the first TOC on the disc.
c) For CD-R/RW where the PMA is not blank, the value is the smallest track number recorded in the PMA.
d) For CD-R/RW where the PMA is blank and the first TOC on the disc is also blank, the value is one (1).
e) For all other media regardless of recording status, the value is one (1).

6.21.3.1.7 Number of Sessions

The Number of Sessions is the number of complete sessions on the disc plus the incomplete/empty session. When Disc Status is Blank, Number of Sessions is 1. For Disc types that do not support a track/session recording model (e.g. DVD-RAM, DVD+RW, BD-RE), Number of Sessions is set to 1.

6.21.3.1.8 First Track Number in Last Session

First Track Number in Last Session (bytes 5 & 10) is the track number of the first Logical Track in the last session. This includes the incomplete logical track.

6.21.3.1.9 Last Track Number in Last Session

Last Track Number in Last Session (bytes 6 & 11) is the track number of the last Logical Track in the last session. This includes the incomplete logical track.

6.21.3.1.10 DID_V Bit

The DID_V (Disc ID Valid) bit, when set to one, indicates that the Disc Identification field is valid.

6.21.3.1.11 DBC_V Bit

The DBC_V (Disc Bar Code Valid bit, when set to one, indicates that the Disc Bar Code field (bytes 24 through 31) is valid.

6.21.3.1.12 URU Bit

The URU (Unrestricted Use Disc) bit may be zero for special use CD-R, CD-RW, or DVD-R, medium. For all other media types, URU shall be set to one. When URU is zero, the mounted disc is defined for restricted use. Recording to a restricted use disc, required the appropriate Host Application code set in the Write Parameters Page. When URU is set to one, the mounted medium has unrestricted write use.

6.21.3.1.13 DAC_V

DAC_V indicates the validity of the Disc Application Code in byte 32. If DAC_V is set to zero, then the Disc Application Code is not valid. If DAC_V is set to one, the Disc Application Code is valid.

6.21.3.1.14 BG Format Status

The BG format status is the background format status of the mounted disc (See Table 368). Drives that report both the Formattable Feature and the DVD+RW Feature are required to implement Background format. For all other Drives, this field shall be 00b.

Table 368 — Background Format Status Codes

BG format status	Meaning
00b	At least one of the following is true: • The disc is neither CD-RW nor DVD+RW. • The disc is CD-RW. • If the disc is DVD+RW, it is blank.
01b	A background format was started but is not currently running and is not complete.
10b	A background format is in progress. A format has been started or restarted and is not yet completed.
11b	Background formatting has completed.

6.21.3.1.15 Disc Type

The Disc Type field is associated only with CD media types. For all other media types, this field shall contain 00h. The Disc Type field specifies the type of data recorded on the disc. The Disc Type shall be obtained from the PMA or from the TOC of the first session. The discovery sequence is as follows:

1. Initialize Disc Type to FFh.
2. If a Disc ID item is written in the PMA, replace with the Disc Type field from that item.
3. If the disc is COMPLETE, replace with Session Format from the first Session. Otherwise, scan all complete sessions for a session that contains at least one data track. If found replace with the Session Format field.

Valid Disc Types are shown in Table 369.

Table 369 — Disc Type Field

Disc Type Code	Disc Type
00h	CD-DA or CD-ROM Disc
10h	CD-I Disc
20h	CD-ROM XA Disc
FFh	Undefined
All Other Values	Reserved

6.21.3.1.16 Disc Identification Number

For CD-R/RW, the Disc Identification number recorded in the PMA is returned. The Disc Identification Number is recorded in the PMA as a six-digit BCD number. It is returned in the Disc Information Block as a 32 bit binary integer.

This value should be zero filled for all other media types.

6.21.3.1.17 Last Session Lead-in Start Address

The Last Session Lead-in Start Address field is dependent on medium and recorded status:

b) For CD-R/RW media the Last Session Lead-in Start Address is the MSF format address of where the next Lead-in shall be recorded. If the disc has complete status, then the value returned shall be FFh, FFh, FFh, FFh.

c) For DVD+R media the Last Session Lead-in Start Address is the LBA of where the next Intro shall be recorded. If the disc has complete status, then the value returned shall be FFFFFFFFh.

d) For all other media types, this field shall be filled with zeros.

6.21.3.1.18 Last Possible Lead-out Start Address

The Last Possible Lead-out Start Address field is dependent on medium and recorded status:

a) For CD-R/RW the Last Possible Lead-out Start Address is the MSF format address found in the ATIP of the disc's Lead-in. If the disc is Complete, the Last Possible Lead-out Start Address shall be FFh:FFh:FFh:FFh MSF.

b) If the media is according to [CD-Ref10], the address given shall be Start Time of Additional Capacity + Capacity Extension – expected Lead-out Size, where expected Lead-out size is 90 seconds for single session discs and 30 seconds for discs with two or more sessions.

c) For DVD+R media the Last Possible Lead-out Start Address is the LBA found in the ADIP of the disc's Lead-in. If the disc is Complete, the Last Possible Lead-out Start Address shall be FFFFFFFFh.

d) For all other media types, this field shall be filled with zeros.

6.21.3.1.19 Disc Bar Code

For CD, the Disc Bar Code field contains the hexadecimal value of the bar code if the Drive has the ability to read Disc Bar Code and a bar code is present.

For all other media this field should be set to zeros.

6.21.3.1.20 Disc Application Code

Disc Application Code shall be the value discovered on the disc. If the disc has no Disc Application Code, then the contents shall be set to zero.

6.21.3.1.21 Number of OPC Tables

The Number of OPC Tables field is the number of OPC tables that follow this field. If OPC has not been determined for the currently mounted medium, the Number of OPC Tables field is set to zero. The Number of OPC Tables represents the number of disc speeds for which the OPC values are known.

Since each OPC Table is 8 bytes in length, then the number of bytes that follow the Number of OPC Tables field is 8 x Number of OPC Tables.

6.21.3.1.22 OPC Table

An OPC (Optimum Power Calibration) Table is attached only if the values are known for the disc. Since OPC values are likely to be different for different recording speeds, each table entry is associated with a recording speed.

The format of an OPC Table is shown in Table 370.

Table 370 — OPC Table Entry

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Speed (kilobytes per second)						
1								(LSB)
2	OPC Values							
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								

Speed is given in kilobytes per second.

The OPC Values field is associated with the speed specified in the speed field. The content of the OPC Values field is vendor specific.

6.21.4 BD Standard Disc Information

Table 371 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is a BD-ROM.

Table 371 — DIB of BD-ROM Discs

DIB Field	Value	Meaning
Erasable	ROM = 0b	BD-ROM is not recordable.
State of Last Session	Complete=11b	BD-ROM is always complete.
Disc Status	Finalized=10b	BD-ROM is always finalized.
Number of First Track on Disc	0001h	BD-ROM has exactly 1 Logical Track.
Number of Sessions	0001h	BD-ROM has exactly 1 session.
First Track Number in Last Session	0001h	BD-ROM has exactly 1 Logical Track.
Last Track Number in Last Session	0001h	BD-ROM has exactly 1 Logical Track.
DID_V	0b	BD-ROM does not have a Disc ID
DBC_V	0b	BD-ROM does not have a disc bar code
URU	1b	BD-ROM disc is unrestricted use
DAC_V	0b	BD-ROM does not have an Application Code.
Dbit	0b	BD-ROM is not Formattable
BG Status	00b	BD-ROM is not Formattable
Disc Type	00h	BD has no CD equivalent type.
Disc Identification	00000000h	BD has no CD equivalent type.
Last Session Lead-in Start Address	00000000h	BD-ROM is not recordable
Last Possible Lead-out Start Address	00000000h	BD-ROM is not recordable
Disc Bar Code	All zeros	BD does not have a disc bar code
Disc Application Code	00h	BD does not have an Application Code.
Number of OPC Table entries	0	BD-ROM is not recordable
OPC Table	None	BD-ROM is not recordable

Table 372 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is a BD-RE.

Table 372 — DIB of BD-RE Discs

DIB Field	Value	Meaning
Erasable	RE = 1b	RE is rewritable.
State of Last Session	Empty = 00b Complete=11b	The last session of an unformatted RE is always empty. The last session of a formatted RE is always complete.
Disc Status	Blank = 00b Finalized=10b	An unformatted RE is empty. A formatted RE is always finalized.
Number of First Track on Disc	0001h	Formatted RE has exactly 1 Logical Track.
Number of Sessions	0001h	Formatted RE has exactly 1 session.
First Track Number in Last Session	0001h	Formatted RE has exactly 1 Logical Track.
Last Track Number in Last Session	0001h	Formatted RE has exactly 1 Logical Track.
DID_V	0b	BD does not have a Disc ID
DBC_V	0b	BD does not have a disc bar code
URU	1b	BD disc is unrestricted use
DAC_V	0b	BD does not have an Application Code.
Dbit	0b	RE always formats in foreground.
BG Status	00b	RE always formats in foreground.
Disc Type	00h	BD has no CD equivalent type.
Disc Identification	00000000h	BD has no CD equivalent type.
Last Session Lead-in Start Address	00000000h	RE is single session.
Last Possible Lead-out Start Address	00000000h	BD does not use this field.
Disc Bar Code	All zeros	BD does not have a disc bar code
Disc Application Code	00h	BD does not have an Application Code.
Number of OPC Table entries	0	RE Drives do not provide OPC info.
OPC Table	None	RE Drives do not provide OPC info.

Table 373 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is a blank BD-R.

Table 373 — DIB of a Blank BD-R Disc

DIB Field	Value	Meaning
Erasable	0b	R is not rewritable.
State of Last Session	Empty=00b	Empty Session
Disc Status	Empty=00b	Empty Disc
Number of First Track on Disc	0001h	A blank disc is assumed to be SRM
Number of Sessions	0001h	A blank disc is assumed to be SRM
First Track Number in Last Session	0001h	A blank disc is assumed to be SRM
Last Track Number in Last Session	0001h	A blank disc is assumed to be SRM
DID_V	0b	BD does not have a CD equivalent Disc ID
DBC_V	0b	BD does not have a bar codes
URU	1b	BD-R is an unrestricted use disc
DAC_V	0b	BD has no defined application code
Dbit	0b	BD-R is always formatted in foreground
BG Status	00b	BD-R is always formatted in foreground
Disc Type	00h	BD has no CD equivalent type
Disc Identification	00000000h	BD has no CD equivalent type
Last Session Lead-in Start Address	00000000h	BD-R SRM has no session Lead-ins
Last Possible Lead-out Start Address	00000000h	BD does not use this field.
Disc Bar Code	All zeros	BD does not have bar codes
Disc Application Code	00h	BD has no defined application code
Number of OPC Table entries	00h	BD-R Drives do not report OPC information
OPC Table	None	BD-R Drives do not report OPC information

Table 374 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is BD-R formatted in SRM-POW or SRM+POW.

Table 374 — DIB of a BD-R Disc Formatted as SRM-POW or SRM+POW

DIB Field	Value	Meaning
Erasable	0b	R is not rewritable.
State of Last Session	xxb	according to MMC-4.
Disc Status	01b	Incomplete disc until disc is closed.
Number of First Track on Disc	0001h	BD-R requires first Logical Track be numbered 1
Number of Sessions	S	Number of sessions indicated in SRRI.
First Track Number in Last Session	TLS1	Definition is unchanged from CD
Last Track Number in Last Session	TLSL	Definition is unchanged from CD
DID_V	0b	BD does not have a CD equivalent Disc ID
DBC_V	0b	BD does not have a bar codes
URU	1b	BD-R is an unrestricted use disc
DAC_V	0b	BD has no defined application code
Dbit	0b	BD-R is always formatted in foreground
BG Status	00b	BD-R is always formatted in foreground
Disc Type	00h	BD has no CD equivalent type
Disc Identification	00000000h	BD has no CD equivalent type
Last Session Lead-in Start Address	00000000h	BD-R SRM has no session Lead-ins
Last Possible Lead-out Start Address	00000000h	BD does not use this field.
Disc Bar Code	All zeros	BD does not have bar codes
Disc Application Code	00h	BD has no defined application code
Number of OPC Table entries	00h	BD-R Drives do not report OPC information
OPC Table	None	BD-R Drives do not report OPC information

Table 375 shows Standard Disc Information Block (DIB) values when the disc is BD-R formatted in RRM.

Table 375 — DIB of a BD-R Disc Formatted as RRM

DIB Field	Value	Meaning
Erasable	0b	R is not rewritable.
State of Last Session	11b	RRM disc is considered as a complete session
Disc Status	11b	RRM supports only random access writing and is not recordable serially in multiple sessions
Number of First Track on Disc	0001h	RRM is not subdivided into tracks
Number of Sessions	0001h	RRM is not subdivided into sessions
First Track Number in Last Session	0001h	RRM is not subdivided into tracks
Last Track Number in Last Session	0001h	RRM is not subdivided into tracks
DID_V	0b	BD does not have a CD equivalent Disc ID
DBC_V	0b	BD does not have a bar codes
URU	1b	BD-R is an unrestricted use disc
DAC_V	0b	BD has no defined application code
Dbit	0b	BD-R is always formatted in foreground
BG Status	00b	BD-R is always formatted in foreground
Disc Type	00h	BD has no CD equivalent type
Disc Identification	00000000h	BD has no CD equivalent type
Last Session Lead-in Start Address	00000000h	BD-R RRM has no session Lead-ins
Last Possible Lead-out Start Address	00000000h	BD does not use this field.
Disc Bar Code	All zeros	BD does not have bar codes
Disc Application Code	00h	BD has no defined application code
Number of OPC Table entries	00h	BD-R Drives do not report OPC information
OPC Table	None	BD-R Drives do not report OPC information

6.21.4.1 Data Type 001b: Track Resources Information

The format of the Track Resources Information is shown in Table 376.

Table 376 — Track Resources Information Block

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Information Length = 10						
1								(LSB)
2	Disc Information Data Type = 001b			Reserved				
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Maximum possible number of the Tracks on the disc						
5								(LSB)
6	(MSB)	Number of the assigned Tracks on the disc						
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Maximum possible number of appendable Tracks on the disc						
9								(LSB)
10	(MSB)	Current number of appendable Tracks on the disc						
11								(LSB)

6.21.4.1.1 Disc Information Length

The Disc Information Length specifies the number of bytes that follow the Disc Information Length. For data type 001b, the Disc Information Length is 10.

6.21.4.1.2 Maximum Possible Number of Tracks

The Maximum Possible Number of Tracks on the Disc varies according to the currently mounted media. For example, this number is 99 on CD and 7 927 on BD-R.

6.21.4.1.3 Number of the assigned Tracks on the disc

The Number of the assigned Tracks on the disc is the current number of defined tracks on the disc.

6.21.4.1.4 Maximum possible number of appendable Tracks

The Maximum possible number of appendable Tracks on the disc is the maximum number of tracks that are permitted to be concurrently open (i.e. have a valid NWA). Table 377 shows this value for different media types.

Table 377 — Maximum possible number of appendable Tracks

Disc Type	Max Appendable Tracks
CD-R, CD-RW	99
DVD-R SL, DVD-RW SL	3
DVD-R DL	4
DVD+R SL, DVD+R DL	16
BD-R	16

6.21.4.1.5 Current number of appendable Tracks

The Current number of appendable Tracks on the disc is the number of currently open Logical Tracks.

6.21.4.2 Data Type 010b: POW Resources Disc Information

The format of the POW Resources Information is shown in Table 378. The POW Resources Information Block is reported only when the BD-R Pseudo-Overwrite (POW) Feature is present and current.

Table 378 — POW Resources Disc Information Block

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Information Length = 14						
1								(LSB)
2	Disc Information Data Type = 010b			Reserved				
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Remaining POW Replacements						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Remaining POW Reallocation Map Entries						
9								
10								
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)	Number of Remaining POW Updates						
13								
14								
15								(LSB)

6.21.4.2.1 Disc Information Length

The Disc Information Length specifies the number of bytes that follow the Disc Information Length. For data type 010b, the Disc Information Length is 14.

6.21.4.2.2 Remaining POW Replacements

The Remaining POW Replacements is the sum of all the Free Blocks fields of all the Track Information Blocks (See 6.26.3.16) divided by the number of Logical Blocks in a Cluster (32). This is the number of potential POWs that may be performed.

6.21.4.2.3 Remaining POW Reallocation Map Entries

Remaining POW Reallocation Map Entries is the number of unused entries in the TDFL.

6.21.4.2.4 Number of Remaining POW Updates

Number of Remaining POW Updates is the number of unused Clusters in the TDMAs.

6.21.5 Timeouts

The READ DISC INFORMATION command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.21.6 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ DISC INFORMATION command is defined in Table 379.

Table 379 — Recommended Errors for the READ DISC INFORMATION Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.22 READ DISC STRUCTURE Command

6.22.1 Introduction

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command requests that the Drive transfer data from areas on the media to the Host.

Table 380 shows the Features associated with the READ DISC STRUCTURE command.

Table 380 — Features Associated with the READ DISC STRUCTURE Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0004h	Write Protect	Multiple Conditions, see 5.3.5
001Fh	DVD Read	Format code 0,13,4 Mandatory
0024h	Defect Management (SSA = 1)	Format code 0Ah is Mandatory
002Ah	DVD+RW	Format code 0,1,3,4,5,30h Mandatory
002Bh	DVD+R	Format code 0,1,3,4,5,30h Mandatory
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Format code 4,5,0Fh Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Format code 20h, FFh Mandatory
0040h	BD Read	Format code 0,30h Mandatory
0080h	Hybrid Disc	Format code 90h Mandatory
0106h	DVD CSS	Format code 02h is Mandatory
010Ah	DCB	Format code 30h is Mandatory
10Bh	DVD CPRM	Mandatory
010Dh	AACS	Mandatory

6.22.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.22.2.1 The CDB

The READ DISC STRUCTURE CDB is shown in Table 381.

Table 381 — READ DISC STRUCTURE CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (Adh)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="4">Reserved</td><td colspan="4">Media Type</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="4">Address</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="8">Layer Number</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="8">Format</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="2">Allocation Length</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">AGID</td><td colspan="6">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.22.2.2 Media Type

Reported Disc Structures are often associated with a specific media type. Media Type codes are shown in Table 382.

Table 382 — Media Type Codes

Media Type Code	Media
0000b	DVD types
0001b	BD
0010b – 1111b	Reserved

6.22.2.3 Address

The Address field definition is dependent upon the value in the Format field.

6.22.2.4 Layer Number

Use of the Layer Number field is dependent upon the Media Type and Format fields.

6.22.2.5 Format

The Format field together with the Media Type field, specifies the disc structure that is requested by the Host. For Format field values C0h through Feh, the associated disc structure is the same for all Media Type codes.

When the Drive/media combination does not support the specified Format code, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If a READ DISC STRUCTURE command is issued for media that is not consistent with this command and the format code is in the range 00h – BFh, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT READ MEDIUM/INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

If there is no medium or an incompatible medium is installed, a request for Format FFh shall be fulfilled using a Drive specific media type.

6.22.2.6 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum number of bytes that may be returned by the Drive. An Allocation Length field of zero shall not be considered an error.

6.22.2.7 AGID

The AGID field is described in the REPORT KEY command. This field is used only when the Format field contains 2h, 6h, 7h, 80h, 81h, 82h, 84h, or 86h with Address field of 00000000h, for all other values it is reserved.

6.22.3 Command Processing

6.22.3.1 Generic Disc Structures

Format field values 80h through FFh represent functions that are independent of the Media Type code. For format field values C0h through FEh, the associated disc structure has the same description for all Media Type codes. Defined Generic Format Codes are listed in Table 383.

Table 383 — Generic Format Code Definitions

Format Code	Layer Field Usage	Address Field Usage	Description
80h	Reserved	Reserved	Volume Identifier as specified by AACS
81h	Reserved	Reserved	Pre-recorded Media Serial Number specified by AACS
82h	Reserved	Reserved	Media identifier specified by AACS
83h	Layer Number	Pack Number	Lead-in AACS media key block specified by AACS
84h	Reserved	Reserved	Data Keys specified by AACS
85h	Reserved	Reserved	LBA Extents to which data is recorded with the flag for Bus Encryption specified by AACS
86h	Reserved	Pack Number	CPRM Media Key Block in Lead-in specified by AACS
87h – 8Fh	—	—	Reserved
90h	Reserved	Reserved	List of recognized format layers
91h – BFh	—	—	Reserved
C0h	Reserved	Reserved	Write Protection Status
C1h – Feh	—	—	Reserved
FFh	—	—	READ/SEND DISC STRUCTURE capability list

6.22.3.1.1 Format Code 80h: AACS volume identifier

Format code 80h returns the AACS Volume Identifier structure as shown in Table 384.

Table 384 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 80h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Volume Identifier Data								
0	Volume Identifier Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Volume Identifier Data field returns the Volume Identifier of AACS, which integrity is ensured by the AACS Authentication.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, this command with Format Code = 80h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.1.2 Format Code 81h: Pre-Recorded AACS media serial number

Format code 81h returns the AACS Media Serial Number (Table 385) that is pre-recorded on discs that are able to support AACS.

Table 385 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 81h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Pre-recorded Media Serial Number Structure								
0	Pre-recorded Media Serial Number Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Pre-recorded Media Serial Number Data field returns the Pre-recorded Media Serial Number of AACS, which integrity is ensured by the AACS Authentication.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, this command with Format Code = 81h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.1.3 Format Code 82h: AACS media identifier

Format 82h returns the AACS Media Identifier as shown in Table 386.

Table 386 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 82h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Media Identifier Structure							
0	Media Identifier Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Media Identifier Data field returns the Media Identifier of AACS, which integrity is ensured by the AACS Authentication.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, this command with Format Code = 82h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.1.4 Format Code 83h: AACS media key block

Format 83h returns the requested Media Key Block Pack (Table 387) of the Media Key Block in the Lead-in specified by AACS. The Address field in the CDB specifies which of the available Media Key Block Packs shall be read.

Table 387 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 83h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)			Disc Structure Data Length				
1								(LSB)
2				Reserved				
3				Total Packs				
				Media Key Block Structures				
0				Media Key Block Pack Data				
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Total Packs field reports the total number of Media Key Block Packs that are available for transfer to the host.

The Media Key Block Pack Data field returns the requested Media Key Block Pack of Media Key Block in Lead-in specified by AACS. The size of Media Key Block Pack Data is 32 KB maximum.

This command with Format Code = 83h does not require the AACS Authentication.

6.22.3.1.5 Format Code 84h: Data Keys of AACS

Format 84h returns the Data Keys of AACS (Table 388), encrypted by a Bus Key.

Table 388 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 84h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Data Key Structure							
0	Data Key Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Data Key Data field returns the Read Data Key and the Write Data Key of AACS, which is encrypted by a Bus Key.

When the Read Data Key is not defined because the appropriate ID (either the Media ID or the Volume ID) is corrupted or not present, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT PRESENT.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.1.6 Format Code 85h: LBA Extents for Bus Encryption flag of AACS

When Format code is 85h, LBA Extents for Bus Encryption flag of AACS are returned (Table 389). Format Code 85h does not require the AACS Authentication.

Table 389 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data format (With Format Code = 85h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Maximum Number of LBA Extents							
	Extent Structures							
0 – 15	LBA Extent Structure 1							
16 – 31	LBA Extent Structure 2							
…	…							
16*(N-1) – 16*N –1	LBA Extent Structure N							

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following DISC STRUCTURE data that is available to be transferred to the host. The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length value does not include the DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field itself.

The Maximum Number of LBA Extents specifies the maximum number of LBA Extents that the Drive is able to store. If this field is zero and the value of DISC STRUCTURE Data Length is greater than 2, then the Drive is able to store 256 extents. If this field is zero and the value of DISC STRUCTURE Data Length is 2, then the Drive is unable to store any extents.

The LBA Extent Structures contain the LBA Extents that the Drive currently stores. Table 390 shows the format of the LBA extent structure.

Table 390 — LBA Extent Structure

Byte	Field		
0	Reserved		
…			
7			
8	(MSB)	Start LBA	
…			
11			(LSB)
12	(MSB)	LBA Count	
…			
15			(LSB)

Start LBA is the first LBA of the extent and Start LBA + LBA Count – 1 is the last LBA of the extent.

The LBA Extent Structure data shall be sorted by the Start LBA field value in ascending order. LBA Extents shall not overlap.

If the Drive does not store any LBA Extents, no LBA Extent Structure (N=0) shall be reported.

6.22.3.1.7 Format Code 86h: Media Key Block of CPRM

Return Media Key Block information.

Table 391 — READD DISC STRUCTURE Data format (With Format Code = 86h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Total Packs							
	Media Key Block Structure							
0	Media Key Block Pack Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following DISC STRUCTURE data that is available to be transferred to the host. The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length value does not include the DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field itself. When the CDB Address field is set to 000000FFh, the DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field shall be set to 0002h.

The Total Packs field is the total number of Media Key Block Packs available for transfer to the Host.

The Media Key Block Pack Data field returns the requested Media Key Block Pack of Media Key Block of CPRM in Lead-in specified by AACS. It is protected by a Bus Key only when the Address field set to 00000000h. The maximum size of Media Key Block Pack Data is 32 KB.

The Address field in the CDB specifies which of the available Media Key Block Packs shall be read.

A valid AGID field value shall be supplied only when the Address field is set to 00000000h. The Address field of 000000FFh indicates that only the 4-byte header of DISC STRUCURE data shall be returned. No Media Key Block Pack Data shall be included in the returned DISC STRUCTURE data. This function may be used to obtain the Total Packs of the Media Key Block of CPRM on the medium without AACS Authentication.

When the Address field is 00000000h and the Drive is not in the Bus Key Established state of the AACS Authentication, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.1.8 Format Code 90h: List of recognized format layers

Format code 90h returns information about the format-layer structure of a hybrid disc as shown in Table 392.

Table 392 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 90h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Hybrid Disc Information								
0	Number of recognized format layers							
1	Reserved		Default Format-layer		Reserved		Online Format-layer	
2	(MSB)	Type code of Format-layer #0						
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)	Type code of Format-layer #1						
5								(LSB)
…	…							
2*N+2	(MSB)	Type code of Format-layer #N						
2*N+2								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Number of recognized Format-layers field indicates the number of Format-layers that the Drive has identified in the mounted disc. Format-layers are numbered from zero and incremented by one. The assignment rule of numbers to Format-layers is vendor-specific.

The Default Format-layer field contains the Format-Layer Number of the Format-Layer that becomes online when the disc is inserted. The selection of the Format-Layer Number to be set in this field is vendor-specific.

The Online Format-layer field contains the Format-Layer Number of the Format-Layer that is currently online.

Each Type of Format-layer #K field (K = 0, 1, …, N) contains the type of the Format-Layer Numbered K. Format-layer type codes are defined in Table 393.

Table 393 — Format-layer Type Code Definitions

Value	Type Definition
0000h – 0007h	Reserved
0008h	CD
0009h – 000Fh	Reserved
0010h	DVD
0011h – 003Fh	Reserved
0040h	BD
0041h – FFFFh	Reserved
50h	HD DVD (see Annex E)
0051h – FFFFh	Reserved

6.22.3.1.9 Format Code C0h: Write Protection Status

The Write protection status is returned in the format as shown in Table 394.

Table 394 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = C0h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Write Protection Status							
0	Reserved				MSWI	CWP	PWP	SWPP
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Software Write Protection until Power down (SWPP) bit of one indicates that the software write protection is active. The SWPP bit of zero indicates that the software write protection is inactive. If the Drive does not support SWPP, this bit shall be set to zero.

The Persistent Write Protection (PWP) bit of one indicates that the media surface is set to write protected status. The PWP bit of zero indicates that the media surface is set to write permitted status. If the mounted medium and Drive do not support PWP, this bit shall be set to zero. If Write Inhibit is implemented via a WDCB, then any write inhibit action specified in the WDCB shall result in PWP set to one (see). If Write Inhibit is implemented via a Disc Write Protect (DWP) PAC, then any write inhibit action specified in the DWP PAC shall result in PWP set to one (see 4.23.7).

The Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) bit of one indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write protected state. The CWP bit of zero indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write permitted state. If the cartridge does not have CWP function or medium is mounted without cartridge, this bit shall be set to zero.

The Media Specific Write Inhibition (MSWI) bit of one indicates that any writing is inhibited by the media specific reason. The MSWI bit of zero indicates that writing is not inhibited by the media specific reason.

6.22.3.1.10 Format Code FFh: Disc Structure List

The Disc Structure List is returned in the format as shown in Table 395.

Table 395 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = FFh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Disc Structure List							
0 … N	Structure List							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

Note 20. The returned data is a structure list of only those structures associated with the Media Type.

The Structure List is returned as a sequence of Structure List Entries as shown in Table 396.

This Disc Structure is generated by the Drive rather than read from the medium. Consequently, this structure shall be returned regardless of media presence.

Table 396 — Structure List Entry

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Format Code							
1	SDS	RDS	Reserved					
2	(MSB)	Structure Length (Obsolete)						
3								(LSB)

The Format Code field shall identify a Disc Structure that is readable/writable via the READ DISC STRUCTURE/ SEND DISC STRUCTURE command.

The SDS bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Disc structure is not writable via the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command. When set to one, shall indicate that the Disc structure is writable via the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command.

If RDS is set to zero, the Disc structure is not readable via the READ DISC STRUCTURE command.

If RDS is set to one, the Disc structure is readable via the READ DISC STRUCTURE command. In this case, Format code FFh should also be reported in the supported structure list.

The Structure Length field is obsolete. Since some structure lengths are context sensitive, it is preferred to report no length rather than a wrong length.

6.22.3.2 Disc Structures for Media Type = 0000b (DVD)

When Media Type = 0000b, Format field values 00h through BFh define disc structures that are specific to DVD discs. Defined Format Codes for Media Type = 0000b are listed in Table 397.

Table 397 — Structure Format Code Definitions for Media Type 0000b

Format Code	Layer Field Usage	Address Field Usage	Description
00h	Layer	Reserved	Physical Information from the DVD Lead-in area
01h	Layer	Reserved	Copyright Information from the DVD Lead-in area
02h	Reserved	Reserved	Disc Key obfuscated by a Bus Key
03h	Reserved	Reserved	Burst Cutting Area information on DVD media
04h	Layer	Reserved	Disc Manufacturing Information from the DVD Lead-in area
05h	Reserved	LBA	Copyright Management information from specified sector
06h	Reserved	Reserved	Media Identifier protected by a Bus Key
07h	Reserved	Pack Number	Media Key Block protected by a Bus Key
08h	Reserved	Reserved	DDS information on DVD-RAM Media
09h	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-RAM Medium Status
0Ah	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-RAM Spare Area Information
0Bh	Reserved	LBA	DVD-RAM Recording Type Information is returned from the
0Ch	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-R/-RW RMD in last border-out
0Dh	Reserved	Start Field Number of RMA blocks	Specified RMD field from last recorded border out on DVD-R/-RW
0Eh	Reserved	Reserved	Pre-recorded information from DVD-R/-RW Lead-in
0Fh	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-R/-RW Media Identifier
10h	Layer	Reserved	DVD-R/-RW Physical Format Information
11h	Layer	Reserved	ADIP Information
12h	Layer	Reserved	Copyright Protection Information from HD DVD Lead-in, see Annex E.
13h-14h	Reserved		
15h	Layer	Start Copyright sector	Copyright Data Section from DVD-ROM 3· adapted to AACS Lead-in
16h – 18h	Reserved		
19h	Reserved	Reserved	HD DVD-R Medium Status, see Annex E.
1Ah	Reserved	Start Field Number of RMD Block	HD DVD-R – Last recorded RMD in the latest RMZ, see Annex E.
1Bh – 1Fh	Reserved		

Table 397 — **Structure Format Code Definitions for Media Type 0000b (continued)**

Format Code	Layer Field Usage	Address Field Usage	Description
20h	Reserved	Reserved	DVD+/-R DL and DVD-Download DL – Layer Capacity
21h	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-R DL – Middle Zone start address
22h	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-R DL – Jump Interval Size
23h	Reserved	Reserved	DVD-R DL – Start LBA of the manual layer jump
24h	Reserved	Anchor Point Number	DVD-R DL – Remapping information of the specified Ancor Point
25h – 2Fh	Reserved		
30h	Reserved/ Session number	Content Descriptor	DCB identified by content descriptor
> 30h	See 6.22.3.1.		

6.22.3.2.1 Format Code 00h: Physical Format Information

For DVD-R/-RW media, this Format code returns the last updated Physical Format Information. Therefore, e.g., if a medium is recorded with multi-bordered area, this information is retrieved from the last Border-in. If the Control Data Zone information in the Lead-in is required for DVD-R/-RW media, use format code = 10h. For all other DVD class media, format code 00h returns information from the Control Data Zone in the Lead-in.

This information is returned for DVD media. The information for the layer specified by the Layer Number field in the Command Packet is returned. If there is only one layer then the only valid layer is layer 0. If a nonexistent layer is requested then the command shall be aborted with an INVALID FIELD IN CDB error. If the media has more than one layer, but is recorded using the Opposite Track Path method, then the same information shall be returned for all layers.

Physical Format Information is shown in Table 398.

Table 398 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 00h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Physical Format Information							
0	Disk Category				Part Version			
1	Disc Size				Maximum Rate			
2	Reserved	Number of Layers		Track Path	Layer Type			
3	Linear Density				Track Density			
4	00h							
5	(MSB)	Starting Physical Sector Number of Data Area						
6								
7								(LSB)
8	00h							
9	(MSB)	End Physical Sector Number of Data Area						
10								
11								(LSB)
12	00h							
13	(MSB)	End Physical Sector Number in Layer 0						
14								
15								(LSB)
16	BCA	Reserved						
17 – 2047	Media Specific							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Disk Category field (Table 399) specifies the DVD Book this media complies with.

Table 399 — Disk Category Field

Disk Category	Media	Disk Category	Media
0000b	DVD-ROM	1000b	Reserved
0001b	DVD-RAM	1001b	DVD+RW
0010b	DVD-R	1010b	DVD+R
0011b	DVD-RW	1011b	Reserved
0100b	HD DVD-ROM	1100b	Reserved
0101b	HD DVD-RAM	1101b	DVD+RW DL
0110b	HD DVD-R	1110b	DVD+R DL
0111b	Reserved	1111b	Reserved

The Part Version specifies the media version according to its physical specification.

The Disc Size specifies the physical size of the Media. A value of 0000b specifies 120mm, a value of 0001b specifies a size of 80mm.

The Maximum Rate field (Table 400) is used to specify to the Drive the read rate to use for this media.

Table 400 — Maximum Rate Field

Maximum Rate	Read Rate
0000b	2.52 Mbps
0001b	5.04 Mbps
0010b	10.08 Mbps
0011b	20.16 Mbps
0100b	30.24 Mbps
1111b	Not Specified
Others	Reserved

The Number of Layers field specifies the number of layers for this side of the media. A value of 00b indicates that the media has only one layer. A value of 01b specifies that this side of the media has two layers. Currently only one and two layer discs are specified.

The Track Path bit specifies the direction of the layers when more than one layer is used. If the bit is set to 0 then this media uses Parallel Track Path (PTP). When PTP is used each layer is independent and has its own Lead-in and Lead-out areas on the media. If the bit is set to 1 then the media uses Opposite Track Path (OTP). With opposite track path both layers are tied together. There is only one Lead-in and Lead-out. In the middle of the media there is an area called the middle area. The addresses of blocks in one layer are mirrored in the other layer. The Layer Type field (Table 401) indicates the read/write ability of the layer.

Table 401 — Layer Type Field

Bit	Layer Type
0	Layer contains embossed data
1	Layer contains recordable area
2	Layer contains rewritable area
3	Reserved

The Linear Density field (Table 402) indicates the minimum/maximum pit length used for this layer.

Table 402 — Linear Density Field

Linear Density Code	Linear Density
0000b	0.267 µm/bit
0001b	0.293 µm/bit
0010b	0.409 to 0.435 µm/bit
0100b	0.280 to 0.291 µm/bit
0101b	0.153 µm/bit
0110b	0130 to 0.140 µm/bit
1000b	0.353 µm/bit
Others	Reserved

The Track Density field (Table 403) indicates the track width used for this media.

Table 403 — Track Density Field

Track Density Code	Track Density
0000b	0.74 µm/track
0001b	0.80 µm/track
0010b	0.615 µm/track
0011b	0.40 µm/track
0100b	0.34 µm/track
Others	Reserved

The Starting Sector Number of Data Area field (Table 404) specifies the first block that contains user data.

Table 404 — Starting Physical Sector Number of Data Area field

Starting Sector Number	Media Type
30000h	DVD-ROM, DVD-R SL and DL, DVD-RW, DVD+R/+RW SL and DL
31000h	DVD-RAM
Others	Reserved

The End Physical Sector Number of Data Area field specifies the last sector of the user data in the last layer of the media. For DVD-RAM, the End Physical Sector Number of Data Area is the PSN for the last spare sector of the last zone.

The End Sector Number in Layer 0 field specifies the last sector of the user data in layer 0. If this media does not use Opposite Track Path and contains Multiple Layers, this value is set to 000000h.

The Burst Cutting Area (BCA) flag indicates the presence of data in the Burst Cutting Area. If set to zero, it indicates BCA data does not exist. If set to one, it indicates BCA data exist.

In case of DVD-R/-RW, the Drive may have cache memory for the Lead-in Control data. If the disc has no Lead-in, and there is no DVD Control Data in the cache, the Drive shall generate CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If the Lead-in is already written or there are DVD structures in the cache, the Drive shall return the requested structures.

The Media Specific field may be filled with all zero data or information as specified in the associated DVD specification.

Most of the data in the layer descriptor for DVD+RW media is from the ADIP information block. See [DVD+Ref2]. The DVD+RW layer descriptor is shown in Table 405.

Table 405 — DVD+RW Layer Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 8	Copy of bytes 0 through 8 from ADIP information block							
9	If CDZ PSN ≤ 2F0FFh, then this value shall be the PSN of last recorded sector in DZ. Otherwise, this value may be either the PSN of last recorded sector in DZ, or the last possible PSN in the DZ.							
10								
11								
12 – 18	00h							
19 – 255	Copy of bytes 19 – 255 from ADIP information block							
256 – 2047	Reserved							

6.22.3.2.2 Format Code 01h: DVD Copyright Information

The Read DVD Structure data format 01h (Table 406) includes the DVD Copyright information response.

Table 406 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 01h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD Copyright Information							
0	Copyright Protection System Type							
1	Region Management Information							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Copyright Protection System Type field indicates the presence of data structures specific to a copyright protection system. Three values are defined, 00h indicates there is no such data and 01h indicates a specific data structure for CSS/CPPM exists, and 02h indicates a specific data structure for CPRM exists, and 10h indicates a specific data structure exists for AACS with BD content. All other values are reserved.

The Region Management Information field describes the regions in that the disc may be played. Each bit represents one of eight regions. If a bit is not set in this field, the disc may be played in the corresponding region. If a bit is set in this field the disc may not be played in the corresponding region.

6.22.3.2.3 Format Code 02h: Disc Key

The Disc Key data recorded on the media is identified with a data format defined in Table 407.

Table 407 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 02h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Disc Key Structures							
0	DISC KEY Data							
…								
2047								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

DISC KEY Data field returns the DISC KEY data for CSS and/or the Album Identifier for CPPM that are obfuscated by a Bus Key. The length of DISC KEY Data field is currently 2 048 bytes.

When neither the DISC KEY data nor the Album Identifier exist on DVD media, this command with Format = 02h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT PRESENT.

When the DVD Drive is not in the Bus Key Established state for CSS/CPPM, this command with Format = 02h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.2.4 Format Code 03h: BCA Information

The BCA information is defined in data format 03h shown in Table 408.

Table 408 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field =03h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
DVD BCA Structure								
0	BCA Information							
…								
n								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The BCA Information is returned from BCA recorded DVD media. The Length of BCA Information is in the range of 12 to 188 bytes.

When a READ DISC STRUCTURE command with a Format field value of 03h is presented for a DVD media without BCA, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.22.3.2.5 Format Code 04h: DVD Disc Manufacturing Information

Table 409 defines the data format for the Disc Manufacturing information.

Table 409 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 04h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD Manufacturing's Structures							
0 … 2047	Disc Manufacturing Information							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Disc Manufacturing Information is taken from the DVD media Lead-in. In the case of DVD-R/-RW this information is taken from the last Border-in.

6.22.3.2.6 Format Code 05h: Copyright Management Information

The Copyright Management Information returned is shown in Table 410.

Table 410 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 05h)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Copyright Management Information							
0	CPR_MAI							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The definition of the CPR_MAI field depends on the mounted media. The CPR_MAI field definition is shown in Table 411.

Table 411 — CPR_MAI Field Definition

Media \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DVD-ROM	CPM	CP_SEC	CGMS		CP_MOD			
DVD-R, ver 1.0 DVD-RW, ver 1.0	CPM	Reserved	CGMS		Reserved			
DVD-RAM Ver.1.0/2.1 DVD-R for Authoring Ver .2.0	Reserved							
DVD-R for General, ver 2.0, DVD-RW, ver 1.1, and DVD+R/+RW SL and DL	Reserved				ADP_TY		Reserved	

The CPM bit, if set to 0, indicates that this sector contains no copyrighted material. If the CPM bit is set to 1, this sector contains copyrighted material.

When the CPM bit is set to 0, the CP_SEC bit is set to zero. When the CPM bit is set to 1, the CP_SEC bit indicates whether this sector has a specific data structure for prerecorded media copyright protection system. A value of 0 indicates that no such data structure exists in this sector. A value of 1 indicates a specific data structure for CSS or CPPM exists in this sector.

When the CPM bit is set to 0, the CGMS field is set to 00b. When the CPM bit is set to 1, and if the CGMS field is set to 00b, it indicates that copying is permitted without restriction. If the CGMS field is set to 01b, it indicates that the CGMS field is reserved, and if the CGMS field is set to 10b, indicates that one generation of copies may be made, and if the CGMS field is set to 11b, indicates that no copying is permitted.

When the CP_SEC bit is set to 0, the CP_MOD field is set to 0h. When the CP_SEC bit is set to 1, the CP_MOD field indicates the copyright protection mode of the specified sector. A value of 0h indicates the sector is scrambled by CSS. A value of 1h indicates the sector is encrypted by CPPM. Other values are reserved.

The ADP_TY field is defined only for DVD-RW Ver.1.1 and DVD-R for General Ver.2.0 media. The ADP_TY field, if set to 01b, indicates that this sector contains materials defined in DVD Specifications for Read-Only Disc

Part 3 VIDEO SPECIFICATIONS. A value of 00b indicates that no such data exists in this sector. All other values of ADP_TY are reserved.

Note 21. For DVD-R/-RW media, a value of each field may not be correct at the first and last 16 sectors of each recording extent due to the nature of recording method for DVD-R/-RW media.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW with basic formatting operating in background, the command operation shall be as follows:

a) If any of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in a blank area of the media where format writing has not yet occurred, the blank sectors shall not be read and the command shall fabricate and return data as if the sectors had been format written.
b) If all of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in an area of the media where format writing has occurred, the command shall operate normally.

6.22.3.2.7 Format Code 06h: Media Identifier

The Media Identifier data recorded on the media is identified with a data format defined in Table 412.

Table 412 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format Field = 06h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Media Identifier Structures							
0	(MSB)							
:	Media Identifier Data							
n								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Media Identifier Data field returns the Media Identifier that is protected by a Bus Key.

When the DVD Drive is not in the Bus Key Established state for CPRM, this command with Format = 06h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.2.8 Format Code 07h: Media Key Block

The Media Key Block pack data recorded on the media is identified with a data format defined in Table 413.

Table 413 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format Field = 07h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Total Packs							
	Media Key Block Structures							
0	(MSB)	Media Key Block Pack Data						
:								
n								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Total Packs field reports the total number of Media Key Block Packs that are available for transfer to the Host.

The Media Key Block Pack Data field returns the requested Media Key Block Pack that is protected by a Bus Key only when the Address field set to 00000000h.

The Address field in the command specifies the available Media Key Block Packs that shall be read. A valid AGID field value shall be supplied only when the Address field is set to 00000000h.

If the Address field value is 00000000h, the DVD Drive is not in the Bus Key Established state for CPRM, and Format = 07h, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.22.3.2.9 Format Code 08h: DVD-RAM Disc Definition Structure (DDS)

The DVD-RAM Disc definition is identified with the data format defined in Table 414.

Table 414 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 08h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-RAM Disc Definition Structure (DDS)							
0	DDS Information							
…								
2047								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The DDS Information is taken from the Defect Controls of the DVD-RAM media Lead-in. The length of the DDS Information is currently 2 048 bytes only.

When a READ DISC STRUCTURE command with a format field value of 08h is presented for other than DVD-RAM media, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.22.3.2.10 Format Code 09h: DVD-RAM Medium Status

The DVD-RAM Medium Status data returned is defined in Table 415.

Table 415 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format = 09h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-RAM Medium Status Data							
0	Cartridge	OUT	Reserved		MSWI	CWP	PWP	Reserved
1	Disc Type Identification							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

When a READ DISC STRUCTURE command with the Format field value of 09h is issued for other than DVD-RAM media, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length indicates the length in bytes of the following DVD Structure data that is available to be transferred to the Host. The DVD Structure Data Length value does not include the DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field itself.

The Cartridge bit of one indicates that a medium is in a cartridge. The Cartridge bit of zero indicates that a medium is not in a cartridge.

The Out bit of one indicates that a medium has been taken out from a cartridge or a medium is put into a cartridge. The Out bit of zero indicates that a medium has not been taken out from a cartridge. This field is valid only when the Cartridge bit is set to one. If the Cartridge bit is set to zero, the Out bit shall be set to zero.

The Media Specific Write Inhibition (MSWI) bit of one indicates that the writing is inhibited by the specific reason. The reason is indicated in the RAM-SWI Information field. The MSWI bit of zero indicates that the writing is not inhibited by the specific reason.

The Persistent Write Protection (PWP) bit of one indicates that the media surface is set to write protected status. The PWP bit of zero indicates that the media surface is set to write permitted status.

The Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) bit of one indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write protected state. The CWP bit of zero indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write permitted state. This field is valid only when the Cartridge bit is set to one. If the Cartridge bit is set to zero, the CWP bit shall be set to zero.

The Disc Type Identification field indicates the Disc Type:

00h	A Disc shall not be written without a cartridge.
10h	A Disc may be written without a cartridge.
10h	Reserved
11h	Reserved

The DVD-RAM Specific Write Inhibition Information (RAM-SWI Information) field indicates the reason of DVD-RAM specific write inhibition status. This field is valid only when the MSWI bit is set to one.

If MSWI bit is set to one, RAM-SWI Information field shall be set according to Table 416

Table 416 — RAM-SWI Information field definition

Value	Description
00h	Reserved
01h	Bare Disc Write Inhibition (Disc Type Identification field of 00h and no cartridge)
02h-Feh	Reserved
FFh	Unspecified reason

6.22.3.2.11 Format Code 0Ah: DVD-RAM Spare Area Information

When a READ DISC STRUCTURE command with the Format field value of 0Ah is issued for other than DVD media that is capable of allocation of the Supplementary Spare area, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The Host may recognize whether the media is capable of allocation of the Supplementary Spare area or not, indicated in the Defect Management Feature Descriptor reported by the GET CONFIGURATION command.

The DVD-RAM Spare Area Information data returned is defined in Table 417.

Table 417 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format = 0Ah)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-RAM Spare Area Information							
0	(MSB)	Number of unused Primary Spare blocks						
1								
2								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)	Number of unused Supplementary Spare blocks						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Number of allocated Supplementary Spare blocks						
9								
10								
11								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Number of unused Primary Spare blocks field indicates the number of unused spare blocks in the Primary Spare area.

The number of unused Supplementary Spare blocks field indicates the number of unused spare blocks in the Supplementary Spare area.

The number of allocated Supplementary Spare blocks field indicates the number of allocated spare blocks in the Supplementary Spare area.

6.22.3.2.12 Format Code 0Bh: DVD-RAM Recording Type Information

If a READ DISC STRUCTURE command with the Format code value of 0Bh is issued for other than DVD-RAM Ver.2.1 media, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Table 418 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format = 0Bh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-RAM Recording Type Information							
0	Reserved			Recording Type	Reserved			
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Recording Type bit is defined only for DVD-RAM Ver.2.1 media. The Recording Type bit, if set to 1b, indicates that this sector contains a real-time data. A value of 0b indicates that this sector contains a general data. The Streaming bit of the WRITE (12) command shall be used to set/clear the Recording Type bit.

6.22.3.2.13 Format Code 0Ch: RMD in the last Border-out

The RMD field recorded in the Border-out is defined in Table 419.

Table 419 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 0Ch)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	RMD in last Border-out							
0	RMD							
…								
n								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The RMD Bytes field returns the RMD that is written in the last recorded Border-out.

The Address field in the command specifies the starting RMD Field number where the read operation shall begin. The largest DVD-R RMD available is 30 720 bytes (15 sectors).

6.22.3.2.14 Format Code 0Dh: Recording Management Area Data

The DVD-R/-RW Recording Management Data Structure sectors recorded in the RMA, on the media, is identified with the data format defined in Table 420. This format is available only for DVD-R/-RW media. For other media, this format is reserved.

Table 420 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 0Dh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-R/-RW Recording Management Data Structure							
0	(MSB)	Last Recorded RMA Sector Number/Start Sector Number of Valid Format 3 RMD Set						
1								
2								
3								(LSB)
4	RMD Bytes							
…								
n								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

Last Recorded RMA Sector Number / Start Sector Number of Valid Format 3 RMD Set field indicates the RMA sector number where the last RMD is recorded. On DVD-RW restricted overwritten media, this field indicates the start sector number of valid Format 3 RMD Set.

The RMD Bytes field returns RMD that is written in RMA. The Address field in the command specifies the starting address of the RMA sector where the read operation shall begin. He returned RMD data shall end at the next ECC boundary.

The maximum number of RMD bytes that may be returned is 32 768.

6.22.3.2.15 Format Code 0Eh: Pre-recorded Information in Lead-in

The Pre-recorded Information in Lead-in area recorded on the media is identified with a data format defined in Table 421. This format is available only for DVD-R/-RW media. For other media, this format is reserved.

Table 421 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 0Eh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-R Pre-recorded Information Structure							
0 – (N-1)	Pre-recorded Information							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The contents of Pre-recorded information are N bytes as specified by [DVD-Ref2], [DVD-Ref3], [DVD-Ref4], [DVD-Ref5] and [DVD-Ref7].

6.22.3.2.16 Format Code 0Fh: Unique Disc Identifier

The Unique Disc Identifier data recorded on the media is identified with a data format defined in Table 422. This format is available only for DVD-R/-RW media. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

Table 422 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 0Fh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DVD-R/-RW Unique Disc Identifier							
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	(MSB)	Random Number						
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)	Year						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Month						
9								(LSB)
10	(MSB)	Day						
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)	Hour						
13								(LSB)
14	(MSB)	Minute						
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)	Second						
17								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

This format returns the Unique Disc Identifier that is recorded in RMD Field 0.

6.22.3.2.17 Format Code 10h: Format Information of Control Data Zone in the Lead-in

This format is available only for DVD-R/-RW media. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

This Format code returns Physical Format Information of Control Data Zone in the Lead-in area even if the disc is recorded with multi-bordered area.

Table 423 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 10h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Format Information of Control Data Zone in the Lead-in							
0	Disk Category				Part Version			
1	Disc Size				Maximum Rate			
2	Reserved	Number of Layers		Track Path	Layer Type			
3	Linear Density				Track Density			
4	00h							
5	(MSB)	Starting Physical Sector Number of Data Area						
6								
7								(LSB)
8	00h							
9	(MSB)	End Physical Sector Number of Data Area						
10								
11								(LSB)
12	00h							
13	(MSB)	End Physical Sector Number in Layer 0						
14								
15								(LSB)
16	BCA	Reserved						
17 – 2047	Media Specific							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Media Specific field shall return information as specified in the medium associated DVD specification.

The other field definitions are same as the definitions of Format code 00h (See 6.22.3.2.1).

6.22.3.2.18 Format Code 11h: ADIP Information

The information in this structure is formatted as in Format Code = 0, but uses unmodified ADIP information from the DVD+R/+RW SL or DL disc.

The format of the ADIP Information is shown in Table 424.

Table 424 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 11h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
ADIP Information								
0	ADIP Information Block (see [DVD+Ref1], [DVD+Ref2], [DVD+Ref3])							
1								
…								
255								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

6.22.3.2.19 Format Code 15h: Copyright Data Section from DVD-ROM3 – AACS adjusted

This format provides information from the Copyright data section in the Control data zone.

Table 425 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 15h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Copyright Data Section							
0	Copyright Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

For DVD adapted to AACS (DVD-ROM3), the Address field in the CDB specifies the starting address of the Copyright data section sector position from 2 to 15 where the read operation shall begin. The maximum number of bytes of the Copyright data section returned is 28 672.

6.22.3.2.20 Format Code 20h: DVD+/-R DL and DVD-Download DL – Layer Capacity

This format is available for DVD-R Dual Layer / DVD+R Dual Layer disc. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

This Format code returns the Layer boundary information. In the case of DVD –R Dual Layer disc, this value is fixed (=Start address of Fixed Middle Area) and is not changeable.

Table 426 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 20h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Layer Boundary Information							
0	Init Status	Reserved						
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	L0 Data Area Capacity						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

Init Status bit indicates whether the capacity of Data Area is changeable by the host or not. When Init Status is set to zero, L0 Data Area Capacity value has not been written into the Control Data Zone and the capacity of the medium shall be the default capacity. The host may specify a smaller capacity value by using the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 20h. When Init Status is set to one, L0 Data Area Capacity value has been specified and may not be changed.

L0 Data Area Capacity is the number of Data Area sectors available for recording on L0. This value shall be an integral multiple of 16. The capacity of L0 is the number of sectors between the end of the Lead-in and the first sector of the Middle Area.

In the case of DVD+R Dual Layer disc when no L0 Data Area Capacity has been selected, the default capacity shall be based upon the Lead-in ADIP. The disc provides exactly the same capacity in ECC blocks on each Layer. If the DVD+R Dual Layer disc is completely blank, Init Status shall be set to zero and the default L0 Data Area Capacity shall be reported.

In the case of DVD-R Dual Layer disc, Init Status bit shall be set to 1 regardless of disc status. L0 Data Area Capacity is calculated from the Fixed Middle Area start address.

6.22.3.2.21 Format Code 21h: DVD-R DL – Middle Zone start address

This format is available for DVD-R Dual Layer discs. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

This Format code returns the start logical block address of Shifted Middle Area on L0.

Table 427 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 21h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 000Ah						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Shifted Middle Area Information							
0	Init Status	Reserved						
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Shifted Middle Area Start Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Init Status bit indicates whether the Shifted Middle Area start address is changeable by the host or not. When Init Status is set to zero, Shifted Middle Area start address is changeable. If this bit is set to 1, Shifted Middle Area start address is not changeable. The address of Shifted Middle Area has been registered in RMD on the disc.

The Shifted Middle Area Start Address is the start logical block address of the Shifted Middle Area on L0. If this value is set to 0, the Shifted Middle Area is not specified on the medium.

6.22.3.2.22 Format Code 22h: DVD-R DL – Jump Interval Size

This format is available for DVD-R Dual Layer discs. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

This Format Code returns the Jump Interval size for the Regular Interval Layer Jump recording by number of blocks. The Jump Interval size is specified by the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code =22h.

Table 428 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 22h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 000Ah						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Jump Interval Size							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Jump Interval Size						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Jump Interval size field indicates the Jump Interval size for the Regular Interval Layer Jump recording. If the Jump Interval size is not specified to the Invisible/Incomplete Rzone, the Jump Interval size field shall be set to 0.

6.22.3.2.23 Format Code 23h: DVD-R DL – Manual Layer Jump Address

This format is available for DVD-R Dual Layer discs. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

This Format code returns the Manual Layer Jump Address specified by Manual Layer Jump Address (Format Code = 23h) of SEND DISC STRUCTURE command on L0.

Table 429 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 23h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 000Ah						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Manual Layer Jump Address Information							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Manual Layer Jump Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Layer Jump Logical Block Address field indicates the Manual Layer Jump Address. After the specified Manual Layer Jump has happened or if no Layer jump is specified, Manual Layer Jump Address field shall be set to 0.

6.22.3.2.24 Format Code 24h: DVD-R DL – Remapping information of the specified Anchor Point

This format is available for DVD-R Dual Layer discs. For other media, this format is invalid and reserved.

This Format code returns the remapping address information of the specified Anchor Point.

Table 430 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 24h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 000Ah						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Remapping Information							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Remapping Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Remapping Address field indicates the first logical block address of the ECC block that is used to reassign the Anchor Point block specified by Address field of CDB. If this value is set to 0, there is no valid remapped data of Anchor Point block.

The Address field of CDB is used to specify the Anchor Point Number. Single remapping information shall be reported.

6.22.3.2.25 Format Code 30h: Disc Control Blocks (DCBs)

6.22.3.2.25.1 Overview

The returned data is the ECC block that contains the requested DCB data. The format of the returned DCB Information is shown in Table 431.

Table 431 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format field = 30h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DCB Information							
0	DCB							
1								
...								
32 767								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The Disc Control Block field is defined in the [DVD+Ref1], [DVD+Ref2], and [DVD+Ref3]. If a Disc Control Block, with fewer than 32 768 bytes is requested, the Drive shall pad the Disc Control Block with 00h bytes.

6.22.3.2.25.2 General DCB Structure

A DCB is a structure on DVD+R/+RW media that specifies format or use information. Each DCB is up to 16 sectors in length. The DCB header is the first 40 bytes of the block. The DCB Header fields have a common definition, while the remaining bytes depend on the value of the Content Descriptor field (see Table 432).

Table 432 — Generic DCB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Content Descriptor						
…								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)	Unknown Content Descriptor Actions						
…								
7								(LSB)
8 – 39	Vendor ID							
40 - 32 767	DCB Data							

The location of a DCB is dependent upon its content descriptor.

The Address field of the READ DISC STRUCTURE command shall contain a Content Descriptor to identify the DCB requested. The Content Descriptor field identifies the contents of bytes 40 – 32 767. Valid values are shown in Table 433.

Table 433 — Valid Values for Content Descriptor

Content Descriptor	Definition
00000000h	Reserved
00000001h – FFFFFFFDh	The DCB with a matching Content Descriptor is returned
FFFFFFFEh	Reserved
FFFFFFFFh	Return a list of readable and writable DCB Content Descriptors

The Unknown Content Descriptor Actions field contains a bit mask. This mask shall describe actions the Drive is allowed to perform if the Drive does not know the Content Descriptor. Each bit, when set to one, shall prohibit the corresponding action. When set to zero, the corresponding action is allowed.

Table 434 — Unknown Content Descriptor Actions

Bit	Actions
0	Recording within the user data area
1	Reading DCBs
2	Formatting of the medium
3	Modification of this DCB
4 –31	Reserved

The Vendor ID field contains 24 arbitrary bytes.

6.22.3.2.25.3 Formatting DCB (FDCB)

The FDCB (Content Descriptor = 46444300h) is a 32 768-byte read-only structure that aids the Drive during background formatting. Refer to [DVD+Ref2] for specific content descriptions.

6.22.3.2.25.4 Write Inhibit DCB (WDCB)

The WDCB (Content Descriptor = 57444300h) is a 32 768 byte structure as shown in Table 435.

Table 435 — WDCB Format

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 39	DCB Header							
40 – 43	WDCB Update Count							
44 – 47	Write Protect Actions							
48 – 63	Reserved							
64 – 95	WDCB Password							
96 – 32 767	Reserved							

The DCB header format is shown in Table 432.

The WDCB Update Count is set to zero when the WDCB is created and incremented each time the WDCB is updated.

Write Protect Actions (Table 436) is a 32-bit field that defines the write protect acitons assigned to the DCB.

Table 436 — Write Protect Actions Field

Bit	Meaning
31	Reserved (0)
…	…
8	Reserved (0)
7	When zero (0), the WDCB is not password protected.
6	Reserved (0)
…	…
2	Reserved (0)
1:0	Write Protect Status 00b = Media is fully write enabled 01b = Writing in the data zone is not permitted 10b = Writing to a LBA space as defined by a hardware defect management system is not permitted 11b = No writing (except WDCB changes) is permitted

The WDCB Password, when enabled, permits WDCB changes only when the correct password is supplied by the Host during a SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with format code = 30h (6.36.3.2.10). In the case of the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with format code = 30h, the WDCB password shall always be zero filled before WDCB information is transferred to the Host.

Refer to [DVD+Ref2] for specific field definitions.

6.22.3.2.25.5 Session DCB

If Session Number does not exist, the drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The Session DCB (Content Descriptor = 53444300h) has two forms: Session descriptor and fragment descriptor. The Session form defines Session boundary information, while the Fragment form defines Fragment boundary and content information. The general structure of a SDCB is shown in Table 437.

Table 437 — SDCB Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 39	DCB Header							
40 – 41	Session Number							
42 – 63	Reserved							
64 – 95	Disc ID (in Lead-in SDCBs)							
96 – 127	Reserved							
128 – 8 191	Session Items							
8 192 – 32 767	3 Repetitions of bytes 0 through 8 191							

The DCB header format is shown in Table 432.

The Session Number identifies the session to which this SDCB belongs.

The Disc ID field contains a random 256-bit disc ID that is generated upon opening the first session.

The Session Items is a set of 16-byte session information records. The session information may contain session boundary and content data or fragment boundary and content information. Unused session items shall be zero filled. Used session items shall appear at the beginning of the list.

Detailed format information is found in [DVD+Ref1] and [DVD+Ref3].

Note 22. The SDCB is read-only.

6.22.3.2.25.6 DCB List

When Content Descriptor FFFFFFFFh (Table 438) is requested, the Drive shall generate a list of DCBs that may be read from and/or recorded on the current medium by the Host. If the Drive records DCBs that are generated internally, and those DCBs may not be sent from the Host, the Drive shall not report those DCBs as recordable.

Table 438 — DCB (FFFFFFFFh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
…	Content Descriptor = FFFFFFFFh							
3								(LSB)
4 – 7	Reserved							
8 – 39	Vendor ID							
40	Reserved							
41	Number of Readable DCBs (= M)							
42	Reserved							
43	Number of Recordable DCBs (= N)							
44	(MSB)							
…	Readable DCB 0							
47								(LSB)
...								
M * 4 + 40	(MSB)							
…	Readable DCB M-1							
M * 4 + 43								(LSB)
M * 4 + 44	(MSB)							
…	Recordable DCB 0							
M * 4 + 47								(LSB)
...								
(M + N)*	(MSB)							
…	Recordable DCB N – 1							
(M + N)*4+43								(LSB)

The Content Descriptor field shall contain FFFFFFFFh.

The Unknown Content Descriptor Actions field shall be set to zero.

The Vendor ID field shall be set to the value the Drive uses for its own DCBs.

The Number of Readable DCBs field shall identify the number of entries in the Readable DCB list.

The Number of Recordable DCBs field shall identify the number of entries in the Recordable DCB list.

Each Readable DCB field shall contain a Content Descriptor of a DCB that may be read from the medium.

Each Recordable DCB field shall contain a Content Descriptor of a DCB that may be sent from the Host. If a DCB is both readable and recordable, the DCB shall appear in both lists. The Drive shall not record any DCB that it does not recognize.

6.22.3.2.26 Format Code 31h: Read MTA ECC Block

Format Code 31h permits for reading ECC blocks in the MTA. Support for Format Code 31h is optional since its only purpose is to aid in data recovery on media corrupted by an unexpected RESET or power-off.

If a Drive supports Format Code 31h, it shall return data from ECC blocks within the MTA addressed by PSN. A specific ECC block may be read by placing its PSN in the Address field of the CDB. Valid PSNs are 02DE80h through 02EEBFh and 02EFC0h through 02EFFFh. If the Address field contains any other PSN, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense data shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The format of returned data for Format Code 31h is shown in Table 439.

Table 439 — READ DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (Format field = 31h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)			Disc Structure Data Length				
1								(LSB)
2				Reserved				
3				Reserved				
				MTA Block Data				
0 … 32 767				Addressed MTA ECC Block data				

6.22.3.3 BD Disc Structures

When Media Type = 0001b, Format field values 00h through BFh define disc structures that are specific to BD. Defined BD Format Codes are listed in Table 440.

Table 440 — BD Format Code Definitions

Format Code	Structure	Address	Layer Number	Description
00h	DI	-	-	Disc Information from PIC in Embossed area Address field is reserved Layer field is reserved
01h – 02h	Reserved	-	-	-
03h	BCA	-	-	Burst Cutting Area Information
04h – 07h	Reserved	-	-	-
08h	DDS	-	-	Disc Definition Structure
09h	Cartridge Status	-	-	Cartridge status.
0Ah	Spare Area Information	-	-	Status of Spare Areas
0Bh – 11h	Reserved	-	-	-
12h	Raw DFL	Offset	-	Unmodified DFL
13h — 2Fh	Reserved	-	-	-
30h	PAC	ID and Format Number	-	Physical Access Control Structure
> 30h	See 6.22.3.1.			

6.22.3.3.1 Format Code 00h: Disc Information (DI)

Disc Information and Emergency Brake data shall be read from the PIC zone. DI units that contain physical information shall be returned. Emergency Brake data shall be returned. If it is possible to return any data, 4 100 bytes shall be returned. The Disc Information structure format is shown in Table 441.

Table 441 — BD Structure Format Code 00h: Disc Information

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 4 098						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Disc Information								
0	Disc Information Data							
1								
…								
4 095								

The format of the Disc Information Data is shown in Table 442.

Table 442 — Disc Information Data Format

Fields	BD-ROM Field Size	BD-R/RE Field Size
Disc Information (DI) Units	2 048	3 584
Emergency Brake (EB) Data	2 048	512

The general format of a DI unit is shown in Table 443.

Table 443 — General DI Unit Format

	DI Unit, ROM		DI Unit, R/RE		Field
	Offset	Size	Offset	Size	
Header	0	2	0	2	Disc Information Identifier “DI”
	2	1	2	1	Disc Information Format
	3	1	3	1	Number of DI units in each DI block/ Number of layers to which this DI unit applies.
	4	1	4	1	Disc type specific: - Reserved (each byte set to 00h) - Legacy Information for BD-RE
	5	1	5	1	DI unit Sequence Number/Continuation flag
	6	1	6	1	Number of bytes in use in this DI unit
	7	1	7	1	Reserved (each byte set to 00h)
Body	8	3	8	3	Disc Type Identifier: “BDO” for BD-ROM, “BDW” for BD-RE, “BDR” for BD-R
	11	1	11	1	Disc Size/Class/Version
	12	52	12	88	DI Unit Format dependent contents
Trailer	-	-	100	6	Disc Manufacturer ID
	-	-	106	3	Media Type ID
	-	-	109	2	Time Stamp
	-	-	111	1	Product Revision Number

The DI Unit Format dependent contents are disc specific. For detailed definition of the BD-ROM DI unit, see [BD-Ref1]. For detailed definition of the BD-R DI unit, see [BD-Ref2]. For detailed definition of the BD-RE DI unit, see [BD-Ref3].

6.22.3.3.2 Format Code 03h: BCA Information

The BCA information is defined in data format 03h shown in Table 444.

Table 444 — BD Structure Format Code 03h: BCA Information

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
BD BCA Information								
0 … 63	BCA Information							

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The BCA Information is returned from BCA recorded BD media. The Length of BCA Information is 64 bytes.

When a READ DISC STRUCTURE command with a Format field value of 03h is presented for a BD media without BCA, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.22.3.3.3 Format Code 08h: Disc Definition Structure (DDS)

The DDS is a disc management structure that contains basic disc usage parameters for BD-R and BD-RE. The minimum defined size for the DDS is 60 bytes. The DDS definition is permitted to expand to 2 048 bytes.

On BD-R and BD-RE discs, there are 4 distinct DMA zones. The DDS stored in each DMA zone is identical except the First PSN of the Defect List field. A Drive mat return any of these DDS copies.

When the currently mounted disc is:

a) BD-RE

   The DDS is written into the DMA zones. See [BD-Ref3] for detailed format of the DDS. If the currently mounted disc is unformatted, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5.

b) BD-R

   The DDS is written only when the disc is finalized. Prior to finalization, the DDS data returned is constructed from the most recent version of the TDDS recorded in the current TDMA. See [BD-Ref2] for detailed format of the DDS on BD-R. If the currently mounted disc is blank, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

c) Any other media

   The command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The returned DDS structure format is shown in Table 445.

Table 445 — BD Structure Format Code 08h: Disc Definition Structure

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Disc Definition Structure							
0	DDS Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Disc Structure Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following Disc Structure data that is available to be transferred to the host. The Disc Structure Data Length value does not include the Disc Structure Data Length field itself.

The general format of the DDS is shown in Table 446.

Table 446 — Format of the DDS

Byte Offset	Field	Number of Bytes	Byte Offset	Field	Number of Bytes
0	(T)DDS Identifier “DS”	2	44	OSA size	4
2	DDS format	1	48	ISA1 size	4
3	Reserved	1	52	Spare Area full flags	1
4	DDS Update Count	4	53	Reserved	1
8	Reserved	8	54	Disc Type specific field	1
16	First PSN of Drive Area	4	55	Reserved	1
20	Reserved	4	56	Disc Type specific field	4
24	First PSN of Defect List	4	60	Reserved	4
28	Reserved	4	64	Status bits of INFO1/2 and PAC1/2 on L0 and L1	32
32	PSN of LSN 0 of user data area	4			
36	Last LSN of user data area	4	96	Disc Type specific data	...
40	ISA0 size	4			

6.22.3.3.4 Format Code 09h: Cartridge Status

The Medium Status structure (Table 447) includes information about cartridge status.

Table 447 — BD Format Structure Code 09h: Cartridge Status

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 6						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Medium Status Structure							
0	Cartridge	OUT	Reserved			CWP	Reserved	
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

The Cartridge bit of one indicates that a medium is in a cartridge. The Cartridge bit of zero indicates that a medium is not in a cartridge.

The Out bit of one indicates that a medium has been taken out from a cartridge or a medium is put into a cartridge. The Out bit of zero indicates that a medium has not been taken out from a cartridge. This field is valid only when the Cartridge bit is set to one. If the Cartridge bit is set to zero, the Out bit shall be set to zero.

The Media Cartridge Write Protection (CWP) bit of one indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write protected state. The CWP bit of zero indicates that the write protect switch/tabs on a cartridge is set to write permitted state. This field is valid only when the Cartridge bit is set to one. If the Cartridge bit is set to zero, the CWP bit shall be set to zero.

6.22.3.3.5 Format Code 0Ah: Spare Area Information

The Spare Area Information structure contains status information about the defect management systems spare blocks on BD-R and BD-RE discs. If this command is issued when an unformatted BD-RE disc is present, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5. The format of the Spare Area Information structure is shown in Table 448.

Table 448 — Format Code 0Ah: Spare Area Information

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 000Eh						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Spare Area Information							
0	(MSB)	Reserved						
...								
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)	Number of Free Spare Blocks						
...								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Number of Allocated Spare Blocks						
...								
11								(LSB)

Number of free Spare blocks field is the number of unused spare blocks that are not considered defective in the Spare Areas. In the case of BD-R/-RE, this number is an integral multiple of 32.

Number of Allocated Spare blocks is the number of spare blocks reserved on the disc for defective block replacements. In the case of BD-R/-RE, this number is an integral multiple of 32. If the disc is BD-R formatted as SRM, this value does not include any part of the spare areas that have been allocated as TDMAs.

6.22.3.3.6 Format Code 12h: Raw Defect List (DFL)

The DFL is a defect management structure on BD-R and BD-RE discs that identifies the locations and status of known defective Clusters on the disc. There is no DFL defined for BD-ROM. If the DFL is requested for any disc that has no DFL defined, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If this command is issued when an unformatted BD-RE disc is present, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5.

The DFL is a defect management structure that identifies the locations and status of known defective Clusters on the disc. The length of the DFL is variable. The minimum defined size is 72 bytes. The DFL may occupy as many as 8 Clusters (524 288 bytes). The actual length of the DFL is recorded in the DFL header.

On BD-R, the DFL is written only when the disc is finalized. Prior to finalization, the DFL is represented by the TDFL that is recorded in a TDMA. If the disc is not finalized, the structure returned shall be the most recent version found in the current TDMA.

The DFL is viewed as being contained within 16 packages (numbered from 0 through 15), each 32K (32 768) bytes in length. The 64-byte DFL header appears only in package 0. The Address field in the CDB is used to address a specific package. If the Address field value is larger than 15, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to indicate ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. It is only possible to read a single package with one command. In order to read the entire DFL it is necessary to read all of the DFL packages.

The DFL structure format is shown in Table 449.

Table 449 — BD Structure Format Code 12h: Defect List

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Number of Packages in DFL							
	Defect List Structure							
0	DFL Data from addressed package							
1								
…								
N-1								

The Host is required to read packages 0 through “Number of Packages in DFL” – 1 in order to receive all of the DFL.

The Data Structure Length is the number of bytes that follow the Data Structure Length field. The maximum value for this field is 32770 (a complete package + 2). If Data Structure Length = 0002h, the addressed DFL package is empty.

The general DFL format is shown in Table 450.

Table 450 — General DFL Format

Field Offset	Contents	Field Size
0	DFL Identifier “DL”	2
2	DFL format	1
3	Reserved	1
4	DFL Update Count	4
8	Reserved	4
12	Number of DFL Entries	4
16	Disc Type Specific information	48
64	Defect Entries – eight bytes each	···

See [BD-Ref2] for detailed format of the DFL on BD-R. See [BD-Ref3] for detailed format of the DFL on BD-RE.

6.22.3.3.7 Format Code 30h: Physical Access Control (PAC)

6.22.3.3.7.1 General

Physical Access Control (PAC) Clusters are provided as structures on the disc to include additional information for interchange between interchange parties. PAC Clusters shall be recorded in the INFO1/PAC1 Area. Backup copies shall be recorded in the INFO2/PAC2 Area. If this command is issued when an unformatted BD-RE disc is present, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5. The format for all PACs is shown in Table 63.

The specific PAC ID and format number of the PAC addressed by the READ DISC STRUCTURE command is contained the Address field of the CDB as shown in Table 451.

Table 451 — PAC ID and Format Number in CDB Address Field

Byte	Field
2	(MSB)
3	PAC ID
4	(LSB)
5	Format Number

Valid values for the PAC ID and Format Number fields are shown in Table 452.

Table 452 — PAC ID and Format Number Fields

PAC		Definition
ID	Format	
000000h	00h	Return a list of PAC headers of all PACs that are written on the currently mounted disc. The list shall be given in ascending order according to PAC ID.
	01h – FFh	Reserved
000001h – FFFFFEh	00h – FFh	The PAC information of the addressed PAC shall be returned.
FFFFFFh	00h – Feh	Reserved
	FFh	Return a list of PAC headers of all PACs that are known to the Drive for the currently mounted disc type. The list shall be given in ascending order according to PAC ID.

In the case that the PAC ID and Format Number requested are both zero, the Drive shall return a list of the headers of all PACs that are written on the currently mounted disc. The PAC headers shall be ordered according to PAC ID.

Table 453 — Returned Data Format for PAC ID/Format = 000000h/00h

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 384*N+2						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
PAC Header List								
0 ... 383	Header of first written PAC							
384 ...	...							
384*(N-1) ... 384*N-1	Header of Nth written PAC							

In the case that the PAC ID/Format Number requested is neither 000000h/00h nor FFFFFFh/FFh, the Drive shall return the most recently recorded copy of the requested PAC. If reading the PAC is not permitted, then only the PAC header shall be returned. If there is no PAC with the specified ID and Format Number, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to indicate ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. The format of returned PAC data is shown in Table 454.

Table 454 — Returned Data Format for 000001h ≤ PAC ID ≤ FFFFFEh

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
PAC								
0 ... 383	PAC Header							
384 ... N-1	PAC Specific Information							

The length of a PAC is at most 63488 bytes (31 logical blocks).

In the case that the PAC ID requested is FFFFFFFFh, the Drive shall return a list of the PAC Ids of all PACs that are known to the Drive. The list shall be ordered according to PAC ID in ascending order.

Table 455 — Returned Data Format for PAC ID = FFFFFFFFh

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 4*N+2						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
PAC Header List								
0 ... 3	PAC ID and Format of first known PAC							
4	...							
4*(N-1) ... 4*(N-1)+3	PAC ID and Format of Nth known PAC							

6.22.3.3.7.2 Primary PAC

The Primary PAC (PAC ID = 50524Dh (“PRM”), PAC Format = 00h) shall be included on each BD-ROM and BD-RE. The Primary PAC is not defined for BD-R.

See [BD-Ref1] for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-ROM. See [BD-Ref3] for detailed format of the Primary PAC on BD-RE.

The format of the Primary PAC structure is shown in Table 456.

Table 456 — Primary PAC

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = N+2						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Primary PAC Data								
0	PAC Data							
1								
…								
N-1								

The maximum value for N is 404 on BD-ROM and 32 768 on BD-RE.

6.22.3.3.7.3 Disc Write Protect PAC

The Disc Write Protect (DWP) PAC Cluster is used to protect a disc against unintended write actions or write actions by unauthorized persons. For the case where the disc is protected against write actions by unauthorized persons, a password may be included. Recognition and reading the DWP PAC is mandatory.

The format of the Disc Write Protect PAC structure is shown in Table 457.

Table 457 — DWP PAC

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length = 430						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
DWP PAC Data								
0	DWP PAC Header							
1								
…								
383								
384	Known PAC Entire_Disc_Flags							
385	Reserved							
386	Reserved							
387	Reserved							
388	Write Protect Control Byte (see Table 64)							
389 – 395	Reserved							
396 – 427	Write Protect Password							

The Write Protect Password field is zero filled prior to transfer of this structure.

The length of a DWP PAC is 428 bytes.

6.22.4 Timeouts

The READ DISC STRUCTURE command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.22.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ DISC STRUCTURE command is defined in Table 458.

Table 458 — Recommended Errors for the READ DISC STRUCTURE Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.23 READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Command

6.23.1 Introduction

The READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command allows the Host to request a list of the possible format capacities for an installed writable media. This command also has the capability to report the writable capacity for a media when it is installed. For readable capacity, see 6.18, READ CAPACITY Command. If the command is required by an implemented Feature it shall function independently of the state of that Feature's Current bit.

Table 459 shows the Features associated with the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command.

Table 459 — Features Associated with the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0023h	Formattable	Mandatory

6.23.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.23.2.1 The CDB

The READ FORMAT CAPACITIES CDB is shown in Table 460.

Table 460 — READ FORMAT CAPACITIES CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (23h)							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.23.2.2 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum number of bytes that A Host has allocated for returned data. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error. The Drive shall terminate the data transfer when Allocation Length bytes have been transferred or when all available data have been transferred to the Host, whatever is less.

6.23.3 Command Processing

The Drive shall construct a set of data structures that shall be transferred to the Host. The format of this returned data is a 4-byte header followed by some non-zero number of 8-byte format descriptors as shown in Table 461.

Table 461 — READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Data Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 3	Capacity List Header							
4 – 11	Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor							
Formattable Capacity Descriptor(s)								
0	Formattable Capacity Descriptor 0							
..								
7								
….								
8*n	Formattable Capacity Descriptor n							
..								
8*n+7								

If the currently mounted media is not writable (e.g. ROM) the Drive shall report only the Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor.

6.23.3.1 Capacity List Header

The Capacity List Header precedes all other returned data.

Table 462 — Capacity List Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Capacity List Length							

The Capacity List Length specifies the length in bytes of the available Capacity Descriptors that follow.

Each Capacity Descriptor is eight bytes in length, making the Capacity List Length equal to eight times the number of descriptors. Values of n * 8 are valid, where 0 < n < 32.

6.23.3.2 Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor

6.23.3.2.1 General

The Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor shall appear after the header.

Table 463 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
4	(MSB) Number of Blocks							
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	Reserved						Descriptor Type	
9	(MSB) Block Length/Spare Area Size							
10								
11								(LSB)

The Number of Blocks and Block Length/Spare Area Size fields are dependent upon Descriptor Type.

The Descriptor Type field (Table 464) indicates the type of information contained in the descriptor.

Table 464 — Descriptor Types

Descriptor Type	Description	Reference
00b	Reserved	—
01b	Unformatted or Blank Media	6.23.3.2.2
10b	Formatted Media	6.23.3.2.3
11b	No Media Present or Unknown Capacity	6.23.3.2.4

6.23.3.2.2 Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for Unformatted or Blank Media

If the currently mounted media is unformatted or Blank and the empty capacity is known, then the Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor parameters shall be specified as shown in Table 465.

Table 465 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for Unformatted or Blank Media

Media Type	Number of Blocks	Block Length/Spare Area Size
CD-R/RW, DVD-R/-RW	The number of sectors in all the data zones on the media.	Block Length = 2 048
DVD-RAM, DVD+RW	The maximum formattable capacity of the currently mounted disc.	
BD-R	The number of sectors in all the data zones on the	Maximum number of Spare Area Clusters allowed for the currently mounted disc.
BD-RE	The number of user data area blocks when the media is formatted with minimum spares reserved.	

6.23.3.2.3 Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for Formatted Media

If the currently mounted media is formatted, then the Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor parameters shall be specified as shown in Table 466.

Table 466 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for Formatted Media

<table>
<tr><th>Media Type</th><th>Number of Blocks</th><th>Block Length/Spare Area Size</th></tr>
<tr><td>ROM</td><td>The READ CAPACITY command reports, M, the LBA of the last readable block on the disc. The value reported by this command is M+1.</td><td rowspan="3">Block Length = 2 048</td></tr>
<tr><td>CD-R/RW, DVD-R/-RW, DVD+R</td><td>In the case of sequentially recorded media or Quick Grow/Quick Add formatted restricted overwrite media with at least one closed Session, the reported value is the total capacity of the closed Sessions.
When the sequential recorded media has no closed session, it is reported as “Unknown</td></tr>
<tr><td>DVD-RAM, DVD+RW</td><td>The reported value is the currently formatted capacity of the media.</td></tr>
<tr><td>BD-R</td><td>See Table 467.</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>BD-RE</td><td>The reported value is the number of blocks in the User Data Zones.</td><td>Number of Clusters allocated for Spare Area on the currently mounted disc.</td></tr>
</table>

Table 467 — Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for BD-R

<table>
<tr><th>Descriptor Type</th><th colspan="2">Format Status</th><th>Number of Blocks</th><th>Block Length/Spare Area Size</th></tr>
<tr><td>00b</td><td colspan="4">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>01b</td><td colspan="2">Unformatted Media
(Brand-new disc)</td><td>The reported value is the total number of blocks of the Data Zone(s) on the mounted BD disc</td><td>Maximum number of Spare Area Clusters allowed for the currently mounted BD-R disc.</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">10b</td><td rowspan="2">Formatted Media</td><td>SRM+POW formatted /RRM formatted disc</td><td>The reported value is the current media’s total number of blocks in User Data Zone(s).</td><td rowspan="2">Number of Clusters allocated for Spare Area on the currently mounted BD-R disc.</td></tr>
<tr><td>SRM-POW disc that has at least one complete Session</td><td>The reported value is the total capacity of the closed Sessions</td></tr>
<tr><td>11b</td><td colspan="2">No Media Present/
Unknown capacity media
(SRM-POW disc that has no complete Session and some data is written)</td><td>The reported value is for the maximum capacity of a media that the Drive is capable of reading.
OR
The reported value is for the maximum recordable size of the mounted disc</td><td>Block Length that specifies the length in bytes of each logical blocks. 800h for Multi-Media Drives.</td></tr>
</table>

6.23.3.2.4 Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor for No Media or Unknown Capacity Media

If no media is present, then the Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor parameters reports Number of Blocks set to the maximum capacity of a media that the Drive is capable of reading.

When a non-empty, sequentially recorded disc is present with no closed sessions, the Descriptor Type is set to 11b and the Number of Blocks field shall be set to the number of sectors in all the data zones on the media.

Quick formatted DVD-RW media shall be reported with Descriptor Type = 11b.

In all cases, the Block Length/Spare Area Size contains Block Length = 2 048.

6.23.3.3 Formattable Capacity Descriptors

The Drive shall only return Formattable Capacity Descriptors that apply to the installed media. If there is no medium installed, the Drive shall return only the Current/Maximum Capacity Descriptor, with the maximum capacity of a medium that the Drive is capable of reading.

A Formattable Capacity Descriptor of Format Type 00h shall be reported if any other Formattable Capacity Descriptor is reported. Although the Drive may not support formatting type 0 (e.g. CD-RW), the descriptor is reported for the purpose of reporting the recordable capacity of sequentially recorded media.

The descriptors shall be returned in ascending order of Format Type. For Format Types other than 04h and 05h, if multiple format descriptors exist, they shall be returned in Drive preferred order. For Format Types 04h and 05h, the format descriptors shall be returned in ascending order of Zone number.

Formattable Capacity Descriptors for formats that may be read, but not formatted shall not be reported.

If the Drive supports writing on the mounted media, the appropriate Formattable Capacity Descriptors shall be appended, sorted by Format Type. The general format of a Formattable Capacity Descriptor is shown in Table 468.

Table 468 — Formattable Capacity Descriptor Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)							
1	Number of Blocks							
2								
3								(LSB)
4	Format Type						Reserved	
5	(MSB)							
6	Type Dependent Parameter							
7								(LSB)

The Format Type field, Table 469, is the type of information required for formatting. The Type Dependent Parameter is dependent upon the Format Type and the currently mounted media.

Table 469 — Format Types

Format Type	Description	Type Dependent Parameter
00h (BD-R)	Full Format (Default Format for BD media): When the currently mounted media is a blank BD-R disc, the descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the total Spare area size in Cluster used for formatting the whole media. Spares shall be allocated. All parameters in the descriptor are vendor selected default values for BD-R discs.	Total Spare Area size in Clusters
00h (BD-RE)	Full Format (Default Format for BD media): When the currently mounted media is a BD-RE disc, the descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the total Spare area size in Cluster used for formatting the whole media. Spares shall be allocated. All parameters in the descriptor are vendor selected default values for BD-RE discs. The following are recommended Spare area distributions: For 80 mm BD-RE SL: ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 0 Clusters. For 80 mm BD-RE DL: ISA0 size = ISA1 size = 4096 Clusters and OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 0 Clusters. For 120 mm BD-RE SL: ISA0 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 8 192 Clusters. For 120 mm BD-RE DL: ISA0 size = ISA1 size = 4 096 Clusters and OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 8 192 Clusters.	Total Spare Area size in Clusters
00h (All others)	The descriptor shall contain the number of addressable blocks and the block size used for formatting the whole media. If multiple formatting for the whole media is possible, each capacity/block size combination shall be reported as a separate descriptor.	Block length in bytes
01h	The descriptor shall contain the number of addressable blocks and the block size used for formatting the whole media. If multiple formatting for the whole media is possible, each capacity/block size combination shall be reported as a separate descriptor. This Format Type is used to expand Spare area for DVD-RAM. In the case of spare area expansion for BD-RE, the descriptor shall contain the minimum User Data Zone size in sectors and the block size used for formatting the whole media.	Block length in bytes
02h – 03h	Reserved	
04h	Legacy	
05h	Legacy	

Table 469 — Format Types (continued)

Format Type	Description	Type Dependent Parameter
06h – 0Fh	Reserved	
10h	The descriptor shall contain the maximum number of addressable blocks and maximum packet size that may be used to fully format CD/DVD-RW media. The packet size and number of addressable blocks may be adjusted downward by the Host before sending this descriptor back via the FORMAT UNIT command.	Fixed Packet Size in sectors/ECC block size in sectors
11h	The descriptor shall contain the maximum number of addressable blocks and the packet size that may be used to expand (grow) the last complete session of CD/DVD-RW media. The number of addressable blocks may be adjusted downward by the Host before sending this descriptor back via the FORMAT UNIT command.	Fixed Packet Size in sectors/ECC block size in sectors
12h	Legacy	
13h	The descriptor shall contain the maximum number of addressable blocks and the ECC block size that may be used to expand (grow) the last complete Session of a DVD-RW media as an intermediate state. The Host may adjust the number of addressable blocks downward before sending this descriptor back via the FORMAT UNIT command.	ECC block size in sectors
14h	Legacy	
15h	The descriptor shall contain the maximum number of addressable blocks and ECC block size that may be used to fully format DVD-RW media as an intermediate state. The number of addressable blocks may be adjusted downward by the Host before sending this descriptor back via the FORMAT UNIT command.	ECC block size in sectors
18h	Fast Re-format: Two descriptors shall be reported. The Number of Blocks field in the first descriptor shall indicate the maximum capacity to be formatted in the shortest execution time. The value shall be calculated by the following formula: Number of Blocks = max(D70-MA, min(OR0, OR1)) where D70-MA is the PSN at the diameter of 70mm minus the width of the Middle Area. If both OR0 and OR1 specifies ED0, the Number of Blocks field shall indicate the maximum number of addressable blocks. The Number of Blocks field in the second descriptor shall indicate the maximum number of addressable blocks. The Type Dependent Parameter field shall indicate the Blocking size in sectors that can be used to format DVD-RW media.	Blocking size in sectors
19h – 1Fh	Reserved	
20h	Legacy	
24h	Legacy	

Table 469 — Format Types (continued)

Format Type	Description	Type Dependent Parameter
26h	DVD+RW Full Format, Mandatory for the DVD+RW Profile	Set to zeros.
25h – 2Fh	Reserved	—
30h (BD-RE)	The descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the total number of Spare Area size used for formatting the whole media. Three descriptors are reported: The first descriptor values are vendor preferred for the BD device. The second descriptor values are selected to reflect maximum Spare Area sizes: For SL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4096 Clusters and OSA0 size = 16384 Clusters. For DL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4096 Clusters, OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 8192 Clusters, and ISA1 size = 16384 Clusters. The third descriptor values are selected to reflect minimum Spare Area size. For SL and DL BD-RE discs, ISA0 size = 4096 and ISA1 size = OSA0 size = OSA1 size = 0 Clusters.	Total Spare Area size in Clusters
31h (BD-RE)	The descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks and the block size used for formatting the whole media. All parameters in the descriptor are for the format with no Spare Area. By using this parameter in FORMAT UNIT command, the Hardware Defect Management Feature (and consequently, Removable Disk Profile) becomes not Current.	Block length in bytes
32h (BD-R)	The descriptor shall contain the total number of addressable blocks. Three descriptors are reported: The first descriptor values are vendor preferred for the BD device. The second descriptor values are selected to reflect maximum Spare Area sizes, resulting in minimum User Data Zone size. The third descriptor values are selected to reflect minimum (but non-zero) Spare Area size, resulting in maximum User Data Zone size. In each case total Spare Area size is: Data Zone size – Number of Blocks. Data Zone size is given in the number of blocks parameter of the maximum capacity descriptor for unformatted media.	Zeros
33h – 3Fh	Reserved	—

The Number of Blocks field indicates the number of addressable blocks for the capacity defined by each Format Type. The Type Dependent Parameter contents are as specified for each Format Type in Table 469.

6.23.4 Timeouts

The READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.23.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES command is defined in Table 470.

Table 470 — Recommended Errors for the READ FORMAT CAPACITIES Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.24 READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER Command

The READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER command reports the media serial number reported by the drive for the currently mounted media. This command is also known as Service Action 01h of the SERVICE ACTION IN (12) command (Operation Code = Abh, Service Action = 01h).

The READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER command is described in [SPC-3].

6.24.1 Timeouts

The READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/ INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.24.2 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER command is defined in Table 471.

Table 471 — Recommended Errors for the READ MEDIA SERIAL NUMBER Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.25 READ TOC/PMA/ATIP Command

6.25.1 Introduction

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command requests that the Drive read data from a Table of Contents, the Program Memory Area (PMA), or the Absolute Time in Pre-Grove (ATIP) from CD media, format according to CDB parameters and transfer the result to the Host.

For media other than CD, information may be fabricated in order to emulate a CD structure for the specific media.

Table 472 shows the Features associated with the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command.

Table 472 — Features Associated with the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
001Eh	CD Read	Format Codes 0, 1, 2 and conditionally 5
001Fh	DVD Read	Format codes 0 and 1
0103h	CD Audio External Play	Format codes 0 and 1

6.25.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.25.2.1 The CDB

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP CDB is shown in Table 473.

Table 473 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP CDB

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (43h)							
1	Reserved						MSF	Reserved
2	Reserved				Format			
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Track/Session Number							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.25.2.2 MSF

When MSF is set to zero, the address fields in some returned data formats shall be in LBA form. When MSF is set to one, the address fields in some returned data formats shall be in MSF form. For specific cases, see Table 474.

6.25.2.3 Format

The Format field is used to select specific returned data format. See Table 474.

6.25.2.4 Track/Session Number

The Track/Session Number field provides a method to restrict the returned of some data formats to a specific session or a track range. See Table 474.

When a BD disc is present, this field shall contain either 0 or 1. Otherwise, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25.2.5 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum number of bytes that may be returned by the Drive. An Allocation Length field of zero shall not be considered an error.

Table 474 — Format Field Values

Format Field	MSF Field	Track/Session Number	Description
0000b	Valid	Valid as a Track Number	The Track/Session Number field specifies starting track number for which the data is returned. For multi-session discs, TOC data is returned for all sessions. Track number Aah is reported only for the Lead-out area of the last complete session.
0001b	Valid	Ignored by Drive	This format returns the first complete session number, last complete session number and last complete session starting address. In this format, the Track/Session Number field is reserved and should be set to 00h. NOTE: This format provides the Host access to the last closed session starting address quickly.
0010b	Ignored by Drive	Valid as a Session Number	This format returns all Q sub-code data in the Lead-In (TOC) areas starting from a session number as specified in the Track/Session Number field. In this mode, the Drive shall support Q Sub-channel POINT field value of A0h, A1h, A2h, Track numbers, B0h, B1h, B2h, B3h, B4h, C0h, and C1h. There is no defined LBA addressing and MSF bit shall be set to one.
0011b	Ignored by Drive	Ignored by Drive	This format returns Q sub-channel data in the PMA area. In this format, the Track/Session Number field is reserved and shall be set to 00h. There is no defined LBA addressing and MSF bit shall be set to one.
0100b	Ignored by Drive	Ignored by Drive	This format returns ATIP data. In this format, the Track/Session Number field is reserved and shall be set to 00h. There is no defined LBA addressing and MSF bit shall be set to one.
0101b	Ignored by Drive	Ignored by Drive	This format returns CD-TEXT information that is recorded in the Lead-in area as R-W Sub-channel Data.
0110b – 1111b	Reserved		

Format field values 0010b through 0101b are valid only for CD media. If the currently mounted medium is not CD (e.g. BD), the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25.3 Command Processing

6.25.3.1 Overview

The response data list (see Table 475) shows the general description of the response data to the Read TOC/PMA/ATIP command. Each descriptor field is format specific and is defined in the appropriate format sub-clause.

Table 475 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP Data list, general definition

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	First Track/Session/Reserved Field							
3	Last Track/Session/Reserved Field							
	Parameter List Descriptor(s)							
0 : n	Descriptor data – format specific							

The Data Length indicates the length, in bytes, of the data list descriptor data.

The Track/Session/Reserved Field is format specific and indicates the location, if any, of the information in the data list descriptors. These numbers are represented as binary values.

Descriptor data fields are format specific. The definitions of the bytes are described in each format sub-clause.

6.25.3.2 Response Format 0000b: Formatted TOC

6.25.3.2.1 General

The response data consist of four header bytes and zero or more track descriptors. The response data is dependent upon the format specified in the format field of the CDB. The response data returned for Format 0000b is specified in Table 476.

Table 476 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP response data (Format = 0000b)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	TOC Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	First Track Number							
3	Last Track Number							
	TOC Track Descriptor(s)							
0	Reserved							
1	ADR				CONTROL			
2	Track Number							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Track Start Address						
…								
7								(LSB)

The TOC data length indicates the length in bytes of the following TOC data. The TOC data length value does not include the TOC data length field itself. This value is not modified when the allocation length is insufficient to return all of the TOC data available. All other values within the descriptor shall be in binary representation.

6.25.3.2.2 General Case for CD

The First Track Number field indicates the first track number in the first complete session Table of Contents.

The Last Track Number field indicates the last track number in the last complete session Table of Contents before the Lead-out.

The ADR field gives the type of information encoded in the Q Sub-channel of the block where this TOC entry was found.

The CONTROL Field indicates the attributes of the track.

The Track Start Address contains the address of the first block with user information for that track number as read from the Table of Contents. A MSF bit of zero indicates that the Track Start Address field shall contain a logical block address. A MSF bit of one indicates the Logical Block Address field shall contain a MSF address (see 4.2.3.3).

The Track Number field indicates the track number for that the data in the TOC track descriptor is valid. A track number of Aah indicates that the track descriptor is for the start of the Lead-out area.

6.25.3.2.3 DVD-ROM, -RAM, +RW, Single Session DVD-R/-RW, and Single Session DVD+R

TOC form 0 data for single session DVD shall be fabricated as shown in Table 477.

Table 477 — Fabrication of TOC Form 0 for Single Session DVD

Byte(s)	Field	Value
0, 1	TOC Data Length	0012h
2	First Track	01h
3	Last Track	01h
Track 1 Descriptor		
4	Reserved	00h
5	ADR, CONTROL	17h: DVD+R 14h: all others
6	Track Number	01h
7	Reserved	00h
8…11	Track Start Address	LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:00:02:00
Track Aah (Lead-out) Descriptor		
12	Reserved	00h
13	ADR, CONTROL	14h: DVD-ROM 17h: Recordables and Rewritables
14	Track Number	Aah
15	Reserved	00h
16…19	Track Start Address	LBA form = Actual start of Lead-out, MSF form = MSF translation of LBA with a maximum of MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah

6.25.3.2.4 DVD-R/-RW with Multiple Sessions

DVD-R/-RW may have multiple sessions. Since the number of sessions may be rather large, only two sessions are represented as tracks: the last session is seen as the last user track. All earlier sessions are concatenated into a single Logical Track to be referred to as track 1. TOC form 0 shall be fabricated accordingly.

6.25.3.2.5 DVD+R with Multiple Sessions

Due to track merging, TOC form 0 reports each closed session as a track. Since DVD+R supports at most 154 sessions, TOC form 0 may have at most 154 track descriptors. Thus, the maximum size of returned data for TOC form 0 is 1 532 (i.e., 4 + 8*154).

6.25.3.2.6 BD-ROM

A BD-ROM disc is viewed shall be reported as a single track, single session disc. TOC Format 0 shall have the format shown in Table 478.

Table 478 — Response Format 0: Data Returned for BD-ROM disc

	Byte(s)	Field	Value
Header	0, 1	TOC Data Length	0012h
	2	First Track	01h
	3	Last Track	01h
Track 1 Descriptor	4	Reserved	00h
	5	ADR/CTL	14h
	6	Track Number	01h
	7	Reserved	00h
	8-11	Track Start Address	LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:02:00
Track Aah (Lead-out) Descriptor	12	Reserved	00h
	13	ADR/CTL	14h
	14	Track Number	Aah
	15	Reserved	00h
	16 – 19	Track Start Address	LBA form = READ CAPACITY LBA + 1 MSF form = MSF translation of LBA form with a maximum MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah

6.25.3.2.7 Unformatted BD-RE

An unformatted BD-RE disc has no structure to report. If the currently mounted media is an unformatted BD-RE, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
Drives that are not capable of reading a BD-RE media should report CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

6.25.3.2.8 Formatted BD-RE

A formatted BD-RE disc shall be reported as a single track, single session disc. TOC Format 0 shall have the format shown in Table 478.

6.25.3.2.9 Blank BD-R

A blank BD-R disc has no structure to report. If the currently mounted media is a blank BD-R, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
Drives that are not capable of reading a BD-R media should report CHECK CONDITION status ans sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT.

6.25.3.2.10 BD-R RRM

A BD-R disc formatted in RRM shall be reported as a single track, single session disc. TOC Format 0 shall have the format shown in Table 478.

6.25.3.2.11 BD-R SRM-POW and SRM+POW

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command was originally designed for CD media. Since the Lead-out is reported as Logical Track Aah (=170, at most 169 Logical Tracks may be reported). Accurately adapting this command to BD-R formatted in SRM-POW or SRM+POW cannot be done, so the returned data is fabricated to maximize backward compatibility without being limited by the Logical Track number range.

Based upon format, the disc shall be viewed as shown in Table 479.

Table 479 — BD-R Track Translation for READ TOC/PMA/ATIP

BD-R Format	TOC Fabrication
Blank disc	Terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
SRM-POW, one open session	Terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
SRM-POW, one closed session	The one closed session is Viewed as one track.
SRM-POW, N > 1 Closed Sessions	The concatenation of the first N-1 sessions is viewed as Track 1. Session N (the last closed session) is viewed as Track 2.
SRM+POW	A disc formatted as SRM+POW is viewed as a closed disc with one session. The session is viewed as Track 1.

TOC fabrication for SRM-POW and SRM+POW as shown in Table 480.

Table 480 — Response Format 0: Data Returned for formatted BD-R discs

	Byte(s)	Field	Value
Header	0, 1	TOC Data Length	0012h (or 001Ah if Track 2 Descriptor is present)
	2	First Track	01h
	3	Last Track	01h (or 02h if Track 2 Descriptor is present)
Track 1 Descriptor	4	Reserved	00h
	5	ADR/CTL	14h
	6	Track Number	01h
	7	Reserved	00h
	8-11	Track Start Address	LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:02:00
Track 2 Descriptor (if present)	12	Reserved	00h
	13	ADR/CTL	14h
	14	Track Number	02h
	15	Reserved	00h
	16-19	Track Start Address	LBA form = Start LBA of last closed session. MSF form = MSF translation of LBA form with a maximum MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah
Track Aah (Lead-out) Descriptor	12/20	Reserved	00h
	13/21	ADR/CTL	14h
	14/22	Track Number	Aah
	15/23	Reserved	00h
	16-19/ 24-27	Track Start Address	LBA form = READ CAPACITY LBA + 1 MSF form = MSF translation of LBA form with a maximum MSF address of 00h, FFh, 3Bh, 4Ah

6.25.3.3 Response Format 0001b: Multi-session Information

6.25.3.3.1 General

The response data returned for Format 0001b is specified in Table 481.

Table 481 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP response data (Format = 0001b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	TOC Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	First Complete Session Number							
3	Last Complete Session Number							
TOC Track Descriptor								
0	Reserved							
1	ADR				CONTROL			
2	First Track Number In Last Complete Session							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Start Address of First Track in Last Session						
…								
7								(LSB)

The TOC Data Length specifies the length in bytes of the available session data. The TOC Data Length value does not include the TOC Data Length field itself. This value is not modified when the allocation length is insufficient to return all of the session data available.

The First Complete Session Number is set to one.

The Last Complete Session Number indicates the number of the last complete session on the disc. The Last Complete Session Number shall be set to one for a single session disc or if the Drive does not support multi-session discs.

The ADR field gives the type of information encoded in the Q Sub-channel of the block where this TOC entry was found.

The CONTROL Field indicates the attributes of the track. First Track Number In Last Complete Session returns the first track number in the last complete session.

The Track Start Address contains the address of the first block with user information for the first track of the last session, as read from the Table of Contents.

6.25.3.3.2 Non-CD Cases

When a non-CD media is present, Format 1 data shall be fabricated as shown in Table 482.

Table 482 — TOC Data Format 1: Data Returned for non-CD Discs

	Byte(s)	Field	Value
Header	0, 1	TOC Data Length	000Ah
	2	First Session Number	01h
	3	Last Session Number	01h
Track Descriptor	4	Reserved	00h
	5	ADR/CTL	17h: DVD+R 14h: all others
	6	First Track Number in Last Complete	01h
	7	Reserved	00h
	8 – 11	Track Start Address	LBA form = 000000h, MSF form = 00:02:00

6.25.3.4 Response Format 0010b: Raw TOC

6.25.3.4.1 General

None of the fields in the response data of Format 0010b are affected by the MSF bit in the CDB. The response data returned for Format 0010b is specified in Table 483.

Table 483 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP response data (Format = 0010b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	TOC Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	First Complete Session Number							
3	Last Complete Session Number							
TOC Track Descriptor(s)								
0	Session Number (Hex)							
1	ADR				CONTROL			
2	TNO							
3	POINT							
4	Min							
5	Sec							
6	Frame							
7	Zero							
8	PMIN							
9	PSEC							
10	PFRAME							

Multiple TOC Track Descriptors may be returned, but only one of each entry is reported.

For Format field of 0010b, the Drive shall return TOC data for Q Sub-channel modes 1 and 5 (except mode 5, point 1 through 40) in the Lead-in area.

The TOC Data Length specifies the length in bytes of the available TOC data. The TOC Data Length value does not include the TOC Data Length field itself. This value is not modified when the allocation length is insufficient to return all TOC data available.

The First Complete Session Number shall be set to one.

The Last Complete Session Number indicates the number of the last complete session on the disc. The Last Complete Session Number is set to one for a single session disc or if the Drive does not support multi-session discs.

The ADR field gives the type of information encoded in the Q Sub-channel of the block where this TOC entry was found.

The Control Field indicates the attributes of the track.

The ZERO field shall contain a value of zero.

Entries in bytes 2 through 7 of the descriptors (TNO, POINT, MIN, SEC, FRAME, ZERO) shall be converted to binary by the Drive when the media contains a value between 0 and 99bcd.

The returned TOC data of a multi-session disc is arranged in ascending order of the session number with duplicates removed. The TOC data within a session is arranged in the order of Q Sub-channel POINT field value of A0h – Afh, Track Numbers, B0h, BFh. Only recorded Points shall be returned.The TOC Track Descriptor format in the Lead-in area of the TOC is described in Table 484.

Table 484 — TOC Track Descriptor Format, Q Sub-channel

CTRL	ADR	TNO	POINT	MIN	SEC	FRAME	ZERO	PMIN	PSEC	PFRAME
4 or 6	1	00h	01h-63h	ATIME (Absolute time)			00h	Start position of track		
4 or 6	1	00h	A0h	ATIME (Absolute time)			00h	First Track Number	Disc Type	00h
4 or 6	1	00h	A1h	ATIME (Absolute time)			00h	Last Track Number	00h	00h
4 or 6	1	00h	A2h	ATIME (Absolute time)			00h	Start position of Lead-out		
4 or 6	5	00h	B0h	Start time of next possible program in the Recordable Area of the disc			# of pointers in Mode 5	Maximum start time of outer-most Lead-out area in the Recordable Area of the disc		
4 or 6	5	00h	B1h	00h	00h	00h	00h	# of skip interval Pointers (N<=40)	# of skip Track Pointers (N<=21)	00h
4 or 6	5	00h	B2h-B4h	Skip #	Skip #	Skip #	Skip #	Skip #	Skip #	Skip #
4 or 6	5	00h	01h-40h	Ending time for the interval that should be skipped			Reserved	Start time for interval that should be skipped on playback		
4 or 6	5	00h	C0h	optimum recording power	Reserved	Reserved	Reserved	Start time of the first Lead-in Area of the disc		
4 or 6	5	00h	C1h	Copy of information from A1 point in ATIP.						

All of the TOC Track Descriptors (Table 484) are further defined in 4.2.3.7.

The POINT field (Table 485) defined various types of information within the Lead-in TOC area.

Table 485 — POINT Field

ADR	POINT Field	Description
1	01-63h	Track number references
1	A0h	First Track number in the program area
1	A1h	Last Track number in the program area
1	A2h	Start location of the Lead-out area
5	01-40h	Skip Interval Pointers
5	B0h	Used to Identify a Multi-session Disc (Photo CD) Contains start time of next possible program area
5	B1h	Number of skip interval pointers & Skip track assignments
5	01-40h	Skip Interval Pointers
5	B2-B4h	Skip Track Assignment Pointers
5	C0h	Start time of first Lead-in area of disc (This only exists in the first Lead-in area)
5	C1h	Copy of information from additional area 1 in ATIP.

The Disc Type field (see Table 486) indicates the type of disc inserted.

Table 486 — Disc Type Byte Format

Value	Description
00h	CD-DA or CD Data with first track in Mode 1
10h	CD-I disc
20h	CD data XA disc with first track in Mode 2

6.25.3.4.2 Non-CD Discs

No fabrication for non-CD media is defined for form 0010b. If the Host requests a TOC/PMA/ATIP of this form when a non-CD disc is present, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25.3.5 Response Format 0011b: PMA

6.25.3.5.1 General

None of the fields in the response data of Format 0011b are affected by the MSF bit in the CDB. The response data returned for Format 0011b is specified in Table 487.

Table 487 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP response data (Format = 0011b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	PMA Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	PMA Descriptor(s)							
0	Reserved							
1	ADR				CONTROL			
2	TNO							
3	POINT							
4	Min							
5	Sec							
6	Frame							
7	Zero							
8	PMIN							
9	PSEC							
10	PFRAME							

Multiple PMA Descriptors may be returned.

The returned PMA descriptors are arranged in the order found in the PMA, with duplicates removed.

The PMA Data Length indicates the length in bytes of the available PMA data. The PMA Data Length value does not include the PMA Data Length field itself. This value is not modified when the allocation length is insufficient to return all PMA data available. This value is set to 2 plus eleven times the number of descriptors read.

The ZERO field shall contain a value of zero.

Entries in bytes 2 through 10 of the descriptors, (TNO, POINT, MIN, SEC, FRAME, Zero), shall be converted to binary by the Drive if the media contains a value between 0 and 99bcd. (See 4.2.3.10.3)

6.25.3.5.2 Non-CD Discs

No fabrication for non-CD media is defined for form 0010b. If the Host requests a TOC/PMA/ATIP of this form when a non-CD disc is present, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25.3.6 Response Format 0100b: ATIP

6.25.3.6.1 General

The MSF bit in the CDB affects no fields in the response data of Format 0100b. The response data returned for Format 0100b is specified in Table 488.

Table 488 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP response data (Format = 0100b)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	ATIP Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
ATIP Descriptor								
Special Information 1								
0	Indicative Target Writing Power				Reserved	Reference Speed		
1	0	URU	Reserved					
2	1	Disc Type	Disc Sub-Type			A1 Valid	A2 Valid	A3 Valid
3	Reserved							
Special Information 2								
4	ATIP Start Time of Lead-in (Min)							
5	ATIP Start Time of Lead-in (Sec)							
6	ATIP Start Time of Lead-in (Frame)							
7	Reserved							
Special Information 3								
8	ATIP Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out (Min)							
9	ATIP Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out (Sec)							
10	ATIP Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out (Frame)							
11	Reserved							
Additional Information 1								
12 – 14	A1 Values							
15	Reserved							
Additional Information 2								
16-18	A2 Values							
19	Reserved							
Additional Information 3								
20-22	A3 Values							
23	RESERVED							
24-26	S4 Values							
27	Reserved							

ATIP Data Length specifies the number of bytes to be transferred in response to the command. The ATIP Data Length value does not include the data length field itself. This value is not modified when the Allocation Length is insufficient to return all of the ATIP data available.

6.25.3.6.2 ATIP Descriptor for CD-R/RW Media

6.25.3.6.2.1 General

For specific field values and meanings, see [CD-Ref6], [CD-Ref7], [CD-Ref8] and [CD-Ref9].

6.25.3.6.2.2 Special Information 1

Indicative Device Writing Power is encoded information indicating the media's recommended initial laser power setting.

Reference Speed – is encoded information indicating the recommended write speed for the media.

The Unrestricted Use Disc (URU) bit is derived from Application Code. When Application Code indicates that the mounted disc is either for unrestricted use or general purpose, the Unrestricted Use bit is set to one. When the URU flag is zero, the mounted disc is defined for restricted use. In order to record data to the mounted disc the appropriate Host Application code shall be set through the Write Parameters mode page.

When Disc Type is zero, the media is CD-R. When Disc Type is one, the media is CD-RW.

Disc Sub-Type specifies one of 8 possible CD-RW sub-types of the Disc Type. CD-R has no sub-types, so thisfield is zeros. The sub-type typically identifies media sensitivity. When the media is made for higher speed applications, the media is more sensitive. Some higher speed write sub-type media may be damaged if recorded at power levels used for lower speed sub-types. The CD-RW Media Write Support Feature (5.3.26) identifies the Drive's write support for all CD-RW sub-types.

A1 – when set to one, indicates that the A1 Values field is valid. Otherwise, the A1 Values field is invalid.

A2 – when set to one, indicates that the A2 Values field is valid. Otherwise, the A2 Values field is invalid.

A3 – when set to one, indicates that the A3 Values field is valid. Otherwise, the A3 Values field is invalid.

6.25.3.6.2.3 Special Information 2: Start Time of Lead-in

The Start Time of the Lead-in identifies the ATIP time of where the disc Lead-in starts.

6.25.3.6.2.4 Special Information 3: Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out

For all CD-RW and CD-R conforming to Orange Book part II, Special Information 3 contains the MSF address of the maximum start point for the final Lead-out. The Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out shall not be greater than 79:59:74 MSF. It is recommended that this boundary not be violated by extending the program area past the Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out.

A single session disc requires a final Lead-out of 90 seconds, while a multi-session disc requires a final Lead-out of 30 seconds. This suggests that the program area may violate the Last Possible Start Time of Lead-out by as much as 60 seconds when the disc is multi-session.

6.25.3.6.2.5 Special Information 3: Start Time of Additional Capacity

High capacity CD-R (See [CD-Ref10]) defines Special Information 3 as the Start Time for Additional Capacity. The additional capacity includes space for additional program area and the final Lead-out. A field in Additional Information 1 defines the additional number of minutes. Thus:

Start Time of Additional Capacity as a PSN +
Capacity Extension as a number of sectors – 1 =
PSN of Last possible Lead-out sector.

6.25.3.6.2.6 Additional Information 1

Additional Information 1 contains fields identify additional write strategy recording parameters.

For High capacity CD-R, Additional Information 1 also contains a Capacity Extension field. This field is coded for an extension in minutes. See 6.25.3.6.2.5, above.

6.25.3.6.3 Non-CD Discs

No fabrication for non-CD media is defined for form 0010b. If the Host requests a TOC/PMA/ATIP of this form when a non-CD disc is present, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25.3.7 Response Format 0101b: CD-TEXT

6.25.3.7.1 CD Discs

None of the fields in the response data of Format 0101b (Table 489) are affected by the MSF bit in the CDB.

Table 489 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP response data (With Format Field = 0101b)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)			CD-TEXT Data Length				
1								(LSB)
2				Reserved				
3				Reserved				
				CD-TEXT Descriptor(s)				
0 : 17				CD-TEXT Data				

CD-TEXT Data Length specifies the number of bytes to be transferred in response to the command. The CD-TEXT Data Length value does not include the data length field itself. This value is not modified when the allocation length is insufficient to return all of the CD-TEXT data available. This length is variable depends on the number of recording Pack Data.

CD-TEXT Information Descriptor(s) provides Pack Data available in the Lead-in area of the disc. Each Pack Data consists of 18 bytes of CD-TEXT information. If a Pack Data is recorded repeatedly on the disc, the device should return it only once.

The detail of Pack Data and CD-TEXT information is described in System Description Compact Disc Digital Audio Addemdum: CD-TEXT.

6.25.3.7.2 Non-CD Discs

No fabrication for non-CD media is defined for form 0010b. If the Host requests a TOC/PMA/ATIP of this form when a non-CD disc is present, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.25.4 Timeouts

The READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.25.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is defined in Table 490.

Table 490 — Recommended Errors for the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.26 READ TRACK INFORMATION Command

6.26.1 Introduction

The READ TRACK INFORMATION Command provides information about a Logical Track. Logical Track is a generic term used to reference logical subdivisions of an optical media. Logical Track refers to track on CD media, Rzone on DVD-R/-RW media, fragment on DVD+R media, and SRR on BD-R media. When the currently mounted media has no Logical Track structure, the entire media shall be considered a single Logical Track. If the media has no default structure when unformatted, then this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set according to Table 5.

Table 491 shows the Features associated with the READ TRACK INFORMATION command.

Table 491 — Features Associated with the READ TRACK INFORMATION Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
001Dh	Multi-Read	Mandatory
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0027h	CD-RW CAV Write	Mandatory
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
002Dh	CD Track At Once	Mandatory
002Eh	CD Mastering (both SAO and RAW)	Mandatory
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Mandatory
0033h	Layer Jump Recording	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory

6.26.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.26.2.1 The CDB

The READ TRACK INFORMATION CDB is shown in Table 492.

Table 492 — READ TRACK INFORMATION CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (52h)							
1	Reserved					Open	Address/Number Type	
2	(MSB)	Logical Block Address/ Track/Session Number						
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control Byte							

6.26.2.2 Open

If Open is set to zero, the addressed Logical Track shall be located according to the Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number field. If Open is set to one, the Drive shall locate the first open Logical Track with Logical Track number that is greater than or equal to the Logical Track specified by the Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number field.

6.26.2.3 Address/Number Type

The Address/Number Type field in byte 1 is used to specify the contents of the Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number field, bytes 2 through 5 of the CDB. The Description of these parameters is shown in Table 493.

6.26.2.4 Logical BlockAddress/Track/Session Number Fields

The Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number field either directly or indirectly specifies T_A, the Logical Track Number for which the Drive is to provide track information. See Table 493.

Table 493 — Addressed Track (T_A) According to LBA/Track/Session Number Field

Address/ Number Type field	Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number	Description
00b	Logical Block Address (LBA)	MAX = Last Possible Lead-out Start Address as returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command. If LBA ≥ MAX, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE. Otherwise, the LBA lies within some Logical Track on the disc, T_A.
01b	Logical Track number (LTN) = 0	If the currently mounted disc is not CD, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Otherwise, the Drive shall return Lead-in information.
	Logical Track number (LTN)	If T_M is the Last Track Number in the Last Session as returned in READ DISC INFORMATION command Standard Disc Information. If LTN > T_M, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Otherwise, T_A = LTN.
	Logical Track number (LTN) = 255	If the currently mounted disc is CD, DVD+R, or DVD+R DL, T_A is set to the Logical Track number of the invisible/incomplete track. For DVD, this value means T_A = 255.
10b	Session Number (S_N)	S_M is the Number of Sessions as returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command. If $S_N > S_M$, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Otherwise the T_A = the first Logical Track in session S_N.
11b	Reserved	

6.26.2.5 Determining the Specific Logical Track

For multi-track discs, there are potentially 3 Logical Track numbers to be determined: T, T_A , and T_O.

1. T is the Logical Track number for which Track Information shall be returned.
2. The Address/Number Type and the Logical Block Address/Track/Session Number fields specify an addressed Logical Track, T_A that is valid according to Table 493.
3. T_O is the smallest track number such that T_O is open and $T_A \le T_O$. If the disc contains no open tracks, then T_O shall be set to FFFFh.

If Open is set to zero, then T = T_A. If Open is set to one, then T shall be set to T_O.

If it is not possible for the currently mounted disc to have open tracks, and Open is set to one, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If Open is set to one and the track number is determined to be FFFFh, the Drive shall set the following fields to all FFh:

a. the Session Number (LSB) field
b. the Session Number (MSB) field
c. the Logical Track Number (LSB) field
d. the Logical Track Number (MSB) field

And all the other fields, except the Data Length field, shall be set to 00h in the Track Information Block.

6.26.2.6 Allocation Length

The number of Track Information Block bytes returned is limited by the Allocation Length parameter of the CDB. An Allocation Length of zero is not an error.

6.26.3 Command Processing

6.26.3.1 Overview

The Drive shall collect the information requested by the Host into a Track Information Block structure, and transfer to the Host, restricted by Allocation Length.

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command shall provide minimal information for a disc with Unrecordable status: Track Number, Session Number, Track Mode, Data Mode, Track Start Address.

The format and content of the Track Information Block is shown in Table 494.

Table 494 — Track Information Block

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Logical Track Number (Least Significant Byte)							
3	Session Number (Least Significant Byte)							
4	Reserved							
5	LJRS		Damage	Copy	Track Mode			
6	RT	Blank	Packet/Inc	FP	Data Mode			
7	Reserved						LRA_V	NWA_V
8	(MSB)	Logical Track Start Address						
···								
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)	Next Writable Address						
···								
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)	Free Blocks						
···								
19								(LSB)
20	(MSB)	Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor						
···								
23								(LSB)
24	(MSB)	Logical Track Size						
···								
27								(LSB)
28	(MSB)	Last Recorded Address						
···								
31								(LSB)
32	Logical Track Number (Most Significant Byte)							
33	Session Number (Most Significant Byte)							
34	Reserved							
35	Reserved							
36	(MSB)	Read Compatibility LBA						
···								
39								(LSB)
40	(MSB)	Next Layer Jump Address						
···								
43								(LSB)
44	(MSB)	Last Layer Jump Address						
···								
47								(LSB)

6.26.3.2 Data Length

The Data Length field specifies the length, in bytes, of the available track information data. The Data Length value does not include the data length field itself. The Data Length is not modified when the allocation length is insufficient to return all of the response data available.

6.26.3.3 Logical Track Number

Logical Track Number is contained within bytes 2 and 32 of this structure. For media not containing Logical Tracks (track, Rzone, Fragment, or SRR), this field shall contain the value 1.

If the Logical Track number is set to zero, the disc is a CD and the contents of Track Information Block shall be returned for the Lead-in area. In this case, the Track Start Address field is the start address of the Lead-in area.

6.26.3.4 Session Number

Session Number is the number of the session containing this track, or a value of 1 for media not containing sessions that contain this track.

6.26.3.5 Copy bit

For CD, the Copy bit indicates that this track is a second or higher generation copy. For other media, this bit shall be set to zero.

6.26.3.6 LJRS

The Layer Jump Recording Status (LJRS) field defines the current Layer Jump Recording status for the currently mounted medium. The meaning of the possible values for LJRS are shown in Table 495.

Table 495 — LJRS Field Definition

Value	Recording Mode	Definition
00b	Not Layer Jump Recording Mode	The disc is not in Layer Jump recording mode.
01b	Layer Jump Mode: Unspecified	The disc is in Layer Jump recording mode. On DVD-R DL discs, the Rzone is in the Complete state, Reserved state or Invisible state. For the Invisible Rzone, neither Manual Layer Jump Address nor Jump Interval size for Regular Interval Layer Jump recording is specified. Or the disc is blank and Write Type field is set to Layer Jump.
10b	Layer Jump Mode: Manual	The disc is in Layer Jump recording mode and Manual Layer jump recording is in progress. On DVD-R DL discs, the Rzone is Invisible/Incomplete state and is in Manual Layer Jump recording mode.
11b	Layer Jump Mode: Regular interval recording	The disc is in Layer Jump recording mode and Regular Interval Layer jump recording is in progress. The Jump Interval size field of the READ DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code=22h shall report the Jump Interval size in blocks. On DVD-R DL discs, the Rzone is Invisible/Incomplete state and is in Regular Interval Layer Jump recording mode.

When LJRS is not zero, the Next Layer Jump Address field and the Last Layer Jump Address fields shall be present after the Read Compatibility LBA field in the Track Information Block. The Packet/Inc bit shall be set to one, and the FP bit shall be set to zero.

6.26.3.7 Damage Bit

The Damage bit, when set to one, and the NWA_V is set to zero; the track shall be considered “not closed due to an incomplete write”. The Drive may attempt an automatic repair when the CLOSE TRACK SESSION command is issued. Further incremental writing in this track is not possible. The Damage bit, when set to one, and the NWA_V is set to one, indicates a Track that may be recorded further in an incremental manner. The Drive shall attempt an automatic repair when the next command that requires writing to the Track is issued. If the repair is successful, the Damage bit shall be set to zero. Prior to the start of the repair, the NWA field shall contain the address of the Next Writable Sector assuming a successful repair.

6.26.3.8 Copy

The Copy bit indicates that this track is a second or higher generation copy (CD). For all other media, this bit shall be set to zero.

6.26.3.9 Track Mode

Track mode was originally defined for CD media and is recorded on the media. For other media, track mode is fabricated from the media characteristics. Table 496 shows the values for different media types.

Table 496 — Track Mode Definition

CD-ROM/-R/-RW	Track Mode for CD is the control nibble as defined for mode 1 Q Sub-channel for this track. See Table 17.
DVD+R	07h, indicating: data, incremental recording, copy permitted
All other media	04h, indicating: data, uninterrupted recording, no copy permissions

6.26.3.10 Track Status: RT, Blank, Packet, and FP Bits

The meaning of the RT (Reserved Track) bit is defined in Table 497.

Table 497 — RT Bit Definition

Media Type	RT = 0	RT = 1
CD-ROM, DVD-ROM, BD-ROM, DVD-RAM, DVD+RW, BD-RE	Default	—
CD-R/-RW	The Track is the invisible/incomplete track	A PMA entry is written identifying the start and end addresses of the track
DVD-R/-RW	The Rzone is Complete (i.e. Closed), Invisible or Incomplete	The Rzone is reserved. It may be either empty or partially recorded.
DVD+R	The Logical Track is the invisible/ incomplete fragment.	The bounds of the fragment are defined within the Disc/Session Identification Zone.
BD-R	The Logical Track is the invisible/ incomplete SRR.	The Logical Track is not the invisible/ incomplete SRR.

The definition of the Blank bit is given in Table 498.

Table 498 — Blank Bit Definition

Media Type	Blank = 0	Blank = 1
CD-R/RW	Minimally, the track pre-gap is written.	All sectors within the track and its pre-gap are blank.
DVD-R/-RW, DVD+R, BD-R	Some non-zero number of writable units within the Logical Tracks is written.	All writable units within the Logical Track are blank.
DVD-RAM, BD-RE	Blank has no meaning for this media. The Blank bit shall always be zero for this media.	
DVD+RW	The Disc Status in the Disc Information Block shows that the disc is not blank.	The Disc Status in the Disc Information Block shows that the entire disc is blank.

The definition of the Packet/Inc bit is given in Table 499.

Table 499 — Packet/Inc Bit Definition

Media Type	Packet/Inc = 0	Packet/Inc = 1
CD-R/RW	Based upon existing track format and Write Parameters mode page	
DVD-R/-RW	Based upon existing Rzone format and Write Parameters mode page	
DVD-RAM, DVD+R, DVD+RW, BD-RE	—	Always

The definition of the FP (Fixed Packet) bit is given in Table 500.

Table 500 — FP bit Definition

Media Type	FP = 0	FP = 1
CD-R/RW	Based upon existing track format and Write Parameters mode page	
DVD-R/-RW	Based upon existing Rzone format and Write Parameters mode page	
DVD-RAM, DVD+R, DVD+RW, BD-R, BD-RE	Always	—

When writing CD and DVD-R/-RW, certain parameters may be set via the Write Parameters Page. The state of the track determines what parameters shall be set and that parameters in the mode page shall match. Required Write Parameters are defined in Table 501.

Table 501 — Write Parameter Restrictions due to Track State

RT	Blank	Packet	CD Write Parameter Restrictions	DVD-R/-RW Write Parameter Restrictions
0	0	0	Unable to write to stamped disc, or during track at once on invisible track, or writing session at once mode	Unable to write to stamped disc, or writing disc-at-once, unable to write to complete disc.
0	0	1	Write type is set to packet; all parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match.	Write type is set to incremental; all parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match
0	1	0	Write type may be set to packet or TAO. All other parameters shall be changeable. If this track is the first track of a Session, then Session at Once is allowed.	Write type is set to disc-at-once: Invisible Track of disc-at-once, empty. Unable to start disc-at-once recording in this state. A Track shall be reserved prior to start of disc-at-once recording. All parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match
0	1	1	Invalid State	Write type is set to incremental; Invisible track for incremental recording, the Track is writable. All parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match
1	0	0	Unable to write to recorded track or during track at once on reserved Track.	Unable to write to disc during disc at once on reserved Track.
1	0	1	Write type is set to packet; all parameters common to READ TRACK INFO and the Write Parameters Page shall match.	Write type is set to incremental; Partially recorded reserved Track, the Track is writable. All parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match
1	1	0	Write type is set to TAO. Track mode set to same as READ TRACK INFO. Copy bit may be set only if copyright bit in track mode is clear. All other common parameters shall match.	Write type is set to disc-at-once; Empty reserved Track for disc-at-once. All parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match
1	1	1	Write type is set to Packet. Track mode set to same as READ TRACK INFO. Copy bit may be set only if copyright bit in track mode is clear. FP and packet size are changeable. All other common parameters shall match.	Write type is set to incremental; Empty reserved Track, the Track is writable. All parameters common to READ TRACK I and the Write Parameters Page shall match

Table 502 shows the consequences of the Logical Track status bits: RT, Blank, Packet/Inc, and FP.

Table 502 — Track Status Indications

RT	Blank	Packet/ Inc	FP	DVD-R/-RW Write Method	DVD-R/-RW Track Status	CD Write Method	CD Track Status
0	0	0	-	- DAO	Complete	Uninterrupted/ TAO/SAO	Complete/During TAO/SAO
0	0	1	0	Incremental	Incomplete or Complete[1]	Variable	Incomplete
0	0	1	1	- Restricted Overwrite	Complete or Incomplete[2]	Fixed	Incomplete
0	1	0	-	DAO	Invisible	TAO/Variable/ Fixed[3]	Invisible
0	1	1	0	Incremental	Invisible	-	(invalid)
0	1	1	1	- Restricted Overwrite	Invisible	-	(invalid)
1	0	0	-	DAO	during DAO	TAO	Complete/During TAO
1	0	1	0	Incremental	Partially Recorded Reserved	Variable	Complete/ Partially Recorded Reserve
1	0	1	1	-	(invalid)	Fixed	Complete/ Partially Recorded Reserve
1	1	0	-	DAO	Empty Reserved Before starting writing	TAO	Empty Reserved
1	1	1	0	Incremental	Empty Reserved	Variable/Fixed	Empty Reserved
1	1	1	1	-	(invalid)	-	(invalid)

[1] If Free Blocks field is 0, the track is in the Complete state. Otherwise, the track is Incomplete state.
[2] In the case of a track that is in the intermediate state session, the track is considered as in the Incomplete state.
[3] In case last Session is empty, SAO is also valid.

6.26.3.11 Data Mode

Data Mode field defines the track content. Data Mode for CD is defined in Table 503.

Table 503 — CD Data Modes

Value	Definition
1	Mode 1 (ISO/IEC 10149)
2	Mode 2 (ISO/IEC 10149 or CD-ROM XA)
Fh	Data Block Type unknown (no track descriptor block)
0, 3 – Eh	Reserved

For all other media types, Data Mode shall be set to 1.

6.26.3.12 NWA_V

If NWA_V is zero, then the next writable address field is not valid. Otherwise the next writable address field is valid. NWA_V shall be set to zero if the Track is not writable for any reason. If the disc is DVD+RW basic formatted or in progress with DVD+RW basic formatting, then NWA_V shall be set to zero.

6.26.3.13 LRA_V

If LRA_V is zero, then the Last Recorded Address field is not valid. Otherwise, the Last Recorded Address field is valid. The LRA_V bit shall be set to zero if the Track has damage for any reason and is repaired automatically.

6.26.3.14 Track Start Address

Track Start Address contains the address of the first block with user information for that Logical Track.

6.26.3.15 Next Writable Address

The Next Writable Address, if valid, is the LBA of the next writable user block in the Track specified by the LBA/Track Number field in the CDB. For CD media, Next Writable Address shall be associated with the RT, Blank, Packet and FP bits as defined in Table 504. If the write type is Raw, the Next Writable Address may be a negative number as required to point to the start of the first Lead-in. When streaming in any write type, the Next Writable Address shall be the next user data block the Drive expects to receive if no under-run occurs.

Table 504 — Next Writable Address Definition

RT	Blank	Packet	FP	NWA_V	Definition
0	0	0	-	0[4]	LBA that shall be specified by next write[2]
0	0	1	0	1[1]	LBA that shall be specified by next write[2]
0	0	1	1	1[1]	LBA that shall be specified by next write[2,3]
0	1	0	0	1	LBA of the first data block after pre-gap[5]
0	1	1	x	-	-
1	0	0	-	0[4]	LBA that shall be specified by next write[2]
1	0	1	0	1[1]	LBA that shall be specified by next write[2]
1	0	1	1	1[1]	LBA that shall be specified by next write[2,3]
1	1	0	-	1	LBA of the first data block after pre-gap
1	1	1	0	1	LBA of the first data block after pre-gap
1	1	1	1	-	-

[1]When "Free Blocks" is 0 (data full), NWA_V is 0.
[2]The NWA takes account of data blocks in buffer that have not yet been written to media. If the Drive is able to write the data of next write command without interrupting of current data streaming (no underrun condition), the NWA is contiguous to the last address data in buffer. If WCE in Mode Cache Page is zero, the NWA takes account of Link Blocks.
[3]On CD, NWA calculations follow the Addressing Method-2.
[4]During TAO (SAO), NWA_V is 1.
[5]In the case of SAO the NWA is the first block after the Lead-in for the first track of session.

6.26.3.16 Free Blocks

The Free Blocks field represents the maximum number of user data blocks available for recording in the Logical Track. The value returned is media type and format dependent.

6.26.3.16.1 CD

For CD media, this field shall be computed as follows: First, the Available Track Space (ATS) shall be computed. In the cases that follow *StartTimeofLastPossibleLead-out* is as defined in 6.21.3.1.18.
For the invisible track, *ATS = (StartTimeofLastPossibleLead-out) – NWA + 5*.
For a reserved track, *ATS = (PMAStopTime) – NWA + 5*.

If the track is reserved for fixed packets, or written with fixed packets, or is the invisible track and the Write Parameters Page specifies fixed packets,

$$FreeBlocks = FI\left[\frac{ATS}{PacketSize + 7}\right].$$

Otherwise, *FreeBlocks = ATS –7*.

The StartTimeofLastPossibleLead-out is the last possible location of the link block at the start of the Lead-out. If a disc is fully recorded, the PMA entry for the last track is equal to the StartTimeofLastPossibleLead-out.

For reading and writing, the Drive translates addressing within fixed packet written tracks. The NWA is translated as follows:

$$NWA_{Method2} = NWA_{Method1} - 7 \bullet FI\left[\frac{NWA_{Method1} - TrackStartAddress}{PacketSize + 7}\right]$$

where:

- Method 1 is the physical address,
- Method 2 is the addressing used on fixed packet written tracks to hide the link areas from the Host, and
- TrackStartAddress is always a physical address, even when prior tracks are recorded with Method 2.

6.26.3.16.2 Formatted Rewritable Media: DVD-RAM, DVD+RW, BD-RE
Free Blocks is associated with incremental recording. When Formattable, rewritable media is present, Free Blocks shall be set to zero.

6.26.3.16.3 DVD-R/-RW, DVD-R DL
With these media type, the actual length of the Logical Track is known. When NWA_V is set to zero, Free Blocks shall be set to zero.

For DVD-R/-RW, this field value shall exclude the number of BSGA/LLA blocks that are located on the Rzone boundary. In Layer Jump recording mode on DVD-R Dual Layer media, the number of BSGA/LLA blocks that are located on LJB boundary shall also be excluded to return actual available user data blocks in the Rzone.

6.26.3.16.4 DVD+R, DVD+R DL, BD-R
With these media types, the actual length of the Logical Track is known. When NWA_V is set to zero, Free Blocks shall be set to zero. The number of free blocks in the Logical Track are number of blocks from the NWA until the end of the track: Logical Track Size – (Track Start Address – NWA).

6.26.3.17 Fixed Packet Size
For CD, the Fixed Packet Size is valid only when the Packet and the FP bits are both set to one.

For DVD media, this field has a value of 16.

For BD media, this field has a value of 32.

6.26.3.18 Track Size

6.26.3.18.1 General
Track Size is the number of user data blocks in the Logical Track.

6.26.3.18.2 CD Track Size
For CD the track size shall be computed as follows:
First, compute the Complete Track Size (CTS).

For an incomplete track: *CTS = (StartTimeofLastPossibleLead-out) – PMATrackStart + 5*.

For a reserved track: *CTS = (PMAStopTime) – PMAStartTime + 5.*

For CD media, the Track Size number may not be exact for the tracks that do not have a PMA entry. The track size, of tracks that do not have PMA entries, is calculated as follows:

TrackSize of track *n = (start of track n+1) – (start of track n)*, n+1 is the Lead Out if n is the last track recorded in the TOC.

The Track Size from this calculation may include blocks from the following track and these blocks may not be readable.

6.26.3.18.3 DVD-ROM Track Size
A DVD-ROM disc has exactly one Logical Track, track 1. The Logical Track size is calculated using information collected from the Control Data Zone:

> *Logical Track Size = End Physical Sector Number of Data Area - Starting Physical Sector Number of Data Area + 1.*

6.26.3.18.4 DVD-RAM Track Size
A DVD-RAM disc has exactly one Logical Track, track 1. The Logical Track size is calculated using information collected from the Control Data Zone:

> *Logical Track Size = End Physical Sector Number of Data Area - Starting Physical Sector Number of Data Area + 1.*

6.26.3.18.5 DVD-R, DVD-R DL when LJRS = 00b, and DVD-RW Track Size
For DVD-R/-RW, the Track Size field reports the number of sectors in the specified Logical Track (Rzone) as follows:

> If the Rzone is complete, this field reports the number of sectors in the specified Rzone including all padded sectors except the last 1 or 16 sectors of the Rzone.

The Rzone size is calculated according to the following rule:

First, compute the following bit mask operation to get Linking Status of Rzone (LSR):

LSR = NextRZoneStartAddress && 0Fh ("&&" means the logical AND operation)

where the NextRZoneStartAddress is the start address of the Rzone that is located immediately after the complete Rzone to be calculated.

If the complete Rzone to be calculated is the last Rzone, the *NextRZoneStartAddress* is the start address of the last Border-out.

If the *LSR* = 0,

RzoneSize = NextRZoneStartAddress – RzoneStartAddress – 16 sectors;

Otherwise,

RzoneSize = NextRZoneStartAddress – RzoneStartAddress – 1 sectors; where the RzoneStartAddress is the start address of the complete Rzone to be calculated.

For an incomplete Rzone or invisible Rzone, this field reports the number of sectors in the specified Rzone including unrecorded sectors except the sectors to be used for the Border-out or truncated Border-out and its BSGA (16 sectors). The end address of the invisible/incomplete Rzone is specified by the Outer limit of Data Recordable area field or the End PSN of Data Area field in Data Area Allocation field of Control Data Zone.

The Rzone size is calculated as follows:

RzoneSize = EndPSNOfRZone – RzoneStartAddress – NumberOfSectorsInBorderOut – 16 sectors, where the *EndPSNOfRZone* is the end address of the invisible/incomplete Rzone.

The *NumberOfSectorsInBorderOut* is the number of sectors to be recorded as Border-out or truncated Border-out just before the Lead-out.

For a reserved Rzone, this field reports the number of sectors in the specified Rzone including all unrecorded sectors except the last 16 sectors of the Rzone to be used as a BSGA.

The Rzone size is calculated as follows:

RzoneSize = NextRZoneStartAddress – RzoneStartAddress – 16 sectors

6.26.3.18.6 DVD-R DL when LJRS ≠ 00b Track Size

The Track/Rzone Size / Rzone End Address field reports the LBA of the last sector that is available to record user data in the specified Rzone.

6.26.3.18.7 DVD+RW Track Size

A DVD+RW disc has exactly one Logical Track, track 1. Track Size is disc capacity.

6.26.3.18.8 DVD+R and DVD+R DL Track Size

A DVD+R Logical Track may be either the collection of all fragments within a closed session or an individual fragment from the open session.

When the specified track is a collection of fragments in a closed session, the track size is calculated using information from the most recent TOC block from the TOC Zone.

If the specified track is a fragment within the open session, and the fragment is not the invisible fragment, then track size is calculated using information from the most recently written SDCB for the session.

If the specified track is the invisible fragment, then track size is calculated using information from the most recently written SDCB for the session and ADIP information.

6.26.3.19 Last Recorded Address

The Last Recorded Address is valid for DVD-R, DVD-R DL when LJRS = 00b, DVD-RW, and BD-R. It is the address of last written user data sector of the specified Logical Track. The last written sector of padded sectors shall not be considered as the last written user data sector.

6.26.3.20 Read Compatibility LBA

If the disc is DVD+R and the track is the invisible track (i.e., RT=0), the Read Compatibility LBA shall be present. Some read-only devices are constructed such that a minimal amount of a disc shall be recorded (typically to a radius of 28 – 30 mm) in order that it is acceptable as a valid, readable disc. The Read Compatibility LBA is a padding recommendation from the Drive that the Host may use to ensure a minimal recorded radius.

For DVD+R DL, the Read Compatibility LBA is on L0.

6.26.3.21 Next Layer Jump Address

The Next Layer Jump Address is the address of the future Layer Jump Address that will cause a Layer jump from L0 to L1 or from L1 to L0 of the Reserved/Invisible/Incomplete Rzone of DVD-R DL medium. The reported address is either the address on L0 or the address on L1. If no more Layer jump occurs in the Rzone, this field shall be set to 0. So when Layer jump of a Reserved Rzone has happened or the Rzone is closed, this field shall be set to 0. The default value of the blank DVD-R DL media is the end LBA of L0.

6.26.3.22 Last Layer Jump Address

The Last Layer Jump Address is the address of the last Layer Jump Address on L0. In case of DVD-R DL medium, only previous Layer Jump Address on L0 is reported. If no Layer jump has occurred in the Rzone and the NWA is located on L0, this field shall be set to 0. For DVD-R DL, if the Rzone is closed status, this field shall report the maximum recorded LBA on L0 in the closed Rzone.

When the Rzone is Invisible or Incomplete state, the Last Layer Jump Address field and the Next Layer Jump Address fields report the information about Layer Jump Block (LJB). When the LJRS field is set to 00b and if the Next Layer Jump Address field and Last Layer Jump Address field present after Read Compatibility LBA field, these fields are 00000000h.

6.26.4 BD Track Information

Table 505 shows Track Information Block content when a BD-ROM disc is present.

Table 505 — TIB Fields for BD-ROM Discs

TIB Field	Value	Meaning
Track Number	1	BD-ROM is always one track
Session Number	1	BD-ROM is always one session
Damage	0b	Not used by BD-ROM and shall be 0b
Copy	0b	Not used by BD-ROM and shall be 0b
Track Mode	4h	BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4
RT	0b	The BD-ROM Logical Track is always reserved.
Blank	0b	The BD-ROM Logical Track is never blank.
Packet/Inc	0b	Recording is incremental by Cluster
FP	0b	FP has no meaning on BD-ROM
Data Mode	1h	BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1
LRA_V	0	LRA is not valid on BD-ROM
NWA_V	0	NWA is not valid on BD-ROM
Track Start Address	00000000h	Start address of Logical Track 1
Next Writable Address	00000000h	NWA is not valid on BD-ROM
Free Blocks	00000000h	None available on BD-ROM
Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor	00000020h	Cluster size in sectors
Track Size	READ CAPACITY LBA + 1	BD-ROM is always one track
Last Recorded Address	00000000h	LRA is not valid on BD-ROM
Read Compatibility LBA	00000000h	Not valid on BD-ROM

Table 506 shows Track Information Block content when the currently mounted disc is BD-R formatted as SRM.

Table 506 — TIB Fields for a BD-R Disc Formatted as SRM

TIB Field	Value	Meaning
Track Number	T	Current Track Number: 1 ≤ T ≤ 7927
Session Number	S	Current Session Number: 1 ≤ S ≤ 7927
Damage	xb	Default value is zero. Set to 1 only when Drive cannot recover most recent copy of TDMS.
Copy	0b	Not used by BD-R and shall be 0b
Track Mode	4h	BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4
RT	0b	The invisible/incomplete track
	1b	Track is not invisible/incomplete
Blank	0b	When Track NWA ≠ Track Start Address
	1b	When Track NWA = Track Start Address
Packet/Inc	1b	Recording is incremental by Cluster
FP	0b	FP has no meaning on BD-R
Data Mode	1h	BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1
LRA_V	xb	Specifies validity of LRA field. Shall be set to zero when format is SRM+POW.
NWA_V	xb	Specifies validity of NWA field
Track Start Address	SLBA	LBA of first user block in track.
Next Writable Address	NWA	Append LBA for track
Free Blocks	FB	Number of blocks in Logical Track from NWA until end
Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor	00000020h	Cluster size in sectors
Track Size	N – StartLBA	If T+1 exists, then N = StartLBA of T+1. If T+1 does not exist, then N = Capacity, where Capacity = Number of blocks From READ FORMAT CAPACITIES current capacity descriptor.
Last Recorded Address	LRA	When format is SRM-POW, this is the LBA of the last block appended with Host supplied data.
Read Compatibility LBA	00000000h	This field is not used by BD Drives and shall be 00000000h

Table 507 describes TIB fields when the currently mounted BD-R disc is RRM.

Table 507 —TIB Fields for a BD-R Disc Formatted as RRM

TIB Field	Value	Meaning
Track Number	1	BD-R RRM is viewed as one track
Session Number	1	BD-R RRM is viewed as one session
Damage	x	Default value is zero. Set to 1 only when Drive cannot recover most recent copy of TDMS.
Copy	0	Not used by BD-R and shall be 0b
Track Mode	4h	BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4
RT	0b	Not used by BD-R RRM and shall be 0b
Blank	1b	A formatted RRM disc is not blank
Packet/Inc	0b	Not valid on BD-R RRM
FP	0b	Not valid on BD-R RRM
Data Mode	1h	BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1
LRA_V	0	Not valid on BD-R RRM
NWA_V	0	Not valid on BD-R RRM
Track Start Address	00000000h	Not used by Random Writable Drives
Next Writable Address	00000000h	Not valid on BD-R RRM
Free Blocks	00000000h	Not valid on BD-R RRM
Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor	00000020h	Cluster size in sectors
Track Size	CAP + 1	CAP = LBA from READ CAPACITY command
Last Recorded Address	00000000h	Not valid on BD-R RRM
Read Compatibility LBA	00000000h	Not valid on BD-R RRM

Table 508 shows required content when BD-RE disc is present.

Table 508 — TIB Fields for formatted BD-RE Discs

TIB Field	Value	Meaning
Track Number	1	BD-RE is viewed as one track
Session Number	1	BD-RE is viewed as one session
Damage	0b	Not used by BD-RE and shall be 0b
Copy	0b	Not used by BD-RE and shall be 0b
Track Mode	4h	BD sectors approximate CD track mode 4
RT	0b	Not used by BD-RE and shall be 0b
Blank	0b	Blank = 0.
Packet/Inc	0b	Not valid on BD-RE
FP	0b	Not valid on BD-RE
Data Mode	1b	BD sectors approximate CD data mode 1
LRA_V	0b	Not valid on BD-RE
NWA_V	0b	Not valid on BD-RE
Track Start Address	00000000h	Not used by Random Writable Drives
Next Writable Address	00000000h	Not valid on BD-RE
Free Blocks	00000000h	Not valid on BD-RE
Fixed Packet Size/Blocking Factor	00000020h	Cluster size in sectors
Track Size	CAP + 1	CAP = LBA from READ CAPACITY command
Last Recorded Address	00000000h	Not valid on BD-RE
Read Compatibility LBA	00000000h	Not valid on BD-RE

6.26.5 Timeouts

The READ TRACK INFORMATION command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.26.6 Error Reporting

Table 509 describes errors that may occur during the operation of the command or that may cause a CHECK CONDITION status to be reported.

Table 509 — Recommended Errors for the READ TRACK INFORMATION Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Read errors	Table F.6
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.27 REPAIR TRACK Command

6.27.1 Introduction

A track that has been defined for incremental writing on DVD-R/-RW may be damaged due to an incomplete ECC block at the end of written data. This may be caused by a reset issued or a power-fail condition during a write operation. The REPAIR TRACK command shall fill multiple ECC block lengths with data from beginning of the damaged sector of the ECC block and ending with a link field. The recovery is intended only to allow the track to become writable again.

The REPAIR TRACK command is optional for all MM devices. The REPAIR TRACK command is not mandatory under any Feature defined in this standard.

6.27.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.27.2.1 The CDB

The REPAIR TRACK CDB is shown in Table 510.

Table 510 — REPAIR TRACK CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (58h)							
1	Reserved							Immed
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Logical Track Number						
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							
9	Control							

6.27.2.2 Immed

If Immed is zero, the requested repair operation is processed to completion prior to returning status. If Immed is set to one, status is returned once the CDB has been validated.

6.27.2.3 Logical Track Number

The Logical Track Number field specifies the Logical Track that requires repair.

6.27.3 Command Processing

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

Behavior of this command is the same as automatic repair (see the DAMAGE bit description in 6.26.3.7). This command causes a repair action without an explicit write of data.

6.27.4 Timeouts

The REPAIR TRACK command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.27.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the REPAIR TRACK command is defined in Table 511.

Table 511 — Recommended Errors for the REPAIR TRACK Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
Protocol errors	Table F.4
General media access errors	Table F.5
Write errors	Table F.7
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.28 REPORT KEY Command

6.28.1 Introduction

The REPORT KEY command requests the start of the authentication process and provides data necessary for authentication and for generating a Bus Key for protected transfers between the Host and Drive.

This command, in conjunction with the SEND KEY command, is intended to perform authentication for Drives that conform to specified Content Protection schemes, and generates a Bus Key as the result of that authentication.

Table 512 shows the Features associated with the REPORT KEY command.

Table 512 — Features Associated with the REPORT KEY Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0106h	DVD CSS	Mandatory
010Bh	DVD CPRM	Mandatory
010Dh	AACS	Mandatory

6.28.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.28.2.1 The CDB

The REPORT KEY CDB is shown in Table 513. The actual format of the CDB is dependent upon the value of Key Class.

Table 513 — REPORT KEY CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (A4h)							
1	Reserved							
2	(MSB)	Reserved /Logical Block Address/Starting Offset						
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved/Block Count Function							
7	Key Class							
8	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
9								(LSB)
10	AGID		Key Format					
11	Control							

6.28.2.2 Reserved/Logical Block Address/Starting Offset

The Reserved/Logical Block Address/Starting Offset field is dependent upon the Key Class and Key Format Fields.

6.28.2.3 Reserved/Block Count Function

The Reserved/Block Count Function is dependent upon the Key Class and Key Format Fields.

6.28.2.4 Key Class

The Key Class field shall identify the type of authentication conversation according to Table 514.

Table 514 — KEY Class Definition

Key Class	Authentication Type
00h	DVD CSS/CPPM or CPRM
01h	Obsolete
02h	AACS
03h – 1Fh	Reserved
20h	Legacy (formerly VCPS, see Annex E)
21h	SecurDisc
22h – FFh	Reserved

Note 23. DVD CSS/CPPM and CPRM authentication use the same Key Class field value since they have the same Challenge KEY, KEY1, and KEY2 sizes, and since they are licensed through the same entity.

6.28.2.5 Allocation Length

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum length in bytes of the REPORT KEY response data that shall be transferred from the Drive to the Host. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error.

6.28.2.6 AGID

The AGID field is used to control simultaneous key exchange sequences. The AGID specified in subsequent Key Exchange commands shall match a currently active AGID.

Note 24. Drives that support more than one Key Format for requesting an AGID do not necessarily support simultaneous key exchange sequences.

6.28.2.7 Key Format

The Key Format field indicates the types of information that is to be sent to the Host. The definition for specific Key Format fields is dependent upon the Key Class.

6.28.3 Command Processing

6.28.3.1 Key Class 00h, DVD CSS/CPPM or CPRM

6.28.3.1.1 General

When Key Class is 00h, the Key Format field (Table 515) indicates the types of information that is to be sent to the Host.

Table 515 — Key Format Code definitions for REPORT KEY Command (Key Class 0)

Key Format	Returned Data	Description	AGID Use
000000b	AGID for CSS/CPPM	Returns an AUTHENTICATION GRANT ID for Authentication for CSS/CPPM	Reserved & N/A
000001b	Challenge Key	Returns a Challenge KEY	Valid AGID Required
000010b	KEY1	Returns a KEY1	
000100b	TITLE KEY	Returns a TITLE KEY obfuscated by a Bus Key	
000101b	ASF	Returns the current state of the Authentication Success Flag for CSS/CPPM	Reserved & Ignored
001000b	RPC State	Report Drive region settings	
010001b	AGID for CPRM	Returns an AUTHENTICATION GRANT ID for Authentication for CPRM	Reserved & N/A
111111b	None	Invalidate Specified AGID. Invalidating an invalid AGID shall not be considered an error. An AGID that has not been granted shall be considered invalid	Valid AGID preferred but not required
All other values	Reserved		

6.28.3.1.2 Key Format = 000000b, AGID for CSS/CPPM

This Key Format requests the Drive to return an Authentication Grant ID for CSS/CPPM. If the authentication process is started by the REPORT KEY command with a KEY Format of 000000b, the authentication shall be processed to exchange Key data only for CSS/CPPM protected contents.

Note 25. If the command with this KEY Format is required by an implemented Feature, the command should function, even when the current bit for that Feature is zero.

Table 516 defines the response data for Key Format 000000b.

Table 516 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000000b, Key Class = 0)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0006h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Authentication Grant ID for CSS/CPPM								
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	AGID		Reserved					

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

AGID is the Authentication Grant ID.

6.28.3.1.3 Key Format = 000001b, Challenge Key

Table 517 defines the response data for Key Format 000001b

Table 517 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000001b, Key Class = 0)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY data length (000Eh)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Challenge Key								
0	(MSB)	Challenge Key Value						
:								
9								(LSB)
10	Reserved							
11	Reserved							

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

Challenge Key Value field returns a value to be used to interrogate an external device to determine conformance with the DVD Content Protection scheme. The external device then generates the corresponding KEY2.

6.28.3.1.4 Key Format = 000010b, KEY1

When the Drive is unable to produce a KEY1 value, this command with KEY Format = 000010b shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT PRESENT.

Table 518 defines the response data for Key Format 000010b

Table 518 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000010b, Key Class = 0)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (000Ah)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	KEY1							
0	(MSB)	KEY1 Value						
:								
4								(LSB)
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

KEY1 Value field returns a value used to determine the Drive's conformity with DVD Content Protection scheme by an external device. The KEY1 value is also used as a parameter to generate a Bus Key in the Drive.

6.28.3.1.5 Key Format = 000100b, TITLE KEY

Table 519 defines the response data for Key Format 000100b.

Table 519 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000100b, Key Class = 0)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (000Ah)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Copyright Management/Title Key Information							
0	CPM	CP_SEC	CGMS		CP_MOD			
1	(MSB)	Title Key Value						
2								
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The CPM bit identifies the presence of copyrighted material in this sector. If set to zero the material is not copyrighted, if set to one the material is copyrighted.

When the CPM bit is one, the CP_SEC field indicates that the specified sector has a specific data structure for copyright protection system. If set to zero no such data structure exists in this sector .If set to one, a specific data structure for CSS or CPPM exists in this sector.

When the CPM bit is 1, the CGMS field indicates the restrictions on copying:

- 00b Copying is permitted without restriction
- 01b Reserved
- 10b One generation of copies may be made
- 11b No copying is allowed

When the CP_SEC bit is 1, the CP_MOD field indicates the copyright protection mode of the specified sector. A value of 0h indicates the sector is scrambled by CSS. A value of 1h indicates the sector is encrypted by CPPM. Other values are reserved.

The Reserved/Logical Block Address field in the CDB specifies the logical block address that contains the Title Key to be sent to the Host obfuscated by a Bus Key.

The length of Title Key Value is currently 5 bytes only. CPPM protected sectors do not contain a Title Key.

When the Title Key does not exist on the specified sector of DVD media, this command with KEY Format = 000100b shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE/KEY NOT PRESENT.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key Established state for CSS/CPPM, this command with KEY Format = 000100b shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.28.3.1.6 Key Format = 000101b, Authentication Success Flag

Table 520 defines the response data for Key Format 000101b.

Table 520 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000101b, Key Class = 0)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0006h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Authentication Success Flag							
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							ASF

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

ASF bit of one indicates that the authentication process for CSS/CPPM has completed successfully.

The ASF value is not relevant to CPPM, since CPPM protected sectors do not contain a Title Key.

6.28.3.1.7 Key Format = 001000b, RPC State

Table 521 defines the response data for Key Format 001000b

Table 521 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 001000b, Key Class = 0)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0006h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	RPC State							
0	Type Code		Vendor Resets Available			User Controlled Changes Available		
1	Region Mask							
2	RPC Scheme							
3	Reserved							

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The Drive shall not report an error concerning media to this KEY Format code.

The Type Code field (Table 522) specifies the current state of the Regionalization process.

Table 522 — Type Code Field Definitions

Type Code	Name	Definition
00b	NONE	No Drive region setting
01b	SET	Drive region is set
10b	LAST CHANCE	Drive Region is set. Additional restrictions required to make a
11b	PERM	Drive Region has been set permanently, but may be reset by the

Vendor Resets Available is a count down counter that indicates the number of times that the vendor may reset the region. The manufacturer of the Drive sets this value to 4 and the value is decremented each time the vendor clears the Drive's region. When this value is zero, the vendor may no longer clear the Drive's region.

User Controlled Changes Available is a count down counter that indicates the number of times that the user may set the region. This value is initially 5.

The Region Mask returns a value that specifies the Drive Region in which the Drive is located. Once the Drive Region has been set, the Drive shall be located in only one region. Each bit represents one of eight regions. If a bit is cleared in this field, the disc may be played in the corresponding region. If a bit is set in this field, the disc may not be played in the corresponding region.

RPC Scheme specifies the type of Region Playback Controls being used by the Drive. See Table 523.

Table 523 — RPC Scheme field Definition

RPC Scheme	RPC Name	Definition
00h	Unknown	Drive does not enforce Region Playback Controls (RPC)
01h	RPC Phase II	Drive region shall adhere to this standard and all requirements of the CSS license agreement concerning RPC.
02h – FFh	Reserved	

6.28.3.1.8 Key Format = 010001b, AGID for CPRM

Table 524 defines the response data for Key Format 010001b

This KEY Format requests the Drive to return an Authentication Grant ID for CPRM. If the authentication process is started by the REPORT KEY command with a KEY Format of 010001b, the authentication shall be processed to exchange Key data only for CPRM protected contents.

Note 26. If the command with this KEY Format is required by an implemented Feature, the command should function, even when the current bit for that Feature is zero.

Table 524 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With Key Format = 010001b, Key Class = 0)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0006h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Authentication Grant ID for CPRM							
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	AGID		Reserved					

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

AGID is the Authentication Grant ID.

6.28.3.1.9 Key Format = 111111b, Invalidate AGID

6.28.3.1.10 Invalidate Authentication Grant ID for AACS (Key Format = 111111b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive invalidate the specified Authentication Grant ID for AACS. The AGID is specified in the AGID field of the CDB.

No further conversation is allowed over this AGID until it is assigned again with a new REPORT KEY command requesting an AGID.

No data is returned by the Drive.

6.28.3.2 Key Class 02h, AACS

The REPORT KEY command with Key Class = 02h is used for AACS authentication process. The REPORT KEY command with Key Class = 02h requests the start of the authentication process, requests data necessary for authentication and for generating a Bus Key, generates and returns or just returns the Binding Nonce and ends the authentication process.

6.28.3.2.1 General

When Key Class is 02h, the Key Format field (Table 525) indicates the type of information that is to be sent to the Host.

Table 525 — Key Format Code definitions for REPORT KEY Command (Key Class 2)

Key Format	Returned Data	Description	AGID Use
000000b	AGID for AACS	Returns an AUTHENTICATION GRANT ID for Authentication for AACS	Reserved & N/A
000001b	Drive Certificate Challenge	Returns a Drive Certificate Challenge	Valid AGID Required
000010b	Drive Key	Returns a Drive Key	
100000b	Binding Nonce	Generates and stores a Binding Nonce and returns it	
100001b	Binding Nonce	Returns a Binding Nonce	
111000b	Drive Certificate	Returns Certificate of an AACS licensed Drive	Reserved & N/A
111111b	None	Invalidate Specified AGID for AACS. Invalidating an invalid AGID for AACS shall not be considered an error. An AGID that has not been granted shall be considered invalid.	Valid AGID preferred but not required
All other values	Reserved		

6.28.3.2.2 Authentication Grant ID for AACS (Key Format = 000000b)

This KEY Format (Table 526) requests the Drive to return an Authentication Grant ID for AACS.

Note 27. If the command with this KEY Format is required by an implemented Feature, the command should function, even when the current bit for that Feature is zero.

Table 526 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000000b, Key Class = 2)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0006h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Authentication Grant ID for AACS							
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	AGID		Reserved					

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

AGID is the Authentication Grant ID.

6.28.3.2.3 Drive Certificate Challenge (Key Format = 000001b)

The Drive Certificate Challenge format (Table 527) returns a value by which the Host is able to verify the legitimacy of the Drive.

Table 527 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000001b, Key Class = 2)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0072h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Drive Certificate Challenge								
0	(MSB)	Drive Certificate Challenge Data						
…								
111								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The Drive Certificate Challenge Data field is 112 bytes.

6.28.3.2.4 Drive Key (Key Format = 000010b)

The Drive Key Format (Table 528) returns a value that is used, together with the Host Key Data to generate a Bus Key.

Table 528 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000010b, Key Class = 2)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0052h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Drive Key							
0	(MSB)	Drive Key Data						
…								
79								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The Drive Key Data field returns a value that is used by the Host to generate a Bus Key.

6.28.3.2.5 Binding Nonce generated by the Drive (Key Format = 100000b)

The Binding Nonce format (Table 529) returns a Binding Nonce that is generated by this command with KEY Format = 100000b and stored in the Drive for later recording in a protected manner.

Table 529 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 100000b, Key Class = 2)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0022h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Binding Nonce (Generated in Drive)								
0	(MSB)	Binding Nonce Data						
…								
31								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The Binding Nonce Data field is a 32-byte identifier.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, this command with KEY Format = 100000b shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.28.3.2.6 Binding Nonce (read from the medium) (Key Format = 100001b)

The Binding Nonce format (Table 530) returns a Binding Nonce that is read from the designated LBA Extent by this command with KEY Format = 100001b in a protected manner.

Table 530 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 100001b, Key Class = 2)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0022h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Binding Nonce (Read from Medium)								
0	(MSB)	Binding Nonce Data						
…								
31								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The Binding Nonce Data field is a 32-byte identifier.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, this command with KEY Format = 100001b shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and ense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.28.3.2.7 Drive Certificate (Key Format = 111000b)

The Host is requesting that the Drive Certificate in an AACS licensed Drive be returned.

Table 531 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 111000b, Key Class = 2)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (005Eh)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Drive Certificate							
0	(MSB)	Drive Certificate Data						
…								
91								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

The Drive Certificate Data field contains the Drive Certificate that is stored in the licensed AACS Drive.

This command does not require the AACS Drive Authentication process. A Drive may execute this command without the AACS Protected Medium in the Drive (i.e. AACS Feature current bit = 0).

6.28.3.2.8 Invalidate Authentication Grant ID for AACS (Key Format = 111111b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive invalidate the specified Authentication Grant ID for AACS. The AGID is specified in the AGID field of the CDB.

No further conversation is allowed over this AGID until it is assigned again with a new REPORT KEY command requiresting an AGID.

No data is returned by the Drive.

6.28.3.3 Key Class 21h, SecurDisc

6.28.3.3.1 General

The REPORT KEY command with Key Class = 21h is used for SecurDisc authentication process. The REPORT KEY command with Key Class = 21h requests the start of the authentication process, requests data necessary for authentication and for generating a Bus Key, generates and returns or just returns the DUID and ends the authentication process.

Table 532— Key Format Code definitions for REPORT KEY Command (Key Class 21h)

<table>
<tr><th>Key Format</th><th>Returned Data</th><th>Description</th><th>AGID Use</th></tr>
<tr><td>000000b</td><td>AGID for SecurDisc</td><td>Returns AGID and protocol version</td><td>Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>000001b</td><td>Drive Key Contribution</td><td>Returns R1, R2, x and AARB Node Key</td><td rowspan="5">Valid AGID Required</td></tr>
<tr><td>000010b</td><td>DUID</td><td>Returns encrypted Disc Unique ID</td></tr>
<tr><td>100000b</td><td>Binding Nonce</td><td>Generates and stores a Binding Nonce and returns it</td></tr>
<tr><td>100001b</td><td>Binding Nonce</td><td>Returns a Binding Nonce</td></tr>
<tr><td>111111b</td><td>None</td><td>Invalidate Specified AGID for SecurDisc. Invalidating an invalid AGID for SecurDisc shall not be considered an error.
An AGID for SecurDisc that has not been granted shall be considered invalid.</td></tr>
<tr><td>All other values</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td></tr>
</table>

The REPORT KEY command with KEY Format field of 000000b begins the authentication process. The Drive, when ready to begin the authentication process, shall grant the request by returning an Authentication Grant ID for SecurDisc (AGID for SecurDisc). If there is no available Authentication Grant ID for SecurDisc, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status, 5/55/00 SYSTEM RESOURCE FAILURE.

The AGID field is used to control simultaneous authentication process. The AGID for SecurDisc specified in subsequent commands for the given authentication process shall match a currently active AGID for SecurDisc. An AGID for SecurDisc becomes active by requesting one with KEY Format 000000b. The AGID for SecurDisc remains active until it is invalidated. The AGID field is reserved and shall be set to zero when the KEY Format field contains 000000b.

The Allocation Length field specifies the maximum length in bytes of the REPORT KEY response data that shall be transferred from the Drive to the host. An Allocation Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error.

6.28.3.3.2 AGID for SecurDisc (Key Format = 000000b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive to return an AGID for SecurDisc.

Table 533 — REPORT KEY Data Format (With KEY Format = 000000b, Key Class = 21h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (000Ah)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Authentication Grant ID for SecurDisc							
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	AGID		Reserved					
4	(MSB)	DEVID						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

Drive Protocol Version Number specifies the protocol version number for the authentication sequence supported by the drive. If the host supports a more recent version of the protocol but still supports the protocol version supported by the drive, the host may choose to use the old protocol version to complete the authentication sequence. For this version of the specification, the protocol version number is 00h.

AGID contains the AGID reserved for this authentication process by the drive. This AGID must be passed to all following REPORT KEY and SEND KEY commands.

DEVID specifies the Device ID assigned to the Drive.

6.28.3.3.3 Drive Key Contribution (Key Format = 000001b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive to return a Drive Key Contribution.

Table 534 — REPORT KEY Data format (With KEY Format = 000001b, Key Class = 21h)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0036h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Drive Key Contribution							
0	(MSB)	Encrypted Drive Random Number (R1)						
…								
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)	Encrypted Host Random Number (R2)						
…								
31								(LSB)
32	Bit position index value							
33	Reserved							
34	(MSB)	AARB Node Key						
…								
49								(LSB)
50	Reserved							
51	Reserved							

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

Encrypted Drive Random Number (R1) contains the 128 bit random number generated by the drive, encrypted using the secret key PK2 that has been assigned to the application drive.

Encrypted Host Random Number (R2) contains the 128 bit random number previously sent to the drive by the host, encrypted using the secret key PK2 that has been assigned to the application drive.

Note 28. R1 and R2 are concatenated before encryption.

Bit Position Index Value (x) specifies the bit position corresponding to the node key in the application authentication revocation block returned by the drive. It is also the index inside the key contribution array used by the application to calculate PK2.

AARB Node Key specifies the node key returned by the drive which combined with the key contribution array stored inside the application allows the application to calculate PK2.

6.28.3.3.4 DUID (Key Format = 000010b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive to return a DUID.

Table 535 — REPORT KEY Data format (With KEY Format = 000010b, Key Class = 21h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	REPORT KEY Data Length (0012h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	DUID							
0	(MSB)	Encrypted Disc Unique ID (DUID)						
…								
15								(LSB)

The REPORT KEY Data Length field indicates the length in bytes of the following REPORT KEY Data that is available to be transferred to the host. The REPORT KEY Data Length value does not include the REPORT KEY Data Length field itself.

Encrypted Disc Unique ID (DUID) contains the 128-bit Disc Unique ID, encrypted with the bus key.

6.28.4 Timeouts

The REPORT KEY command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.28.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the REPORT KEY command is defined in Table 536.

Table 536 — Recommended Errors for the REPORT KEY Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.29 REPORT LUNS Command

The REPORT LUNS command requests that the Drive's logical unit inventory be sent to the Host.
MM Drives that claim compliance with [SPC-3] (or higher) in their INQUIRY data shall support the REPORT LUNS command.

6.30 REQUEST SENSE Command

6.30.1 Introduction

The REQUEST SENSE command requests that the Drive transfer sense data to the Initatiator.

Table 537 shows the Features associated with the REQUEST SENSE command.

Table 537 — Features Associated with the REQUEST SENSE Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core	Mandatory
0023h	Formattable	Mandatory

The REQUEST SENSE command is described in [SPC-3].

Since MM Drives support only a 32-bit LBA format, MM Drives ignore the setting of the Desc bit in the REQUEST SENSE command CDB and return only fixed format sense data.

6.30.2 Timeouts

Timeouts are not defined for the REQUEST SENSE command.

6.30.3 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the REQUEST SENSE command is defined in Table 538.

Table 538 — Recommended Errors for the REQUEST SENSE Command

Error	Reference
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.31 RESERVE TRACK Command

6.31.1 Introduction

The RESERVE TRACK command allows reservation of disc space for a Logical Track.

Table 539 shows the Features associated with the RESERVE TRACK command.

Table 539 — Features Associated with the RESERVE TRACK Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory (when Write bit is set to one)
002Dh	CD Track At Once	Mandatory
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory (when Write bit is set to one)

6.31.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.31.2.1 The CDB

The RESERVE TRACK CDB is shown in Table 540.

Table 540 — RESERVE TRACK CDB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (53h)							
1	Reserved							ARSV
2	Logical Track Reservation Parameter							
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9	Control							

6.31.2.2 ARSV

The ARSV bit defines the format of the Logical Track Reservation Parameter.

6.31.2.3 Logical Track Reservation Parameter

When ARSV is set to zero, the Logical Track Reservation Parameter has the Reservation Size format (Table 541).

Table 541 — Reservation Size form of Logical Track Reservation Parameter

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	(MSB) Reservation Size							
6								
7								
8								(LSB)

A Logical Track is to be reserved with starting address equal to the starting address of the invisible/incomplete track. The Reservation Size field contains the number of user blocks desired for the track reservation. The actual number of blocks allocated is calculated according to the currently mounted media and may be influenced by the Write Parameters mode page (See 7.4). Rounding is permitted. In all cases, if Reservation Size is larger than available space, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. Additionally, if the disc is BD-R SRM and Reservation Size is equal to available space, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Based upon the currently mounted media, it is possible for the Host to request a Reservation Size that is too small. When the currently mounted media is not CD and Reservation Size is zero, the Drive shall perform no reservation and terminate the command with GOOD status. When the currently mounted media is CD and Reservation Size is less than 298, the Drive shall perform no reservation and terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

When ARSV is set to one, the Logical Track Reservation Parameter has the LBA format (Table 542).

Table 542 — LBA form of Logical Track Reservation Parameter

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
2	(MSB)							
3	Reservation LBA							
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							

If Logical Block Address is within the logical address space of the currently mounted disc, then it belongs to some Logical Track. The existing Logical Track keeps its Start Address, but its last LBA is changed to Reservation LBA – 1. A new Logical Track is created with Start LBA set to the Reservation LBA unless:

1. If Reservation LBA is greater than the largest possible user data area LBA for this disc, the command shall be the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE.
2. Logical Tracks shall begin with the first block of a writable unit. If the LBA is not the address of the first block of a writable unit, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
3. The second track of a split shall be blank. If the track is closed or Reservation LBA is less than the NWA of the Logical Track that contains the LBA, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.
4. It is not permitted to use track splitting to create a Logical Track with a length less than 32. If Reservation LBA = Logical Track Start Address of any Logical Track, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If Reservation by LBA is not supported for the currently mounted disc, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.31.3 Command Processing

6.31.3.1 General

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

There are 3 kinds of reservation:

1. RMZ Reservation
2. Logical Track Reservation by Reservation Size
3. Logical Track Reservation by Reservation LBA

6.31.3.2 RMZ Reservation

If the RMZ bit is set to 1b, the Reservation Size field is ignored and the Drive shall reserve a RMZ with 128 ECC blocks in size.

6.31.3.3 Track Reservation by Reservation Size

A new Logical Track shall be created from the invisible/incomplete track.

Regardless of media type, allowing an attempt to reserve a track when the invisible track is not blank is not recommended. The preferred behavior is: the command should be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ should be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR.

6.31.3.3.1 Track Reservation by Reservation Size on CD-R/RW

If Reservation Size is less than 300 (4 seconds), the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The PMA start time shall reflect the appropriate pre-gap, as determined by the previous track’s mode and the settings of the Write Parameters Page. Table 543 specifies the PMA stop time, and Track sizing.

Table 543 — Track Reservation on CD-R/RW Media

Write Parameters Mode Page Write Type Value	Description
Session-at-once	CHECK CONDITION status is returned and SK/ASC/ASCQ is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR
Track-at-once	The number of user blocks specified shall be reserved. The PMA stop time shall be $PMAStart + \mathrm{Re}servationSize + 2$.
Variable Packet	Reserve behaves as in the Track-At-Once case. The Host should be aware that packet linkage overheads is taken from the user space.
Fixed Packet	Set $p = \frac{\mathrm{Re}servationSize}{PacketSize}$ packets, where packet size is taken from the Write Parameters Page. If p is an integer, then the reservation is performed with PMA stop time set to $PMAStart + (PacketSize + 7) \bullet p - 5$. If p is not an integer, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ is set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.31.3.3.2 Track (Rzone) Reservation by Reservation Size on DVD-R/-RW and DVD-R DL

Reservation Size is given as a count of 2 KB sectors. If this number is not an integral multiple of 16, then the Drive shall round up to the next integral multiple of 16. A Logical Track always begins with the first sector of an ECC block.

Table 544 — Track Reservation on DVD-R/-RW Media

Write Parameters Mode Page Write Type Value	Reserved Track Size
Disc-at-once	Reserves the number of user blocks specified. The Reserved Track shall be *ReservedTrackSize = ReservationSize*.
Incremental and layer jump	Reserves the number of user blocks specified. The Reserved Track Size shall be $ReservedTrackSize = 16 \bullet CI\left[\frac{ReservationSize + (NWA \,\&\, 0Fh)}{16}\right] - (NWA \,\&\, 0Fh) + SizeOfLLA$ where *ReservationSize* is a value that is specified in the CDB. *NWA* is a Next Writable Address of invisible Track. & means mathematical AND. For Incremental recording, the $SizeOfLLA$=16. For Layer Jump recording, the $SizeOfLLA$=16 when no L1 part exists and the $SizeOfLLA$=32 when the L1 part exists.

6.31.3.3.3 Track Reservation on by Reservation Size on DVD+R and DVD+R DL

Reservation Size is given as a count of 2 KB sectors. If this number is not an integral multiple of 16, then the Drive shall round to the next integral multiple of 16. This is the value used by the Drive. A Logical Track always begins with the first sector of an ECC block. A run-in ECC block shall be written between any two tracks within a session just prior to writing the first ECC block of the following track. The run-in ECC block does not belong to either the previous or the new track. If this track is the first track of a session, then no run-in block shall be allocated.

6.31.3.3.4 Track Reservation on by Reservation Size on BD-R

Reservation Size is given as a count of 2 KB sectors. If this number is not an integral multiple of 32, then the Drive shall round to the next integral multiple of 32. This is the value used by the Drive. A Logical Track always begins with the first sector of a Cluster.

6.31.3.4 Track Reservation by Reservation LBA

6.31.3.4.1 General

Track Reservation by Reservation LBA splits a Logical Track into two Logical Tracks. Reservation LBA specifies the start address of the second (new) Logical Track. Based on media type, some restrictions may apply.

6.31.3.4.2 Track Reservation by Reservation LBA on CD-R/RW

Reservation LBA shall belong to the invisible track and shall be greater than the NWA of that track. Otherwise, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Reservation LBA shall allow for the appropriate pre-gap on the new invisible track. Otherwise, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If *Reservation LBA – Track Start Address < 298*, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If *LastPossibleLead-OutStartAddress – NewTrackStartAddress < 298*, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

The PMA start time shall reflect the appropriate pre-gap, as determined by the previous track's mode and the settings of the Write Parameters Page.

6.31.3.4.3 Track Reservation by Reservation LBA on DVD-R/-RW, and DVD-R DL
Reservation LBA shall belong to the invisible track and shall be greater than the NWA of that track. Otherwise, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.31.3.4.4 Track Reservation by Reservation LBA on DVD+R and DVD+R DL
Reservation LBA shall belong to the invisible track and shall be greater than the NWA of that track. Otherwise, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Reservation LBA shall allow for run-in block prior to the new invisible track. Otherwise, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.31.3.4.5 Track Reservation by Reservation LBA on BD-R
When a Logical Track is split by specifying the start LBA of the new track, the new Logical Track shall be blank. If Reservation LBA is in Logical Track N, then the new track with start address equal to Reservation LBA shall be numbered N+1. If M is a Logical Track and M > N prior to the track split, then it shall be numbered M+1 after the track split.

6.31.4 Timeouts
The RESERVE TRACK command belongs to timeout group 2. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

6.31.5 Error Reporting
Recommended error reporting for the RESERVE TRACK command is defined in Table 545.

Table 545 — Recommended Errors for the RESERVE TRACK Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.32 SECURITY PROTOCOL IN command

6.32.1 Introduction

The SECURITY PROTOCOL IN command is used to retrieve security protocol information or the results of one or more SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT commands.

Table 546 — Features Associated with the SECURITY PROTOCOL IN Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0142h	OSSC Feature	Mandatory

The SECURITY PROTOCOL IN command is described in [SPC-4].

6.32.2 Security Protocol

The OSSC Feature operates according to the TCG Optical Security Subsystem Class. The Optical SSC describes a Common Command Structure (CCS) that has been assigned Security Protocol 06h.

Security Protocol 06h is used to receive results from a SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command that sent a security command using Security Protocol 06h. See [OSSC].

6.32.3 Timeouts

The SECURITY PROTOCOL IN command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/ INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.32.4 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the TEST UNIT READY command is defined in Table 641.

Table 547 — Recommended Errors for the TEST UNIT READY Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.33 SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command

6.33.1 Introduction

The SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command is used to send data to the Drive. The data sent specifies one or more operations to be performed by the Drive. The Host may use the SECURITY PROTOCOL IN command to retrieve data derived from these operations.

Table 548 — Features Associated with the SECURITY PROTOCOL IN Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0xxxh	OSSC Feature	Mandatory

The SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command is described in [SPC-4].

6.33.2 Security Protocol

The OSSC Feature operates according to the TCG Optical Security Subsystem Class. The Optical SSC describes a Common Command Structure (CCS) that has been assigned Security Protocol 06h.

Security Protocol 06h is used to send security commands to MM devices that support the OSSC Feature. See [OSSC].

6.33.3 Timeouts

The SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/ INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.33.4 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT command is defined in Table 641.

Table 549 — Recommended Errors for the SECURITY PROTOCOL OUT Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.34 SEEK (10) Command

6.34.1 Introduction

The SEEK (10) command requests that the Drive seek to the specified logical block address. This command allows the Host to provide advanced notification that particular data may be requested in a subsequent command.

6.34.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.34.2.1 The CDB

The SEEK (10) CDB is shown in Table 550.

Table 550 — SEEK (10) CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (2Bh)							
1	Reserved							
2	(MSB)	Logical Block Addresss						
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							
9	Control Byte							

6.34.2.2 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field specifies the destination of the SEEK command. The Logical Block Address should be less than or equal to the capacity address returned by the READ CAPACITY command.

6.34.3 Command Processing

The SEEK command may return completion status once the seek operation has been started. The operation should be completed prior to beginning execution of the next command.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW with basic formatting operating in background, the SEEK command operation shall be as follows:

1. If any of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in a blank area of the media where format writing has not yet occurred, the seek need not be performed.
2. If all of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in an area of the media where format writing has occurred, the command shall operate normally.

6.34.4 Timeouts

The SEEK (10) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.34.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SEEK (10) command is defined in Table 551.

Table 551 — Recommended Errors for the SEEK (10) Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.35 SEND CUE SHEET Command

6.35.1 Introduction

A Session-at-once recording is written beginning with the Lead-in and continuing through the Lead-out. Only user data is sent with the write commands, so a guide structure is required by the Drive in order to control the recording process. This guide structure is called the cue sheet. The cue sheet is constructed in the Host and sent to the Drive.

Table 552 shows the Features associated with the SEND CUE SHEET command.

Table 552 — Features Associated with the SEND CUE SHEET Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
002Eh	CD Mastering (SAO)	Mandatory

6.35.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.35.2.1 The CDB

The SEND CUE SHEET CDB is shown in Table 553.

Table 553 — SEND CUE SHEET CDB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (5Dh)							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)							
7	Cue Sheet Size							
8								(LSB)
9	Control Byte							

6.35.2.2 Cue Sheet Size

The Cue Sheet Size parameter is the number of bytes in the cue sheet to be sent to the Drive. Prior to beginning the write process, the entire Cue Sheet shall be received by the Drive. If the Drive is unable to accept and buffer the entire cue sheet, then CHECK CONDITION is returned and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.35.3 Command Processing

6.35.3.1 General

If the Write Parameters Page does not have Write Type set to Session-at-once, then CHECK CONDITION status is returned and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR.

If the Write Mode in the Write Parameters mode page, is changed from session at once, the Cue sheet may not be available.

The Cue Sheet contains information required to specify the layout of a disc to be written, and shall be sent to the Drive via the SEND CUE SHEET command before writing data to the disc.

The Cue Sheet format is shown in Table 554.

Table 554 — Cue Sheet format

Byte Number	Cue Sheet Data
0	Mixture of Information of absolute disc location, catalog Code, and ISRC (total m lines)
...	
(m-1)* 8	

If the Catalog Code is to be recorded, it shall be described at the beginning of the Cue sheet.

If the ISRC is to be recorded, it shall be described immediately preceding each Track's information in the Cue Sheet.

For the Cue sheet, the Lead-out start time shall be the last entry.

6.35.3.2 Information of the Absolute Disc Location

The Drive writes a disc according to this information. This information defines the following parameters:

1. Generation of Sub-channel P and Q channel.
2. Format and block size of the data transferred by the WRITE command

Table 555 — Sample CUE SHEET

Byte Number	CTL/ ADR	TNO	INDEX	DATA FORM	SCMS	ABSOLUTE TIME		
						MIN	SEC	FRAME
00 (Lead-in)	01h[5]	00h	00h[1]	01h[5]	00h	00h[1]	00h[1]	00h[1]
08 (TNO:01)	01h	01h	00h	01h	00h	00h	00h	00h
10 (TNO:01)[2]	01h	01h	01h	00h	00h	00h	02h	00h
18 (TNO:02)	01h	02h	00h	C0h	00h	07h	29h	71h
20 (TNO:02)	01h	02h	01h	C0h	00h	07h	31h	71h
28 (TNO:03)	01h	03h	01h	C0h	00h	14h	18h	03h
30 (TNO:04)[4]	41h	04h	00h	10h	00h	19h	06h	62h
38 (TNO:04)	41h	04h	01h	10h	00h	19h	09h	62h
40 (TNO:05)[4]	41h	05h	00h	11h	00h	27h	37h	10h
48 (TNO:05)	41h	05h	01h	10h	00h	27h	40h	10h
50 (TNO:06)	01h	06h	00h	01h	80h[6]	38h	53h	23h
58 (TNO:06)	01h	06h	01h	00h	80h[6]	38h	55h	23h
60 (Lead-out)	01h[5]	Aah	01h[3]	01h[5]	00h	56h	37h	46h

1. Always zero for Lead-in except when DATA FORM is set to 41h.
2. The first information track on a disc is preceded by a pause encoding of 2-3 seconds. (If the first track is a Data track, this track does not contain pause encoding, but always contains a "pause" of 2 seconds of pre-gap).
3. Always 01h for Lead-out
4. Pre-gap
5. For the Lead-out area the DATA FORM shall be one. For Lead-in, DATA FORM shall be either 01h or 41h. The control mode of the first track is specified. All data for both Lead-in and Lead-out shall be generated by the Drive except if DATA FORM 41h is selected for the Lead-in.
6. Copy

This information is composed of data units of 8 bytes (1 line). The information consists of three parts:

1) The Lead-in area, and contains only one data unit.
2) The Program area, that contains data units.
3) The Lead-out area, and contains one or more data units.

The data units in Program Area and Lead-out area are in Absolute Time order from the start time of index = 0 of the first track of the session.

Each data unit of Program area and Lead-out area indicates that the value of each field (CONTROL, TNO, X, DATA FORM or ZERO) changes at the time shown in ABSOLUTE TIME field.

Table 556 — Cue Sheet Data

CTL/ ADR	TNO	INDEX	DATA FORM	SCMS	ABSOLUTE TIME		
					Min	Sec	Frame
01h	02h	01h	C0h	00h	07h	31h	71h
01h	03h	01h	C0h	00h	14h	18h	03h

The above data unit indicates that the value of TNO changes from 02 to 03 when ABSOLUTE TIME is 14:18:03 MSF.

6.35.3.3 Control/Address Field

The CTL/ADR byte contains the Control field in the upper 4 bits and the ADR in the lower 4 bits. Refer to Table 557.

Table 557 — CTL/ADR byte

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
CTL Field				ADR Field			

6.35.3.4 CTL Field (upper 4 bits)

The CTL (Control) field contains 4 bits that define the kind of information in a track. The definition is shown in Table 558.

Table 558 — Control Field

Bit 7	Bit 6	Bit 5	Bit 4	Definition
0	0	x	0	2 audio channels without pre-emphasis
1	0	x	0	4 audio channels without pre-emphasis
0	0	x	1	2 audio channels with pre-emphasis of 50/15 μs.
1	0	x	1	4 audio channels with pre-emphasis of 50/15 μs.
0	1	x	0	Data track
x	x	0	x	digital copy prohibited
x	x	1	x	digital copy permitted

The bits of the Control field (except for the copy bit) shall only be changed during an actual pause (Index = 00) of at least 2 seconds and during Lead-in area.

6.35.3.5 ADR Field (lower 4 bits)

Table 559 defines the codes found in the ADR Field.

Table 559 — ADR Field

Bit 3	Bit 2	Bit 1	Bit 0	Definition
0	0	0	1	start time at TNO/IDX
0	0	1	0	CATALOG CODE
0	0	1	1	ISRC CODE
All other codes are reserved for future use.				

Control shall be the same for each entry associated with a particular track except for first part of pre-gap.

6.35.3.6 TNO

The TNO field indicates track number. Although the TNO field appears in BCD on the media, this field shall contain the binary equivalent. Each track has a minimum length of 4 seconds, not including the pause length preceding the track.

6.35.3.7 INDEX Field

INDEX field is the current value of the index number. Although the INDEX field appears in BCD on the media, the field in this structure shall contain the binary equivalent. The Drive supports only 00h to 63h.

6.35.3.8 Data Form

Table 560 defines the data form byte.

Table 560 — Data Form Byte

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Data Form of Sub-channel		Data Form of Main Data					

6.35.3.9 SCMS (Serial Copy Management System)

Bit 7 of data form of 1 indicates that Copy bit of CONTROL field alternates for Serial Copy Management System (see Table 561). The other 7 bits (Reserved) are zero. This bit is effective if Copy bit of the Control Code is zero.

Table 561 — SCMS Byte

7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
Alternate Copy bit	Reserved						

6.35.3.10 Data Form of Main Data

The Data Form of Main Data field specifies the format of the main data to be sent by a WRITE command to write on the disc. Currently available data formats are 1.) CD-DA, 2.) CD-ROM mode 1, 3.) CD-ROM XA, and CD-I. For Lead-in and Lead-out area data are generated automatically except if Data Form is set to 41h.

6.35.3.11 CD-DA Data Form

Table 562 defines a CD-DA Data Form for one frame.

Table 562 — CD (CD-DA)

Data Form	Data of One Frame	Data Size
00h	2 352	2 352
01h	2 352	0

The CD-DA data format, Table 563, is as follows;

Table 563 — CD-DA Data format (1 Sample)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
n*4+0 (L Ch)	L7	L6	L5	L4	L3	L2	L1	L0
n*4+1 (L Ch)	L15	L14	L13	L12	L11	L10	L9	L8
n*4+2 (R Ch)	R7	R6	R5	R4	R3	R2	R1	R0
n*4+3 (R Ch)	R15	R14	R13	R12	R11	R10	R9	R8

n = 0,1, - 587

1 Second = 75 Frames
1 Frame = 588 Samples
1 Sample = 4 bytes (16 bits L, RCh)

6.35.3.12 CD-ROM mode 1 Form

Table 564 defines the form for CD-ROM mode 1.

Table 564 — CD-ROM mode 1

Data Form	Sync/Header	Data of One Frame	EDC/ECC Area	Data Size
10h	16 [2]	2 048 [1]	288 [2]	2 048
11h	16 [3]	2 048 [1]	288 [3]	2 352
12h	16 [2]	2 048 [3]	288 [2]	2 048
13h	16 [3]	2 048 [3]	288 [3]	2 352
14h	16 [2]	2 048 [2]	288 [2]	0

6.35.3.13 CD-ROM XA, CD-I Form

Table 565 defines the form for CD-ROM XA, CD-I.

Table 565 — CD-ROM XA, CD-I

Data Form		Sync/ Header	Sub Header	Data of One Frame	EDC/ECC Area	Data Size
20h	Form 1	16 [2]	8 [1]	2 048 [1]	280 [3]	2 336
	Form 2	16 [2]	8 [1]	2 324 [1]	4 [3]	2 336
21h	Form 1	16 [3]	8 [1]	2 048 [1]	280 [3]	2 352
	Form 2	16 [3]	8 [1]	2 324 [1]	4 [3]	2 352
22h	Form 1	16 [2]	8 [1]	2 048 [3]	280 [3]	2 336
	Form 2	16 [2]	8 [1]	2 324 [3]	4 [3]	2 336
23h	Form 1	16 [3]	8 [1]	2 048 [3]	280 [3]	2 352
	Form 2	16 [3]	8 [1]	2 324 [3]	4 [3]	2 352
24h	Form 1	NA	NA	NA	NA	NA
	Form 2	16 [2]	8 [2]	2 324 [2]	4 [2]	0

Reserved Area: The Reserved Area contains 4 bytes that are reserved for quality control during the disc production process. In case of Generate Zero, the Drive generates zero data of 4 bytes for this area.

6.35.3.14 CD-ROM mode 2

Table 566 defines the form for CD-ROM mode 2.

Table 566 — CD-ROM Mode 2

Data Form	Sync/Header	Data of One Frame	Data Size
30h	16 [2]	2 336 [1]	2 336
31h	16 [3]	2 336 [1]	2 352
32h	16 [2]	2 336 [3]	2 336
33h	16 [3]	2 336 [3]	2 352
34h	16 [2]	2 336 [2]	0

For all forms:

1. Read Buffer: The data is sent by the Host.
2. Generate Data: The Drive generates the data in this area. The Host should not send the data for this area. All sectors in the program area shall have an associated write, even if all data for the sector is to be generated by the Drive. Zero bytes shall be transferred for such sectors.
3. Ignore Buffer: The Drive receives the data for this area from the Host with Write command. However, the Drive ignores the data and generates data for this area.

6.35.3.15 Data Form of Sub-channel

The DATA FORM OF SUB-CHANNEL (Table 567) field specifies the format of the Sub-channel data stored in the inner buffer by WRITE command to write on the disc.

Table 567 — Data Form of Sub-channel

Data Form		Data of One Frame				Data Size
Bit 7	Bit 6					
0	0	96 *1				0
0	1	96 *2				96
1	0	Reserved				
1	1	24 Pack [3]	24 Pack [3]	24 Pack [3]	24 Pack [3]	96
Generate zero data RAW Data PACK DATA, Host sends packed data. The Drive writes R-W. The Drive calculates and overwrites ECC, and performs Interleaving for each PACK.						

When this Data Form of Sub-channel is selected, along with 01h Data Form of Main Data, this indicates that there is an attempt to write Raw P-W Sub-channel data in the Lead-in. Absolute Time field should be set with the start address of the Lead-in, that may be read via a READ TRACK INFORMATION command for track 0. In this case, the Data Block Type of the Write Parameters Page should be set to 2, 3, or 4.

The Sub-channel data is placed at the end of each Frame of main data. Figure 123 shows the relationship of Main Data and Sub-channel data.

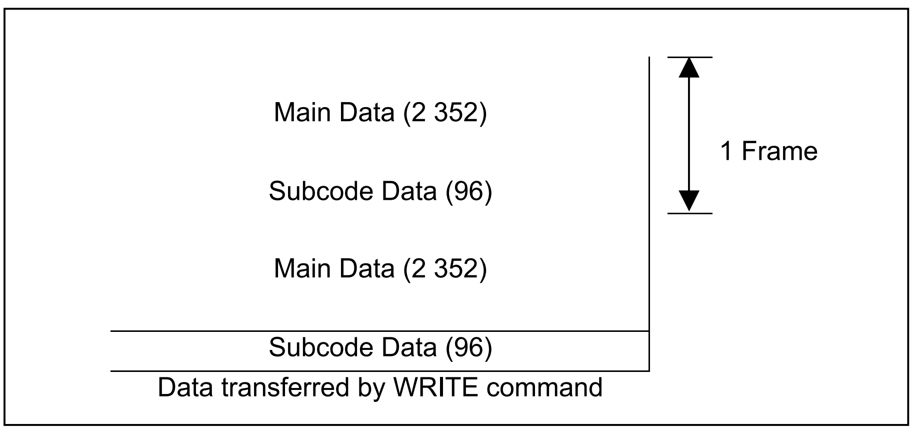


Figure 123 — Location of Sub-channel Data

The P and Q Sub-channel information contained within the Sub-code Data shall be ignored. The P and Q Sub-channel information is generated by the Drive and based on the content of the cue sheet.

6.35.3.16 Absolute Time

The time shown at Min, Sec, and Frame gives the changing point of the CONTROL, TNO, X, DATA FORM or SCMS field. These values are given in absolute time scale.

6.35.3.17 Session Format

The Session Format is used for the identification of the type of disc. Refer to Table 494.

6.35.3.18 Pre-gap

If a Data track is preceded by a different mode of track (such as an audio track) or if the mode number of CD-ROM changes, this Data track starts with an extended pre-gap. A pre-gap is placed at the head of a Data track, also is belonging to the Data track. A pre-gap does not contain actual user data. The pre-gap is encoded as “pause.”

An extended pre-gap is divided into two parts. The first part of the extended pre-gap has a minimum 1 second of data, and it is encoded according to the data structure of previous track. The second part has a minimum 2 seconds data, and this data track is encoded according to the same data structure as the other parts.

6.35.3.19 Post-gap

If a Data track is followed by another kind of track (such as an audio track), this Data track ends with a post-gap. A post-gap is placed at the end of a Data track, and is part of the Data Track. A post-gap does not contain actual user data. The minimum length of post-gap is 2 seconds. The Drive does not perform any action for a Post-gap.

6.35.3.20 Media Catalog Number

Table 568, Catalog Number, indicates the catalog number of a disc. The number uses UPC/EAN-code (BAR coding). If no catalog number is used, it shall be omitted. The format is as follows;

Table 568 — Media Catalog Number (N1..N13)

CTL/ADR	**Catalog Number**						
Byte 0	Byte 1	Byte 2	Byte 3	Byte 4	Byte 5	Byte 6	Byte 7
02h	N1	N2	N3	N4	N5	N6	N7
02h	N8	N9	N10	N11	N12	N13	00h
The format of the data recorded in the Sub-channel area is not identical to that specified in the Write Parameter mode page.							

N1-N13 Catalog Number

CTL: 4 bits are zero.

ADR: 0010b

Catalog Number: ASCII 13 BYTES

6.35.3.21 ISRC

Table 569, ISRC (International Standard Recording Code), is a code that is given to CD-DA tracks. If no ISRC is used, it shall be omitted. If a track has no ISRC, it is not written in the Cue Sheet.

Table 569 — ISRC (I1..I12)

CTL/ADR	**ISRC(International Standard Recording Code)**						
byte 0	byte 1	byte 2	byte 3	byte 4	byte 5	byte 6	byte 7
x3h	TNO	I1	I2	I3	I4	I5	I6
x3h	TNO	I7	I8	I9	I10	I11	I12

Note 29. The format of the data recorded in the Sub-channel area is not identical to that specified in the Write Parameter mode page.

CTL: 4 bits of Control code are the same as that of disc location of the specified track

ADR: 0011b

TNO: Track number in HEX.

12 letters ISRC (On the Cue Sheet, I1-I12 shall be described by valid ASCII characters. See Table 569 for valid codes.

I1-I2: Country Code
I3-I5: Owner Code
I6-I7: Year of recording
I8-I12: Serial Number

6.35.4 Timeouts

The SEND CUE SHEET command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.35.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SEND CUE SHEET command is defined in Table 570.

Table 570 — Recommended Errors for the SEND CUE SHEET Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2

6.36 SEND DISC STRUCTURE Command

6.36.1 Introduction

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE command provides a means for the Host to transfer DISC STRUCTURE data to the Drive. Table 571 shows the Features associated with the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command.

Table 571 — Features Associated with the SEND DISC STRUCTURE Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0004h	Write Protect	Format C0h, when SPWP is set to one.
002Ah	DVD+RW	Format 05h and 30h (when Write bit in Feature Descriptor is set to one)
002Bh	DVD+R	Format 05h (when Write bit in Feature Descriptor is set to one)
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R Dual Layer	Format 20h (when Write bit in Feature Descriptor is set to one)
010Ah	DCB	Mandatory when writable DCBs supported

6.36.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.36.2.1 The CDB

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE CDB is shown in Table 572.

Table 572 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (BFh)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="4">Reserved</td><td colspan="4">Media Type</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="8">Format Code</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="2">Parameter List Length</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td colspan="2">AGID</td><td colspan="6">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.36.2.2 Media Type

The Media Type field identifies the Media Type to which this command is directed. Media Types as listed in Table 573.

Table 573 — Media Types

Media Type	Associated Discs
0h	DVD
1h	BD
All others	Reserved

6.36.2.3 Format Code

The Format Code specifies the type of information to be sent to the Drive. If the currently mounted media is not supported by the Drive, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT. If the

Drive/media combination does not support the specified format code, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Format Code definitions are specific to media type. The Format field values defined for DVD are shown in Table 574.

Table 574 — Format Code Definitions for Media Type = 0

Format Code	Data	Description
00h – 03h	Reserved	
04h	User Specific Data	Send User Specific Data to the RMD cache
05h	Copyright Management	Send data to CPR_MAI in data area cache. (CPM, CGMS, ADP_TY)
06h – 0Eh	Reserved	
0Fh	Timestamp	Send Timestamp data to the Drive
10h – 16h	Reserved	
17h	Scramble Content Allocation information	Send DVD-Download Scramble Content Allocation information
18h – 1Fh	Reserved	
20h	Layer Boundary Information	Send capacity of L0
21h	Shifted Middle Area Start Address	Send start logical block address of Shifted Middle Area on L0
22h	Jump Interval size	Send Jump Interval size of Regular Interval Layer Jump recording
23h	Manual Layer Jump Address	Send logical block address for Layer Jump on L0
24h	Remapping Address	Send logical block address for remapping Anchor Point
25h – 2Fh	Reserved	
30h	DCB	Send a DCB
31h – 83h	Reserved	
84h	Write Data Key	Send the Write Data Key specified by AACS
85h	LBA Extents	Send the LBA Extents to which data is recorded with the flag for Bus Encryption specified by AACS
86h – BFh	Reserved	
C0h	Write Protection	Send PWP status
C1h – FFh	Reserved	

The Format field values defined for BD are shown in Table 575.

Table 575 — Format Code Definitions for Media Type = 1 (BD)

Format Code	Data	Description
00h – 0Eh	Reserved	
0Fh	Timestamp	Send Timestamp data to the Drive
30h	PAC	Send PAC data
31h – FFh	Reserved	

6.36.2.4 AGID

The AGID field is described in the REPORT KEY command. This field is used only when the Format field contains 17h or 84h. For all other values it is reserved.

6.36.2.5 Parameter List Length

The Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the DISC STRUCTURE data to be transferred from the Host to the Drive after the CDB is transferred. A Structure Data Length field of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

6.36.3 Command Processing

6.36.3.1 General

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

6.36.3.2 SEND DISC STRUCTURE for DVD (Media Type = 0h)

6.36.3.2.1 Format Code 04h: User Specific Data

Table 576 defines the response data format for User Specific Data, Format code 04h

Table 576 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format Code = 04h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	DISC STRUCTURE Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
DVD-RAM User Specific Data								
0	(MSB)							
…	User Specific Data							
2047								(LSB)

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field specifies the length in bytes of the User Specific Data to follow. A DVD Structure Data Length field of zero indicates that no User Specific Data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

The User Specific Data field contains user specific data. This data shall be used to specify the RMD Field 2, and when writing Lead-in the contents of this field shall also be written in Disc manufacturing information field of Lead-in or Border-in.

6.36.3.2.2 Format Code 05h: Copyright Management Information

Table 577 describes the response data format for Copyright Management Information, format code 05h.

Note 30. Format code 05h is not available to DVD-Download discs.

Table 577 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format Code = 05h)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)			DISC STRUCTURE Data Length				
1								(LSB)
2				Reserved				
3				Reserved				
				Copyright Management Information in data area				
0				CPR_MAI				
1				Reserved				
2				Reserved				
3				Reserved				

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field specifies the length in bytes of the Copyright Management data to follow. A DVD Structure Data Length field of zero indicates that no Copyright Management data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

The definition of the CPR_MAI field depends on the mounted media. The CPR_MAI field definition is shown in Table 578.

Table 578 — CPR_MAI Field Definitions

Media \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
DVD-R, ver 1.0 DVD-RW, ver 1.0	CPM	Resvd	CGMS		Reserved			
DVD-RAM Ver 2.2, DVD-R for Authoring Ver 2.0, DVD-Download	Reserved							
DVD-R for General, ver 2.0, DVD-RW, ver 1.1 and DVD+RW	Reserved				ADP_TY		Reserved	

If the CPM bit is set to 0, shall indicate that this sector contains no copyrighted material. If the CPM bit is set to 1, shall indicate that this sector contains copyrighted material. If this structure is not sent, the default value of the CPM bit shall be 0.

When the CPM bit is set to 0, the CGMS field shall be set to 00b.

When the CPM bit is set to 1, the CGMS field shall be set as shown in Table 579.

Table 579 — CGMS Field Values

CGMS	Definition
00b	Copying is permitted without restriction
01b	Reserved
10b	One generation of copies may be made
11b	No copying is permitted

The identical CGMS value of CPR_MAI in data area shall match with this format following write operation.

The ADP_TY field is defined for DVD-RW SL Ver.1.2, DVD-R SL Ver. 2.1, and DVD+RW media. If the sector contains materials defined in DVD Specifications for Read-Only Disc Part 3 VIDEO SPECIFICATIONS, the ADP_TY field shall be set to 01b. If the sector contains no such data, ADP_TY field shall be set to 00b. All other values of ADP_TY are reserved.

Note 31. Due to the nature of the recording method for DVD-R SL/DVD-RW SL media, a value of each field may varying during first and last 16 sectors of each recording extent.

6.36.3.2.3 Format Code 0Fh: Timestamp

The format of Timestamp field is structured as shown in Table 580. The time should be current UTC (Universal Coordinated Time) 24 hour clock.

Table 580 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format Code = 0Fh)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	DISC STRUCTURE Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Timestamp Data							
0	Reserved							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)							
5		Year						
6								
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Month						
9								(LSB)
10	(MSB)	Day						
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)	Hour						
13								(LSB)
14	(MSB)	Minute						
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)	Second						
17								(LSB)

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field specifies the length in bytes of the Timestamp Data to follow. A DVD Structure Data Length field of zero indicates that no Timestamp Data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error.

The Year field shall specify the year that coded as ASCII in the range “0001” to “9999”.

The Month field shall specify the month of the year that coded as ASCII in the range “01” to “12”.

The Day field shall specify the day of the month that coded as ASCII in the range “01” to “31”.

The Hour field shall specify the hour of the day that coded as ASCII in the range “00” to “23”.

The Minute field shall specify the minute of the hour that coded as ASCII in the range “00” to “59”.

The Second field shall specify the second of the minute that coded as ASCII in the range “00” to “59”.

Note 32. Format Code 0Fh (Timestamp) is defined identically for each Media Type. The Drive shall establish the most recently received Timestamp as the Timestamp for all Media Types, however, the current Timestamp shall be cleared upon disc eject. Consequently, the Drive may ignore the Media Type field in the CDB when Format Code is 0Fh.

6.36.3.2.4 Format Code 17h: Scramble Content Allocation information

This format code is for DVD-Download discs. If the currently mounted medium is no DVD-Download, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense values SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Once a write command is received this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR During writing Lead-in/Lead-out area the Drive may report a busy condition error (e.g. NOT READY/OPERATION IN PROGRESS).

Table 581 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format Code = 17h)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	DISC STRUCTURE Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Scramble Content Allocation information								
0 – 15	Title Set Zone information							
16 – 31	Scramble Extent Information Entry #1							
…	…							
16n – 16n+15	Scramble Extent Information Entry #n							
	x Scrambled pad bytes (make the Scrambled bytes to be multiple of 5)							
	y Pad bytes (make the transferred bytes to be multiple of 4)							

Note 33. When x or y equal 0 these pad bytes areas do not exist. Therefore the byte position descriptions show the end position of these areas only.

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The Scramble Content Allocation information that the Drive currently has shall be discarded by another issuance of SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 17h, Hard Reset or medium eject.

Title Set Zone information format is shown in Table 582.

Table 582 — Title Set Zone information

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0-7	Reserved							
8-11	(MSB)	Start LBA						(LSB)
12-15	(MSB)	LBA count						(LSB)

Scramble Extent information entries and Scrambled padded bytes x are obfuscated by a Bus key. Scramble Extent information format is shown in Table 583.

Table 583 — Scramble Extent information entry

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 2	Reserved							
3 – 7	(MSB)	CSS Scrambled Title Key						(LSB)
8 – 11	(MSB)	Start LBA						(LSB)

12 – 15	(MSB)	LBA count	(LSB)

The CSS scrambled Title Key field specifies the scrambled Title Key to be written in sector header. The value of each field of Scramble Extent information shall not be zero.

The Start LBA field and LBA Count field shall specify a LBA Extent that the scrambled Title Key is written in sector header. The LBA Extent shall be arranged to ECC block boundary. One ECC block shall be located between two LBA Extents.

The LBA Extents shall be sorted by the Start LBA field in ascending order.

The length of Scramble Content Allocation information becomes a multiple of 5 and the padded bytes length x is given by:

x = (5 – (16n+16) mod 5) mod 5. If x is 0, no Scrambled pad bytes are appended.

The total data transfer length shall be multiple of 4. The padded bytes length y is given by:

y = (4 – (16n+20+x) mod 4) mod 4 if y is 0, no pad bytes are appended.

Title Set Zone information, Scramble Extent information entries and Scrambled padded bytes x are obfuscated by a Bus key.

The Drive shall check the consistency of parameters (Title Set Zone coverage, no valid Scramble Extents, overlap of Scramble Extents and last address of the Title Set Zone and end address of the recording area). If the field value of Title Set Zone information and Scramble Extent information entry is not valid, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense values SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

When the number of Scramble Extent information entries exceeds the maximum number of entries that Drive can store, this command with Format Code = 17h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense values SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SYSTEM RESOURCE FAILURE.

When the DVD Drive is not in the Bus Key Established state for CSS/CPPM, this command with Format Code = 17h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense values SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.36.3.2.5 Format Code 20h: Layer Boundary Information

If Format Code 20h is not implemented for the currently mounted media, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Table 584 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format Code = 20h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Layer Boundary Information							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	L0 Data Area Capacity						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The L0 Data Area Capacity field shall specify the Data Area capacity on L0 in logical block. The value shall be greater than zero. The last LBA of Data Area on L0 is L0 Data Area Capacity – 1.

If the value of L0 Data Area Capacity field is not an integral multiple of 16, the value shall be rounded up to the next integral multiple of 16. If the rounded L0 Data Area Capacity value is greater than available capacity on L0, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER BLOCK. If Data Area capacity has already been established by a previous SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code value of 20h, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER BLOCK.

6.36.3.2.6 Format Code 21h: Shifted Middle Area Start Address

Format code 21h permits the Host to set the start logical block address of Shifted Middle Area on L0.

If Format 21h is not implemented for the currently mounted media, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Table 585 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format Code = 21h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Shifted Middle Area Information							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Shifted Middle Area Start Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The Shifted Middle Area Start Address field shall specify the start Logical Block Address of the Shifted Middle Area on L0. On DVD-R DL discs, this value shall be:

1. A multiple of the Blocking factor,
2. located in the unrecorded area of the Invisible/Incomplete Rzone,
3. greater than or equal to the LBA on L0 that is corresponding to the end LBA on L1, and
4. less than or equal to the end LBA on L0 – AC10h only if the Drive allocates the flexible ODTA (Outer Disc Testing Area). When the value is set larger than the end LBA on L0 – AC10h, no flexible ODTA is allocated.

Once this value has been set, the value is not changeable. The outer radius area beyond the Shifted Middle Area becomes unusable for user data. Therefore the number of free blocks is decreased. If the specified value is not correct or has already been set, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION Status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

6.36.3.2.7 Format code 22h: Jump Interval Size

Format code 22h permits the Host to set the Jump Interval size for the Regular Interval Layer Jump recording of the Invisible Rzone.

Table 586 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format = 22h)

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Jump Interval Size							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Jump Interval Size						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The Jump Interval size field shall specify the Jump Interval size of the Regular Interval Layer Jump recording of the Invisible Rzone by number of sectors. The number of sectors shall be multiple of Blocking Factor specified by the Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor field (6.26.3.17) of the Track Information Block (Table 494). If the value is not a multiple of Blocking Factor, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

On DVD-R DL disc, the specified Jump Interval size is applied to Invisible Rzone. This field shall be greater than or equal to 8 192 (16 MB) and shall be less than or equal to 65 520 (127.9 MB). The number of sectors shall be multiple of Blocking Factor specified by the Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor field of the Track Information Block (Table 494). If the value is not multiple of Blocking Factor, the value is not correct value and this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST. If this parameter has already been set to the Invisible Rzone or a Manual Layer Jump Address has already been set to the Invisible Rzone upon receiving this command, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status, 5/24/00 INVALID FIELD IN CDB. If this command is issued to a disc that contains an Incomplete Rzone, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.36.3.2.8 Format code 23h: Manual Layer Jump Address

Format code 23h permits the Host to set the Layer Jump Address.

Table 587 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format = 23h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Manual Layer Jump Address							
0 – 3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Layer Jump Logical Block Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The Layer Jump Logical Block Address field shall specify the logical block address that causes Layer jump of NWA from L0 to Layer 1 after the sector of the logical block address is written. The logical block address shall be the last sector number of an ECC block.

If the corresponding address on Layer 1 of the Layer Jump Address on L0 is not available for recording (i.e., Out of range of the Rzone) or has been set, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

6.36.3.2.9 Format code 24h: Remapping Address

Format code 24h permits the Host to define remapping areas for up to 4 anchor points.

Table 588 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format = 24h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Remapping Address							
0	(MSB)	Anchor Point Number						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)	Remapping Address						
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The Anchor Point Number field shall specify the number of Anchor Point that is reassigned. In the case of DVD-R Dual Layer disc, the number shall be 1, 2, 3, or 4.

The Remapping Address field shall specify the LBA that is used to reassign the Anchor Point block specified by Anchor Point Number field. The LBA shall be a multiple of Blocking Factor as specified by the Fixed Packet Size/ Blocking Factor field (6.26.3.17) of the Track Information Block (Table 494). If the value is not a multiple of Blocking Factor, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST. The Drive shall check that the ECC block specified by Anchor Point Number and Remapping Address fields has been written. If the ECC block is not written, this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

Note 34. The Drive needs not check the validity of the Remapping Address. Even if the address specifies a Border Zone or Clearance, Drive may not report any error.

6.36.3.2.10 Format Code 30h: DCB

6.36.3.2.10.1 General

DCB data returned is formatted as shown in Table 589.

Table 589 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format field = 30h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	DISC STRUCTURE Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							Erase
3	Reserved							
	Specific DCB Information							
0 … 32 767	DCB							

The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length specifies the length in bytes of the following DISC STRUCTURE data that is available to be transferred to the Host. The DISC STRUCTURE Data Length value does not include the DISC STRUCTURE Data Length field itself.

The Erase bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the DCB be written to the media. When set to one, it shall indicate that each DCB on the medium, with a Content Descriptor matching the one sent, shall be erased.

The Drive shall not record any DCB unknown to the Drive.

The DCB field is defined in [DVD+Ref1], [DVD+Ref2] and [DVD+Ref3]. If a DCB, with fewer than 32 768 bytes is sent, the Drive shall pad the DCB with 00h bytes.

6.36.3.2.10.2 Erasing a DCB

For some DCBs, it is sufficient to include only the DVD Structure header (4 bytes) followed by the DCB content descriptor (4 bytes). For others (e.g. WDCB) the entire DCB information shall be sent.

6.36.3.2.10.3 Write Inhibit DCB

The Write Inhibit DCB (WDCB) provides the Host with the ability to control write access to the media. If the entire media is write protected, the WDCB is the only writable ECC block on the media and may be written only via the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with format code = 30h.

Access to the WDCB may be protected by a password (see Table 435). If the WDCB is password protected, writing the WDCB is permitted only when the password field exactly matches the password field of the current WDCB. If the Host's password does not match the media password, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

Table 590 shows examples of WDCB management for control of write protect status.

Table 590 — WDCB Management Examples

WDCB Status	Desired Action	Required Command Sequence
No WDCB on media	Write protect the media	Send a valid WDCB.
WDCB present on media – not password protected	Change write protect status	Send a valid WDCB with desired write protect status.
	Password protect current WDCB	Read the DCB to maintain current write protect status. Enable the password and send the WDCB with a valid password in the password field
Password protected WDCB present on media	Change write protect status	Send a valid WDCB with the desired write protect status and the correct password field.
	Change the password	Send a valid WDCB with the desired write protect status and the correct password field. Set the Erase bit in the header. Send a new WDCB with the new password enabled.

If the WDCB Password field is set to all FFh, then the disc is permanently write protected and further recording on the disc shall not be allowed. This includes formatting.

6.36.3.2.11 Format Code 84h: Write Data Key of AACS

Table 591 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format Code = 84h)

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Write Data Key Structure							
0	(MSB)	Write Data Key Data						
…								
n								(LSB)

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

The Write Data Key Data field shall specify the Write Data Key of AACS, which is encrypted by a Bus Key.

When the host is not authorized to send the Write Data Key but does send it, this command with Format Code = 84h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT PERMISSION.

When the Drive is not in the Bus Key established state of the AACS Authentication, this command with Format Code = 84h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT ESTABLISHED.

6.36.3.2.12 Format Code 85h: LBA Extents for Bus Encryption flag of AACS

Table 592 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Data Format (With Format Code = 85h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Disc Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Maximum Number of LBA Extents							
	LBA Extent Structures							
0 – 15	LBA Extent Structure 1							
16 – 31	LBA Extent Structure 2							
…	…							
16*(N-1) – 16*N –1	LBA Extent Structure N							

The Structure Data Length field specifies the number of bytes that follow the Structure Data Length field.

Table 594 shows the format of the LBA extent structure.

Table 593 — LBA Extent Structure

Byte	Field
0	Reserved
…	
7	
8	(MSB) Start LBA
…	
11	(LSB)
12	(MSB) LBA Count
…	
15	(LSB)

LBA Extent Structure data shall specify LBA Extents, to which the Bus Encryption flag is associated when data is recorded. Each LBA Extent is denoted by the Start LBA and the LBA Count, where the first LBA is Start LBA and the last LBA is Start LBA + LBA Count – 1. The LBA Extent Structure data shall be sorted by the Start LBA field value in ascending order.

A null LBA Extent Structure (N = 0) shall be used to clear all current LBA Extents.

Each LBA Extent shall not cause any overlapping regions. Any LBA contained in any LBA Extent shall not be located beyond the maximum capacity of the current media. An LBA Count shall not be zero. When any of these conditions are not satisfied, this command with Format Code = 85h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

When the number of LBA Extents specified in the LBA Extent Structure data exceeds the maximum number of LBA Extents that Drive can store, this command with Format Code = 85h shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/SYSTEM RESOURCE FAILURE.

The LBA Extents that the Drive currently has shall be discarded by another issuance of SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Code = 85h, Hard Reset or medium eject.

This command with Format Code = 85h does not require the AACS Authentication.

6.36.3.2.13 Format Code C0h: Write Protection

Table 594 defines data format code C0h.

Table 594 — SEND DISC STRUCTURE Parameter List (Format Field = C0h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Structure Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
Write Protection Data								
4	Reserved						PWP	Reserved
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

The DVD Structure Data Length field shall indicate the number of bytes following this field.

The Persistent Write Protection (PWP) bit of one indicates that the medium surface shall be set to write protected status. The PWP bit of zero indicates that the medium surface shall be set to write permitted status.

If the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command with Format Field set to C0h is sent while the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW, the command shall be terminated with CONDITION STATUS and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.36.3.3 SEND DISC STRUCTURE for BD (Media Type = 1h)

6.36.3.3.1 Format 0Fh: Timestamp

The format of SEND DISC STRUCTURE parameter list for media type = 1h is the same as the format of SEND DISC STRUCTURE parameter list for media type = 0h. See 6.36.3.2.3.

Format Code 0Fh (Timestamp) is defined identically for each Media Type. The Drive shall establish the most recently received Timestamp as the Timestamp for all Media Types, however, the current Timestamp shall be cleared upon disc eject. Consequently, the Drive may ignore the Media Type field in the CDB when Format Code is 0Fh.

A Timestamp is needed for the initial recording date in the Primary PAC on BD-R and BD-RE.

6.36.3.3.2 Format Code 30h: Send a PAC

6.36.3.3.3 General

Physical Access Control (PAC) Clusters are provided as a structure on the disc to include additional information for interchange between interchange parties. PAC Clusters shall be recorded in the INFO1/PAC1 Area and backup copies shall be recorded in the INFO2/PAC2 Area. The format of PAC data provided by the Host is shown in Table 595.

Table 595 — Physical Access Control Send Parameter List

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Structure Length = N+2						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							Erase
3	Reserved							
	PAC Structure							
0 … 383	PAC Header							
384 … N-1	PAC Specific Information							

If the Erase bit is set to zero, the remainder of the structure contains the PAC Cluster content that should be written to the media.

If the Erase bit is set to one, each occurrence of a PAC with the PAC ID matching the PAC ID in the PAC Header in the parameter list shall be erased (on BD-RE) or invalidated (on BD-R). The PAC information following the disc structure header shall be ignored.

The Drive shall neither record nor erase any PAC that is unknown to the Drive.

The value for N (PAC structure size) is at least 384 and at most 63488.

The PAC data contains fields that are not arbitrarily changeable by the Host. (e.g. PCA Update Count field, Unknown PAC rule bits in PAC header). The Drive may ignore such fields in the PAC Structure data and set the correct values as defined by [BD-Ref2] and [BD-Ref3].

6.36.3.3.4 DWP PAC

The Disc Write Protect (DWP) PAC Cluster is used to protect a disc against unintended write actions or write actions by unauthorized persons. For the case where the disc is protected against write actions by unauthorized persons, a password may be included. Recognition and reading the DWP PAC is mandatory. Writing the DWP PAC is optional. If the Drive does not support writing the DWP PAC, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB..

The format of the Disc Write Protect PAC structure is shown Table 596.

Table 596 — DWP PAC

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Data Structure Length = 430						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved						VWE	Erase
3	Reserved							
DWP PAC Data								
0	DWP PAC Header							
1								
…								
383								
384	Known PAC Entire_Disc_Flags							
385	Reserved							
386	Reserved							
387	Reserved							
388	Write Protect Control Byte (see Table 64)							
389 – 395	Reserved							
396 – 427	Write Protect Password							

The VWE (Virtual Write Enable) bit is used to enable or disable writing to a virtually write protected disc. When VWE is set to 1, the Host is requesting the ability to write on a virtually write protected disc. This is a temporary write capability, a media change or drive reset will cause the system to return to a write protected state. When VWE is set to 0, it indicates that the host is rescinding temporary write ability.

If the Erase bit is defined as in the general case specified in 6.36.3.3.3.

If there is a current valid Write Protect Password on the disc, then the Drive shall process this request only if the Write Protect Password field matches the Password on the disc.

The length of a DWP PAC is 428 bytes.

6.36.4 Timeouts

The SEND DISC STRUCTURE command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.36.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SEND DISC STRUCTURE command is defined in Table 597.

Table 597 — Recommended Errors for the SEND DISC STRUCTURE Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
Protocol errors	Table F.4
General media access errors	Table F.5
Write errors	Table F.7
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.37 SEND KEY Command

6.37.1 Introduction

The SEND KEY command provides data necessary for authentication and for generating a Bus Key for protected data transfers between the Host and Drive.

This command, in conjunction with REPORT KEY command, is intended to perform authentication for Drives that conform to a specified Content Protection scheme and to generate a Bus Key as the result of authentication.

Table 598 shows the Features associated with the SEND KEY command.

Table 598 — Features Associated with the SEND KEY Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0106h	DVD CSS	Mandatory
010Bh	DVD CPRM	Mandatory
010Dh	AACS	Mandatory

6.37.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.37.2.1 The CDB

The SEND KEY CDB is shown in Table 599.

Table 599 — SEND KEY CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (A3h)							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved Function							
7	Key Class							
8	(MSB)	Parameter List Length						
9								(LSB)
10	AGID		Key Format					
11	Control							

6.37.2.2 Key Class

The Key Class field shall identify the type of authentication conversation according to Table 600.

Table 600 — Key Class

Key Class	Authentication Type
00h	DVD CSS/CPPM or CPRM
01h	Obsolete
02h	AACS
03h – 1Fh	Reserved
20h	Legacy (formerly VCPS, see Annex E)
21h	SecurDisc
22h – FFh	Reserved

6.37.2.3 Parameter List Length

The Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the SEND KEY parameter list that shall be transferred from the Host to the Drive. A Parameter List Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error. If the Parameter List Length results in the truncation of any SEND KEY parameter list, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/PARAMETER LIST LENGTH ERROR.

6.37.2.4 AGID

The AGID field is used to control simultaneous key exchange sequences. The AGID specified in subsequent Key Exchange commands shall match a currently active AGID.

Note 35. Drives that support more than one Key Format for requesting an AGID do not necessarily support simultaneous key exchange sequences.

6.37.2.5 Key Format

The Key Format field indicates the types of information that is to be sent to the Drive. The definition for specific Key Format fields is dependent upon the Key Class.

6.37.3 Command Processing

6.37.3.1 Key Class 00h, DVD CSS/CPPM or CPRM

6.37.3.1.1 General

The Key Format field (Table 601) indicates the type of information that is to be sent to the Host.

Table 601 — Key Format Code definitions for SEND KEY Command

Key Format	Sent Data	Description	AGID Use
000001b	Challenge Key	Accepts a Challenge Key	Valid AGID required
000011b	KEY2	Accepts a KEY2	
000110b	RPC Structure	Set Region	Reserved & Ignored
111111b	None	Invalidate Specified AGID	Typically Valid AGID
All other values	Reserved		

6.37.3.1.2 Key Format = 000001b, Challenge

The Challenge Key (Table 602) is sent to the DVD Drive to get corresponding KEY1 from the DVD Drive to interrogate conformity with DVD Content Protection scheme.

Table 602 — SEND KEY Parameter List (KEY Format field =000001b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	SEND KEY Parameter List Length (0Eh)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Challenge Key Value							
0	(MSB)	Challenge Key Value						
:								
9								(LSB)
10	Reserved							
11	Reserved							

6.37.3.1.3 Key Format = 000011b, Response

The KEY2 (Table 603), generated external to the DVD Drive, is sent to the DVD Drive to determine its conformity with DVD Copy Protection scheme. The KEY 2 value shall be used for the second input to generate a Bus Key in the DVD Drive.

When the KEY2 value sent does not conform to the DVD Copy Protection scheme, this command shall be terminated with a CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – AUTHENTICATION FAILURE.

If the SEND KEY command with KEY Format = 000011b terminates with CHECK CONDITION status, the retry of authentication shall be performed from the beginning.

Table 603 — SEND KEY Parameter List (KEY Format field =000011b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	SEND KEY Parameter List Length (0Ah)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	KEY2							
0	(MSB)	KEY2 Value						
:								
4								(LSB)
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							

6.37.3.1.4 Key Format = 000110b, RPC Structure

The Preferred Drive Regional Code (Table 604) is sent to the DVD Drive to make the Drive regionalized. The Preferred Drive Region Code specifies a single region in which the disc may be played. Each bit represents one of eight regions. If a bit is cleared in this field, the disc may be played in the corresponding region. If a bit is set in this field, the disc is unable to be played in the corresponding region. Exactly one bit of the Preferred Drive Region Code shall contain a zero.

If the Drive does not support setting of the Region, or the Region is no longer changeable, then this command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to LOGICAL UNIT REGION MUST BE PERMANENT/REGION RESET COUNT ERROR.

Table 604 — SEND KEY Parameter List (KEY Format field =000110b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	SEND KEY Parameter List Length (06h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	RPC Structure							
0	Preferred Drive Region Code							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							

6.37.3.1.5 Invalidate Authentication Grant ID (Key Format = 111111b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive invalidate the specified Authentication Grant ID. The AGID is specified in the AGID field of the CDB. Invalidating an invalid AGID shall not be considered an error.

No further conversation is allowed over this AGID until it is assigned again with a new REPORT KEY command requiresting an AGID. No data is returned by the Drive.

6.37.3.2 AACS

The SEND KEY command with Key Class = 02h is used for AACS authentication process. The SEND KEY command with Key Class = 02h provides data necessary for authentication and for generating a Bus Key and ends the authentication process.

Table 605 — Key Format definitions for SEND KEY command (Key Class = 02h)

Key Format	Send Data	Description	AGID Use
000001h	Host Certificate Challenge	Send a Host Certificate Challenge to Drive	Valid AGID required
000010h	Host Key	Send a Host Key to Drive	
111111h	None	Invalidate Specified AGID for AACS.	Typically Valid AGID
All other value	Reserved		

6.37.3.2.1 Host Certificate Challenge (KEY Format = 000001b)

The Host Certificate Challenge format (Table 606) provides data to the Drive to be used to verify legitimacy of the host.

Table 606 — SEND KEY Parameter List (With KEY Format = 000001b, Key Class = 02h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	SEND KEY Parameter List Length (72h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Host Certificate Challenge							
0	(MSB)	Host Certificate Challenge Data						
…								
111								(LSB)

The SEND KEY Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following SEND KEY parameter list to be transferred to the Drive. The SEND KEY Parameter List Length value does not include the SEND KEY Parameter List Length field itself.

The Host Certificate Challenge Data is sent to the Drive to be used by the Drive to verify legitimacy of the host.

When the Host Certificate Challenge Data is determined to be not legitimate or is revoked, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – AUTHENTICATION FAILURE.

6.37.3.2.2 Host Key (KEY Format = 000010b)

The Host Key format (Table 607) permits the Host to send key information that is be used by the Drive to generate the Bus Key.

Table 607 — SEND KEY Parameter List (With KEY Format = 000010b, Key Class = 02h)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	SEND KEY Parameter List Length (52h)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Host Key							
0	(MSB)	Host Key Data						
…								
79								(LSB)

The SEND KEY Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following SEND KEY parameter list to be transferred to the Drive. The SEND KEY Parameter List Length value does not include the SEND KEY Parameter List Length field itself.

The Host Key Data is sent to the Drive to be used, together with the Drive Key Data, to generate the Bus Key.

6.37.3.2.3 Invalidate Authentication Grant ID for AACS (Key Format = 111111b)

This KEY Format requests the Drive invalidate the specified Authentication Grant ID for AACS. The AGID is specified in the AGID field of the CDB. Invalidating an invalid AGID shall not be considered an error.

No further conversation is allowed over this AGID until it is assigned again with a new REPORT KEY command requiresting an AGID. No data is returned by the Drive.

6.37.3.3 Key Class 21h, SecurDisc

The SEND KEY command with Key Class = 21h is used for the SecurDisc authentication process. The command provides data necessary for authentication and for generating a Bus Key for the Drive.

Table 608 — Key Format definitions for SEND KEY command (Key Class = 21h)

Key Format	Send Data	Description	AGID Use
000001h	Host Key Contribution	Send Host random number and protocol version	Valid AGID required
111111h	None	Invalidate Specified AGID. Invalidating an invalid AGID shall not be considered an error. An AGID that has not been granted shall be considered invalid.	
All other value	Reserved		

The Host uses KEY Format = 000001b to send Host key contribution information.

Table 609 — Host Key Contribution (KEY Format = 000001b)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	SEND KEY Data Length (2Ah)						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
	Host Key Contribution							
0	(MSB)	Encrypted Host Random Number (R2)						
…								
15								(LSB)
16	Protocol Version							
17	Bit position index value							
18	(MSB)	Revocation Block Node Key (RBNK)						
…								
33								(LSB)
34	(MSB)	Application Authentication Unique ID (AAUID)						
…								
37								(LSB)
38	Reserved							
39	Reserved							

The SEND KEY Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the following SEND KEY parameter list to be transferred to the Drive. The SEND KEY Parameter List Length value does not include the SEND KEY Parameter List Length field itself.

Encrypted Host Random Number (R2) contains the 128 bit random number created by the host, encrypted using the secret key PK1 that has been assigned to the drive application.

Protocol Version contains the protocol version number for the authentication sequence to be used.

Bit Position Index Value (x) specifies the index within the PK1 array assigned to the drive that should be used by the drive to build PK1.

Revocation Block Node Key (RBNK) specifies the node key associated with position x in the Drive Revocation Block (DRB) as a 128 bit key value.

Application Authentication Unique ID (AAUID) specifies the Application Authentication Unique ID which will be used by the drive to do Application Authentication Revocation Block (AARB) parsing. When the Application Authentication Unique ID is verified as it is not legitimate or is revoked, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – AUTHENTICATION FAILURE.

6.37.4 Timeouts

The SEND KEY command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.37.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SEND KEY command is defined in Table 610.

Table 610 — Recommended Errors for the SEND KEY Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.38 SEND OPC INFORMATION Command

6.38.1 Introduction

The SEND OPC INFORMATION command is used to specify the Optimum Power Calibration (OPC) values to the Drive for the currently mounted medium disc. This command should be used in conjunction with the READ DISC INFORMATION command (6.21).

Table 611 shows the Features associated with the SEND OPC INFORMATION command.

Table 611 — Features Associated with the SEND OPC INFORMATION Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	When OPC is reported in Disc Information
002Dh	CD Track At Once	When OPC is reported in Disc Information
002Eh	CD Mastering	When OPC is reported in Disc Information
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory (when Write is set to 1)

6.38.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.38.2.1 The CDB

The SEND OPC INFORMATION CDB is shown in Table 612.

Table 612 — SEND OPC INFORMATION CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (54h)							
1	Reserved							DoOpc
2	Reserved						Exclude1	Exclude0
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	(MSB)	Parameter List Length						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.38.2.2 DoOpc

If DoOpc is set to one, the Drive shall determine OPC values for the current recording conditions. It may be necessary to perform an OPC operation. These OPC values shall become current. When DoOpc is set to one, the Parameter List Length field is ignored.

If DoOpc is set to zero, the Drive shall transfer the Parameter List and attempt to set OPC values to those in the Parameter List.

If a Drive supports this command, then it shall support DoOPC = 1.

6.38.2.3 Exclude0 and Exclude1

Exclude0 and Exclude1 allow the Host to select the layers to be calibrated.

Table 613 shows the behavior given various combinations of control bits from byte 1.

Table 613 — Drive Action with Combinations of DoOPC, Exclude0, and Exclude1

DoOpc	Exclude0	Exclude1	Drive Response
1	0	0	Perform OPC operation on each layer to set OPC values for current media speed.
1	0	1	Perform OPC operation only on layer 0 to set OPC values for current media speed.
1	1	0	Perform OPC operation only on layer 1 to set OPC values for current media speed.
1	1	1	No operation — GOOD status shall be returned
0	x	x	If Parameter List Length is zero, no operation — GOOD status shall be returned.

If the mounted media is not a recordable dual layer media supported by the Drive and either Exclude0 or Exclude1 is non-zero, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.38.2.4 Parameter List Length

The Parameter List Length shall be set to reflect the number of the parameter bytes to be transferred. The Parameter List Length shall be an integral multiple of eight. If the Parameter List Length is not an integral multiple of 8, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB. A Parameter List Length field of zero shall not be considered an error.

If an illegal OPC table entry is detected, the Drive shall report terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION Status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

If Parameter List Length is set to zero and DoOpc is set to zero, the Drive shall perform no OPC operation.

If the Standard Disc Information returned by the READ DISC INFORMATION command returns no OPC tables, then the Drive does not support receiving OPC information from the Host. BD-R Drives do not support receiving OPC information from the Host. If the Drive does not support receiving OPC information from the Host and Parameter List Length is not zero, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.38.2.5 Parameter List Format

The format of the Parameter List is shown in Table 614.

Table 614 — SEND OPC INFORMATION Parameter List

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	OPC Speed in kBytes per Second						
1								(LSB)
2	(MSB)	OPC Values						
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								(LSB)

The OPC Speed is the medium speed with which the OPC Values are associated.

The OPC Values are device, media, and speed specific.

The READ DISC INFORMATION command may return current OPC information for each write speed supported. These values may be saved in order to avoid calibration upon future media remount.

6.38.3 Command Processing

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

If DoOpc is requested, and the medium is not already calibrated, the Drive shall perform OPC in order to determine parameters for each speed. If the Drive has already performed calibration since the currently mounted medium first became ready, a new calibration should not be performed. The OPC parameters shall be made available to the Host via the READ DISC INFORMATION command.

If DoOpc is not requested, the parameter list shall be transferred and the OPC parameters shall be made current.

6.38.4 Timeouts

The SEND OPC INFORMATION command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.38.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SEND OPC INFORMATION command is defined in Table 615.

Table 615 — Recommended Errors for the SEND OPC INFORMATION Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.39 SET CD SPEED Command

6.39.1 Introduction

The SET CD SPEED command provides A Host with a method to select a preferred physical speed for CD media.

Table 616 shows the Features associated with the SET CD SPEED command.

Table 616 — Features Associated with the SET CD SPEED Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Optional

6.39.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.39.2.1 The CDB

The SET CD SPEED CDB is shown in Table 617.

Table 617 — SET CD SPEED CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (BBh)							
1	Reserved						Rotational Control	
2	(MSB)	Drive Read Speed (□bytes/sec)						
3								(LSB)
4	(MSB)	Drive Write Speed (□bytes/sec)						
5								(LSB)
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Reserved							
9	Reserved							
10	Reserved							
11	Control							

6.39.2.2 Rotational Control

Rotational Control identifies how the Drive shall interpret the requested Drive Write Speed.

Table 618 — Rotational Control Parameter

Rotational Control	Meaning
00b	CLV and non-pure CAV
01b	Pure CAV
10b	Reserved
11b	Reserved

In the case of non-CLV rotational control on CD media, the Drive Write Speed shall be assumed to reference the speed at 79:59:74 MSF.

6.39.2.3 Drive Read Speed

A Drive Read Speed of 0000h through FFFEh specifies a minimum read speed required by the Host. A value of FFFFh requests that the Drive Read Speed be set for optimal performance.

6.39.2.4 Drive Write Speed

A Drive Write Speed of 0000h through FFFEh specifies the write speed required by the Host. A value of FFFFh requests that the Drive Write Speed be set for optimal performance. If the Drive is requested to write at an unsupported speed, the Drive shall select any slower Drive Write Speed. This condition is not regarded as an

error. If the Drive is requested to write at a speed that is lower than the Drive's slowest speed, the Drive may select an appropriate Write Speed. Otherwise, the Drive shall return CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.39.3 Command Processing

Once the Drive has selected a speed, that speed shall be maintained until the current medium is removed. If the medium is changed and the Drive does not support the former speed, the Drive may select an appropriate speed for the current medium.

It is recommended that the Host set the Drive speeds upon the media change.

6.39.4 Timeouts

The SET CD SPEED command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.39.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SET CD SPEED command is defined in Table 619.

Table 619 — Recommended Errors for the SET CD SPEED Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Write errors	Table F.7
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.40 SET READ AHEAD Command

6.40.1 Introduction

The SET READ AHEAD command requests that the Drive perform Read Ahead Caching operations from the Read-Ahead Logical Block Address once the Drive encounters the Trigger LBA during its internal read-ahead cacheing operation.

6.40.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.40.2.1 The CDB

The SET READ AHEAD CDB is shown in Table 620.

Table 620 — SET READ AHEAD CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (A7h)							
1	Reserved							
2	(MSB)							
3				Trigger Logical Block Address				
4								
5								(LSB)
6	(MSB)							
7				Read Ahead Logical Block Address				
8								
9								(LSB)
10	Reserved							
11	Control							

6.40.2.2 Trigger Logical Block Address

The Trigger Logical Block Address identifies the last sector that shall be cached during the current read-ahead cacheing process.

6.40.2.3 Read-Ahead Logical Block Address

The Read-Ahead Logical Block Address identifies the first sector at which cacheing shall continue.

If the Trigger LBA is equal to the Read Ahead LBA, no action is required and the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

6.40.3 Command Processing

Three LBAs are involved in deterimining Drive action: Current cacheing LBA, Trigger LBA, and Read Ahead LBA. The Drive action is determined by the relationship between these 3 LBAs.

If this command is received by the Drive when data after the Trigger Logical Block Address (Trigger LBA) and before the Read Ahead Logical Block Address (Read Ahead LBA) is contained in its cache, that data should be discarded and Read Ahead Caching restarted from the specified Read Ahead Logical Block Address.

Sectors after the Trigger LBA (Not including the Trigger LBA) should be skipped. The data for both the Trigger and Read Ahead LBAs will normally be read by the host. The sectors between these addresses (exclusive) are normally not read by the Host. The host should expect seek delays if these sectors are read.

The Read-Ahead operation shall be performed in background, i.e. the Drive shall accept a command during the Read-ahead operation.

6.40.4 Timeouts

The SET READ AHEAD command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.40.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SET READ AHEAD command is defined in Table 621.

Table 621 — Recommended Errors for the SET READ AHEAD Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Write errors	Table F.7
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.41 SET STREAMING Command

6.41.1 Introduction

The SET STREAMING command provides the Host with a method to communicate requirements for Drive performance.

Table 622 shows the Features associated with the SET STREAMING command.

Table 622 — Features Associated with the SET STREAMING Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0107h	Real-time Streaming	Mandatory

6.41.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.41.2.1 The CDB

The SET STREAMING CDB is shown in Table 623.

Table 623 — SET STREAMING CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (B6h)							
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved							
8	Type							
9	(MSB)	Parameter List Length						
10								(LSB)
11	Control							

6.41.2.2 Type

The Type field specifies the type of data that shall be transferred. If the Drive does not report Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature, Host should set the Type field to 0. If the Drive reports the Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature, the Drive shall support the Type field. The Type field is defined in Table 624.

If the Drive does not support “Small DBI cache memory model” (see 4.19.4.5.4) and Type field is set to other than 0, the Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION status, INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

Table 624 — Type field definition

Type field value	Reference
0	Performance descriptor
1– 4	Reserved
5	DBI cache zone descriptor
Others	Reserved

6.41.2.3 Parameter List Length

The Parameter List Length field specifies the length in bytes of the Performance Descriptor that shall be transferred from the Host to the Drive. A Parameter List Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered as an error.

If the Parameter List Length results in the truncation of Performance Descriptor, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/PARAMETER LIST LENGTH ERROR.

6.41.3 Command Processing

6.41.3.1 General

The SET STREAMING command provides a way for the Host to indicate to the Drive that the application has specific request or requirements for Drive performance.

The Drive resets the performance as default at medium change. The setting applies only to the extent identified by the specified range. Only zero or one performance extents shall be valid at any time.

If the SET STREAMING Command is used to set performance, the Drive may disable read and write reallocation in the specified region in order to meet the performance criteria.

6.41.3.2 Performance Descriptor (Type=0)

The Host should send a Performance Descriptor during the data phase of this command. The Performance Descriptor shall be sent in the format shown in Table 625.

Table 625 — Performance Descriptor

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Reserved		HIE	WRC		RDD	Exact	MRW
1	Reserved							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	(MSB)							
…				Start LBA				
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)							
…				End LBA				
11								(LSB)
12	(MSB)							
…				Read Size				
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)							
…				Read Time				
19								(LSB)
20	(MSB)							
…				Write Size				
23								(LSB)
24	(MSB)							
…				Write Time				
27								(LSB)

The Higher than or Equal to (HIE) bit indicates that Reading/Writing throughput is specified for higher than or equal to the address rage specified by the Start LBA and the End LBA. When HIE bit is set to 1, the Drive shall ignore MRW bit and WRC field to satisfy the specified throughput on the mounted medium.

The Write Rotation Control (WRC) field specifies the type of the medium rotation control to write. If the Drive does not support the write rotation control mode specified, the Drive shall generate CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

The RDD (Restore Drive Defaults) bit, when set to zero, indicates the remaining fields are valid. When set to one, it shall indicate that the Drive is to return to its default performance settings and the remaining fields in this descriptor shall be ignored. Read and Write reallocation ability shall be restored to the operation specified by the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page.

The Exact bit, when set to zero, shall indicate that the Drive shall set its internal configuration to match the parameters as best as possible. No errors shall occur. When set to one, the Drive shall set its internal configuration to support the requested parameters. If the Drive is unable to perform as requested, it shall generate CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

When both Exact and HIE are set to 1 and the Drive is unable to set performance according to the requested parameter that is Reading/Writing throughput higher than or equal to the address range, the Drive shall generate CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST. When any other configuration setting does not allow the requested throughput, the Drive shall generate CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

When Exact bit is set to 0 and HIE bit is set to 1 the Drive should set its internal configuration to higher than or equal to the specified throughput as near as possible. No errors shall occur. When the specified throughput is not possible the Drive is allowed to select the highest throughput that is lower than the specified throughput. When any other configuration setting does not allow the throughput, Drive may select the highest throughput that is allowed by the configuration and is lower than the specified throughput. The Host may check the assigned performance by Performance (Type field = 00h) of GET PERFORMANCE command.

The MRW (Mixed Read/Write) bit, when set to zero, allows the Drive to independently set the read and write speeds. When set to one, the Drive is directed to optimize its performance settings for random changes between reading and writing by the Host. E.g., a CD recorder that is able to record at 2X and read at 6X may choose to limit reading to 2X if the MRW bit was set to one.

The Start LBA field is the first logical block for which the performance request is being made.

The End LBA field is the last logical block for which the performance request is being made.

In the case of a Dual layer disc the End LBA field may specify the end LBA of the high bit rates contents on Layer 1. In this case Drive should check Start LBA on layer 0 and End LBA on layer 1 which specifies the inner radius of the disc.

The data rate to be delivered for reading is (Read Size)/(Read Time).

The Read Size field shall indicate the number of kilobytes the Host expects to be delivered per period of Read Time when the Host's requests for data occur sufficiently fast.

The Read Time field shall indicate the amount of time, in milliseconds, over that the Read Size is expected to be read. The Host may set these two fields by setting Read Size to the size of its application's buffer and the Read Time to the amount of time it takes to empty that buffer.

The Write Size field shall be set to the number of kilobytes to be written per Write Time.

The Write Time field shall indicate the amount of time, in milliseconds, over that the Write Size is expected to be written.

In many cases, the Write Size and Write Time fields should be set to match the corresponding Read fields. If not, the Host may set the Write Size to the size of its application buffer and the Write Time to the time it takes to fill that buffer.

6.41.3.3 DBI cache zone Descriptor (Type=5)

The DBI cache zone descriptor provides a way for the Host to indicate to the Drive that the application has specific request for Drive behavior of small DBI cache model in DRT-DM mode. Disc volume space is divided into a few DBI cache zones. RDBI and WDBI memory shall be allocated for each DBI cache zones. At least two DBI cache zones shall be supported. Number of supported DBI cache zone is shown in Number of DBI cache zones field of Table 135 – Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature Descriptor.

Table 626 — DBI cache zone Descriptor

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0-7	DBI cache zone Header							
8-n	DBI cache zone Descriptor(s)							

Table 627 — DBI cache zone Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	DBI cache zone Data Length						
1								
2								
3								(LSB)
4-7	Reserved							

The DBI cache zone data length field specifies the length in bytes of the following data. The DBI cache zone data length value does not include the DBI cache zone data length field itself.

Table 628 — DBI cache zone Descriptor(s)

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Start LBA of DBI cache zone						
1								
2								
3								(LSB)
4-7	Reserved							

Start LBA of DBI cache zone field specifies start LBA of a DBI cache zone. Drive shall adjust the start LBA to the packet start address that includes specified start LBA by Blocking factor for each media. The end address of a DBI cache zone is the end address of a packet that is preceded to the next DBI cache zone. The end address of the last DBI cache zone is the value of the last addressable LBA for the media. In case of C/DVD-RW media, the last readable address of the last track/Rzone is the end address of the last DBI cache zone.

For C/DVD-RW media, the first DBI cache zone shall be started from 0 and Host should set the first cache zone start address to 0. In case of small DBI cache model, Host should specify 2 descriptors minimally.

If the Drive received any invalid DBI cache zone descriptor and if number of DBI cache zone descriptors exceeded the value of Number of DBI cache zones field, the Drive shall terminate this command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

6.41.4 Timeouts

The SET STREAMING command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.41.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SET STREAMING command is defined in Table 629.

Table 629 — Recommended Errors for the SET STREAMING Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.42 START STOP UNIT Command

6.42.1 Introduction

The START STOP UNIT command allows the Host to request that the MM device be enabled or disabled for media access operations. This command may also be used to control certain power conditions.

Table 630 shows the Features associated with the START STOP UNIT command.

Table 630 — Features Associated with the START STOP UNIT Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0003h	Removable Medium	Mandatory
0100h	Power Management	Mandatory

6.42.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.42.2.1 The CDB

The START STOP UNIT CDB is shown in Table 631.

Table 631 — START STOP UNIT CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (1Bh)							
1	Reserved							Immed
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved						Format-Layer Number	
4	Power Conditions				Reserved	FL	LoEj	Start
5	Control							

6.42.2.2 Immed

If Immed (Immediate) is set to zero, status shall be returned only after the operation is completed. If Immed is set to one, status shall be returned as soon as the CDB has been validated.

6.42.2.3 Format-Layer Number

The Format-layer Number field specifies the Format-layer the Host has requested to be online. The number set in this field shall be less than the Number of recognized Format-layers field value reported by the Hybrid disc structure of READ DISC STRUCTURE command. If the value set in the Format-layer Number field is out of range, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.42.2.4 Power Conditions

The Power Conditions field requests the block device to be placed in the power condition defined in Table 632. If this field has a value other than 0h then the Start and LoEj bits are ignored.

A request to enter the current power state is not considered to be an error.

Table 632 — Power Conditions

Code	Description
0h	No change in power conditions
1h	Reserved
2h	Place Drive into the Idle State, Standby Timer is reloaded
3h	Place Drive into the Standby State
4h	Reserved
5h	Place Drive into Sleep State. Immed has no meaning when sleep state is requested. Before entering the sleep state, all buffers shall be successfully flushed by the Drive. If the sleep command is successful, the Host should not issue new commands after receiving the successful completion status. The Device shall de-power and disable the interface only after all Drives have successfully completed the sleep operation.
6h – Fh	Reserved

6.42.2.5 FL (Format-layer)

The Format-layer (FL) bit of one requests the Drive to change the online Format-layer to the Format-layer specified by the Format-Layer Number field. If FL is set to one, both LoEj bit and Start bit shall also be set to one. If the FL bit is set to one and either LoEj or Start is set to zero, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the FL bit is set to zero, the Format-Layer Number field shall also be set to zero. If the FL bit is set to zero and the Format-Layer Number is not zero, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the Hybrid disc Feature is present but is not current and either FL is not zero or Format-Layer Number is not zero, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and set sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.42.2.6 LoEj and Start

When Power Conditions field is zero and FL is zero, the meanings of LoEj and Start are defined in Table 633.

Table 633 — LoEj and Start Meanings when Power Conditions = 0

LoEj	Start	Operation
0	0	Stop the disc
0	1	Start the disc and make ready for access
1	0	Eject the disc if permitted. It is not an error If no media is present. See 6.13, PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL Command
1	1	Load the disc, Start the disc and make ready for access. It is not an error if no media is present.

If the Host requests to Eject or Load a Disc and the Drive does not support the requested capability, then the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the Drive already has the requested state (e.g. Start = 1 and medium is already loaded and ready), the command shall be terminated with GOOD status.

6.42.3 Command Processing

6.42.3.1 Load/Eject Operations and Actions

Table 634 shows the operations that may be requested.

Table 634 — Operations of the START STOP UNIT command

FL	Format-Layer Number	LoEj	Start	Power Condition	Operation Specified
0	0	0	0	0	Stop the disc
0	0	0	1	0	Start the disc and read disc structure information
0	0	1	0	0	Eject the disc if permitted (see 6.13)
0	0	1	1	0	Load and start the disc
1	N	1	1	0	Jump to Format-Layer Number N
0	0	x	x	1h – Fh	Change Power Condition

If the Loading Mechanism Type is 4h (a Changer with individual disc change capability), the Eject operation shall only eject the disc that is currently in the Play Position. If the Loading Mechanism Type is 5h (a changer utilizing a Magazine), then the disc shall only be ejected when no media is in the play position.

Table 635 shows the Drive actions given various load/eject requests.

Table 635 — Load/Eject Actions

<table>
<tr><th>Operation</th><th>Lock Status</th><th>No Media Present</th><th>Media Present</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">START STOP UNIT command Eject</td><td>Unlocked</td><td>If a tray type mechanism, the tray is opened.</td><td>Disc spins down and is ejected</td></tr>
<tr><td>Locked</td><td rowspan="3">The command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ are set to NOT READY/MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED</td><td rowspan="3">The command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED</td></tr>
<tr><td>Changer with a disc in play position</td></tr>
<tr><td>Changer type 4 with no disc in play position</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Manual Eject switch</td><td>Unlocked</td><td>If a tray type mechanism, the tray is opened.</td><td>Disc spins down and is ejected</td></tr>
<tr><td>Locked</td><td>No operation occurs</td><td>No operation occurs. The disc remains locked in the Drive.</td></tr>
</table>

6.42.3.2 Power Condition Changes

When the Drive enters the sleep state, any queued GET EVENT/STATUS NOTIFICATION commands shall be removed from the command queue without command completion.

If any commands other then GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION are in the command queue when a the sleep requested, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR.

If a request to go to a power state fails, the Drive shall remain in the current power state and shall generate power management class event with the Power Event Field set to PwrChg-Fail.

All power state change requests, except sleep, that complete successfully shall generate a power management class event with the Power Event field set to PwrChg-Successful.

Notification of power states shall occur upon entering a new power state.

6.42.4 Timeouts

The START STOP UNIT command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.42.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the START STOP UNIT command is defined in Table 636.

Table 636 — Recommended Errors for the START STOP UNIT Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.43 SYNCHRONIZE CACHE Command

6.43.1 Introduction

The purpose of the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command is to ensure that logical blocks in the cache memory have their most recent data value recorded on the physical medium. If a more recent data value for a logical block exists in the cache memory than on the physical medium, then the logical blocks from the cache memory shall be written to the physical medium.

Table 637 shows the Features associated with the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command.

Table 637 — Features Associated with the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0020h	Random Writable	Mandatory
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
0025h	Write Once	Mandatory
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0027h	CD-RW CAV Write	Mandatory
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory (when Write bit is set to one)
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
002Dh	CD Track At Once	Mandatory
002Eh	CD Mastering (RAW)	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory (when Write bit is set to one)
0042h	TSR	Mandatory

6.43.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.43.2.1 The CDB

The SYNCHRONIZE CACHE CDB is shown in Table 638.

Table 638 — SYNCHRONIZE CACHE CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (35h)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="5">Reserved</td><td>Restricted for [SBC-2]</td><td>Immed</td><td>Obsolete</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="4">Logical Block Address</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td><td colspan="5">Restricted for [SBC-2]</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="2">Number of Blocks</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.43.2.2 Immed

If Immed (Immediate) is set to zero, status shall be returned only after the operation is completed. If Immed is set to one, status shall be returned as soon as the CDB has been validated.

6.43.2.3 Logical Block Address

The Drive may ignore the Logical Block Address field.

6.43.2.4 Number of Blocks

The Drive may ignore the Number of Blocks field.

6.43.3 Command Processing

In streamed write operations, the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command shall force conditions equivalent to a buffer underrun.

If all data in the cache is synchronized with the media when this command is received, it shall not be considered an error.

6.43.4 Timeouts

The SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command belongs to timeout group 2 when Immed is zero. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

When the Immed is set to one, status shall be returned within a Group 1 timeout.

6.43.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command is defined in Table 639.

Table 639 — Recommended Errors for the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.44 TEST UNIT READY Command

6.44.1 Introduction

The TEST UNIT READY Command provides a means to check if the Drive is ready. This is not a request for a self-test. The features associated with this command are shown in Table 640.

Table 640 — Features Associated with the TEST UNIT READY Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0001h	Core Feature	Mandatory

The TEST UNIT READY command is described in [SPC-3].

6.44.2 Timeouts

The TEST UNIT READY command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/ INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.44.3 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the TEST UNIT READY command is defined in Table 641.

Table 641 — Recommended Errors for the TEST UNIT READY Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.45 VERIFY (10) Command

6.45.1 Introduction

The VERIFY (10) command requests that the Drive verify the data on the medium.

If Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is current, the Drive shall follow the setting of the PER bit and the EMCDR field in Read-Write Error Recovery mode page (see 7.3.2.7).

Table 642 shows the Features associated with the VERIFY (10) command.

Table 642 — Features Associated with the VERIFY (10) Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0022h	Sector Erasable	Mandatory
0023h	Formattable	Mandatory
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory

6.45.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.45.2.1 The CDB

The VERIFY (10) CDB is shown in Table 643.

Table 643 — VERIFY (10) CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (2Fh)							
1	Restricted for [SBC-2]			DPO	Reserved		BytChk	Obsolete
2	(MSB)	Logical Block Address						
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	G3tout	Reserved		Restricted for [SBC-2]				
7	(MSB)	Number of Blocks						
8								(LSB)
9	Control							

6.45.2.2 DPO

The Disable Page Out (DPO) bit is not used by MM Drives and shall be set to zero. For a description of DPO, see [SBC-2].

6.45.2.3 BytChk

BytChk (Byte Check) is not used by MM Drives and shall be set to zero.

6.45.2.4 Logical Block Address

Logical Block Address references the block at which the operation shall begin.

6.45.2.5 Number of Blocks

Number of Blocks specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data or blanks that shall be verified. If Number of Blocks is zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be verified. This condition shall not be considered as an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be verified.

6.45.2.6 G3tout

If the G3tout bit is set to 1 and if the Drive supports Group3 timeout and if Restricted Overwrite Feature or Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature (e.g., CD-RW, DVD-RW) is current and if the G3Enable bit in Timeout & Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, the Drive shall terminate this command within Group 3 timeout. In other cases, this command is categorized as Group 2 timeout.

6.45.3 Command Processing

The VERIFY (10) command shall use stricter criteria for data recoverability than Read commands. The criteria is derived from the relevant media standard, with additional vendor specific criteria allowed. Automatic reallocation is controlled by the ARRE bit. The VERIFY (10) command may return an error for a sector that a Read command may not.

Verify Error Recovery mode page parameters are not supported by MM Drives. The Drive shall utilize the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page as verify parameters. For Writable device-media systems with defect management, the ARRE bit shall control automatic reallocation.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD-RAM, the verify operation of this command shall use stricter criteria for data recoverability than is used by read commands. The criteria are derived from the DVD-RAM Book, with additional vendor specific criteria allowed.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW with basic formatting operating in background, the VERIFY command operation shall be as follows:

3. If any of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in a blank area of the media where format writing has not yet occurred, the blank sectors shall not be read and the command shall operate as if the sectors had been verified as good.
4. If all of the sectors within the range specified by the CDB are in an area of the media where format writing has occurred, the command shall operate normally.

If Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is current, the Drive shall follow the setting of the PER bit and the EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (01h). See clause 4.19.

6.45.4 Timeouts

The VERIFY (10) command belongs to timeout group 2. The group 2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

If the Drive supports Group3 timeout and the G3Enable bit in Timeout and Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, VERIFY (10) is re-categorized as Group 3 timeout. Refer to 4.1.9.5.

6.45.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the VERIFY (10) command is defined in Table 644.

Table 644 — Recommended Errors for the VERIFY (10) Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.46 WRITE (10) Command

6.46.1 Introduction

The WRITE (10) Command requests that the Drive write Host data to the medium. In order to achieve correct operation, the Drive may require information from the Write Parameters mode page. If Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature (0029h) is current, the Drive shall follow the setting of the PER bit and the EMCDR field in Read-Write Error Recovery mode page (see 7.3.2.7). Table 645 shows the Features associated with the WRITE (10) command.

Table 645 — Features Associated with the WRITE (10) Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0020h	Random Writable	Mandatory
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
0022h	Sector Erasable	Mandatory
0025h	Write Once	Mandatory
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0027h	CD-RW CAV Overwrite	Mandatory
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory
002Ah	DVD+RW	Mandatory (when Write bit is set)
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory (when Write bit is set)
002Ch	Rigid Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
002Dh	CD Track At Once	Mandatory
002Eh	CD Mastering (both SAO and RAW)	Mandatory
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory (when Write bit is set)
0041h	BD Write	Mandatory
0042h	TSR	Mandatory

6.46.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.46.2.1 The CDB

The WRITE (10) CDB is shown in Table 646.

Table 646 — WRITE (10) CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (2Ah)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="3">Restricted for [SBC-2]</td><td>DPO</td><td>FUA</td><td>TSR</td><td>Restricted for [SBC-2]</td><td>Obsolete</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="4">Logical Block Address</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td><td colspan="5">Restricted for [SBC-2]</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="2">Transfer Length</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.46.2.2 DPO

For MM Drives, the Disable Page Out (DPO) bit shall be set to zero. For a description of DPO, see [SBC-2].

6.46.2.3 FUA

A FUA (force unit access) bit, set to one, indicates that the Drive shall access the media in performing the command prior to returning GOOD status. In the case where the cache contains a more recent version of a logical block than the media, the logical block shall first be written to the media. WRITE commands shall not return GOOD status until the logical blocks have actually been written on the media, and the Write process is complete. This mode may not operate correctly with a sequence of writes intended to produce a continuous stream unless command queuing is implemented

A FUA bit of zero indicates that the Drive may satisfy the command by accessing the cache memory. For WRITE operations, logical blocks may be transferred directly to the cache memory. GOOD status may be returned to the Host prior to writing the logical blocks to the medium. Any error that occurs after the GOOD status is returned is a deferred error, and information regarding the error is not reported until the following command.

6.46.2.4 TSR

Timely Safe Recording (TSR) bit, set to one, indicates during phase one that the Drive shall detect and report defective writable units within the Error reporting threshold set in Read/Write Error Detection and Recovery Parameters mode page (page code 01h). The Drive may perform certify before write or may perform verification after write or both or another method of error detection but shall ensure error detection is performed. The same bit, set to one, indicates also that replacement due to defect shall not be perform at this time – AWRE (Automatic Write Reallocation Enabled) and Write Retry Count settings from Read/Write Error Detection and Recovery mode page shall be ignored – no automatic reallocation and no write retry is allowed.

The host may perform writing with TSR bit set to one, and then may repeat the writing of signaled defective writable units with TSR bit set to zero (rewritable media) or one (write-once media). For best performance, the Drive may remember the defective writable units after reporting them to the host in order to avoid the work of detection if the host writes again this particular writable unit (with or without TSR set to one). For Write-Once media during this phase one, the LBA in CDB shall match an unrecorded LBA. Combination of Pseudo-Overwrite and TSR in a single write command is not permitted.

TSR bit set to one indicates during phase two that the Drive shall perform hardware defect management. This is for the sole use on write once media. During this phase, the LBA in CDB shall match a recorded LBA. Additionally, the Drive shall ensure the LBA matches a DFL entry or a defect found during phase one (if not, the write command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB). The data shall be written by the Drive to the spare area and the DFL shall be updated to reflect this remapping, as if the Drive was performing a defect management for this block.

See 4.21 to distinguish phase one and two on write once media.

If TSR bit is set to one and if the TSR is not present or not current, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITON status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the LBA and transfer length is not matching ECC block first byte and ECC block end, and TSR bit is set to one, the Drive shall fail the command with check condition and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

When TSR bit is set to zero, no change to the behavior of the command is to be performed. However for rewritable media, if TSR is set to zero, and if the writable unit was detected as defective during the execution of an earlier write command with TSR set to one, the Drive may perform replacement immediately, without first attempting to record the known-as-defective writable unit.

FUA and TSR bits are not mutually exclusive. If both FUA and TSR bits are set to one during the phase one of TSR, the Drive shall perform the error detection prior to returning GOOD status. In case a defect is detected, it shall be reported as CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ WRITE ERROR. RECOVERY NEEDED immediately and shall not be reported as deferred error.

6.46.2.5 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field specifies the logical block where the write operation shall begin. If Starting Logical Block Address is not within the range specified by the READ CAPACITY command response, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE. When the Random Writable Feature is

not current, valid Logical Block Addresses may be further restricted. In such cases, if the Starting Logical Block Address is not valid, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE. For all DVD media, the write block size is 2 048 bytes. The Write Parameters mode page shall determine the write block size for writable CD media.

6.46.2.6 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error and no data shall be written.

6.46.3 Command Processing

6.46.3.1 General

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

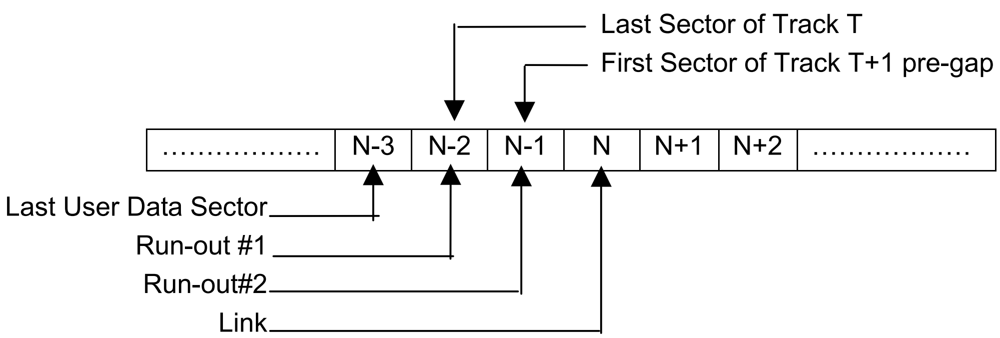
If the currently mounted disc is write-once, the POW Feature is not current, and any block in the write range has already been written, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

If the Hardware Defect Management Feature is current, then the Drive should perform the Write-Verify function for all written data.

6.46.3.2 CD-R Fixed Packet, Variable Packet, Track-At-Once

The Logical Block Address shall be valid within the range 0 through MAXLBA where MAXLBA is the address limit reported by the READ CAPACITY command.

For each track on the disc in which the Track Information reports a valid Next Writable Address, the starting LBA shall be one of the Next Writable Addresses.



If the Starting LBA plus the Transfer Length minus 3 is greater than the remaining blank space of the track, the data shall be written until the end of track is encountered

6.46.3.3 SAO Raw on CD-R/-RW, DAO and Incremental on DVD-R/-RW

Session-At-Once Raw recording begins in the disc Lead-in. LBAs in the range of –45 150 (FFFF4FA2h) to –1 (FFFFFFFFh) shall be encoded as a two's complement negative number. Values in the range 0 through FFFF4FA1h shall be considered positive values.

Table 647 shows the LBA to MSF mapping.

For CD-R/RW media, the block size shall be determined by the Write Parameters Page (if in track at once, packet, or raw mode) or by the cue sheet (session at once mode).

The Logical Block Address shall be valid within the range 0 through MAXLBA where MAXLBA is the address reported by the READ CAPACITY command.

Table 647 — LBA to MSF translation

Condition	Formulae
-150 ≤ LBA ≤ 404 849	$M = FI\left(\frac{LBA+150}{60*75}\right)$ $S = FI\left(\frac{LBA+150-M*60*75}{75}\right)$ $F = FI(LBA+150-M*60*75-S*75)$
-451 150 ≤ LBA ≤ -151	$M = FI\left(\frac{LBA+450150}{60*75}\right)$ $S = FI\left(\frac{LBA+450150-M*60*75}{75}\right)$ $F = FI(LBA+450150-M*60*75-S*75)$
00:00:00 ≤ MSF ≤ 89:59:74	$LBA = (M*60+S)*75+F-150$
90:00:00 ≤ MSF ≤ 99:59:74	$LBA = (M*60+S)*75+F-450150$

For CD-R and DVD-R, once actual writing to the media has started, the data stream is typically uninterrupted until the recording is done. Interruptions of data are called “under-run.” The under-run condition may also be forced with the SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command. The Drive shall behave as follows in an under-run condition.

1. Session at Once mode (Disc at Once mode for DVD): The Drive shall generate and write a Lead-out (the Lead-in was generated and written before any data). The Drive shall update the PMA (CD) or RMA (DVD).
2. Track at Once mode: The Drive shall pad the track (if reserved or not minimum length) and update the PMA (CD).
3. Variable Packet (Incremental mode of DVD): For CD, if insufficient space exists for another variable packet within a reserved track, the Drive shall pad the packet such that it fills the track. Otherwise, the Drive shall write run-out and link blocks. For DVD the Drive shall perform linking.
4. Fixed Packet (Restricted Overwrite mode CD-RW): The Drive shall pad the packet.
5. Raw mode: The Drive shall write run-out and link blocks. The Drive shall read the TOC and track information from the session just written and update the PMA. It is assumed that the Host has written the Lead-out.
6. Rigid Restricted Overwrite mode (DVD-RW): The start address and the end address of a write command shall be ECC block boundry. If the address is not ECC block boundry, the Drive shall return a CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

If the block number specified by the LBA field is already written on CD-R media, the Drive shall return a CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE. This error indicates that an under-run may have occurred, as the run-out and link blocks occupy logical addresses. On CD-RW media, the LBA shall specify an address that is an appendable point (according to CD-R rules) or is the first user data block of an existing packet or track.

While writing is occurring, the Drive may not be able to process all commands. The following is a list of commands that shall function during writing without causing a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE.

1. TEST UNIT READY
2. REQUEST SENSE
3. INQUIRY
4. READ TRACK INFO (for current track). If the LBA or track number specified is not within the current track, the Drive may return CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values are set to ILLEGAL

REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

5. READ BUFFER CAPACITY
6. WRITE with the NWA in the current track.
7. GET CONFIGURATION
8. GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION

All other commands shall process normally, but may force a SYNCHRONIZE CACHE before executing. The process of writing from the Drive's cache to the medium shall not cause a not ready condition for any command. When the Drive is padding a reserved track or writing Lead-in and Lead-out, a WRITE command may be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status with SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS.

When Restricted Overwrite method is currently performed (Restricted Overwrite Feature (0026h) or Rigid Restricted Overwrite Feature (002Ch)), READ (10) command or READ (12) command shall be performed normally after data in buffer is written on the disc.

In case of DRT-DM mode, when Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature (0029h) is current and when the EMCDR field is set to 2 or 3, and if a Type 1, Type 2, or Type 3 defect level is found in DBI memory for any of the blocks being written, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT at the completion of the command. Type 4 defect shall be stored in DBI memory. Data in buffer shall be written on the medium normally.

6.46.3.4 Write Protect

If the currently mounted disc is write protected, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense shall be set according to 4.23.9.

In the case of BD media, if the user data zone is protected by a DWP PAC or the user data zone is protected by the unknown PAC rules of some unknown PAC, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to DATAPROTECT/WRITE PROTECTED/PERSISTENT WRITE PROTECTED.

6.46.3.5 BD-RE

No change from Removable Disk Profile behavior. Since this includes the Random Writable Feature with a write block size of 2 048 bytes. This requires that the Drive implement a read-modify-write process in order to support random logical block writing.

6.46.3.6 BD-R RRM

If the LBA of any block in the write range has already been written, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to BLANK CHECK/WORM MEDIUM - OVERWRITE ATTEMPTED (08/30/0C).

6.46.3.7 BD-R SRM-POW

If the Logical Block Address field is not the NWA of some open Logical Track, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE.

Data from a previous write command(s) may be buffered for recording to Logical Track N. If the current WRITE command starts with the NWA of Logical Track M ≠ N, then the Drive may pad the buffered data to a Cluster boundary and may flush to the disc prior to buffering for data for append to Logical Track M.

If the FUA bit is set to 1 all data supplied from this command shall be recorded prior to returning command status. If the data for last block of this command is not stored in sector 31 of the targeted Cluster, the Drive shall append padding blocks until the end of the Cluster.

6.46.3.8 BD-R SRM+POW mandatory Flush Conditions

If a sequence of appending write commands leaves the last Cluster buffer only partially filled, the Drive shall typically wait for additional appending write commands in order to complete filling the Cluster buffer. If instead, a different disc accessing command is received, the Cluster buffer shall be padded with zeros and written to the disc prior to executing the new command. This is called flushing the Cluster.

If the new command is:

TEST UNIT READY,
READ TRACK INFORMATION,
GET EVENT/STATUS NOTIFICATION,
GET CONFIGURATION,
REQUEST SENSE,
INQUIRY, or
READ BUFFER CAPACITY,

the command shall be executed to completion and the Cluster shall not be flushed.

TDMS updates are not typically performed each time the TDMS changes. Updates are collected and performed at some vendor specific time. If a

CLOSE TRACK/SESSION command,
FORMAT UNIT command,
RESERVE TRACK command,
SEND DISC STRUCTURE command,(PAC),
SYNCHRONIZE CACHE command, or
START STOP UNIT command (Eject, Sleep)

is received while TDMS changes are pending, the TDMS shall be updated prior to executing any subsequent WRITE command.

6.46.3.9 When Using the TSR Method with BD Media

In case of TSR bit set to one during phase one, when TSR recording method Feature (0042h) is current and if a defect is found for the writable unit being written, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to MEDIUM ERROR/WRITE ERROR - RECOVERY NEEDED within the error reporting threshold set through Read-Write Error Recovery mode page. Both errors found during writing and errors found during verify shall be reported with this error code. Data in buffer for non defective writable unit(s) shall be written on the medium normally. In other words, data in buffer for other writable unit(s) than the writable unit reported as defective shall be written, or if eventually the other writable unit(s) is found defective, they shall be equally reported as defective. If this CHECK CONDITION with said sense bytes is returned, the Host shall read the defect information using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data).

Reporting of non-manageable defects such as incompatible media for write are unchanged by TSR bit.

6.46.4 Timeouts

The WRITE (10) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NOT READY/ INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION. When the FUA bit in the CDB is set to zero, and the WCE bit in the Cacheing mode page is set to one timeouts are permitted only as deferred errors.

6.46.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the WRITE (10) command is defined in Table 648.

Table 648 — Recommended Errors for the WRITE (10) Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Errors Associated with writing	Table F.7	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.47 WRITE (12) Command

6.47.1 Introduction

The WRITE (12) command requests that the Drive write Host data to the medium. In order to achieve correct operation, the Drive may require information from the Write Parameters mode page.

Table 649 shows the Features associated with the WRITE (12) command.

Table 649 — Features Associated with the WRITE (12) Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory (with Streaming set to 1)
002Ah	DVD+RW	Mandatory (when Write bit is set)
002Bh	DVD+R	Mandatory (when Write bit is set)
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW	Mandatory
003Bh	DVD+R DL	Mandatory (when Write bit is set)
0042h	TSR	Mandatory (with TSR set to 1)

6.47.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.47.2.1 The CDB

The WRITE (12) CDB is shown in Table 650.

Table 650 — WRITE (12) CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (Aah)							
1	Restricted for [SBC-2]			DPO	FUA	TSR	Restricted for [SBC-2]	Obsolete
2	(MSB)	Logical Block Address						
3								
4								
5								(LSB)
6	(MSB)	Transfer Length						
7								
8								
9								(LSB)
10	Streaming	VNR	Reserved	Restricted for [SBC-2]				
11	Control							

6.47.2.2 DPO

For MM Drives, the Disable Page Out (DPO) bit shall be set to zero. For a description of DPO, see [SBC-2].

6.47.2.3 FUA

The Force Unit Access (FUA) bit is defined in 6.46.2.3.

6.47.2.4 TSR

The Timely Safe Recording (TSR) bit is defined in 6.46.2.4.

6.47.2.5 Logical Block Address

The Logical Block Address field specifies the logical block where the write operation shall begin. If Starting Logical Block Address is not within the range specified by the READ CAPACITY command response, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to

ILLEGAL REQUEST/LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE. When the Random Writable Feature is not current, valid Logical Block Addresses may be further restricted. In such cases, if the Starting Logical Block Address is not valid, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE. For all DVD media, the write block size is 2 048 bytes. The Write Parameters mode page shall determine the write block size for writable CD media.

6.47.2.6 Transfer Length

The Transfer Length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data that shall be transferred. A Transfer Length of zero indicates that no data shall be transferred. This condition shall not be considered an error and no data shall be written.

6.47.2.7 VNR

6.47.2.7.1 When the Currently Mounted Disc is not BD-R

VNR is applicable only to BD-R. The Drive shall ignore VNR when the currently mounted media is not BD-R.

6.47.2.7.2 When the Currently Mounted Disc is BD-R

If the Hardware Defect Management feature is current, non-streamed writes should be verified by the Drive in an automatic, verify-after-write process. Some applications may be designed to expect behavior associated with Drives and media that do not automatically perform verify-after-write (e.g. write-once media without spare areas). The VNR (Verify-Not-Required) bit provides a method by which the Drive may provide both behaviors.

If Streaming is set to one, VNR has no meaning.

If Streaming is set to zero and VNR is set to one, the default behavior of automatic verify-after-write functions are unchanged.

If Streaming is set to zero and VNR is set to one, the default automatic verify-after-write functions in the BD-R Drive should be disabled.

6.47.3 Command Processing

6.47.3.1 General

When Streaming is set to zero and VNR is set to zero, the description of the WRITE (12) command is the same as the WRITE (10) command.

6.47.3.2 Blocking Factor

The Starting LBA and the Transfer Length identify a Logical Track into which the data is to be written. The Track Information for that Logical Track identifies a Blocking Factor. When the Host issues the command with the Streaming bit set to one, the values of the Starting Logical Block Address and the Transfer Length fields shall each be an integral multiple of the Blocking factor. If either the Starting Logical Block Address field or the Transfer Length field is not set to an integral multiple of the Blocking Factor, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

6.47.3.3 Streaming

If the Streaming bit is zero, the write operation shall be according to the WRITE (10) command. If the Streaming bit is one, Stream recording operation shall be used for the command.

If the Streaming bit is set to 1 and if the Drive supports Group3 timeout and if G3Enable bit in Timeout & Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, the Drive shall terminate this command within Group 3 timeout. If the G3Enable bit is set to 0, this command is categorized as Group 1 timeout.

When the Streaming bit is set to one, the FUA bit shall be set to zero. If both the Streaming bit and the FUA bit are set to one, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status with SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

If the Streaming bit is set to one and the Caching Page is supported, the WCE (Write Cache Enable) bit in the Caching Page shall be set to one. If the Streaming bit is set to one and WCE is zero, the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status with SK/ASC/ASCQ values set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN CDB.

TSR and Streaming bits are not mutually exclusive. When both bits are set to one, the Drive shall perform stream write with error detection and report but no replacement if a defect is found. If insufficient time is available to perform error detection given the data rate streaming requirement set by the host through an earlier SET STREAMING Command, and given the Error reporting threshold set by the host through an earlier MODE SELECT on Read/Write Error Detection and Recovery Parameters mode page, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

With TSR and Streaming bits combination, the host software will have a guaranteed average streaming speed, but has to expect the write to be done by burst by the Drive. Hence the host software has buffer data between bursts (while Drive is detecting potential errors),

6.47.3.4 Unable to Write

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

6.47.3.5 DVD-RAM

For the DVD-RAM Ver.2.1, the Drive shall set to one all Recording Type bits that are in the Data ID fields of all sectors within the ECC Block to be written, when WRITE (12) command with the Streaming bit set to one is issued by the Host. The Drive shall set all the Recording Type bits to zero when WRITE (12) command with the Streaming bit set to zero is issued by the Host.

6.47.3.6 DVD+RW

If the media is DVD+RW and is blank (never formatted), then a write to any address shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED.

6.47.4 Timeouts

The WRITE (12) command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NOT READY/ INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION. When the FUA bit in the CDB is set to zero, and the WCE bit in the Cacheing mode page is set to one timeouts are permitted only as deferred errors.

If the Drive supports Group3 timeout and the G3Enable bit in Timeout and Protect mode page (1Dh) is set to 1, WRITE (12) with Streaming = 1 is re-categorized as Group 3 timeout. Refer to 4.1.9.5.

6.47.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the WRITE (12) command is defined in Table 651.

Table 651 — Recommended Errors for the WRITE (12) Command

Error	Reference	May be Deferred
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1	
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2	
Readiness errors	Table F.3	
General media access errors	Table F.5	√
Errors Associated with writing	Table F.7	√
Hardware failures	Table F.8	√

6.48 WRITE AND VERIFY (10) Command

6.48.1 Introduction

The WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command requests that the Drive write the data transferred from the Host to the medium and then verify that the data is correctly written.

Table 652 shows the Features associated with the WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command.

Table 652 — Features Associated with the WRITE AND VERIFY (10) Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0020h	Random Writable	Mandatory
0025h	Write Once	Mandatory
002Ah	DVD+RW	Mandatory (when Write bit is set to one)

6.48.2 The CDB and Its Parameters

6.48.2.1 The CDB

The WRITE AND VERIFY (10) CDB is shown in Table 653.

Table 653 — WRITE AND VERIFY (10) CDB

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td colspan="8">Operation Code (2Eh)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="3">Restricted for [SBC-2]</td><td>DPO</td><td colspan="2">Reserved</td><td>Restricted for [SBC-2]</td><td>Obsolete</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="4">Starting Logical Block Address</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="3">Reserved</td><td colspan="5">Restricted for [SBC-2]</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="2">Transfer Length</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td colspan="8">Control</td></tr>
</table>

6.48.2.2 DPO

For MM Drives, the Disable Page Out (DPO) bit shall be set to zero. For a description of DPO, see [SBC-2].

6.48.2.3 Starting Logical Block Address

Starting Logical Block Address references the block at which the operation shall begin.

6.48.2.4 Transfer Length

Transfer length specifies the number of contiguous logical blocks of data or blanks that shall be written and verified. A transfer length of zero indicates that no logical blocks shall be verified. This condition shall not be considered as an error. Any other value indicates the number of logical blocks that shall be verified.

6.48.3 Command Processing

If the Drive is unable to write to the currently mounted medium, error reporting should follow the guidelines according to 4.1.6.3.

Writing shall be according to the description of the WRITE (10) command with the FUA bit is set to one.

Verify Error Recovery mode page parameters are not supported by MM Drives. The Drive shall utilize the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page as verify parameters. The AWRE and ARRE bits shall control automatic reallocation.

If Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature (0029h) is current, the Drive shall follow the setting of the PER bit and the EMCDR field in Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (01h). See Clause 4.19.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD-RAM, the verify operation of this command shall use stricter criteria for data recoverability than is used by read commands. The criteria are derived from the DVD-RAM Book, with additional vendor specific criteria allowed.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD-RAM Ver.2.1, the Drive shall set to zero all Recording Type bits that are in the Data ID fields of all sectors within the ECC Block to be written.

If the currently mounted medium is DVD+RW and the medium is blank (never formatted), then a write to any address shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED.

6.48.4 Timeouts

The WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command belongs to timeout group 2. The group-2 timeout value is only for Host information. The Drive shall not time group 2 timeout commands. Execution shall continue until completion.

6.48.5 Error Reporting

Recommended error reporting for the WRITE AND VERIFY (10) command is defined in Table 654.

Table 654 — Recommended Errors for the WRITE AND VERIFY (10) Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Readiness errors	Table F.3
General media access errors	Table F.5
Errors Associated with writing	Table F.7
Hardware failures	Table F.8

6.49 WRITE BUFFER Command

6.49.1 Introduction

In MM devices, the WRITE BUFFER command is used in conjunction with the READ BUFFER command for upgrading microcode.

The WRITE BUFFER command may also be used in conjunction with the READ BUFFER command as a diagnostic function for testing memory in the device and the integrity of the service delivery subsystem.

This command shall not alter any medium of the Drive when the data mode or the combined header and data mode is specified.

The features associated with this command are shown in Table 655.

Table 655 — Features Associated with the WRITE BUFFER Command

Feature Number	Feature Name	Command Requirement
0104h	Microcode Upgrade	Mode 07h (Download microde with offsets and save) is Mandatory

The WRITE BUFFER command is described in [SPC-3].

6.49.2 Timeouts

The WRITE BUFFER command belongs to timeout group 1. If the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status due to a timeout, sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION.

6.49.3 Error Reporting

Table 656 describes errors that may occur during the operation of the Command or that may cause a CHECK CONDITION status to be reported.

Table 656 — Recommended Errors for the WRITE BUFFER Command

Error	Reference
Unit Attention conditions	Table F.1
CDB or parameter list validation errors	Table F.2
Hardware failures	Table F.8

7 Mode Parameters for Multi-Media Devices

7.1 Overview
This clause describes the mode parameter headers and mode pages used with the MODE SELECT (10) command and the MODE SENSE (10) command.

7.2 Mode Parameter List
A mode parameter list shall be transferred from the Drive to the Host during the execution of the MODE SENSE (10) command. A mode parameter list shall be transferred from the Host to the Drive during the execution of the MODE SELECT (10) command.

The mode parameter list (Table 657) contains a header followed by zero or more variable-length mode pages.

Table 657 — Mode Parameter List

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0 – 7	Mode Parameter Header							
8 – n	mode page(s)							

7.2.1 Mode Parameter Header Format
The Mode Parameters Header (Table 658) contains information about subsequent mode parameter data.

Table 658 — Mode Parameters Header

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(MSB)	Mode Data Length						
1								(LSB)
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)	Block Descriptor Length = 0						
7								(LSB)

When returned by the MODE SENSE (10) command, the Mode Data Length field is the length in bytes of available data that followings the Mode Data Length field. The Mode Data Length does not include the number of bytes in the Mode Data Length field.

When transferred during execution of the MODE SELECT (10) command, Mode Data Length is reserved.

Block Descriptor length shall be set to zero since Multi-media devices do not support Block Descriptors.

7.2.2 Mode Pages

Mode pages are used to provide parametric information from the Drive to the Host or from the Host to the Drive. Table 659 shows mode pages available to Multi-media Drives.

Since MM Drives do not support sub-pages of mode pages, the Sub-Page field of the MODE SELECT (10) command is ignored by the Drive.

Table 659 — Mode Pages for MM Drives

Page Code	Description	Reference
00h	Vendor-specific (does not require mode page format)	-
01h	Read/Write Error Recovery mode page	7.3
03h	Legacy (formerly MRW, see Annex E)	-
05h	Write Parameter mode page	7.4
08h	Caching mode page	7.5
1Ah	Power Condition mode page	7.6
1Ch	Informational Exceptions Control mode page	7.7
1Dh	Timeout and Protect mode page	7.8

7.2.3 Mode Page Format

The general format of a mode page is shown in Table 660.

Table 660 — Mode Page Format

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>PS/
Reserved</td><td>Reserved</td><td colspan="6">Page Code</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="8">Page Length (n – 1)</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td colspan="8" rowspan="3">Mode Parameters</td></tr>
<tr><td>...</td></tr>
<tr><td>n</td></tr>
</table>

7.2.3.1 Parameters Savable bit (PS)

7.2.3.1.1 PS in the MODE SENSE Returned Data

When Parameters Savable (PS) bit is zero (0), the Drive does not support saving this mode page data.

7.2.3.1.2 PS in the MODE SELECT Parameter List

When using the MODE SELECT (10) command, the PS bit is reserved.

7.2.3.2 Page Code

The Page Code field identifies the format and parameters defined for the mode page.

7.2.3.2.1 Page Code in the MODE SENSE Returned Data

If the Drive implements mode page 00h (a vendor specific page) and the MODE SENSE (10) command is received with Page Code (CDB parameter) set to 3Fh (return all pages), then mode page 00h shall appear last in the returned data.

7.2.3.2.2 Page Code in the MODE SELECT Parameter List

The Host may specify a Page Code from any of the pages in Table 659. If the Drive does not support the page specified by the Page Code, then the command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

7.2.3.3 Page Length

The Page Length field specifies the length in bytes of the mode parameters that follow.

7.2.3.3.1 Page Length in the MODE SENSE Returned Data

The Drive is permitted to implement a mode page that is less than the full-page length, provided no field is truncated and the Page Length field correctly specifies the actual length implemented.

7.2.3.3.2 Page Length in the MODE SELECT Parameter List

If the Host does not set this value to the value that is returned for the page by the MODE SENSE command, the Drive shall terminate the command with CHECK CONDITION status and SK/ASC/ASCQ values shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST.

7.2.4 Using Mode Parameters for MM Devices

Mode pages described and required by Features shall be present if the Feature is reported by the Drive, regardless of whether or not the Feature is current. The current values and changeable masks shall not change, even across morphing. Default values may change when morphing occurs. Default values shall reflect a usable set of values for the loaded medium. Changes made by the Drive to the default values shall not generate a UNIT ATTENTION condition.

7.3 Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (Page Code 01h)

7.3.1 Introduction

The Read/Write Error Recovery mode page (Table 662) specifies the error recovery parameters the Drive shall use during any command that performs a data read or write operation from the media (e.g. READ, READ CD, WRITE, etc.).

Table 661 shows the Features associated with the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page.

Table 661 — Features Associated with the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page

Feature Number	Feature Name	Requirement
0010h	Random Readable	Mandatory when PP bit is 1.
0020h	Random Writable	Mandatory when PP bit is 1.
0024h	Hardware Defect Management	Mandatory
0025h	Write Once	Mandatory when PP bit is 1.
0029h	Enhanced Defect Reporting	Mandatory
0042h	TSR	Mandatory

7.3.2 The Mode Page and its Parameters

7.3.2.1 The Mode Page

Table 662 — Read/Write Error Recovery mode page Format

<table>
<tr><th>Bit
Byte</th><th>7</th><th>6</th><th>5</th><th>4</th><th>3</th><th>2</th><th>1</th><th>0</th></tr>
<tr><td>0</td><td>PS</td><td>Reserved</td><td colspan="6">Page Code (01h)</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td colspan="8">Page Length (0Ah)</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">2</td><td colspan="8">Error Recovery Behavior</td></tr>
<tr><td>AWRE</td><td>ARRE</td><td>TB</td><td>RC</td><td>Reserved</td><td>PER</td><td>DTE</td><td>DCR</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td colspan="8">Read Retry Count</td></tr>
<tr><td>4</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>5</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>6</td><td colspan="8">Reserved</td></tr>
<tr><td>7</td><td colspan="6">Reserved</td><td colspan="2">EMCDR</td></tr>
<tr><td>8</td><td colspan="8">Write Retry Count</td></tr>
<tr><td>9</td><td>(MSB)</td><td colspan="6" rowspan="3">Error Reporting Window size</td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>10</td><td></td><td></td></tr>
<tr><td>11</td><td></td><td>(LSB)</td></tr>
</table>

7.3.2.2 PS bit

The Parameters Savable (PS) bit is defined in 7.2.3.1.

7.3.2.3 Page Code

The Page Code field shall be set to 01h, identifying the Read/Write Error Recovery mode page.

7.3.2.4 Page Length

The Page Length shall be set to 0Ah.

7.3.2.5 Error Recovery Behavior

7.3.2.5.1 Automatic Write Reallocation Enabled (AWRE)

The Automatic Write Reallocation Enabled bit (AWRE) shall be ignored when the Current bit of the Defect Management Feature descriptor is set to zero.

If AWRE bit is set to zero, the Drive shall not perform automatic reallocation of defective data blocks during write operations.

If AWRE is set to one, the Drive shall enable automatic reallocation of defective blocks during write operations. Error reporting as required by the error recovery bits (PER, DTE, and DCR) shall be performed only after completion of the reallocation.

7.3.2.5.2 Automatic Read Reallocation Enabled (ARRE)

The Automatic Read Reallocation Enabled bit (ARRE) shall be ignored when the Current bit of the Defect Management Feature descriptor is set to zero.

If ARRE is set to zero, the Drive shall not perform automatic reallocation of defective data blocks during read operations.

If ARRE is set to one, the Drive shall enable automatic reallocation of defective data blocks during read operations. All error recovery actions required by the error recovery bits (TB, PER, DTE, and DCR) shall be processed. The automatic reallocation shall then be performed only if the Drive successfully recovers the data. Error reporting as required by the error recovery bits shall be performed only after completion of the reallocation. The reallocation process shall present any failures that occur. When ARRE is set to one, DCR and RC shall be each set to zero.

When DVD+RW media with the Basic Format is detected, the Default values for ARRE and AWRE (as reported when CDB parameter PC = 10b) shall be zero.

Support for ARRE = 1 is optional. It is recommended that MM Drives support only ARRE = 0.

7.3.2.5.3 Transfer Block (TB)

A transfer block (TB) bit of zero indicates that a data block that has not been successfully recovered shall not be transferred to the Host. A TB bit of one indicates that a data block that is not recovered within the recovery limits specified shall be transferred to the Host before CHECK CONDITION status is returned. The TB bit does not affect the action taken for recovered data.

7.3.2.5.4 Read Continuous (RC)

A Read Continuous (RC) bit of zero indicates that error recovery operations that cause delays are acceptable during the data transfer. The Drive shall assign priority to this bit over conflicting error control bits (EER, DCR, DTE, and PER) within this byte.

A RC bit of one indicates the Drive shall transfer the entire requested length of data without adding delays to perform error recovery procedures. This implies that the Drive may send data that is erroneous or fabricated in order to maintain a continuous flow of data. Fabricated data may be data already in the buffer or any other vendor-specific data. This bit may be used in image processing, audio, or video applications. A read continuous (RC) bit of zero indicates that error recovery operations that cause delays are acceptable during the data transfer.

7.3.2.5.5 Post Error (PER)

A Post Error (PER) bit controls recovered error reporting of Drive. This bit is used in conjunction with the EMCDR field if Drive supports Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature. The description of this bit is described in 7.3.2.7.1, “Description of PER bit and EMCDR field”.

A Post Error (PER) bit of one indicates that the Drive shall report recovered errors. A PER bit of zero indicates that the Drive shall not report recovered errors. Error recovery procedures shall be performed within the limits established by the error recovery parameters. In order to enhance data recovery from DVD media, error correction shall always be enabled. Thus, PER shall not apply to error corrected data. This bit for DVD media shall only be used to report when auto reallocation of a logical block has been performed. For CD media this capability is used only to report when the Layered Error correction has been used to recover the data.

A Disable Transfer on Error (DTE) bit of one indicates that the Drive shall terminate the data transfer to the Host upon detection of a recovered error. A DTE bit of zero indicates that the Drive shall not terminate the data transfer upon detection of a recovered error.

A Disable Correction (DCR) bit of one indicates that error correction codes shall not be used for data error recovery. A DCR bit of zero allows the use of error correction codes for data error recovery. In order to enhance data recovery from DVD media, error correction shall always be enabled regardless of the setting of DCR.

7.3.2.5.6 Disable Transfer on Error (DTE)

A Disable Transfer on Error (DTE) bit of one indicates that the Drive shall terminate the data transfer to the Host upon detection of a recovered error. A DTE bit of zero indicates that the Drive shall not terminate the data transfer upon detection of a recovered error.

7.3.2.5.7 Disable Correction (DCR)

A Disable Correction (DCR) bit of one indicates that error correction codes shall not be used for data error recovery. A DCR bit of zero allows the use of error correction codes for data error recovery.

7.3.2.5.8 Error Recovery Cases for CD

An interpretation of the bits 5-0 in byte 2 for CD-ROM Drives is given in Table 663.

Table 663 — CD-ROM Devices, error recovery description

Code	Description
00h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. If an error occurs that is uncorrectable with the error correction codes (ECC) on the media, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
01h	Only retries of the read operation and CIRC are used (layered error correction is not used). Only CIRC unrecovered data errors are reported. If a CIRC un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
04h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the last block where a recovered data error was detected. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information available on the media, data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected.
05h	Only retries of the read operation and CIRC are used (layered error correction is not used). Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the last block where a CIRC recovered data error was detected. If an un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected.
06h	The maximum error recovery procedures are used. Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the recovered error is not transferred. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the recovered data error was detected. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information on the medium, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected.

Table 663– CD-ROM Devices, error recovery description (cont.)

Code	Description
07h	Only retries of the read operation are used (layered error correction is not used). CIRC recovered data errors are reported. If a CIRC recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the recovered error is not transferred. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the recovered data error was detected. If an CIRC un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected.
10h	If it is possible to maintain data transfer, the maximum error recovery procedures available are used. (RC=1.) If an error occurs that is uncorrectable with the error codes (ECC) on the media, or is uncorrectable in time to maintain data transfer, the data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the first un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
11h	If it is possible to maintain data transfer, retries of the read operation and CIRC are used (layered error correction is not used). (RC=1.) Only CIRC un-recovered data errors are reported. If a CIRC un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the first un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information available on the media, data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected.
14h	If it is possible to maintain data transfer, the maximum error recovery procedures available are used. (RC=1.) Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where a recovered data error was detected. If an data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information available on the media, or is uncorrectable in time to maintain data transfer, the data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the first un-recovered error was detected. Reporting un-recovered errors takes precedence over reporting recovered errors.
15h	If it is possible to maintain data transfer, retries of the read operation and CIRC are used (layered error correction is not used). (RC=1.) Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where a CIRC recovered data error was detected. If an un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
20h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. If an error occurs that is uncorrectable with the error correction codes (ECC) on the media, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.

Table 663– CD-ROM Devices, error recovery description (cont.)

Code	Description
21h	Only retries of the read operation and CIRC are used (layered error correction is not used). Only CIRC un-recovered data errors are reported. If an CIRC un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
24h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the last block where a recovered data error was detected. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information available on the media, data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected.
25h	Only retries of the read operation and CIRC are used (layered error correction is not used). Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the last block where a CIRC recovered data error was detected. If an un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected.
26h	The maximum error recovery procedures are used. Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the recovered error is transferred. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the recovered data error was detected. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information on the medium, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected.
27h	Only retries of the read operation are used (layer error correction is not used). CIRC recovered data errors are reported. If a CIRC recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the recovered error is transferred. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the recovered data error was detected. If a CIRC un-recovered data error occurs, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected.
30h	Same as code 10h
31h	Same as code 11h
34h	Same as code 14h
35h	Same as code 15h

7.3.2.5.9 Error Recovery Cases for DVD

An interpretation of the bits 5-0 in byte 2 for DVD-ROM Drives is given in Table 664.

Table 664 — DVD Devices, Error Recovery Description

Code	Error Recovery Description
00h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. If an error occurs that is uncorrectable with the error correction codes (ECC) on the media, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
04h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs, data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the last block where a recovered data error was detected. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information available on the media, data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is not transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected. The only possible recovered errors are when a block is automatically reassigned using ARRE.
10h	If it is possible to maintain data transfer, the maximum error recovery procedures available are used. (RC = 1.) If an error occurs that is uncorrectable with the error correction codes (ECC) on the media, or is uncorrectable in time to maintain data transfer, the data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the first unrecovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
20h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. If an error occurs that is uncorrectable with the error correction codes (ECC) on the media, data transfer is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the un-recovered error was detected. Recovered errors are not reported.
24h	The maximum error recovery procedures available are used. Recovered data errors are reported. If a recovered data error occurs data transfer is not terminated. However, when the data transfer has completed, CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The sense key is set to RECOVERED ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the last block where a recovered data error was detected. If a data error occurs that is uncorrectable with the ECC information available on the media data transfer is terminated and CHECK CONDITION status is reported. The block with the error is transferred. The sense key is set to MEDIUM ERROR. The information bytes give the address of the block where the uncorrectable error was detected. The only possible recovered errors are when a block is automatically reassigned using ARRE.

7.3.2.6 Read Retry Count

The Read Retry Count field specifies the number of times that the Drive shall attempt its read recovery algorithm.

7.3.2.7 Enhanced Media Certification and Defect Reporting (EMCDR)

The Enhanced Media Certification and Defect Reporting (EMCDR) field controls medium certification and error reporting of Drive. This field is used in conjunction with PER bit. Host should set this field to 0 if Drive does not support Enhanced Defect Reporting feature. The description of this bit is described in 7.3.2.7.1.

7.3.2.7.1 Description of PER bit and EMCDR field

Description of PER bit and EMCDR field is different if Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is supported and is current. Following sub-clasue 7.3.2.7.2 and 7.3.2.7.3 describe the description. By the setting PER bit and EMCDR field to 0, DBI data shall not be cleared.

7.3.2.7.2 In case of Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is not supported or is not current

If the Drive does not support Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature, Host should set EMCDR field to 0.

If the Drive supports Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature and Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is not current, Drive shall ignore the EMCDR field setting.

A Post Error (PER) bit of one indicates that the Drive shall report recovered errors. A PER bit of zero indicates that the Drive shall not report recovered errors. Error recovery procedures shall be performed within the limits established by the error recovery parameters. This capability is very different for DVD media. To be able to recover the data from DVD media, error correction shall be used. Thus it is not reasonable to report when ECC is used to recover the data. This bit for DVD-RAM media shall only be used to report when auto reallocation of a logical block has been performed.

For CD media this capability is used to report when the Layered Error correction has been used to recover the data.

Again as the CIRC is mandatory for recovery of data, then CIRC Recovered Data Error is defined as follows.

A CIRC Recovered Data Error is defined as a block for which the CIRC based error correction algorithm was unsuccessful for a read attempt, but on a subsequent read operation no error was reported. The number of subsequent read operations is limited to the read retry count. Layered error correction was not used.

A CIRC Unrecovered Data Error is defined as a block for which the CIRC based error correction algorithm was unsuccessful on all read attempts up to the Read Retry count. Layered error correction was not used.

An L-EC Recovered Data Error is defined as a block for which the CIRC based error correction algorithm was unsuccessful, but the layered error correction was able to correct the block within the read retry count.

An L-EC Uncorrectable Data Error is defined as a block that was not corrected by layered error correction within the Read Retry count.

7.3.2.7.3 In case of Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is current

When Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is supported and is current, Drive behavior is described in 4.19. The relationship of PER and EMCDR is shown in Table 665.

Table 665 — Relationship of PER and EMCDR when Enhanced Defect Reporting Feature is current

<table>
<tr><th>PER</th><th>EMCDR</th><th>Drive Responses</th></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">0</td><td>0</td><td>Drive shall not certify medium on read operation and shall not report recovered error</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td>Drive shall certify medium on read operation and verify operation, and shall not report recovered error</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td><td>Drive shall certify medium on read operation and verify operation, and shall report recovered error or unrecovered error on verify operation.</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td><td>Drive shall certify medium on read operation and verify operation, and shall report recovered error or unrecovered error on read operation and verify operation</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="4">1</td><td>0</td><td>Behavior is described in 7.3.2.7.2</td></tr>
<tr><td>1</td><td rowspan="3">Certify medium on read operation and verify operation. Recovered errors shall be reported as RECOVERED ERROR/RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT.</td></tr>
<tr><td>2</td></tr>
<tr><td>3</td></tr>
</table>

7.3.2.8 Write Retry Count

The Write Retry Count field specifies the number of times that the Drive shall attempt its write recovery algorithm.

7.3.2.9 Error Reporting Window size

The Error Reporting Window size field specifies the threshold length for error reporting. It is a count of logical blocks. A defect found during the execution of a write command, or read command, or verification of a writable unit including the LBA of the previously mentioned write command, shall be reported before or when this count of logical block has been transmitted by the host through write commands. The defect may be reported earlier but shall not be reported later. If the expected result of processing a WRITE command is that the count of logical blocks to be exceeded and a defect has already been found but not reported, the WRITE command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NOT

READY/WRITE ERROR RECOVERY NEEDED. The host shall issue again the write command that did cause the count of logical block to be exceeded after reading the defect information from the Drive using GET PERFORMANCE command with Type=02h (Defect Status data). If the expected result of processing a WRITE command is that the count of logical blocks to be exceeded but writing or verification of buffered write commands has not been performed, the WRITE command shall be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to NOT READY/LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY/LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS. The Drive shall then proceed with cache writing and or verification.

A value of 0h means that TSR method is not supported. If TSR method is supported, the threshold's length shall be strictly bigger than the buffer reported by the Drive to READ BUFFER CAPACITY. A threshold length which allows enough delay between the write pass and the verify pass so that write to verify and verify to write transition time is negligible compared to the write time for the threshold length is recommended. If the Drive does not support interruption of verify pass during phase one to proceed incoming commands, it should not allow a threshold length longer than is possible to verify without causing a timeout.

The host may keep the default threshold length or may increase or decrease the threshold length by MODE SELECT. If the value set by the host is not supported, it shall be rounded by the Drive to the nearest smaller threshold supported. The host shall check the selected value using MODE SENSE.

The host shall not change the error reporting threshold during phase one. The Drive shall fail, with CHECK CONDITION and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ shall be set to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR, any change attempt after the first TSR write has been issued and when no synchronize cache command has yet being issued to signal the end of the phase.

7.4 Write Parameters mode page (Page Code 05h)

7.4.1 Introduction

The Write Parameters mode page (Table 667) provides parameters that are often needed in the execution of commands that write to the media. After power-on or hard reset, the Drive shall assign default values according to some supported medium.

Table 666 shows the Features associated with the Write Parameters mode page.

Table 666 — Features Associated with the Write Parameters mode page

Feature Number	Feature Name	Requirement
0021h	Incremental Streaming Writable	Mandatory
0026h	Restricted Overwrite	Mandatory
0027h	CD-RW CAV Write	Mandatory
002Dh	CD Track-At-Once	Mandatory
002Eh	CD Mastering (Both SAO and Raw)	Mandatory
002Fh	DVD-R/-RW Write Feature	Mandatory

7.4.2 Applicable Media

This mode page is useful for CD-R, CD-RW, DVD-R, and DVD-RW media.

For DVD-RW media, if a medium is in Sequential recording mode, usage of this mode page shall conform to descriptions for DVD-R unless otherwise specified. If a medium is in Restricted overwrite mode, this mode page shall not be used.

The values in this page do not necessarily reflect the status on a given medium.

If any parameter value is incompatible with the current medium, the Drive shall terminate any write type command with CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK. Fields not required or ignored for the current medium may contain 0 for the default mode parameter value.

7.4.3 Exempted Media

The parameters specified in this mode page are not applicable to DVD-RAM, DVD+R, DVD+RW, and all recordable BD. When any of these media is mounted and recognized by the Drive, it shall set write speed and internal write parameters as needed to properly access the medium. This shall be done without Host intervention. Furthermore, the Drive shall not modify the current parameters of the Write Parameters mode page.

If the Host changes the Write Parameters mode page, operation with the medium shall not be affected.

7.4.4 The Mode Page and its Parameters

7.4.4.1 The Mode Page

The mode page format is shown in Table 667.

Table 667 — Write Parameters mode page

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	Reserved	Page Code (05h)					
1	Page Length (32h or 36h)							
2	Reserved	BUFE	LS_V	Test Write	Write Type			
3	Multi-session		FP	Copy	Track Mode			
4	Reserved				Data Block Type			
5	Link Size							
6	Reserved							
7	Reserved		Host Application Code					
8	Session Format							
9	Reserved							
10	(MSB)	Packet Size						
11								
12								
13								(LSB)
14	(MSB)	Audio Pause Length						
15								(LSB)
16	(MSB)	Media Catalog Number						
...								
31								(LSB)
32	(MSB)	International Standard Recording Code						
...								
47								(LSB)
48	Sub-header Byte 0							
49	Sub-header Byte 1							
50	Sub-header Byte 2							
51	Sub-header Byte 3							
52 – 55	Vendor Specific							

7.4.4.2 PS bit

The Parameters Savable (PS) bit is defined in 7.2.3.1.

7.4.4.3 Page Code

The Page Code field shall be set to 05h, identifying the Write Parameters mode page.

7.4.4.4 Page Length

The Page Length shall be set to either 32h or 36h, depending upon support for the Vendor Specific field.

7.4.4.5 BUFE

The meaning and use of the BUFE (Buffer Under-run Free recording enable) bit is described in Table 668.

Table 668 — Use of BUFE bit

Drive action with BUFE bit as applied to...		
CD-R and CD-RW	0	Buffer Under-run Free recording is disabled. When performing sequential recording and Drive's write buffer becomes empty, it shall perform linking and terminate writing.
	1	Buffer Under-run Free recording is enabled for sequential recording. The Drive shall perform zero-loss linking and continue writing when the buffer becomes non-empty.
DVD-RAM, DVD+R and DVD+RW	0	The setting of BUFE has no meaning for either DVD-RAM, DVD+R or DVD+RW media and shall be ignored.
	1	
DVD-R and DVD-RW	0	Buffer Under-run Free recording is disabled. When performing sequential recording and Drive's write buffer becomes empty, it shall perform linking and terminate writing.
	1	Buffer Under-run Free recording is enabled for sequential recording. The Drive shall perform zero-loss linking and continue writing when the buffer becomes non-empty.

7.4.4.6 LS_V

If the LS_V (Link Size Valid) bit is set to one, the value in the Link Size field is valid. If the LS_V bit is set to zero, the Link Size field shall be assumed to contain 7.

7.4.4.7 Link Size

The Link Size field specifies the Linking Loss area size in sectors. The Link Size field is valid only for Write Type "Packet/Incremental." When another Write Type is specified, the Drive shall ignore both LS_V bit and Link Size field. The Drive shall accept values that are valid for the Drive but not valid for the current medium. If writing is attempted when an invalid Link Size is set, the Drive shall generate CHECK CONDITION status and set SK/ASC/ASCQ values to ILLEGAL REQUEST/ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK.

7.4.4.8 Test Write

On CD-R/RW media the Test Write bit is valid only for Write Type 1 or 2 (Track at Once or Session at Once).

On DVD-R media, the Test Write bit is valid only for Write Type 0 or 2 (Incremental or Disc-at-once). When the Test Write bit is set to one, it indicates that the device performs the write process, but does not write data to the media. When the bit is set to zero the Write laser power is set such that user data is transferred to the media. In addition, all track and disc information collected, during test write mode, shall be cleared. It should be noted that the number of tracks reserved or written may be limited in test write mode.

7.4.4.9 Write Type

Write Type Field (Table 669) specifies the stream type to be used during writing.

Table 669 — Write Type Field

Field Value	Write Type	Description
00h	Packet/ Incremental	The device shall perform Packet/Incremental writing when WRITE commands are issued.
01h	Track At Once	The device shall perform Track At Once recording when write commands are issued.
02h	Session At Once	The device shall perform Session At Once recording. For CD, this mode requires that a cue sheet be sent prior to sending write commands.
03h	RAW	The device shall write data as received from the Host. In this mode, the Host sends the Lead-in. The Host should provide Q Sub-channel in this mode, the only valid Data Block Types are 1, 2, and 3. The Next Writable Address starts at the beginning of the Lead-in (this shall be a negative LBA on a blank disc). In RAW record mode the Drive shall not generate run-in and run-out blocks (main and Sub-channel 1 data) but shall generate and record the link block. Write Type of Track-at-once and RAW are invalid when DVD-R media is present.
04h	Layer Jump Recording	The Drive shall perform Layer Jump recording when WRITE (10) commands are issued. When this write type is specified, regardless of BUFE bit setting, Buffer Underrun Error Free recording shall be performed.
05h – FFh	Reserved	—

The Multi-session field defines how session closure affects the opening of the next session. See Table 670.

Table 670 — Multi-session Field Definition

Multi-session Field	Action Upon Session Closure
00b	For CD, No B0 pointer. Next Session not allowed. For DVD-R/-RW, next Border not allowed. When current Border is closed, Lead-out shall be appended after the last Border-out. In the case of DVD-R media, the Next Border Marker in last Border-out shall be padded with 00h bytes and shall have the Lead-out attribute set.
01b	For CD media, B0 pointer = FF:FF:FF. Next session not allowed. Reserved for DVD-R/-RW
10b	Reserved
11b	For CD, next session is allowed. B0 pointer = next possible program area. For DVD, Next Border is allowed. Lead-out shall not be appended after the last Border-out.

7.4.4.10 FP bit

The FP bit, when set to one indicates that the packet type is fixed. Otherwise, the packet type is variable. This bit is ignored unless the write type is set to 0 (Packet). For DVD-R/-RW, this bit shall default to one.

7.4.4.11 Copy

When the media is CD and Copy is set to one, SCMS recording is enabled. During recording, the copyright bit in the control nibble of each mode 1 Q Sub-channel shall alternate between 1 and 0 at 9.375 Hz. The duty cycle is 50%, changing every 4 blocks. The initial value on the medium is zero.

When Copy is zero, SCMS recording is disabled.

When the media is DVD-R/-RW, Copy is reserved.

7.4.4.12 Track Mode

On CD, Track Mode is the Control nibble in all Mode 1 Q Sub-channel in the track. For DVD-R/-RW, the default value should be 5.

7.4.4.13 Data Block Type

Data Block Type defines both the specific data fields in a user data block and its size. The Data Block Type codes are defined in Table 671. This size is used for writing instead of the block size set in the mode select header.

The default value of this field for CD-R/RW Drives shall be 8. The value of this field for DVD-R Drives shall be 8.

Table 671 — Data Block Type Codes (CD)

Value	Block Size	Definition	Requirement
0	2 352	Raw data 2 352 bytes of raw data (not valid for write type = packet)	Optional
1	2 368	Raw data with P and Q Sub-channel 2 352 bytes of raw data, 16 bytes for P & Q Sub-channel (see Table 357): Bytes 0..9 are Q Sub-channel data Bytes 10..11 are Q Sub-channel EDC Bytes 12..14 are zero Byte 15, most significant bit has state of P Sub-channel bit (not valid for write type = packet)	Optional
2	2 448	Raw data with P-W Sub-channel appended: 2 352 bytes of raw data. 96 bytes of pack form R-W Sub-channel in the low order 6 bits of each byte. Bit 7 of each byte contains the P Sub-channel state and bit 6 of each byte contains the Q Sub-channel bit. (not valid for write type = packet)	Optional
3	2 448	Raw data with raw P-W Sub-channel appended: 2 352 bytes of raw data. 96 bytes of raw P-W Sub-channel. (not valid for write type = packet)	Optional
4 – 6		Reserved values	
7	NA	Vendor Specific	Optional
8	2 048	Mode 1 (ISO/IEC 10149): 2 048 bytes of user data	Mandatory
9	2 336	Mode 2 (ISO/IEC 10149): 2 336 bytes of user data.	Optional
10	2 048	Mode 2 (CD-ROM XA, form 1): 2 048 bytes of user data, sub-header from write parameters.	Mandatory
11	2 056	Mode 2 (CD-ROM XA, form 1): 8 bytes of sub-header, 2 048 bytes of user data	Optional
12	2 324	Mode 2 (CD-ROM XA, form 2): 2 324 bytes of user data. Sub-header is taken from write parameters.	Optional
13	2 332	Mode 2 (CD-ROM XA, form 1, form 2, or mixed form): 8 bytes of sub-header 2 324 bytes of user data	Mandatory
14	-	Reserved values	
15	NA	Vendor Specific	Optional

The Drive shall automatically generate CD frame data according to the following:

1. When a track has been designated for packet writing, the device shall ensure that the TDB is written upon receipt of the first write command for the track.
2. With the exceptions of data block types 1, 2, and 3, the device shall generate all P Sub-channel and all mode 1, mode 2, and mode 3 Q Sub-channel.
3. For data block types 8 through 13, the device shall generate all sync fields and all headers.
4. When the data blocks are mode 1 or mode 2, form 1, the device shall generate EDC and L-EC parity.
5. For data block types 0, 1, 2, and 3, the device shall perform no data scrambling per ISO/IEC 10149.
6. For data block types 8 through 13, the device shall perform data scrambling per ISO/IEC 10149.

7.4.4.14 Host Application Code

In the case of CD, the Host Application Code field typically has the value zero. When the unrestricted Use Disc bit in the Disc Information Block (Table 365) is set to one, the Host Application Code field shall be ignored by the device. If the Unrestricted Use Disc bit is zero, then the Host Application Code shall be set to the appropriate value for the medium in order that writing is allowed. A Host Application Code of zero is used for a Restricted Use – General Purpose Disc.

On DVD-R/-RW, Host Application code is ignored.

7.4.4.15 Session Format Code

The Session Format code is to be written in the TOC of the session containing this track. The Session Format code is the PSEC byte of the mode 1, point A0 TOC entry.

Table 672 — Session Format Codes

Session Format Codes	Session Format
00h	CD-DA, or CD-ROM or other data discs
10h	CD-I Disc
20h	CD-ROM XA Disc
All Other Values	Reserved

7.4.4.16 Packet Size

If FP bit is set to one, the Packet Size field specifies the number of User Data Blocks per fixed packet. If FP bit is set to 0, the Packet Size field shall be ignored. For DVD-R/-RW media, the default Packet Size shall be 16.

7.4.4.17 Audio Pause Length

Audio Pause Length is applicable only to CD and shall be ignored for all other media types. Audio Pause Length is the number of blocks from the beginning of the track that the mode 1 Q Sub-channel INDEX shall be zero. If this number is zero, then there is no period where the Mode 1 Q Sub-channel INDEX shall be zero. The default value shall be 150. This field is valid only for audio tracks, otherwise it is ignored.

7.4.4.18 Media Catalog Number (MCN)

The Media Catalog Number (MCN) is valid only for writable CD media. This field shall be ignored for other media types. The MCN shall be written in the mode 2 Q Sub-channel in at least one out of every 100 blocks in the program area. MCN in the Write Parameters mode page is formatted as in Table 673. MCVAL is the MCN valid flag. If MCVAL is zero, then the content of bytes 17 through 31 shall be ignored. If MCVAL is one, the bytes 17 through 31 contain a valid MCN. The MCN digits are ASCII representations of decimal digits (30h through 39h). The Host may specify the content of bytes Zero and AFRAME; however, the Drive shall ignore these bytes and insert the appropriate values.

Table 673 — Media Catalog Number Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
16	MCVAL	Reserved						
17	MCN digit N1 (Most significant)							
18	MCN digit N2							
...	...							
28	MCN digit N12							
29	MCN digit N13 (Least significant)							
30	Zero							
31	AFRAME							

7.4.4.19 International Standard Recording Code (ISRC)

The International Standard Recording Code (ISRC) is valid only for Writable CD media. This field shall be ignored when other media types are present. The ISRC shall be written in the mode 3 Q Sub-channel in at least one out of every 100 blocks in the track. The ISRC in the Write Parameters mode page is formatted as in Table 674.

Table 674 — International Standard Recording Code Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
32	TCVAL	Reserved						
33	Country Code: I1							
34	I2							
35	Owner Code: I3							
36	I4							
37	I5							
38	Year of Recording: I6							
39	I7							
40	Serial Number: I8							
41	I9							
42	I10							
43	I11							
44	I12							
45	Zero							
46	AFRAME							
47	Reserved							

Sub-header bytes 0 through 3 contain sub-header bytes to be used when recording CD-R/-RW with Data Block Types 10 and 12.

The Vendor Unique field should be ignored if the Drive does not support this field.

7.5 Caching mode page (Page Code 08h)

7.5.1 Introduction

The caching parameters page defines the parameters that affect the use of the cache.

7.5.2 The mode page and its Parameters

7.5.2.1 The Mode Page

Table 675 — Caching mode page Format

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	Reserved	Page Code (08h)					
1	Page Length (0Ah)							
2	Reserved					WCE	Reserved	RCD
3 … 11	Reserved							

7.5.2.2 PS bit

The Parameter Savable bit is defined in 7.2.3.1.

7.5.2.3 Page Code

The Page Code is set to 08h, identifying the Caching mode page.

7.5.2.4 Page Length

Page Length shall be set to 0Ah.

7.5.2.5 WCE (Write Cache Enable)

A Write Cache Enable (WCE) bit of zero specifies that the Drive shall return GOOD status for a WRITE command after successfully writing all of the data to the medium. A WCE bit of one specifies that the Drive may return GOOD status for a WRITE command after successfully receiving the data and prior to having successfully written it to the medium.

7.5.2.6 RCD (Read Cache Disable)

A read cache disable (RCD) bit of zero specifies that the Drive may return data requested by a READ command by accessing either the cache or media. A RCD bit of one specifies that the Drive shall transfer all of the data requested by a READ command from the medium (i.e., data shall not be transferred from the cache).

7.6 Power Condition mode page (Page Code 1Ah)

The Power Condition mode page provides the Host with a means to control the length of time a Drive delays before changing its power requirements. There are notification events to the Host that a Drive has changed power conditions.

On the receipt of a command the Drive shall adjust itself to the power condition that allows the command to process. The timer that maps to this power condition and any lower power condition timers shall be reset on receipt of the command. On completion of the command the timer associated with this power condition shall be restarted.

Table 676 shows the Features associated with the Power Condition mode page.

Table 676 — Features Associated with the Power Condition mode page

Feature Number	Feature Name	Requirement
0100h	Power Management	Mandatory

The Power Condition mode page is described in [SPC-3].

7.7 Informational Exceptions Control mode page (Page Code 1Ch)

The Informational Exceptions Control mode page defines the methods used by the target to control the reporting and the operations of specific informational exception conditions. This page shall only apply to informational exceptions when CHECK CONDITION status is reported and ASC set to FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED to the Host.

Note 36. This mode page was named the Fault/Failure Reporting Control page in earlier versions of this standard. The name has been changed in order to be consistent with [SPC-3].

Informational exception conditions occur as a result of vendor specific events within a target. An informational exception condition may occur asynchronous to any commands issued by A Host.

Table 677 shows the Features associated with the Informational Exceptions Control mode page.

Table 677 — Features Associated with the Informational Exceptions Control mode page

Feature Number	Feature Name	Requirement
0101h	SMART	Mandatory when PP bit = 1

The Informational Exceptions Control mode page is described in [SPC-3].

7.8 Timeout and Protect Page (Page Code 1Dh)

7.8.1 Introduction

The Timeout and Protect page (Table 679) specifies parameters that affect Drive operation.

Table 678 shows the Features associated with the Timeout and Protect Page.

Table 678 — Features Associated with the Timeout and Protect Page

Feature Number	Feature Name	Requirement
0105h	Timeout	Mandatory

7.8.2 The Mode Page and its Parameters

7.8.2.1 The Mode Page

Table 679 — Timeout & Protect mode page

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	PS	Reserved	Page Code (1Dh)					
1	Page Length (0Ah)							
2	Reserved							
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved				G3Enable	TMOE	DISP	SWPP
5	Reserved							
6	(MSB)	Group 1 Minimum Timeout (Seconds)						
7								(LSB)
8	(MSB)	Group 2 Minimum Timeout (Seconds)						
9								(LSB)
10	(MSB)	Group 3 Timeout (100 milliseconds)						
11								(LSB)

7.8.2.2 PS bit

The Parameters Savable (PS) bit is defined in 7.2.3.1.

7.8.2.3 Page Code

The Page Code field shall be set to 1Dh, identifying the Timeout and Protect Page.

7.8.2.4 Page Length

The Page Length shall be set to 08h.

7.8.2.5 G3Enable

G3Enable bit, when set to one, enables the Group 3 timeout capability. A G3Enable bit of zero disables the Group 3 timeout capability. In order to minimize compatibility problems, the default value for G3Enable bit should be set to zero.

7.8.2.6 TMOE

The Timeout Enable bit (TMOE), when set to one, enables reporting a Group 1 Timeout as an error: UNIT ATTENTION/INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION and the Command Specific Information field of the sense data contains a correct timeout value for retry. When set to zero, the error shall not be reported. When TMOE is zero, the Host may discover a Group 1 timeout only via the Device Busy Event (see 6.6.2.8).

The default value for TMOE shall be 0. The Host should select TMOE for correct operation based upon its execution environment.

7.8.2.7 DISP

The DISP bit when set to 1 shall make the Drive unavailable until power has been removed and then reapplied. The Drive shall report not ready for all media access after this bit has been set to 1. The default value for DISP shall be 0.

7.8.2.8 SWPP

The SWPP bit provides a Software Write Protect until power has been removed and then reapplied. When this bit is set to 1 the Drive shall prevent writes to the media. When the bit is set to 1, the Drive shall synchronize the write to the media before preventing any further writes. The default value for SWPP shall be 0.

7.8.2.9 Group 1 Minimum Timeout

The Group 1 Minimum Timeout shall be initialized to a value recommended by the Drive. Changing this value is vendor specific. See 4.1.9.2.

7.8.2.10 Group 2 Minimum Timeout

The Group 2 Minimum Timeout shall be initialized to a value recommended by the Drive. Although it is recommended that this value not be changeable, changing this value is vendor specific. See 4.1.9.3.

7.8.2.11 Group 3 Timeout

The Group 3 Timeout shall be initialized to a value recommended by the Drive. Although it is recommended that this value be changeable, changing this value is vendor specific. See 4.1.9.5.

Annex A Implementation Notes: ATA Layer of ATAPI (Informative)

A.1 Introduction

ATAPI is a layered interface. The underlying interface is ATA utilizing a small subset of the ATA command set. The ATA Packetized Interface (ATAPI) provides a mechanism for transferring SCSI CDBs via an ATA interface. Since ATA is a single initiator environment, all SCSI commands that are uniquely associated multiple initiator situations are neither needed by nor defined for ATAPI devices.

This annex describes the implementation of the packetized layer in the specific case of MM devices. For details on implementing ATAPI on ATA, see [ATA-8].

A.2 Definitions

A.2.1 Host

The SCSI term "Initiator" is typically replaced by the term "Host" when the underlying interface is not multi-Initiator. This is the case for ATAPI.

A.2.2 Device

The SCSI term "Device Server" is typically replaced by the term "Device" when the underlying interface does not support multiple physical units. MM devices have exactly one physical Drive.

A.2.3 Command Packet

"Command Packet" is sometimes used in place of "CDB".

A.2.4 Command Packet Format

In [ATA-8], the IDENTIFY PACKET DEVICE data, word 0, specifies the command packet size required for the device. Either 12-byte or 16-byte packet size may be specified. MM ATAPI devices use only the 12-byte packet size. A 6-byte, 10-byte, or 12-byte SCSI CDB is placed within the ATAPI command packet as shown in Table A.1, Table A.2, and Table A.3 .

Within the CDB, the Control byte is reserved and is set to zero.

Table A.1 — ATAPI Command Packet containing a 6-Byte CDB

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Operation Code (00h – 1Fh)							
1	Command Parameters							
2								
3								
4								
5	Control Byte = 00h							
6	ATAPI Pad – all zeros							
…								
11								

Table A.2 — ATAPI Command Packet containing a 10-Byte CDB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Operation Code (20h – 5Fh)							
1	Command Parameters							
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9	Control Byte = 00h							
10	ATAPI Pad Byte (00h)							
11	ATAPI Pad Byte (00h)							

Table A.3 — ATAPI Command Packet containing a 12-Byte CDB

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Command Operation Code (A0h – BFh)							
1	Command Parameters							
2								
3								
4								
5								
6								
7								
8								
9								
10								
11	Control Byte = 00h							

A.2.5 Command Status

ATAPI supports only the GOOD and CHECK CONDITION status values.

A.3 No Block Descriptors in MM ATAPI Devices

MM ATAPI devices do not implement Block Descriptors in mode data. The default block size for MM ATAPI devices is 2 048. Other block sizes may be supported.

A.4 Use of Immediate

MM ATAPI devices using the parallel ATAPI do not have the opportunity to use the Disconnect/Reselect mechanism of SCSI. Consequently, the use of immediate operations has a greater importance in MM ATAPI devices. (e.g. The Host may choose to process FORMAT UNIT or CLOSE TRACK SESSION commands as immediate).

A.5 Mapping of Reset Functions

Table A.4 shows how the different reset functions specified in the SCSI standards are used in this standard. This table is not intended to show all possible resets or their mapping.

Table A.4 — Example Reset Function Mapping in ATAPI

Reset Type	ATAPI	
	P-ATA	**S-ATA**
Power-On Reset	Same as SCSI Power-On Reset	Same as SCSI Power-On Reset
Hard Reset	Hard Reset	COMRESET with SSP[1] = 0
Interface Reset	ATA SRST. This is a channel reset and is treated similarly to a Hard Reset. However the SRST shall not reset any mode parameter to its default values.	COMRESET with SSP[1] = 1
Drive Reset	ATA Drive Reset command	ATA Drive Reset command
[1]SSP = Software Settings Preservation, see [SATA].		

A.6 Use of SATA Asynchronous Notification (AN)

SATA asynchronous notification (AN) may be conceptualized as an attention interrupt to the Host. If the Drive supports AN, then it is indicated in the IDENTIFY PACKET DEVICE data (see [ATA-8]. The Host is able to enable/disable the capability via the SET FEATURES command (see [ATA-8].

If AN is enabled and a Drive event is available, the Drive posts AN on the SATA interface.

The Host should clear the AN and then repeatedly send the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command until all outstanding events have been seen.

When AN is used, the Host need not poll with the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command in order to collect asynchronous events.

A.7 World Wide Name

ATAPI MM Devices implement the Packet Command feature set as described in [ATA-8]. The Packet Command feature set requires support for the IDENTIFY PACKET DEVICE command. In response to the IDENTIFY PACKET DEVICE command, the MM Drive returns 512 bytes of identification information.

In the [ATA-8] description of IDENTIFY PACKET DEVICE data, words 108 – 111 contain the World Wide Name (WWN) field. If the ATAPI MM device chooses to support this [ATA-8] field, it should contain the same WWN that is reported in the SCSI Target Device Identification Descriptor in the Device Identification VPD Page (see INQUIRY command, 6.8).

Annex B Implementation Notes: SCSI Parallel Interface (Informative)

B.1 Introduction
This standard is intended to be used in conjunction with the SCSI Architecture Model [SAM-3], the SCSI Primary Command Set [SPC-3], and the SCSI Parallel Interface [SPI-5].

B.2 SCSI Signal Utilization
The Drive utilizes the same signals and timing as specified in [SPI-5].

B.3 Reset Functionality

B.3.1 Power On Reset
The Power On Reset is an event that causes the Power On condition in SCSI. See SAM-3.

B.3.2 Hard Reset
Hard Reset is described in the SCSI Architecture Model. See “Hard Reset” in SAM-3.

A Hard Reset for a SCSI Device:

• Aborts all tasks in all task sets;

• Clears all auto contingent allegiance conditions;

• Releases all SCSI device reservations;

• Return any device operating modes to their appropriate initial conditions, similar to those conditions expected following device power-on. The MODE SELECT conditions are restored to their last saved values if saved values have been established. MODE SELECT conditions for which no saved values, have been established, are returned to their default values;

• Unit Attention condition is set.

B.3.3 TARGET RESET task management function
The TARGET RESET function may be used to reset all Drives in the Target.

Note 37. The TARGET RESET task management function as described in [SPI-5] was called a “Bus Device Reset” in SCSI-2.

If the Initiator issues the DRIVE RESET function to a Drive, the response of the Drive are the same as the response to a TARGET RESET task management function.

B.3.4 Device Reset
There are two possible Device Reset alternatives, ABORT TASK SET and CLEAR TASK SET. The ABORT TASK SET is mandatory for all SCSI Drives. SCSI Drives that do not support tagged tasks may support CLEAR TASK SET.

CLEAR TASK SET is different from ABORT TASK SET in that CLEAR TASK SET clears all of the queued tasks for all Initiators. If the Drive is in a single Initiator environment, ABORT and CLEAR TASK SET functions in the same manner.

The ABORT/CLEAR TASK SET:

• Does not immediately reset SCSI bus protocol.

• Does not reset parameters in mode page to default values

• Always keep the disc information such as disc TOC information

• Does not change the Persistent Prevent state

B.3.5 Power Management and Device Reset in SCSI
When a SCSI Device is in the Power Managed Sleep state, a reset through the service delivery subsystem are used to wake the device.

B.3.6 Mapping of reset functions

Table B.1 shows how the different reset functions specified in the various ATAPI specifications are used in this standard. This table is not intended to show all possible resets or their mapping.

Table B.1 — Example Reset Function Mapping in SCSI

Reset Type	SCSI
Power-On Reset	Same as Power-On Reset
Hard Reset	TARGET RESET task management function
	SAM Reset events – SCSI protocol dependent.
	SPI Reset Signal
Interface Reset	No SCSI equivalent
Device Reset	TARGET RESET

Annex C Implementation Notes: SCSI Serial Bus Protocol (Informative)

C.1 SBP-2 Definitions

C.1.1 Command block

Space reserved within an ORB to describe a command intended for a Drive that controls device functions or the transfer of data to or from device medium.

C.1.2 IEEE 1394

IEEE 1394 is understood as a reference to IEEE Std 1394-1995 as amended by IEEE Std 1394a-2000.

C.1.3 login

The process by which an Initiator obtains access to a set of device fetch agents. The device fetch agents and their control and status registers provide a mechanism for an Initiator to signal ORB's to the device.

C.1.4 quadlet

Four bytes, or 32 bits, of data.

C.1.5 register

A term used to describe quadlet aligned addresses that may be read or written by IEEE 1394 transactions. In the context of this standard, the use of the term register does not imply a specific hardware implementation. E.g., a processor may emulate the behavior of registers.

C.1.6 status block

A data structure written to system memory by a device when an operation request block has been completed.

C.1.7 system memory

The portion of any node's memory that is directly addressable by a IEEE 1394 address and that accepts, at a minimum, quadlet read and write access. Computers are the most common example of nodes that make system memory addressable from IEEE 1394, but any node, including those usually thought of as peripheral devices, may have system memory.

C.1.8 transaction

An exchange between a requester and a responder that consists of a request and a response sub-action is a transaction. The request sub-action transmits a IEEE 1394 transaction such as quadlet read, block write or lock, from the requesting node to the node intended to respond. Some IEEE 1394 commands include data as well as transaction codes. The response sub-action returns completion status and sometimes data from the responding node to the requesting node.

C.1.9 unit

A component of a IEEE 1394 node that provides processing, memory, I/O or some other functionality. Once the node is initialized, the unit provides a CSR interface that is typically accessed by device driver software at an Initiator. A node may have multiple units that normally operate independently of each other. Within this standard, a unit is equivalent to a device.

C.1.10 unit architecture

The specification of the interface to and the services provided by a unit implemented within an IEEE 1394 node.

C.1.11 unit attention

A state that a Drive maintains while it has unsolicited status information to report to one or more logged-in Initiators. A unit attention condition is created as described elsewhere in this standard or in the applicable command set- and device-dependent documents.

C.2 SBP-2 Storage Model

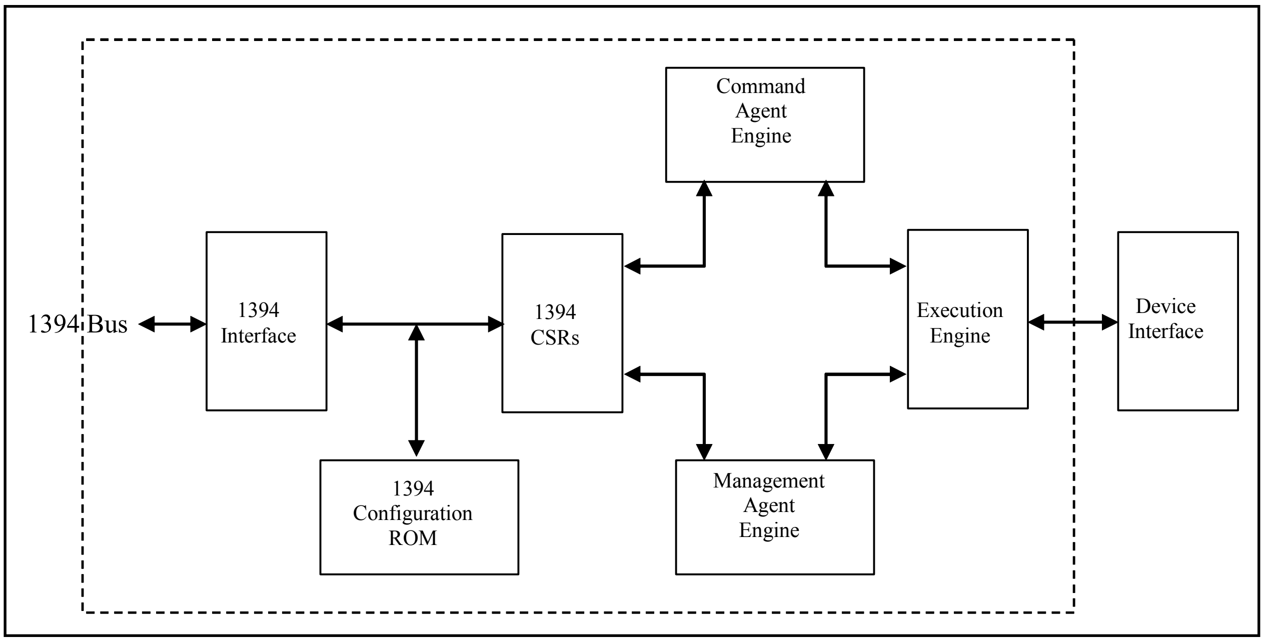
C.2.1 Overview

The SBP-2 Storage Model describes general characteristics and functions of MM Drives when implemented using SBP-2. It is intended to provide design information and lead to a better understanding of MM Drive functionality.

C.2.2 Model configuration

This configuration is used only as an example of a common implementation. The following assumptions are made for this model configuration.

- The device supports a single Drive.
- The device does not support multiple Initiators.



- The device does not support isochronous data transfers.

Figure C.1 — Mass storage interface block diagram

C.2.3 Model operation

The block diagram in Figure C.1 indicates the functional blocks contained in an MM device that supports SBP-2. This section describes the function of those blocks when processing a list of ORBs. The ORBs contain READ commands in this example.

After power-on or bus reset, the Command_Agent and Management_Agent engines are in the Reset state.

The Initiator reads the MM device's Configuration ROM data in order to determine its 1394 capabilities, SBP-2 capabilities, EUI-64 value, command set identifiers, software versions, and Management_Agent CSR address.

The Initiator performs a Login operation prior to any request to the MMC2 device. To perform a Login, the Initiator writes its Login ORB address to the Management_Agent register. The Login ORB should contain either the current or master password for the Login to be successful. The MM device returns the Login response to the bus address specified in the Login ORB. One field of the Login response contains the Command_Agent's CSR base address.

Prior to initiating command transfers, the Initiator builds a list of Command_Block ORBs in system memory. The list may be as short as one ORB, but this example assumes a list length of more than one. The last ORB in the list contains a NULL Next_ORB pointer that indicates the end of the list to the MM device's Command_Agent fetch engine.

To transition the Command_Agent state from Reset to Active the Initiator writes the offset of the first ORB in the ORB list to the MM device's ORB_Pointer CSR address. This allows the Command_Agent fetch engine to begin fetching ORBs from Initiator memory. If the Initiator writes to the Doorbell CSR, the MM device ignores the Doorbell at this time.

The MM device fetches ORBs until its ORB space is full or until an ORB containing a NULL Next_ORB pointer is fetched. Fetched ORBs are routed to the Execution engine. The Execution engine may reorder the commands contained in the ORBs for best performance.

As each READ command is processed the MM device transfers READ data to the Initiator's memory space via block write requests.

Following the data transfer portion of each command the MM device writes a Status_Block to the Initiator's Status_FIFO address. The Status_FIFO address for Command Block ORBs is contained in the Login ORB. The status block contains SBP-2 specific command information, such as the ORB_offset of the Command_Block ORB associated with this status, as well as general sense information.

> Note 38. ORBs contain a NOTIFY bit that is to be set if a Status_Block is to be written to Initiator memory after every ORB is processed or cleared if a Status_Block is to be written only after ORB execution encounters an error. This bit is advisory only. MM Drives return a Status_Block for all ORBs processed.

If an ORB containing a Null Next_ORB pointer is fetched the Execution engine completes all fetched commands, including the one in the just fetched ORB, before the Command_Agent transitions to the Suspended state.

If additional commands are to be processed, the Initiator creates a new list of Command_Block ORBs; changes the Next_ORB pointer in the last ORB of the old list from NULL to the offset of the first ORB in the new list; then writes to the MM device's Doorbell CSR address. This transitions the Command_Agent to the Active state.

The MM device fetches the new Next_ORB pointer value from the last ORB of the old list and begins fetching ORBS from the new list at that offset.

If the Command_Agent fetch engine has not reached the ORB containing a Null Next_ORB pointer (and is still in the Active state), the MM device ignores any writes to the Doorbell CSR address.

This sequence may continue until the MM device is reset, power is removed, or an error occurs.

C.2.4 Reconnect /Power reset support (normative)

MM Drives support the Reconnect management function following a bus reset, as described in SBP-2. However, in the case that a Reconnect request occurs following a power reset, MM Drives perform as follows:

1. Following a power reset, any previous login information is discarded and the device then transitions to the Reset state.
2. If an Initiator sends a Reconnect ORB to the device, the device returns status with RESP set to 0, REQUEST COMPLETE, and sbp_status set to A_{16}, LOGIN ID NOT RECOGNIZED.

C.3 Configuration ROM support (normative)

C.3.1 Overview

Although most Configuration ROM entries are generic, several contain information that is specific to each device type. Hard disk Drive specific Configuration ROM information is defined in this section.

C.3.2 Unit Directory – Command_Set_Spec_ID

The COMMAND_SET_SPEC_ID entry (key – 38h) is an immediate entry that specifies the organization responsible for the command set definition for the device. SCSI targets have a COMMAND_SET_SPEC_ID of 00 609Eh that indicates that INCITS is responsible for the command set definition.

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	38h							
1	(MSB)							
2	Command_set_spec_ID = 00 0000h							
3								(LSB)

C.3.3 Unit Directory – Command_Set

The COMMAND_SET ENTRY (key – 39h) is an immediate entry that, in combination with the COMMAND_SET_SPEC_ID entry specifies the command set supported by the unit. SCSI targets have a command_set value of 01 04D8h that indicates that the target's command set is specified by SCSI Primary Commands – 2 [SPC-3] and related command set standard(s), as determined by the targets peripheral device type(s).

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	39h							
1	(MSB)							
2	Command_set = 00 0001h							
3								(LSB)

C.3.4 Unit Directory – Command_Set_Revision

The COMMAND_SET_REVISION entry (key – 3Bh) is an immediate entry that specifies the current revision level of the command set implemented by the unit.

Byte \ Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	3Bh							
1	(MSB)							
2	Command_set_Revision							
3								(LSB)

C.3.5 Unit Directory – Logical_Unit_Number

The LOGICAL_UNIT_NUMBER entry (key – 14h) is an immediate entry that specifies the device type and the Drive number of a Drive supported by the device. The format of this entry is defined in SBP-2 and duplicated here with additional field information for hard disk drives.

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	14h							
1	Reserved		Ordered	Device Type = 05h				
2	(MSB)	Logical Unit Number						
3								(LSB)

The Ordered bit specifies the manner in which the Drive processes tasks signaled to the command block agent. If the Drive processes and reports completion status without any ordering constraints, the ordered bit is zero. Otherwise, if the Drive both processes all tasks in order and reports their completion status in the same order, the ordered bit is one.

The Device_Type field indicates the peripheral device type implemented by the Drive. The value defined for MM Drives is 05h.

Logical_Unit_Number field identifes the Drive to which the information in the LOGICAL_UNIT_NUMBER entry applies.

C.4 Login support (normative)

MM Drives implement the Login support as defined in SBP-2.

C.5 Security support (normative)

MM Drives implement security against unauthorized media access as defined in the security annex of SBP-2.

The master password, referenced in SBP-2, is contained in the INQUIRY command, Vital Product Data, page 80h. Following a successful Login operation, the Initiator requests that the Drive perform the INQUIRY command, in order to obtain the Drive's serial number.

C.6 Status block support (normative)

The status block for MM Drives is implemented as described in the following text and figure. Refer to SBP-2, Annex B, for a complete description of all bits and fields.

If no exception status is generated, only the first two quadlets (LEN =1) is written to the Initiator's STATUS_FIFO address.

If exception status is generated, the device writes, at a minimum, the four quadlets (len = 2) shown below. This format is required for unsolicited status as well as command status.

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	src		resp		d	len		
1	Sbp_status							
2	(MSB)							
3								
4				ORB-offset				
5								
6								
7								(LSB)
8	sfmt		Status					
9	v	m	e	i	Sense key			
10	Sense code				Sense code qualifier			
11	(MSB)							
12								
13				Information				
14								
15								(LSB)

C.7 Unsolicited Status support (normative)

MM Drives that support the SBP-2 transport protocol implements the generation of unsolicited status. Devices notify Initiators of unsolicited status support by setting the Asynchronous Event Reporting Capability (AERC) bit to one in the standard data format of the INQUIRY command (see [SPC-3])

As stated in SBP-2, unsolicited status is enabled when the Initiator writes to the Unsolicited_Status_Enable CSR. Devices default to unsolicited status disabled and only send unsolicited status following a write to the Unsolicited_Status_Enable CSR. The Unsolicited_Status_Enable CSR is a handshake mechanism and is written after every unsolicited status event in order to enable another such event.

C.8 Unit attention condition

A unit attention condition persists for a logged-in Initiator until

a) unsolicited status, that reports the unit attention condition, is successfully written to the Initiator's status FIFO address, or

b) the Initiator's login becomes invalid or is released. Drives may queue unit attention conditions; more than one unit attention condition may exist at the same time.

Annex D Implementation Notes: Universal Serial Bus (Informative)

D.1 USB and Mass Storage Definitions

D.1.1 Bulk Transfer

This is one of the four USB transfer types. A Bulk transfer:

a. is non-periodic, large “bursty” communication,

b. is able to use all undedicated bandwidth,

c. may be delayed until bandwidth is available.

D.1.2 Capabilities

Those attributes of a USB device that are administrated by the Initiator.

D.1.3 Characteristics

Those qualities of a USB device that are unchangeable between resets; e.g., the device class is a device characteristic.

D.1.4 Command Block Wrapper (CBW)

The CBW is a data structure containing a command block and associated information.

D.1.5 Command Status Wrapper (CSW)

The CSW is a data structure containing the status of a command block.

D.1.6 Control Endpoint

A control endpoint is a pair of device endpoints with the same endpoint number that are used by a control message pipe. Control endpoints transfer data in both directions and, therefore, use both endpoint directions of a device address and endpoint number combination. Thus, each control endpoint consumes two endpoint addresses.

D.1.7 Data-In

Indicates a transfer of data IN from the device to the Initiator.

D.1.8 Data-Out

Indicates a transfer of data OUT from the Initiator to the device.

D.1.9 Default Pipe

The message pipe created by the USB System Software to pass control and status information between the Initiator and a USB device’s endpoint zero.

D.1.10 Device

With reference to USB, a device is either a logical or physical entity that performs a function. The actual entity described depends on the context of the reference. At the lowest level, device may refer to a single hardware component, as in a memory device. At a higher level, it may refer to a collection of hardware components that perform a particular function, such as a USB interface device. At an even higher level, device may refer to the function performed by an entity attached to the USB; e.g., a data/FAX modem device. Devices may be physical, electrical, addressable, and logical. When used as a non-specific reference, a USB device is either a hub or a function.

D.1.11 Device Endpoint

The Device Endpoint is a uniquely addressable portion of a USB device that is the source or sink of information in a communication flow between the Initiator and device.

D.1.12 Device Request

Requests from the Initiator to the device using the default pipe.

D.1.13 Endpoint

An endpoint that is capable of consuming an isochronous data stream that is sent by the Initiator.

D.1.14 Endpoint Number
A four-bit value between 0H and FH, inclusive, associated with an endpoint on a USB device.

D.1.15 Message Pipe
A bi-directional pipe that transfers data using a request/data/status paradigm. The data has an imposed structure that allows requests to be reliably identified and communicated.

D.1.16 NAK
This is an abbreviation for negative acknowledgment.

D.1.17 Packet
A bundle of data organized in a group for transmission. Packets typically contain three elements: control information (e.g., source, destination, and length), the data to be transferred, and error detection and correction bits.

D.1.18 Phase
This is a token, data, or handshake packet. A transaction has three phases.

D.1.19 Phase Error
An error returned by the device indicating that the results of processing further CBWs is indeterminate until the device is reset.

D.1.20 Pipe
A pipe is a logical abstraction representing the association between an endpoint on a device and software on the Initiator. A pipe has several attributes; e.g., a pipe may transfer data as streams (stream pipe) or messages (message pipe). See also stream pipe and message pipe. Port Point of access to or from a system or circuit. For the USB, this is the point where a USB device is attached.

D.1.21 Port
A Port is the point of access to or from a system or circuit. For the USB, this is the point where a USB device is attached.

D.1.22 Processed
Data received and controlled internally by the device to the point that the Initiator need no longer be concerned about it.

D.1.23 Protocol
A specific set of rules, procedures, or conventions relating to format and timing of data transmission between two devices.

D.1.24 Relevant
The amount of the data copied in to the Initiator by the device that is significant.

D.1.25 Request
A request made to a USB device contained within the data portion of a SETUP packet.

D.1.26 Reset Recovery
This is an error recovery procedure by which the Initiator prepares the device for further CBWs.

D.1.27 Thin Diagonal
Cases where the Initiator and device are in complete agreement about how many bytes of data to copy in which direction.

D.1.28 Transaction
The delivery of service to an endpoint; consists of a token packet, optional data packet, and optional handshake packet. Specific packets are allowed/required based on the transaction type.

D.1.29 Transfer
One or more bus transactions to move information between a software client and its function.

D.1.30 USB-IF
USB Implementors Forum, Inc. is a nonprofit corporation formed to facilitate the development of USB compliant products and promote the technology. www.usb.org

D.2 Bulk Only Mass Storage

D.2.1 Scope
This normative only covers the Bulk-Only Transport. The complete *USB Mass Storage Class Specification* that covers the Bulk-Only Transport is available at www.usb.org. The CBI (Control/Bulk/Interrupt) transport is used for Full Speed Floppy devices.

D.2.2 Bulk-Only Mass Storage Reset (class-specific request)
This request is used to reset the mass storage device and its associated interface. This class-specific request makes the device ready for the next CBW from the Initiator.

The Initiator sends this request via the default pipe to the device. The device preserves the value of its bulk data toggle bits and endpoint STALL conditions despite the Bulk-Only Mass Storage Reset.

The device NAKs the status stage of the device request until the Bulk-Only Mass Storage Reset is complete.

To issue the Bulk-Only Mass Storage Reset the Initiator issues a device request on the default pipe of:

- bmRequestType: Class, Interface, Initiator to device
- bRequest field set to 255 (FFh)
- wValue field set to 0
- wIndex field set to the interface number
- wLength field set to 0

Table D.1 — Bulk-Only Mass Storage Reset

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
00100001b	11111111b	0000h	Interface	0000h	none

D.2.3 Get Max LUN (class-specific request)
The device may implement several Drives that share common device characteristics. The Initiator uses bCBWLUN to designate the Drive of the device that is the destination of the CBW. The Get Max LUN device request is used to determine the number of Drives supported by the device. Drive Numbers on the device is numbered contiguously starting from LUN 0 to a maximum LUN of 15 (Fh).

To issue a Get Max LUN device request, the Initiator issues a device request on the default pipe of:

- bmRequestType: Class, Interface, device to Initiator
- bRequest field set to 254 (Feh)
- wValue field set to 0
- wIndex field set to the interface number
- wLength field set to 1

Table D.2 — Get Max LUN

bmRequestType	bRequest	wValue	wIndex	wLength	Data
10100001b	11111110b	0000h	Interface	0001h	1 byte

The device returns one byte of data that contains the maximum LUN supported by the device. If no LUN is associated with the device, the value returned is 0. The Initiator does not send a command block wrapper (CBW) to a non-existing LUN.

Devices that do not support multiple LUNs may STALL this command.

D.2.4 Initiator/Device Packet Transfer Order
The Initiator sends the CBW before the associated Data-Out, and the device sends Data-In after the associated CBW and before the associated CSW. The Initiator may request Data-In or CSW before sending the associated CBW.

If the dCBWDataTransferLength is zero, the device and the Initiator transfers no data between the CBW and the associated CSW.

D.2.5 Command Queuing

The Initiator does not transfer a CBW to the device until the Initiator has received the CSW for any outstanding CBW. If the Initiator issues two consecutive CBWs without an intervening CSW or reset, the device response to the second CBW is indeterminate.

D.2.6 Standard Descriptors

The device supports the following standard USB descriptors:

a. **Device**. Each USB device has one device descriptor (per *USB Specification*).

b. **Configuration**. Each USB device has one default configuration descriptor that supports at least one interface.

c. **Interface**. The device supports at least one interface, known herein as the Bulk-Only Data Interface. Some devices may support additional interfaces, to provide other capabilities.

d. **Endpoint**. The device supports the following endpoints, in addition to the default pipe that is required of all USB devices:

    1. Bulk-In endpoint
    2. Bulk-Out endpoint
    3. Some devices may support additional endpoints, to provide other capabilities. The Initiator uses the first reported Bulk-In and Bulk-Out endpoints for the selected interface.

e. **String**. The device supplies a unique serial number.

D.2.7 Device Descriptor

Each USB device has one device descriptor (per *USB Specification*). The device specifies the device class and subclass codes in the interface descriptor, and not in the device descriptor.

Table D.3 — Device Descriptor

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	bLength	Byte	12h	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
1	bDescriptorType	Byte	01h	DEVICE descriptor type.
2	bcdUSB	Word	xxxxh	*USB Specification* Release Number in Binary-Coded Decimal (i.e., 2.10 = 210h). This field identifies the release of the *USB Specification* with which the device and is descriptors are compliant.
4	bDeviceClass	Byte	00h	Class code (assigned by the USB-IF).
5	bDeviceSubClass	Byte	00h	Subclass code (assigned by the USB-IF).
6	bDeviceProtocol	Byte	00h	Protocol code (assigned by the USB-IF).
7	bMaxPacketSize0	Byte	xxh	Maximum packet size for endpoint zero. (only 8, 16, 32, or 64 are valid (08h, 10h, 20h, 40h)).
8	idVendor	Word	xxxxh	Vendor ID (assigned by the USB-IF).
10	idProduct	Word	xxxxh	Product ID (assigned by the manufacturer).
12	bcdDevice	Word	xxxxh	Device release number in binary-coded decimal.
14	iManufacturer	Byte	xxh	Index of string descriptor describing the manufacturer.
15	iProduct	Byte	xxh	Index of string descriptor describing this product.
16	iSerialNumber	Byte	xxh	Index of string descriptor describing the device's serial number.
17	bNumConfigurations	Byte	xxh	Number of possible configurations.

D.2.8 Serial Number

The iSerialNumber field is set to the index of the string descriptor that contains the serial number. The serial number contains at least 12 valid digits, represented as a UNICODE string. The last 12 digits of the serial number is unique to each USB idVendor and idProduct pair.

The Initiator may generate a globally unique identifier by concatenating the 16-bit idVendor, the 16 bit idProduct and the value represented by the last 12 characters of the string descriptor indexed by iSerialNumber.

The field iSerialNumber is an index to a string descriptor and does not contain the string itself.

D.2.9 Valid Serial Number Characters

Numeric numbers 0030h through 0039h that represent ASCII “0” through “9” and 0041h through 0046h as ASCII “A” through “F”.

D.3 Descriptors

D.3.1 Configuration Descriptor

Table D.4 — Configuration Descriptor

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	bLength	Byte	09h	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
1	bDescriptorType	Byte	02h	CONFIGURATION Descriptor Type.
2	wTotalLength	Word	xxxxh	Total length of data returned for this configuration. Includes the combined length of all descriptors (configuration, interface, endpoint, and class- or vendor-specific) returned for this configuration.
4	bNumInterfaces	Byte	xxh	Number of interfaces supported by this configuration. The device supports at least the Bulk-Only Data Interface.
5	bConfigurationValue	Byte	xxh	Value to use as an argument to the SetConfiguration() request to select this configuration.
6	iConfiguration	Byte	xxh	Index of string descriptor describing this configuration.
7	bmAttributes	Byte	x0h	Configuration characteristics: Bit Description 7 Reserved (set to one) 6 Self-powered 5 Remote Wakeup 4..0 Reserved (reset to zero) Bit 7 is reserved and is set to one for historical reasons.
8	MaxPower	Byte	xxh	Maximum power consumption of the USB device from the bus in this specific configuration when the device is fully operational. Expressed in 2mA units (i.e., 50 = 100mA)

D.3.2 Interface Descriptor

The device supports at least one interface, known herein as the Bulk-Only Data Interface. The Bulk-Only Data Interface uses three endpoints.

Composite mass storage devices may support additional interfaces, to provide other features such as audio or video capabilities. This specification does not define such interfaces.

The interface may have multiple alternate settings. The Initiator examines each of the alternate settings to look for the bInterfaceProtocol and bInterfaceSubClass it supports optimally.

Table D.5 — Bulk-Only Data Interface Descriptor

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	bLength	Byte	09h	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
1	bDescriptorType	Byte	04h	INTERFACE Descriptor Type.
2	bInterfaceNumber	Byte	0xh	Number of interface. Zero-based value identifying the index in the array of concurrent interfaces supported by this configuration.
3	bAlternateSetting	Byte	xxh	Value used to select alternate setting for the interface identified in the prior field.
4	bNumEndpoints	Byte	xxh	Number of endpoints used by this interface (excluding endpoint zero). This value is at least 2.
5	bInterfaceClass	Byte	08h	MASS STORAGE Class.
6	bInterfaceSubClass	Byte	0xh	Subclass code (assigned by the USB-IF). Indicates the industry standard command block definition to use. Does not specify a type of storage device such as a floppy disk or CD-ROM drive.
7	bInterfaceProtocol	Byte	50h	BULK-ONLY TRANSPORT.
8	iInterface	Byte	xxh	Index to string descriptor describing this interface.

D.3.3 Endpoint Descriptors

The device supports at least three endpoints: Control, Bulk-In and Bulk-Out.

Each USB device defines a Control endpoint (Endpoint 0). This is the default endpoint and does not require a descriptor.

D.3.4 Bulk-In Endpoint

The Bulk-In endpoint is used for transferring data and status from the device to the Initiator.

Table D.6 — Bulk-In Endpoint Descriptor

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	bLength	Byte	07h	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
1	bDescriptorType	Byte	05h	ENDPOINT Descriptor Type.
2	bEndpointAddress	Byte	xxh	The address of this endpoint on the USB device. The address is encoded as follows. Bit — Description 3..0 — The endpoint number 6..4 — Reserved, set to 0 7 — 1 = In
3	bmAttributes	Byte	02h	This is a Bulk endpoint.
4	wMaxPacketSize	Word	00xxh	Maximum packet size. Is 8, 16, 32 or 64 decimal bytes.
6	bInterval	Byte	00h	Does not apply to Bulk endpoints.

D.3.5 Bulk-Out Endpoint

The Bulk-Out endpoint is used for transferring command and data from the Initiator to the device.

Table D.7 — Bulk-Out Endpoint Descriptor

Offset	Field	Size	Value	Description
0	bLength	Byte	07h	Size of this descriptor in bytes.
1	bDescriptorType	Byte	05h	ENDPOINT descriptor type.
2	bEndpointAddress	Byte	0xh	The address of this endpoint on the USB device. This address is encoded as follows: Bit Description 3..0 Endpoint number 6..4 Reserved, set to 0 7 0 = Out
3	bmAttributes	Byte	02h	This is a Bulk endpoint.
4	wMaxPacketSize	Word	00xxh	Maximum packet size. Is 8, 16, 32 or 64 decimal bytes.
6	bInterval	Byte	00h	Does not apply to Bulk endpoints.

D.4 Command/Data/Status Protocol

D.4.1 Command Block Wrapper (CBW)

The CBW starts on a packet boundary and ends as a short packet with exactly 31 (1Fh) bytes transferred. Fields appear aligned to byte offsets equal to a multiple of their byte size. All subsequent data and the CSW start at a new packet boundary. All CBW transfers are ordered with the LSB (byte 0) first (little endian).

Table D.8 — Command Block Wrapper

Bit Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(LS Byte)							
…	dCBWSignature							
3	(MS Byte)							
4	(LS Byte)							
…	dCBWTag							
7	(MS Byte)							
8	(LS Byte)							
…	dCBWDataTransferLength							
11	(MS Byte)							
12	bmCBWFlags							
	Direction	Obsolete	Reserved					
13	Reserved				bCBWLUN			
14	Reserved			bCBWCBLength				
15	CBWCB							
…								
30								

The dCBWSignature field helps identify this data packet as a CBW. The signature field contains the value 43425355h (little endian), indicating a CBW.

The dCBWTag field is a Command Block Tag sent by the Initiator. The device echos the contents of this field back to the Initiator in the dCSWTag field of the associated CSW. The dCSWTag positively associates a CSW with the corresponding CBW.

The dCBWDataTransferLength field is the number of bytes of data that the Initiator expects to transfer on the Bulk-In or Bulk-Out endpoint (as indicated by the Direction bit) during the execution of this command. If this field

is zero, the device and the Initiator transfers no data between the CBW and the associated CSW, and the device ignores the value of the Direction bit in bmCBWFlags.

The bmCBWFlags field is bit significant:

Direction - the device ignores this bit if the dCBWDataTransferLength field is zero, otherwise:

0 = Data-Out from Initiator to the device,

1 = Data-In from the device to the Initiator.

The bCBWLUN field contains the device Drive Number (LUN) to which the command block is being sent. For devices that support multiple LUNs, the Initiator places into this field the LUN to which this command block is addressed. Otherwise, the Initiator sets this field to zero.

The bCBWCBLength field contains the valid length of the CBWCB field in bytes. The only legal values are 1 through 16 (01h through 10h). All other values are reserved.

The CBWCB field is the command block to be processed by the device. The device interprets the first bCBWCBLength bytes in this field as a command block as defined by the command set identified by bInterfaceSubClass. If the command set supported by the device uses command blocks of fewer than 16 (10h) bytes in length, the significant bytes are transferred first, beginning with the byte at offset 15 (Fh). The device ignores the content of the CBWCB field past the byte at offset (15 + bCBWCBLength – 1).

D.4.2 Command Status Wrapper (CSW)

The CSW starts on a packet boundary and ends as a short packet with exactly 13 (0Dh) bytes transferred. Fields appear aligned to byte offsets equal to a multiple of their byte size. All CSW transfers are ordered with the least significant byte (byte 0) first (little endian).

Table D.9 — Command Status Wrapper

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	(LS Byte)							
…	dCSWSignature							
3	(MS Byte)							
4	(LS Byte)							
…	dCSWTag							
7	(MS Byte)							
8	(LS Byte)							
…	dCSWDataResidue							
11	(MS Byte)							
12	bmCSWStatus							

The dCSWSignature field contains the value 53425355h (little endian), indicating CSW.

The dCSWTag is set to the value received in the dCBWTag of the associated CBW.

The dCSWDataResidue field definition is dependent upon the data direction of the associated CBW. For Data-Out the dCSWDataResidue contains the difference between the amount of data expected as stated in the dCBWDataTransferLength, and the actual amount of data processed by the device. For Data-In the dCSWDataResidue contains the difference between the amount of data expected as stated in the dCBWDataTransferLength and the actual amount of relevant data sent by the device. The dCSWDataResidue does not exceed the value sent in the dCBWDataTransferLength.

The bCSWStatus field contains the ending status of the command. The device sets this byte to zero if the command completed successfully. A non-zero value indicates a failure during Command Processing according to the following table:

Table D.10 — Command Block Status Values

Value	Description
00h	Command Passed ("good status")
01h	Command Failed
02h	Phase Error
03h and 04h	Reserved
05h to FFh	Reserved

Annex E Legacy Specifications and Other Technologies (Normative)

E.1 Overview

There are features, profiles, commands, command options, mode pages, and fields within structures defined in earlier standards that are not recommended for use in multi-media devices. Due to the prevalence of installed systems that require continued use of these capabilities, the formal path of obsolescence may have undesirable results. This annex provides references for the correct implementation of each legacy method.

If a legacy method is implemented, the implementation should be according to the description found in the specified reference.

E.2 Optical Write Once Profile (0004h)

All MMC support for the Optical Write Once Profile (0004h) has been removed from MMC-6. Consult MMC-5 for the most recent information.

E.3 Magneto-Optical (MO) Oriented Features, Profiles, and Commands

All MMC support for Magneto-Optical disc types has been removed from MMC-6. Consult MMC-5 for the most recent information on:

1) Sector Erasable Feature (0022h)
2) Advanced Storage Magneto-Optical (AS-MO) Profile (0005h)
3) ERASE (10) Command

E.4 The MRW Feature (0028h), The MRW mode page (Page Code = 03h)

MRW is a Hardware Defect Management scheme that was developed for CD-RW and adapted for use with DVD+RW. MMC support for the MRW Feature and the MRW mode page has been removed from MMC-6. Consult MMC-5 for the most recent information on implementing and using the MRW Feature.

E.5 The Media Serial Number Feature (0109h)

MMC support for the Media Serial Number Feature was removed from MMC-5 and does not appear in MMC-6. Consult MMC-4 for the most recent information on implementing and using the Media Serial Number Feature.

E.6 The VCPS Feature (0110h)

VCPS is a content protection scheme that has been designated Legacy and is not described in MMC-6. VCPS was was last described in MMC-5. Consult MMC-5 for the most recent information on implementing and using the VCPS Feature.

E.7 CD Audio External Play Feature (0103h)

All MMC support for CD Audio External Play has been removed from MMC-5 and MMC-6. Consult MMC-4 for the most recent information on:

1) Terms and definitions for CD Audio External Play,
2) Modeling that describes CD Audio External Play,
3) CD Audio External Play Feature (0103h)
4) PAUSE/RESUME Command
5) PLAY AUDIO (10) Command
6) PLAY AUDIO (12) Command
7) PLAY AUDIO MSF Command
8) READ SUB-CHANNEL Command
9) STOP PLAY/SCAN Command
10) CD Audio Control Page (Page Code 0Eh)

E.8 CD Device Parameters mode page (Page 0Dh)

The CD Parameters page is a legacy mode page. The CD Parameters page specifies parameters that affect only CD-ROM Drives. The CD Parameters page was most recently defined in MMC-3.

E.9 MM Capabilities and Mechanical Status Page (Page Code 2Ah)

The MM Capabilities and Mechanical Status mode page is read only. This mode page is legacy and was most recently defined in MMC-3.

E.10 Mode Parameters Block Descriptors

Block Descriptors should not be used in MMC devices. Some legacy devices may support block descriptors. The general description of block descriptors and their use is described in [SPC-3].

The block descriptor associated with the MODE SELECT and MODE SENSE commands allows block size specification for CD sectors. If a block descriptor is supported, then at least a block size of 2 048 should be supported. Other block sizes may be supported. Table E.1 shows the possibilities for the various block sizes. These block size definitions apply for READ (6), READ (10), READ (12), VERIFY (10) and VERIFY (12) commands.

Valid block sizes are shown in Table E.1.

Table E.1 — Block Descriptor Block Sizes for Read

Bytes	Readable block types
512	Mode 1 or Mode 2 Form 1 sectors divided into four blocks each
2 048	Mode 1, Mode 2 Form1, (and DVD)
2056	Mode 2 Form 1 with sub-header. Equivalent to READ CD, Flag = 50h.
2 324	Mode 2 Form 2 with no sub-header. There is no mapping to READ CD, as the 4 spare bytes are not returned.
2 332	Mode 2, Form 1 or 2 data. The Drive should operate as specified for 2 048 byte blocks except that both forms send 2 332 byte blocks. Form 1 blocks return the third layer ECC with the user data. There is no mapping to READ CD, as the 4 spare bytes are not returned.
2 336	Mode 2 data. The Drive should operate as specified for 2 048 byte block lengths. This mode includes all data: Yellow Book Mode 2 sectors and Form 1 & 3. This is equivalent to READ CD, Flag = 58h.
2 340	All bytes except the synchronization field. Equivalent to READ CD, Flag = 78h.
2 352	Audio or raw blocks. The Drive should operate as specified for 2 048 byte block lengths. A read of data mode sectors should return de-scrambled data. Equivalent to READ CD, Flag = F8h.
2 448 or 2 368	Audio or raw blocks with raw Sub-channel. The Drive should not perform the data descrambling operation. Equivalent to READ CD, Flag = F8. Sub-channel data selection = 010b (2 448) or Sub-channel data selection = 001b (2 368).

E.11 Double Density Compact Disc (DDCD)

All MMC support for Double Density Compact Disc (DDCD) was removed from MMC-5 and does not appear in MMC-6. Consult MMC-4 for the most recent information on:

1) Terms and definitions for DDCD-ROM, DDCD-R, and DDCD-RW,
2) Modeling that describes DDCD-ROM, DDCD-R, and DDCD-RW,
3) The DDCD-ROM Profile (0020h) definition,
4) The DDCD-R Profile (0021h) definition,
5) The DDCD-RW Profile (0022h) definition,
6) The DDCD-ROM Read Feature (0030h) definition,
7) The DDCD-R Write Feature (0031h) definition,
8) The DDCD-RW Write Feature (0032h) definition,
9) All command descriptions for DDCD,
10) All mode page descriptions for DDCD.

E.12 GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION Command – Operational Change Events

When the Notification Class code in the Event Header is 001b, an Operational Change Event Descriptor follows the event header. In MMC-4, MMC-5, and MMC-6 the descriptions of the behavior and status values are different than those found in MMC-3.

Refer to MMC-3 for legacy descriptions.

E.13 GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION Command – Device Busy Events

Device Busy Events are used to notify the Initiator of commands that are executing but that require an abnormally long time to complete. In MMC-4, MMC-5, and MMC-6 the descriptions of the behavior and status values are different than those found in MMC-3.

Refer to MMC-3 for legacy descriptions.

E.14 FORMAT UNIT Command, Format Code = 111b

The description for CDB Format Code 111b is a method defined only for CD-RW. Refer to MMC-3 for the most recent descriptions.

E.15 SEND EVENT Command

The SEND EVENT command requests the Drive to process an event on behalf of the Initiator. The most recent description of this command is found in MMC-3.

E.16 READ TOC/PMA/ATIP Command: CDB Format field definition

A unique version of the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is described in SFF8020, version 1.2. This document was withdrawn by SFF and is no longer available from that organization.

The Format field for the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command is a 4-bit field occupying bits 3 through 0 of byte 2 as shown in Table E.2. The SFF8020, version 1.2 defines the READ TOC/PMA/ATIP command differently. The Format field is a 2-bit field that occupies bits 6 and 7 of byte 9 (see Table E.2). This field should be examined only when the MMC Format Field is set to 0000b.

Table E.2 — READ TOC/PMA/ATIP CDB – Legacy Version

Bit / Byte	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0
0	Operation Code (43h)							
1	Reserved						MSF	Reserved
2	Reserved				MMC Format			
3	Reserved							
4	Reserved							
5	Reserved							
6	Starting Track/Session Number							
7	(MSB)	Allocation Length						
8								(LSB)
9	SFF8020 Format		Control					

The value of the Format field (Table E.3) defines the returned data format.

Table E.3 — Format Field Values

SFF8020 Format	MSF	Track/ Session Number	Description
00b	Valid	Track Number	The Track/Session Number field specifies starting track number for which the data is returned. For multi-session discs, TOC data is returned for all sessions. Track number Aah is reported only for the Lead-out area of the last complete session.
01b	Valid	Reserved[1]	This format returns the first complete session number, last complete session number and last complete session starting address. In this format, the Track/Session Number field is reserved and should be set to 00h.
10b	Reserved[1]	Session Number	This format returns all Q sub-code data in the Lead-In (TOC) areas starting from a session number as specified in the Track/Session Number field. In this mode, the Drive should support Q Sub-channel POINT field value of A0h, A1h, A2h, Track numbers, B0h, B1h, B2h, B3h, B4h, C0h, and C1h. There is no defined LBA addressing and MSF bit should be set to one.
11b	Reserved		
[1]The Drive should ignore the field. No error should be posted.			

A PC BIOS may require this CDB format for the CD boot process. It is recommended that Drives that support CD boot, should support both the older and newer CDB formats.

E.17 DVD+RW Dual Layer

All MMC support for DVD+RW Dual Layer was presented in MMC-5 but does not appear in MMC-6. Consult MMC-5 for the most recent information on DVD+RW Dual Layer.

E.18 DVD-RW Dual Layer

Specifications for the support of DVD-RW DL is presented in [Fuji7].

E.19 HD DVD

Support for HD DVD-ROM, HD DVD-RAM, and HD DVD-R SL was presented in MMC-5. These are also described in [Fuji7]. In the case of newer defined HD DVD technologies, refer to [Fuji7].

Annex F Error Reporting (Normative)

F.1 Overview

This annex lists error codes that may be generated by MMC defined Drives. Specific commands specify that certain errors occur in response to certain conditions, but each command does not contain a comprehensive list of possible error conditions.

F.2 Deferred Errors

Any error may be reported in response to any command due to the occurrence of a deferred error. E.g., a write error may occur due to a cached write command and that error should be reported in response to the next command.

F.3 Error Lists

A number of tables are included within this annex for error classification. Each table has columns identifying SK, ASC, and ASCQ values and the associated meaning. Each command description sub-clause contains an error-reporting table with entries that reference the tables included within this annex. The ASC and ASCQ values in this subclause duplicate information found in [SPC-3]. In the event there is a conflict between the ASC/ASCQ values in this standard and the ASC/ASCQ values in [SPC-3], the values in this standard shall prevail.

There are 9 classifications:

1. Unit Attention conditions,
2. CDB or parameter list validation,
3. Readiness errors,
4. Protocol errors,
5. General media access errors,
6. Errors associated with reading,
7. Errors associated with writing,
8. Hardware failures, and
9. Errors associated with non-ATAPI environments.

F.3.1 Unit Attention conditions

Unit Attention conditions exist to report status information to the Host. Table F.1 shows typical Unit Attention conditions for multi-media devices.

Table F.1 — Unit Attention Conditions

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
6	28	00	NOT READY TO READY CHANGE, MEDIUM MAY HAVE CHANGED
6	28	01	IMPORT OR EXPORT ELEMENT ACCESSED
6	28	02	FORMAT-LAYER MAY HAVE CHANGED
6	28	03	IMPORT OR EXPORT ELEMENT ACCESSED, MEDIUM CHANGED
6	29	00	POWER ON, RESET, OR BUS DEVICE RESET OCCURRED
6	29	01	POWER ON OCCURRED
6	29	02	BUS RESET OCCURRED
6	29	03	BUS DEVICE RESET FUNCTION OCCURRED
6	29	04	DEVICE INTERNAL RESET
6	2A	00	PARAMETERS CHANGED
6	2A	01	MODE PARAMETERS CHANGED
6	2A	02	LOG PARAMETERS CHANGED
6	2E	00	INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION
6	3B	0D	MEDIUM DESTINATION ELEMENT FULL
6	3B	0E	MEDIUM SOURCE ELEMENT EMPTY
6	3B	0F	END OF MEDIUM REACHED
6	3B	11	MEDIUM MAGAZINE NOT ACCESSIBLE
6	3B	12	MEDIUM MAGAZINE REMOVED
6	3B	13	MEDIUM MAGAZINE INSERTED
6	3B	14	MEDIUM MAGAZINE LOCKED
6	3B	15	MEDIUM MAGAZINE UNLOCKED
6	3F	00	TARGET OPERATING CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED
6	3F	01	MICROCODE HAS BEEN CHANGED
6	3F	02	CHANGED OPERATING DEFINITION
6	3F	03	INQUIRY DATA HAS CHANGED
6	5A	00	OPERATOR REQUEST OR STATE CHANGE INPUT
6	5A	01	OPERATOR MEDIUM REMOVAL REQUEST
6	5A	02	OPERATOR SELECTED WRITE PROTECT
6	5A	03	OPERATOR SELECTED WRITE PERMIT
6	5B	00	LOG EXCEPTION
6	5B	01	THRESHOLD CONDITION MET
6	5B	02	LOG COUNTER AT MAXIMUM
6	5B	03	LOG LIST CODES EXHAUSTED
6	5E	00	LOW POWER CONDITION ON
6	5E	01	IDLE CONDITION ACTIVATED BY TIMER
6	5E	02	STANDBY CONDITION ACTIVATED BY TIMER
6	5E	03	IDLE CONDITION ACTIVATED BY COMMAND
6	5E	04	STANDBY CONDITION ACTIVATED BY COMMAND

F.3.2 CDB or Parameter Validation Errors

When a CDB field or parameter list field is not valid and rounding is not possible, the command is terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ should be selected from those shown in Table F.2.

Table F.2 — CDB or Parameter Validation Errors

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
5	1A	00	PARAMETER LIST LENGTH ERROR
5	20	00	INVALID COMMAND OPERATION CODE
5	21	00	LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE
5	21	01	INVALID ELEMENT ADDRESS
5	21	02	INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE
5	21	03	INVALID WRITE CROSSING LAYER JUMP
5	22	00	INVALID FUNCTION
5	24	00	INVALID FIELD IN CDB
5	26	00	INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST
5	26	01	PARAMETER NOT SUPPORTED
5	26	02	PARAMETER VALUE INVALID
5	26	03	THRESHOLD PARAMETERS NOT SUPPORTED

F.3.3 Readiness Errors

In the event that a command requires a level of readiness that does not currently exist, the Drive should be terminated with CHECK CONDITION status and sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ should be selected from those shown in Table F.3.

Table F.3 — Readiness Errors

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
2	04	00	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, CAUSE NOT REPORTABLE
2	04	01	LOGICAL UNIT IS IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY
2	04	02	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, INITIALIZING CMD. REQUIRED
2	04	03	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, MANUAL INTERVENTION REQUIRED
2	04	04	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, FORMAT IN PROGRESS
2	04	07	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, OPERATION IN PROGRESS
2	04	08	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS
2	0C	07	WRITE ERROR RECOVERY NEEDED
2	0C	0F	DEFECTS IN ERROR WINDOW
2	30	00	INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED
2	30	01	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
2 or 5	30	02	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
2	30	03	CLEANING CARTRIDGE INSTALLED
2 or 5	30	04	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
2 or 5	30	05	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
2 or 5	30	06	CANNOT FORMAT MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM
2	30	07	CLEANING FAILURE
2 or 5	30	11	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNSUPPORTED MEDIUM VERSION
2	3A	00	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT
2	3A	01	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT – TRAY CLOSED
2	3A	02	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT – TRAY OPEN
2	3E	00	LOGICAL UNIT HAS NOT SELF-CONFIGURED YET

F.3.4 Protocol Errors

Sequences of commands, parameters, and media statuses represent a Drive/Host protocol. In some instances, the Drive requires a specific sequence or protocol. If a required sequence or protocol is violated, the Drive should report the violation in sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ selected from Table F.4.

Table F.4 — Protocol Errors

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
5	2C	00	COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR
5	2C	03	CURRENT PROGRAM AREA IS NOT EMPTY
5	2C	04	CURRENT PROGRAM AREA IS EMPTY
5	30	08	CANNOT WRITE — APPLICATION CODE MISMATCH
5	30	09	CURRENT SESSION NOT FIXATED FOR APPEND
5	30	10	MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED
5	39	00	SAVING PARAMETERS NOT SUPPORTED
5	3D	00	INVALID BITS IN IDENTIFY MESSAGE
5	43	00	MESSAGE ERROR
5	53	02	MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED
5	64	00	ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK
5	64	01	INVALID PACKET SIZE
5	6F	00	COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – AUTHENTICATION FAILURE
5	6F	01	COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT PRESENT
5	6F	02	COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE –KEY NOT ESTABLISHED
5	6F	03	READ OF SCRAMBLED SECTOR WITHOUT AUTHENTICATION
5	6F	04	MEDIA REGION CODE IS MISMATCHED TO LOGICAL UNIT REGION
5	6F	05	LOGICAL UNIT REGION MUST BE PERMANENT/REGION RESET COUNT ERROR
5	6F	06	INSUFFICIENT BLOCK COUNT FOR BINDING NONCE RECORDING
5	6F	07	CONFLICT IN BINDING NONCE RECORDING
5	6F	08	INSUFFICIENT PERMISSION
5	72	04	EMPTY OR PARTIALLY WRITTEN RESERVED TRACK
5	72	05	NO MORE TRACK RESERVATIONS ALLOWED

F.3.5 General Media Access Errors

Some access errors may occur for both reading and writing. In such cases the Drive should specify the error by selecting sense bytes from Table F.5.

Table F.5 — General Media Access Errors

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
3	06	00	NO REFERENCE POSITION FOUND
4	09	00	TRACK FOLLOWING ERROR
4	09	01	TRACKING SERVO FAILURE
4	09	02	FOCUS SERVO FAILURE
4	09	03	SPINDLE SERVO FAILURE
3	15	00	RANDOM POSITIONING ERROR
3	15	01	MECHANICAL POSITIONING ERROR
5	30	00	INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED
5	30	01	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
5	30	02	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
5	30	03	CLEANING CARTRIDGE INSTALLED
5	30	04	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
5	30	05	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
5	30	06	CANNOT FORMAT MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM
5	30	07	CLEANING FAILURE
5	30	08	CANNOT WRITE – APPLICATION CODE MISMATCH
5	30	09	CURRENT SESSION NOT FIXATED FOR APPEND
5	30	10	MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED
3	31	00	MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED
3	31	01	FORMAT COMMAND FAILED
3	31	02	ZONED FORMATTING FAILED DUE TO SPARE LINKING
3	57	00	UNABLE TO RECOVER TABLE-OF-CONTENTS
3	73	00	CD CONTROL ERROR

F.3.6 Errors Associated with Reading

The Drive may perform reading in many instances other than in response to READ commands, e.g. READ DISC STRUCTURE. When errors occur that are unique to reading, the Drive should specify the error by selecting sense bytes from Table F.6.

Table F.6 — Errors Associated with Reading

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
3	11	00	UNRECOVERED READ ERROR
3	11	01	READ RETRIES EXHAUSTED
3	11	02	ERROR TOO LONG TO CORRECT
3	11	05	L-EC UNCORRECTABLE ERROR
3	11	06	CIRC UNRECOVERED ERROR
3	11	0F	ERROR READING UPC/EAN NUMBER
3	11	10	ERROR READING ISRC NUMBER
B	11	11	READ ERROR – LOSS OF STREAMING
3	15	00	RANDOM POSITIONING ERROR
3	15	01	MECHANICAL POSITIONING ERROR
3	15	02	POSITIONING ERROR DETECTED BY READ OF MEDIUM
1	17	00	RECOVERED DATA WITH NO ERROR CORRECTION APPLIED
1	17	01	RECOVERED DATA WITH RETRIES
1	17	02	RECOVERED DATA WITH POSITIVE HEAD OFFSET
1	17	03	RECOVERED DATA WITH NEGATIVE HEAD OFFSET
1	17	04	RECOVERED DATA WITH RETRIES AND/OR CIRC APPLIED
1	17	05	RECOVERED DATA USING PREVIOUS SECTOR ID
1	17	07	RECOVERED DATA WITHOUT ECC – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT
1	17	08	RECOVERED DATA WITHOUT ECC – RECOMMEND REWRITE
1	17	09	RECOVERED DATA WITHOUT ECC – DATA REWRITTEN
1	18	00	RECOVERED DATA WITH ERROR CORRECTION APPLIED
1	18	01	RECOVERED DATA WITH ERROR CORR. & RETRIES APPLIED
1	18	02	RECOVERED DATA – DATA AUTO-REALLOCATED
1	18	03	RECOVERED DATA WITH CIRC
1	18	04	RECOVERED DATA WITH L-EC
1	18	05	RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT
1	18	06	RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REWRITE
1	18	08	RECOVERED DATA WITH LINKING
2 or 5	30	00	INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED
2 or 5	30	01	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
2 or 5	30	02	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
2 or 5	30	03	CLEANING CARTRIDGE INSTALLED
8	--	--	BLANK CHECK

F.3.7 Errors Associated with Writing

The Drive may perform writing in many instances other than WRITE commands, e.g. FORMAT UNIT. When errors occur that are unique to writing, the Drive should specify the error by selecting sense bytes from Table F.7.

Table F.7 — Errors Associated with Writing

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
3	0C	00	WRITE ERROR
3	0C	07	WRITE ERROR – RECOVERY NEEDED
3	0C	08	WRITE ERROR – RECOVERY FAILED
3	0C	09	WRITE ERROR – LOSS OF STREAMING
3	0C	0A	WRITE ERROR – PADDING BLOCKS ADDED
7	27	00	WRITE PROTECTED
7	27	01	HARDWARE WRITE PROTECTED
7	27	02	LOGICAL UNIT SOFTWARE WRITE PROTECTED
7	27	03	ASSOCIATED WRITE PROTECT
7	27	04	PERSISTENT WRITE PROTECT
7	27	05	PERMANENT WRITE PROTECT
7	27	06	CONDITIONAL WRITE PROTECT
2	30	04	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
2	30	05	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
2	30	06	CANNOT FORMAT MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM
2	30	07	CLEANING FAILURE
5	30	08	CANNOT WRITE – APPLICATION CODE MISMATCH
5	30	09	CURRENT SESSION NOT FIXATED FOR APPEND
5	30	10	MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED
2	30	11	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNSUPPORTED MEDIUM VERSION
3	31	00	MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED
3	31	01	FORMAT COMMAND FAILED
3	31	02	ZONED FORMATTING FAILED DUE TO SPARE LINKING
3	32	00	NO DEFECT SPARE LOCATION AVAILABLE
3	51	00	ERASE FAILURE
3	51	01	ERASE FAILURE – INCOMPLETE ERASE OPERATION DETECTED
1 or 3	5D	00	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1 or 3	5D	01	MEDIA FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1 or 3	5D	02	LOGICAL UNIT FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1 or 3	5D	03	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED – Predicted Spare Area Exhaustion
1	5D	FF	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED (FALSE)
3	72	00	SESSION FIXATION ERROR

Table F.7 — Errors Associated with Writing (continued)

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
3	72	01	SESSION FIXATION ERROR WRITING LEAD-IN
3	72	02	SESSION FIXATION ERROR WRITING LEAD-OUT
5	72	03	SESSION FIXATION ERROR – INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION
5	72	04	EMPTY OR PARTIALLY WRITTEN RESERVED TRACK
5	72	05	NO MORE TRACK RESERVATIONS ALLOWED
5	72	06	RMZ EXTENSION IS NOT ALLOWED
5	72	07	NO MORE TEST ZONE EXTENSIONS ARE ALLOWED
1	73	01	POWER CALIBRATION AREA ALMOST FULL
3	73	02	POWER CALIBRATION AREA IS FULL
3	73	03	POWER CALIBRATION AREA ERROR
3	73	04	PROGRAM MEMORY AREA UPDATE FAILURE
3	73	05	PROGRAM MEMORY AREA IS FULL
1	73	06	RMA/PMA IS ALMOST FULL
3	73	10	CURRENT POWER CALIBRATION AREA IS ALMOST FULL
3	73	11	CURRENT POWER CALIBRATION AREA IS FULL
5	73	17	RDZ IS FULL
8	--	--	BLANK CHECK

F.3.8 Hardware Failures

Table F.8 lists sense bytes SK/ASC/ASCQ that are reported when SK = HARDWARE ERROR.

Table F.8 — Hardware Failures

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
4	00	17	CLEANING REQUESTED
4	05	00	LOGICAL UNIT DOES NOT RESPOND TO SELECTION
4	08	00	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION FAILURE
4	08	01	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION TIMEOUT
4	08	02	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION PARITY ERROR
4	08	03	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION CRC ERROR (ULTRA-DMA/32)
4	09	00	TRACK FOLLOWING ERROR
4	09	01	TRACKING SERVO FAILURE
4	09	02	FOCUS SERVO FAILURE
4	09	03	SPINDLE SERVO FAILURE
4	09	04	HEAD SELECT FAULT
4	15	00	RANDOM POSITIONING ERROR
4	15	01	MECHANICAL POSITIONING ERROR
4	1B	00	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER ERROR
4	3B	16	MECHANICAL POSITIONING OR CHANGER ERROR
4	3E	01	LOGICAL UNIT FAILURE
4	3E	02	TIMEOUT ON LOGICAL UNIT
4	40	NN	DIAGNOSTIC FAILURE ON COMPONENT NN (80H-FFH)
4	44	00	INTERNAL TARGET FAILURE
4	46	00	UNSUCCESSFUL SOFT RESET
4	47	00	SCSI PARITY ERROR
4	4A	00	COMMAND PHASE ERROR
4	4B	00	DATA PHASE ERROR
4	4C	00	LOGICAL UNIT FAILED SELF-CONFIGURATION
4	53	00	MEDIA LOAD OR EJECT FAILED
1	5D	01	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED – Predicted Media failure
1	5D	02	LOGICAL UNIT FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1	5D	03	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED – Predicted Spare Area Exhaustion
1	5D	FF	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED (FALSE)
4	65	00	VOLTAGE FAULT

F.3.9 Errors Associated with non-ATAPI Environments

Table F.9 — Errors Associated with non-ATAPI Environments

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
B	00	06	I/O PROCESS TERMINATED
5	07	00	MULTIPLE PERIPHERAL DEVICES SELECTED
4	08	03	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION CRC ERROR (ULTRA-DMA/32)
4	09	04	HEAD SELECT FAULT
1	0B	00	WARNING
1	0B	01	WARNING – SPECIFIED TEMPERATURE EXCEEDED
1	0B	02	WARNING – ENCLOSURE DEGRADED
4	1B	00	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER ERROR
5	25	00	LOGICAL UNIT NOT SUPPORTED
6	2A	03	RESERVATIONS PREEMPTED
5	2B	00	COPY CANNOT EXECUTE SINCE INITIATOR CANNOT DISCONNECT
6	2F	00	COMMANDS CLEARED BY ANOTHER INITIATOR
	34	00	ENCLOSURE FAILURE
	35	00	ENCLOSURE SERVICES FAILURE
	35	01	UNSUPPORTED ENCLOSURE FUNCTION
	35	02	ENCLOSURE SERVICES UNAVAILABLE
	35	03	ENCLOSURE SERVICES TRANSFER FAILURE
	35	04	ENCLOSURE SERVICES TRANSFER REFUSED
5	3D	00	INVALID BITS IN IDENTIFY MESSAGE
5	43	00	MESSAGE ERROR
B	45	00	SELECT OR RESELECT FAILURE
4	47	00	SCSI PARITY ERROR
B	48	00	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR MESSAGE RECEIVED
B	49	00	INVALID MESSAGE ERROR
4	4A	00	COMMAND PHASE ERROR
4	4B	00	DATA PHASE ERROR
B	4D	NN	TAGGED OVERLAPPED COMMANDS (NN = QUEUE TAG)

F.3.10 Drive Sense Key, ASC and ASCQ Assignments

The sense codes in Table F.10 represent indications that a MM Drive may use to notify the Host of specific error/status situations.

Table F.10 — Drive Sense Key, ASC and ASCQ Assignments

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
0	00	00	NO ADDITIONAL SENSE INFORMATION
B	00	06	I/O PROCESS TERMINATED
5	00	16	OPERATION IN PROGRESS
4	00	17	CLEANING REQUESTED
3	02	00	NO SEEK COMPLETE
2	04	00	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, CAUSE NOT REPORTABLE
2	04	01	LOGICAL UNIT IS IN PROCESS OF BECOMING READY
2	04	02	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, INITIALIZING CMD. REQUIRED
2	04	03	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, MANUAL INTERVENTION REQUIRED
0 or 2	04	04	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, FORMAT IN PROGRESS (SK Specific Bytes contains a progress indication)
2	04	07	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, OPERATION IN PROGRESS
2	04	08	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, LONG WRITE IN PROGRESS
2	04	09	LOGICAL UNIT NOT READY, SELF-TEST IN PROGRESS
4	05	00	LOGICAL UNIT DOES NOT RESPOND TO SELECTION
3	06	00	NO REFERENCE POSITION FOUND
4	08	00	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION FAILURE
4	08	01	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION TIMEOUT
4	08	02	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION PARITY ERROR
4	08	03	LOGICAL UNIT COMMUNICATION CRC ERROR (ULTRA-DMA/32)
4	09	00	TRACK FOLLOWING ERROR
4	09	01	TRACKING SERVO FAILURE
4	09	02	FOCUS SERVO FAILURE
4	09	03	SPINDLE SERVO FAILURE
4	09	04	HEAD SELECT FAULT
6	0A	00	ERROR LOG OVERFLOW
1	0B	00	WARNING
1	0B	01	WARNING – SPECIFIED TEMPERATURE EXCEEDED
1	0B	02	WARNING – ENCLOSURE DEGRADED
1	0B	03	WARNING – BACKGROUND SELF-TEST FAILED
1	0B	04	WARNING – BACKGROUND PRE-SCAN DETECTED MEDIUM ERROR
1	0B	05	WARNING – BACKGROUND MEDIUM SCAN DETECTED MEDIUM ERROR
3	0C	00	WRITE ERROR
1	0C	01	WRITE ERROR – RECOVERED WITH AUTO-REALLOCATION
3	0C	02	WRITE ERROR – AUTO-REALLOCATION FAILED
3	0C	03	WRITE ERROR – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT
2 or 3	0C	07	WRITE ERROR – RECOVERY NEEDED
3	0C	08	WRITE ERROR – RECOVERY FAILED
3	0C	09	WRITE ERROR – LOSS OF STREAMING
3	0C	0A	WRITE ERROR – PADDING BLOCKS ADDED
2	0C	0F	DEFECTS IN ERROR WINDOW
3	11	00	UNRECOVERED READ ERROR
3	11	01	READ RETRIES EXHAUSTED
3	11	02	ERROR TOO LONG TO CORRECT

Table F.10 — Drive Sense Key, ASC and ASCQ Assignments (continued)

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
3	11	05	L-EC UNCORRECTABLE ERROR
3	11	06	CIRC UNRECOVERED ERROR
3	11	0F	ERROR READING UPC/EAN NUMBER
3	11	10	ERROR READING ISRC NUMBER
B	11	11	READ ERROR – LOSS OF STREAMING
3 or 4	15	00	RANDOM POSITIONING ERROR
3 or 4	15	01	MECHANICAL POSITIONING ERROR
3	15	02	POSITIONING ERROR DETECTED BY READ OF MEDIUM
1	17	00	RECOVERED DATA WITH NO ERROR CORRECTION APPLIED
1	17	01	RECOVERED DATA WITH RETRIES
1	17	02	RECOVERED DATA WITH POSITIVE HEAD OFFSET
1	17	03	RECOVERED DATA WITH NEGATIVE HEAD OFFSET
1	17	04	RECOVERED DATA WITH RETRIES AND/OR CIRC APPLIED
1	17	05	RECOVERED DATA USING PREVIOUS SECTOR ID
1	17	07	RECOVERED DATA WITHOUT ECC – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT
1	17	08	RECOVERED DATA WITHOUT ECC – RECOMMEND REWRITE
1	17	09	RECOVERED DATA WITHOUT ECC – DATA REWRITTEN
1	18	00	RECOVERED DATA WITH ERROR CORRECTION APPLIED
1	18	01	RECOVERED DATA WITH ERROR CORR. & RETRIES APPLIED
1	18	02	RECOVERED DATA – DATA AUTO-REALLOCATED
1	18	03	RECOVERED DATA WITH CIRC
1	18	04	RECOVERED DATA WITH L-EC
1	18	05	RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REASSIGNMENT
1	18	06	RECOVERED DATA – RECOMMEND REWRITE
1	18	08	RECOVERED DATA WITH LINKING
5	1A	00	PARAMETER LIST LENGTH ERROR
4	1B	00	SYNCHRONOUS DATA TRANSFER ERROR
A	1D	00	MISCOMPARE DURING VERIFY OPERATION
5	20	00	INVALID COMMAND OPERATION CODE
5	21	00	LOGICAL BLOCK ADDRESS OUT OF RANGE
5	21	01	INVALID ELEMENT ADDRESS
5	21	02	INVALID ADDRESS FOR WRITE
5	21	03	INVALID WRITE CROSSING LAYER JUMP
5	22	00	ILLEGAL FUNCTION
5	24	00	INVALID FIELD IN CDB
5	25	00	LOGICAL UNIT NOT SUPPORTED
5	26	00	INVALID FIELD IN PARAMETER LIST
5	26	01	PARAMETER NOT SUPPORTED
5	26	02	PARAMETER VALUE INVALID
5	26	03	THRESHOLD PARAMETERS NOT SUPPORTED
5	26	04	INVALID RELEASE OF PERSISTENT RESERVATION
7	27	00	WRITE PROTECTED
7	27	01	HARDWARE WRITE PROTECTED
7	27	02	LOGICAL UNIT SOFTWARE WRITE PROTECTED
7	27	03	ASSOCIATED WRITE PROTECT
7	27	04	PERSISTENT WRITE PROTECT
7	27	05	PERMANENT WRITE PROTECT
7	27	06	CONDITIONAL WRITE PROTECT

Table F.10 — **Drive Sense Key, ASC and ASCQ Assignments (continued)**

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
6	28	00	NOT READY TO READY CHANGE, MEDIUM MAY HAVE CHANGED
6	28	01	IMPORT OR EXPORT ELEMENT ACCESSED
6	28	02	FORMAT-LAYER MAY HAVE CHANGED
6	29	00	POWER ON, RESET, OR BUS DEVICE RESET OCCURRED
6	29	01	POWER ON OCCURRED
6	29	02	BUS RESET OCCURRED
6	29	03	BUS DEVICE RESET FUNCTION OCCURRED
6	29	04	DEVICE INTERNAL RESET
6	2A	00	PARAMETERS CHANGED
6	2A	01	MODE PARAMETERS CHANGED
6	2A	02	LOG PARAMETERS CHANGED
6	2A	03	RESERVATIONS PREEMPTED
5	2C	00	COMMAND SEQUENCE ERROR
5	2C	03	CURRENT PROGRAM AREA IS NOT EMPTY
5	2C	04	CURRENT PROGRAM AREA IS EMPTY
6	2E	00	INSUFFICIENT TIME FOR OPERATION
6	2F	00	COMMANDS CLEARED BY ANOTHER INITIATOR
2 or 5	30	00	INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM INSTALLED
2 or 5	30	01	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
2 or 5	30	02	CANNOT READ MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
2 or 5	30	03	CLEANING CARTRIDGE INSTALLED
2 or 5	30	04	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNKNOWN FORMAT
2 or 5	30	05	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE FORMAT
2 or 5	30	06	CANNOT FORMAT MEDIUM – INCOMPATIBLE MEDIUM
2 or 5	30	07	CLEANING FAILURE
5	30	08	CANNOT WRITE – APPLICATION CODE MISMATCH
5	30	09	CURRENT SESSION NOT FIXATED FOR APPEND
5	30	10	MEDIUM NOT FORMATTED
2 or 5	30	11	CANNOT WRITE MEDIUM – UNSUPPORTED MEDIUM VERSION
3	31	00	MEDIUM FORMAT CORRUPTED
3	31	01	FORMAT COMMAND FAILED
3	31	02	ZONED FORMATTING FAILED DUE TO SPARE LINKING
3	32	00	NO DEFECT SPARE LOCATION AVAILABLE
	34	00	ENCLOSURE FAILURE
	35	00	ENCLOSURE SERVICES FAILURE
	35	01	UNSUPPORTED ENCLOSURE FUNCTION
	35	02	ENCLOSURE SERVICES UNAVAILABLE
	35	03	ENCLOSURE SERVICES TRANSFER FAILURE
	35	04	RNCLOSURE SERVICES TRANSFER REFUSED
	35	05	ENCLOSURE SERVICES CHECKSUM ERROR
1	37	00	ROUNDED PARAMETER
5	39	00	SAVING PARAMETERS NOT SUPPORTED
2	3A	00	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT
2	3A	01	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT – TRAY CLOSED
2	3A	02	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT – TRAY OPEN
2	3A	03	MEDIUM NOT PRESENT – LOADABLE

Table F.10 — **Drive Sense Key, ASC and ASCQ Assignments (continued)**

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
6	3B	0D	MEDIUM DESTINATION ELEMENT FULL
6	3B	0E	MEDIUM SOURCE ELEMENT EMPTY
6	3B	0F	END OF MEDIUM REACHED
6	3B	11	MEDIUM MAGAZINE NOT ACCESSIBLE
6	3B	12	MEDIUM MAGAZINE REMOVED
6	3B	13	MEDIUM MAGAZINE INSERTED
6	3B	14	MEDIUM MAGAZINE LOCKED
6	3B	15	MEDIUM MAGAZINE UNLOCKED
4	3B	16	MECHANICAL POSITIONING OR CHANGER ERROR
5	3D	00	INVALID BITS IN IDENTIFY MESSAGE
2	3E	00	LOGICAL UNIT HAS NOT SELF-CONFIGURED YET
4	3E	01	LOGICAL UNIT FAILURE
4	3E	02	TIMEOUT ON LOGICAL UNIT
6	3F	00	TARGET OPERATING CONDITIONS HAVE CHANGED
6	3F	01	MICROCODE HAS BEEN CHANGED
6	3F	02	CHANGED OPERATING DEFINITION
6	3F	03	INQUIRY DATA HAS CHANGED
4	40	NN	DIAGNOSTIC FAILURE ON COMPONENT NN (80H-FFH)
5	43	00	MESSAGE ERROR
4	44	00	INTERNAL TARGET FAILURE
B	45	00	SELECT OR RESELECT FAILURE
4	46	00	UNSUCCESSFUL SOFT RESET
4	47	00	SCSI PARITY ERROR
B	48	00	INITIATOR DETECTED ERROR MESSAGE RECEIVED
B	49	00	INVALID MESSAGE ERROR
4	4A	00	COMMAND PHASE ERROR
4	4B	00	DATA PHASE ERROR
4	4C	00	LOGICAL UNIT FAILED SELF-CONFIGURATION
B	4D	NN	TAGGED OVERLAPPED COMMANDS (NN = QUEUE TAG)
B	4E	00	OVERLAPPED COMMANDS ATTEMPTED
3	51	00	ERASE FAILURE
3	51	01	ERASE FAILURE – INCOMPLETE ERASE OPERATION DETECTED
4	53	00	MEDIA LOAD OR EJECT FAILED
5	53	02	MEDIUM REMOVAL PREVENTED
5	55	00	SYSTEM RESOURCE FAILURE
3	57	00	UNABLE TO RECOVER TABLE-OF-CONTENTS
6	5A	00	OPERATOR REQUEST OR STATE CHANGE INPUT
6	5A	01	OPERATOR MEDIUM REMOVAL REQUEST
6	5A	02	OPERATOR SELECTED WRITE PROTECT
6	5A	03	OPERATOR SELECTED WRITE PERMIT
6	5B	00	LOG EXCEPTION
6	5B	01	THRESHOLD CONDITION MET
6	5B	02	LOG COUNTER AT MAXIMUM
6	5B	03	LOG LIST CODES EXHAUSTED
1	5D	00	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1	5D	01	MEDIA FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1	5D	02	LOGICAL UNIT FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED
1	5D	03	SPARE AREA EXHAUSTION FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED

Table F.10 — **Drive Sense Key, ASC and ASCQ Assignments (continued)**

SK	ASC	ASCQ	Description
1	5D	FF	FAILURE PREDICTION THRESHOLD EXCEEDED (FALSE)
6	5E	00	LOW POWER CONDITION ON
6	5E	01	IDLE CONDITION ACTIVATED BY TIMER
6	5E	02	STANDBY CONDITION ACTIVATED BY TIMER
6	5E	03	IDLE CONDITION ACTIVATED BY COMMAND
6	5E	04	STANDBY CONDITION ACTIVATED BY COMMAND
5	63	00	END OF USER AREA ENCOUNTERED ON THIS TRACK
5	63	01	PACKET DOES NOT FIT IN AVAILABLE SPACE
5	64	00	ILLEGAL MODE FOR THIS TRACK
5	64	01	INVALID PACKET SIZE
4	65	00	VOLTAGE FAULT
5	6F	00	COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – AUTHENTICATION FAILURE
5	6F	01	COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE – KEY NOT PRESENT
5	6F	02	COPY PROTECTION KEY EXCHANGE FAILURE –KEY NOT ESTABLISHED
5	6F	03	READ OF SCRAMBLED SECTOR WITHOUT AUTHENTICATION
5	6F	04	MEDIA REGION CODE IS MISMATCHED TO LOGICAL UNIT REGION
5	6F	05	LOGICAL UNIT REGION MUST BE PERMANENT/REGION RESET COUNT ERROR
5	6F	06	INSUFFICIENT BLOCK COUNT FOR BINDING NONCE RECORDING
5	6F	07	CONFLICT IN BINDING NONCE RECORDING
5	6F	08	INSUFFICIENT PERMISSION
3	72	00	SESSION FIXATION ERROR
3	72	01	SESSION FIXATION ERROR WRITING LEAD-IN
3	72	02	SESSION FIXATION ERROR WRITING LEAD-OUT
5	72	03	SESSION FIXATION ERROR – INCOMPLETE TRACK IN SESSION
5	72	04	EMPTY OR PARTIALLY WRITTEN RESERVED TRACK
5	72	05	NO MORE TRACK RESERVATIONS ALLOWED
5	72	06	RMZ EXTENSION IS NOT ALLOWED
5	72	07	NO MORE TEST ZONE EXTENSIONS ARE ALLOWED
3	73	00	CD CONTROL ERROR
1	73	01	POWER CALIBRATION AREA ALMOST FULL
3	73	02	POWER CALIBRATION AREA IS FULL
3	73	03	POWER CALIBRATION AREA ERROR
3	73	04	PROGRAM MEMORY AREA UPDATE FAILURE
3	73	05	PROGRAM MEMORY AREA IS FULL
1	73	06	RMA/PMA IS ALMOST FULL
3	73	10	CURRENT POWER CALIBRATION AREA IS ALMOST FULL
3	73	11	CURRENT POWER CALIBRATION AREA IS FULL
5	73	17	RDZ IS FULL
8	--	--	BLANK CHECK

Note 39. All table values are hexadecimal.

Note 40. All ASC values 80h through FFh are vendor specific.

Note 41. All ASCQ values 80h through FFh are vendor specific.

Annex G Event Reporting Using GESN (Informative)

G.1 Introduction

The GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command applies to all MM devices.

The proper implementation of this command, together with operating system support, may result in improved autorun time, better user interface results, better time estimates for long operations, and many other user benefits.

G.2 Functional Behavior Guidelines

Requests for a Notification Class of zero should return an event header with the NEA bit set, the Notification Class field set to 000b, and the Supported Event Classes byte set to reflect all N supported Event Classes.

Requests may arrive at the device from an Initiator requesting any subset of events that the device supports. e.g., if { OpChange, DeviceBusy, Media } events are supported, then any of the following events may be requested by the Initiator by a single command block:

{ OpChange },

{ Media },

{ OpChange, Media },

{ OpChange, DeviceBusy, Media },

{ DeviceBusy },

{ OpChange, DeviceBusy },

{ DeviceBusy, Media }

The data reported by the Drive to the Initiator should contain exactly one Event Class.

The data reported by the Drive to the Initiator should contain an Event Class that was requested by the Initiator in the command block.

The data reported by the Drive to the Initiator should not report a higher priority Event Class if the Event Class was not requested by the Initiator. If multiple Event Classes are requested by the Initiator in a single command block, the Drive should follow the following procedure to determine the Event Class to report to the Initiator. For each requested Event Class, in order of priority per the specification:

1. If an event other than a NoChange event exists, report it.
2. If only NoChange events exist, report highest priority NoChange event.

The Drive should simultaneously support (or queue) at least one event of each Event Class it supports. This prevents events of different Event Classes from interfering with each other.

e.g., if a Media Event and External Request event both occur at the same time, and the Initiator is continuously requesting both event types, then the Drive should:

1. Store both events.
2. Report the External Request event first (higher priority).
3. Clear the External Request event.
4. Not clear the Media Event upon reporting the External Request event.
5. Report the Media Event upon the next GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION request.

To support such behavior early, the following high-level design to support GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION should be considered. This does not preclude other implementations if the device behaves as expected by the operating system.

1. For each supported Event Class, have a queue of appropriate depth (typically 1) of events for that Event Class. For Drives that support the Mt. Rainier format, the minimum appropriate queue depth is 2, and special handling should be given to both the BGFormatCompleted and BGFormatRestarted Media Events.
2. To implement this more simply, and to avoid queue depths greater than one, logically use a queue depth of 1 for the Media Events unless one of the BGFormat events is supported. When an event is generated by the device, the device looks to see if the new event is of greater priority than the current event that is stored of that class. If it is, the new event replaces the existing event in the 1-deep queue for that Event Class. Otherwise, the new event is discarded.

Annex H Power Management (Informative)

H.1 Power Management States

Four power states are defined. These are named Active, Idle, Standby, and Sleep with Active being the "Full-On" state, Sleep the "Off" state and "Idle, Standby and Sleep" progressively more aggressive power managed states. This model differs significantly from previous ATA and SCSI power management definitions. This new model (Table H.1) defines power states in terms of the perceived impact on the end user, instead of absolute power levels. The Idle state is optimized for minimal end user performance impact. The Standby state is optimized for power savings.

To provide consistent behavior across Drives, standard definitions are used for the power states of Drives. These states are defined in terms of the following criteria.

- Power Consumption: How much power the Drive uses.
- Drive Context: How much of the internal state of the Drive is retained by hardware and what is to be restored by the responsible software.
- Restore time: How long it takes to raise the power level to the active power state and to put the Drive into operational condition (including mechanical operation such as spin up) required before entering into the Active power state. Restoring is vendor specific and any mechanism may be employed here to raise the power consumption and to put the Drive in operation condition required in a higher power state. e.g., "turning on or raising internal Vcc for power hungry circuits such as motors, laser sensors," "raising internal Vcc or the clock frequency for the digital circuits," etc. A critical factor is how quickly restoring the Drive to operation condition required in a higher power state (e.g. spin up).
- De-power time: How long it takes to reduce the power to the desired level in lower power state after entering the lower power state from higher power state. De-powering is vendor specific and any mechanism may be employed here to reduce the power consumption. e.g., "turning off or lowering internal Vcc for power hungry circuits such as motors, laser sensors," "lowering internal Vcc or reducing the clock frequency for the digital circuits," "dynamic clock gating," "cutting off the DC paths for unused circuits," "turning off PLLs," etc.

Table H.1 — Power Management Model States

Drive State	Power Consumption	Drive Context Retained	Restore Time
Active	As needed for operation	All	None
Idle	Less than Active	All	The Drive should be restored to active state within 1 second on any request to enter active state, independent of the de-powering process.
Standby	Less than idle	All buffers are empty before entering Standby state.	Vendor specific: Greater than or equal to Idle to Active
Sleep	Less than Standby	None, Buffer & All of command queues are empty before entering Sleep state.	Greater than or equal to Standby to Active. Vendor Specific. May Need full initialization. The Initiator may remove Vcc.

Transitions between these power states may occur at the request of the Initiator or the Drive. Transitions to a higher power state from a lower power state should occur after restoring the Drive to the operating conditions (including mechanical operation if applicable, such as spin up) required in the higher power state. When the Drive transitions from a higher power state to a lower power state, the Drive should be considered to be in the lower power state when the Drive is assured of reaching the lower power condition. Actual de-powering occurs after the Drive enters the lower power state. The Drive should generate a power event when the Drive is considered to have entered a power state.

In order to create a robust power management environment, Drives should support the following:

- Four power states: Active, Idle, Standby, and Sleep.
- Idle Timer. Provides a method for the Drive to enter Idle state from Active state, following a programmed period of inactivity.
- Standby Timer. Provides a method for the Drive to enter Standby state from either Active or Idle state, following a programmed period of inactivity.
- START STOP UNIT command and the Power Condition Field. Provides a method for the Initiator to request the Drive to enter a power state.
- GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command. Notifies the Initiator of power state changes and current power status.
- Power Condition mode page. Enables or disables timers and specifies the reload value of the Idle and Standby timers.

H.2 Power State Transitions

Active State:

The Drive is completely active and responsive. The Drive is consuming its highest level of power. During the execution of a media access command (commands that reload both timers) the Drive should be in active state.

The Drive should minimize power consumption at all times, even when in the active state. Any mechanism may be employed, as long as it is transparent to software and does not prevent the Drive from performing expected functions.

e.g., the Drive may dynamically gate on/off internal clocks by monitoring bus activities and internal activities.

Idle State:

In Idle state, the Drive is capable of responding to commands but may take up to one second longer to complete commands than the Active state. The Drive is consuming less power than the Active state. Any mechanism may be employed as long as the restoring time is less than one second. The Drive may, e.g.:

- Reduce internal clock frequency

- Lower the internal Vcc for digital circuits

- Dynamically gate internal clocks by monitoring bus/internal activities

Standby State:

In Standby state the Drive should only be required to accept commands from the Initiator. All other mechanisms are in the power save condition. In Standby state, the Drive is capable of responding to commands but the Drive takes longer to complete commands than when in Idle state. Buffers should be emptied before entering into Standby state. The Drive context should be preserved. The Drive is consuming less power than when in Idle state.

Sleep State:

Sleep is the maximum power saving state. Buffers and all command queues, including GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands, should be emptied before entering into the Sleep state. When the Drive enters the sleep state, any GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION commands present in the command queue, should be removed from the command queue, without command completion. In this Sleep state, all functions are stopped and no commands, except for reset may be received. The unit is consuming less power than when in the Standby state. The Drive context is invalid in the Sleep state.

The Initiator software should fully initialize the Drive after exiting Sleep state, as all context may be lost in the Sleep state. Most devices provide a manual eject mechanism for removing/inserting a disc independent of any lock/unlock mechanism employed. Given this possibility, when the Logical

Unit is unable to determine if media has been changed while the Drive was in the sleep state, the Drive should report NEW MEDIA on the next GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (Media Status) command.

In the Sleep state, the Initiator may completely remove power from the device by turning off Vcc.

H.3 Power Management State Diagram

State transitions for the power management model are shown in Figure H.1.

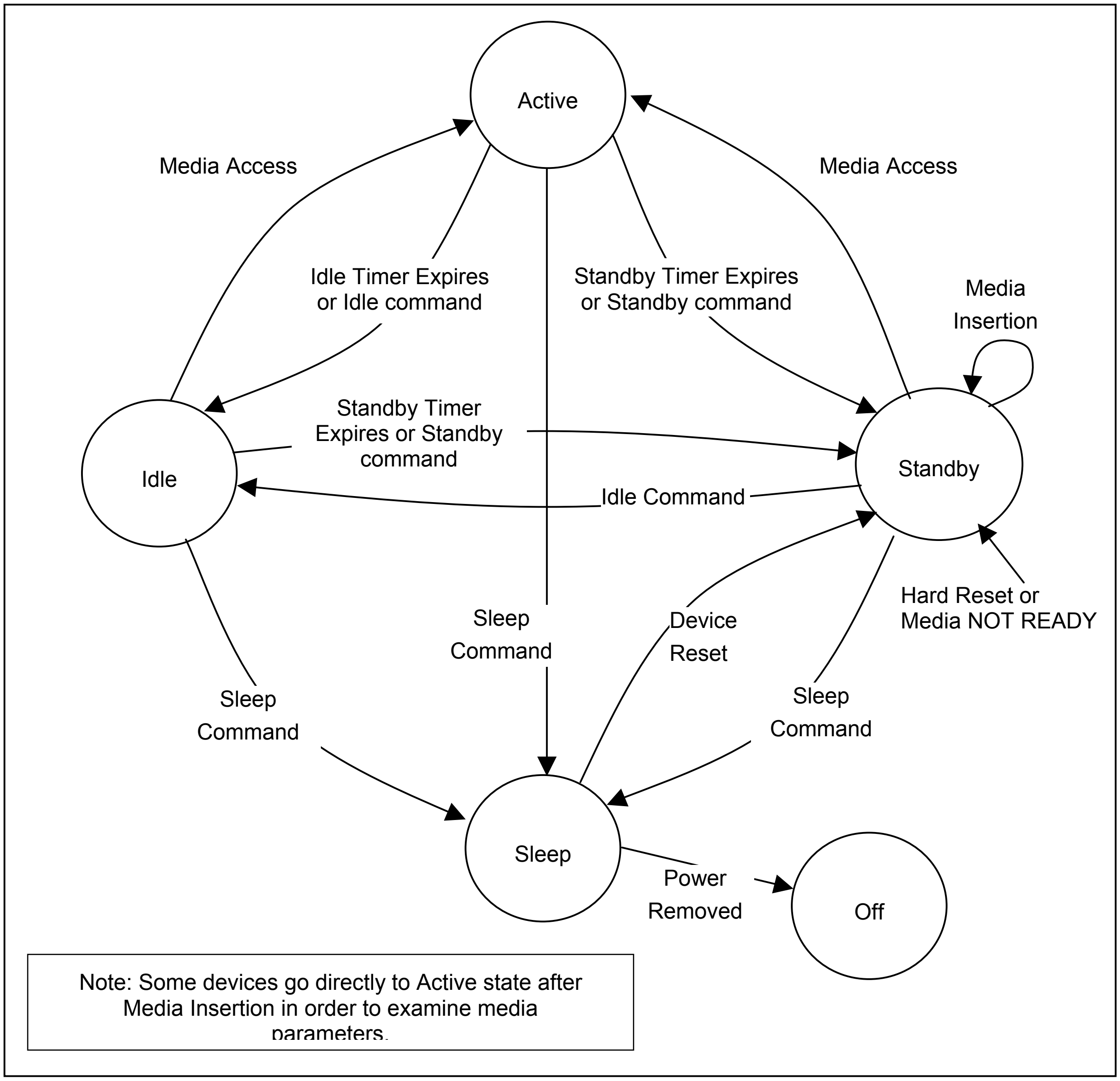


Figure H.1 — Power Management STATE Diagram

A power-on or hard reset always returns the Power State to the Standby State. A Device Reset does not alter the current Power State, unless the current Power State is Sleep. A Device Reset received while in sleep state returns the Power State to Standby.

The Sleep state is entered when the Drive has been commanded to go to Sleep but Vcc is still applied to the device. Removing Vcc always takes the device to the Power Off State. Removing Vcc is recommended only when all Drives on a given bus are in Sleep State.

Table H.2 shows transition conditions for this model, and shows the Initial state, the Resultant state, Notification class, and Event class (Media or Power Management). Notification class and Event class (Power Event/Media Event) fields specify the events that should be generated during the transitions as outlined in the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION command.

In Idle or Standby states, the Drive should attempt to maintain the minimal power level for that state at all times. However, the Drive may create transitory, higher power level conditions as needed. The transitory power

conditions should not affect the reported power state, or generate power state events. Example transitory conditions are: flushing the buffers, emptying command queues, media insertion spin up, or auto off-line, etc. On insertion of new media, the Drive may enter a transitory, higher power condition and stay in this condition for vendor specific time period. If the Drive has not received a media access command (commands that reload both timers) during this period, the Drive should return to the normal power level for the current power state. This prevents excessive power consumption while the Initiator is off-line.

It is permissible to enter intermediate states while in transition between states, however, the Drive should not report power change events for the intermediate states. If the Drive fails to enter the target Power State, the Drive should return to the original Power State. Simultaneous expiration of multiple timers, should cause the Drive to enter the lower Power State, and should only report the result of the transition to that state.

When the Drive is reporting NOT READY, the Drive should enter the Standby State.

If a power change event has not been reported to the Initiator, when a new event is generated, the Drive may choose only to report the most recent power event.

H.4 Power Management Timers

The Idle and Standby timers provide a method for the Drive to enter lower power states after an Initiator programmable period of inactivity, without direct Initiator command.

A timer is deactivated (no longer used by the Drive, regardless of Enable / Disable setting provided from the Initiator) when the Drive is in the associated power state or a lower power state.

A timer is both reactivated (the Drive should use the timer if enabled) and reloaded when a Drive transitions to power state higher than the associated timer.

Timers should be reloaded using the current timer value from the Power Condition mode page

Timers should be disabled/enabled as specified in the Power Condition mode page.

Timers should be set to the default condition upon receiving a power-on, or hard reset. The default condition for the Timers should be enabled with the values of the timers vendor specific.

H.5 Standby Timer

If the Standby Timer expires the Drive should attempt to flush all buffers.

If this operation fails, the Drive should remain in the current power state, and the Standby timer is reloaded. If the flush succeeds, the Drive should enter the Standby State.

Table H.2 — State Transition Events and Status

Initial State	Resultant State	Cause of Transition	Notification Class	Event
Active	Active	Unsuccessful Idle, Standby, or Sleep command	Power	PwrChg-Fail
	Idle	Successful completion of Idle command	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Idle	The expiration of Idle timer	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Standby	Successful completion of Standby command	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Standby	The expiration of Standby timer, all Buffers are empty	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Sleep	Successful completion of Sleep command	Power	No event[1]
Idle	Idle	Successful completion of Idle command	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Standby	The expiration of Standby timer, all buffers are empty	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Standby	Successful completion of Standby command	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Sleep	Successful completion of Sleep command	Power	No event[1]
	Active	Receptions of a command that reloads both timers	Power	PwrChg-Succ
Standby	Standby	Successful completion of Standby command	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Standby	Unsuccessful Idle, Standby, or Sleep command	Power	PwrChg-Fail
	Standby	Insertion of media and ready to use	Media	NewMedia
	Idle	Successful completion of Idle command	Power	PwrChg-Succ
	Sleep	Successful completion of Sleep command	Power	No event[1]
	Active	Receptions of a command that reloads both timers	Power	PwrChg-Succ
Any	Standby	A power-on, or hard reset occurred, or the Drive becomes NOT READY	Power	PwrChg-Succ
Sleep	Standby	Device Reset	Power	PwrChg-Succ

[1] Event reporting is not possible in Sleep. See H.2, Sleep State.

Commands issued by the Initiator should have an effect on the timers implemented by the Drive. The effect is defined in Table H.3 .

Table H.3 — Effects of Initiator Commands on Timers

Initiator Command Issued	Timer Effects	Comments
BLANK	Reload Both	Recordable only
CHANGE DEFINITION	None	
CLOSE TRACK	Reload Both	Recordable only
COMPARE	Reload Both	SCSI only
SEND DIAGNOSTIC	Reload Both	ATA command
SYNCHRONIZE CACHE	Reload Both	
FORMAT UNIT	Reload Both	Recordable only
GET CONFIGURATION	None	
GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION	None	
INQUIRY	None	
LOAD/UNLOAD MEDIUM	Reload Both	
LOCK/UNLOCK CACHE	None	SCSI only. A Lock Cache command should prevent the Drive from entering Standby or Sleep states.
LOG SELECT/SENSE	None	SCSI only
MECHANISM STATUS	None	

Table H.3 — Effects of Initiator Commands on Timers (cont.)

Initiator Command Issued	Timer Effects	Comments
MODE SELECT	May Reload Timers	A MODE SELECT command that changes the Standby or Idle timers should reload the timer.
MODE SENSE	None	
PLAY AUDIO MSF	Reload Both	
PREFETCH	Reload Both	SCSI only
PREVENT ALLOW MEDIUM REMOVAL	Reload Standby	
READ (12)	Reload Both	
READ BUFFER	Reload Standby	
READ MM CAPACITY	Reload Both	
READ CD	Reload Both	
READ CD MSF	Reload Both	
READ DISC INFORMATION	Reload Both	
READ DISC STRUCTURE	Reload Both	
READ FORMATTABLE CAPACITIES	Reload Standby	
READ LONG	Reload Both	SCSI only
READ TRACK INFORMATION	Reload Both	
READ SUB-CHANNEL	Reload Both	
READ TOC/PMA/ATIP	Reload Both	
RELEASE	None	SCSI only
REPAIR TRACK	Reload Both	Sequential MM Recordable
REPORT KEY	Reload Both	
GET PERFORMANCE	Reload Both	May need to access media
REQUEST SENSE	None	
RESERVE	None	SCSI only
RESERVE TRACK	Reload Both	Recordable only
REZERO	Reload Both	SCSI only
SCAN	Reload Both	
SEEK	Reload Both	
SEND EVENT	Reload Both	May effect media access
SEND KEY	Reload Both	
SEND DISC STRUCTURE	Reload Both	DVD Recordable
SEND OPC INFORMATION	Reload Both	Recordable only
SET CD SPEED	Reload Both	Obsolete
SET READ AHEAD	Reload Both	
SET STREAMING	Reload Both	
START STOP UNIT	See Start Stop Unit command	
TEST UNIT READY	Reload Both	
VERIFY	Reload Both	
WRITE	Reload Both	Recordable only
WRITE AND VERIFY (10)	Reload Both	Recordable only
Device Reset	Reload Both	Reset operation, the Drive should not return to default timer conditions.
Other commands	Vendor Specific	

H.6 Power Management Status Reporting

The POWER STATUS field of the GET EVENT STATUS NOTIFICATION (Power Management Class) event data should always report the current Drive power state. This provides a mechanism for the Initiator to query the current Power State, irrespective of state transitions.